

HISTORY OF  

---

---

JOSEPH SMITH *and*  
THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST  
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS  

---

---



HISTORY OF

---

JOSEPH SMITH *and*

THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST

OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS

---

A Source- and Text-Critical Edition

---

Volume 3: 1838-1839

Eight Volumes

---

*Edited by*

DAN VOGEL

THE SMITH-PETTIT FOUNDATION

SALT LAKE CITY • 2015

*To all students of Mormon history*

© 2015 by The Smith-Pettit Foundation, Salt Lake City, Utah.  
All Rights Reserved. Published in the United States of America.

Distributed by Signature Books Publishing LLC.  
[www.signaturebooks.com](http://www.signaturebooks.com)

∞ The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48-1992.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOGING-IN-PUBLICATION DATA  
History of Joseph Smith and the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints:  
a source- and text-critical edition / edited by Dan Vogel.

pages cm

Includes bibliographical references.

ISBN 978-1-56085-245-2 (alk. paper)

1. Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints--History--Sources.
2. Smith, Joseph, Jr., 1805-1844. 3. Mormon Church--History--Sources.
- I. Vogel, Dan, 1955--editor.

BX8611.H58 2015

289.309--dc23

2014032575

## CONTENTS

Introduction to Volume 3 .....	vii
--------------------------------	-----

### HISTORY OF JOSEPH SMITH AND THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS

1. Joseph Smith Moves to Missouri (January-March 1838) .....	3
2. Excommunication of Oliver Cowdery and David Whitmer (April 1838) .....	15
3. Settlement of Affairs at Far West (April-May 1838) .....	23
4. Settlement in Caldwell and Daviess Counties (May-June 1838) .....	35
5. Events and Revelations at Far West (July 1838) .....	41
6. Trouble in Caldwell and Daviess Counties (August 1838) .....	59
7. Increasing Difficulties in Caldwell and Daviess Counties (September 1838) .....	73
8. Kirtland Camp Arrives at Far West (September-October 1838) .....	85
9. Journey of Kirtland Camp (March-August 1838) .....	101
10. Journey of Kirtland Camp (Cont.) (August-October 1838) .....	127
11. Expulsion of Saints from Dewitt (October 1838) .....	143
12. Governor Boggs Issues Extermination Order (October 1838) .....	153
13. Mobs in Far West (October-November 1838) .....	167
14. Joseph Smith Arrested (November-December 1838) .....	185
15. Joseph Smith's Letter from Liberty Jail (December 1838) .....	201
16. Missouri Legislature (December 1838) .....	219
17. Saints Leave Missouri (January-February 1839) .....	229
18. Saints Gather at Quincy, Illinois (February 1839) .....	239
19. Joseph Smith Petitions for Release (March 1839) .....	249
20. Joseph Smith's Letters from Jail (March 1839) .....	259
21. Joseph Smith Escapes (April 1839) .....	281
22. Exodus from Missouri (April 1839) .....	299
23. Saints Settle at Commerce, Illinois (May 1839) .....	309

24. Joseph Smith Recounts Missouri Persecutions (May-June 1839) . . . . .	325
25. Doctrinal Development (June 1839) . . . . .	343
26. Joseph Smith's Address to the Twelve (July 1839) . . . . .	349
27. Epistle of the Twelve (July 1839) . . . . .	357
28. Parley P. Pratt Escapes from Missouri (July 1839) . . . . .	363
29. Important Affidavits . . . . .	367

## INTRODUCTION TO VOLUME 3

Volume 3 covers the period from January 1838 to July 1839. It opens with Joseph Smith's flight from Kirtland, Ohio, and arrival in Far West, Missouri, the excommunication of church leaders, the journey of the Kirtland Camp and its arrival at Far West, the persecution and expulsion of the Mormons from Missouri, and finally the arrest, imprisonment, and escape of Joseph Smith and other church leaders to Illinois.

### **Manuscript History, Book B-1, 780-812 (February-March 1844)**

On 20 February 1844, Willard Richards began recording events for the year 1838 on page 780 of Book A-1, continuing daily until early March, where his handwriting ends on page 812 with the events of 6 August 1838 (cf. DHC 3:1-56; chaps. 1-6).<sup>1</sup> At this time, Richards's other duties as Joseph Smith's private secretary, which became increasingly demanding after Smith announced his candidacy for the U.S. presidency, as clerk for the Quorum of Twelve, and as Nauvoo (Illinois) Municipal Court justice crowded out work on the history. William W. Phelps, who had been appointed to assist Richards, was also employed as Smith's political ghost writer during this time.<sup>2</sup>

### **Work Continues After Joseph Smith's Death— Willard Richards's Rough Draft**

The earliest entry following Joseph Smith's death to mention work on the History is in Smith's journal kept by Richards under 11 December 1844: "[Thomas] Bullock ... re-commenced to gather materials for History."<sup>3</sup> Several entries in Bullock's journal record his efforts to collect, copy, and organize church records.<sup>4</sup> On 15 January 1845, Richards joined Bullock in gathering and organizing papers, which continued through January and early February.<sup>5</sup>

About this time, Richards began making a Rough Draft (RDft), which begins with the events of 6 August 1838. This is where Richards had stopped recording in Book B-1 the previous March (cf. DHC 3:56; chap. 6). Since the first three pages of this Rough Draft were informed by the statement of John D. Lee and Levi Stewart (JDL-LS), which was taken by Bullock on 10 February 1845, Richards began writing after that date. Bullock's entry for 13 February, reporting that Richards "was writing history," may well document the beginning of Richards's 71-page draft for the years 1838-39.<sup>6</sup>

---

1. WRj 9:61; 10:6.

2. See, e.g., JSj [1843-44], 171 (21 Nov. 1843), 265, 268 (16, 19 Feb. 1844) (*APR*, 428, 446-47); JSj [1844], 27 (8 Mar. 1844) (*APR*, 457).

3. JSj [1844], 181.

4. CHOj 1:21, 13 and 18 Dec. 1844; CHOj 2:2a, 24 Dec. 1844; CHOj 2:3, 6-7 Jan. 1845; CHOj 1:23 and 2:3a, 14 Jan. 1845.

5. WRj 11:32, 34, 46; CHOj 1:14-28, 17 Jan.-17 Feb. 1845; CHOj 2:4-7a, 16 Jan.-14 Feb. 1845.

6. CHOj 2:7.

### Manuscript History, Book B-1, 812-49 (February 1845)

Four days later, on 17 February, Bullock not only recorded that Richards was “writing History all day,” but that he was “Writing in Church History Book.”<sup>7</sup> Bullock’s handwriting appears on the final thirty-nine pages of Book B-1, which were written over the course of the following week; he probably finished Book B-1 on 24 February 1845.<sup>8</sup>

### Manuscript History, Book C-1, 850-963 (February-March 1845)

On 25 February, Bullock recorded that he “Commenced new Book on Church History,”<sup>9</sup> which continued the pagination of the previous volume at page 850. Book C-1 would become the largest, eventually containing 511 pages, and later, in Utah, the most heavily supplemented of the MS History volumes. The need for expansion is perhaps explained by the haste in which it was composed. Written almost entirely by Bullock, Book C-1 was finished on 3 May, a little more than two months after starting, although long excerpts from document sources were left blank to be filled in later.<sup>10</sup> Sometime between 8 and 15 March 1845, Bullock reached page 963 of Book C-1,<sup>11</sup> which brought the narrative to the events of early July 1839, where the present volume of the History ends (cf. DHC 3:195-402; chaps. 13-28).

### Additional Scribes and Duplicate Copies

Wilmer Benson, who joined the Historian’s Office on 7 May 1845,<sup>12</sup> after working briefly on addenda for Book B-1, began copying Book B-1 into Book B-2 on 16 May; he finished on Book B-2 on 22 August 1845. Benson continued working in the Historian’s Office until the MS History books were packed for the trip to Utah, and did not assist in the work after the exodus.

Later, on 1 August 1845, Willard Richards’s twenty-four-year-old nephew, Franklin D. Richards, began working in the office. On the following day, he “commenced the copying of the largest Book that has yet been written by the church which contains Church History and is the third vol. or Book C.”<sup>13</sup> Between this date and 7 January 1846, Franklin spent most of his time copying Book C-1 into Book C-2.

7. CHOj 2:7a.

8. On 21 Feb. 1845, Richards recorded: “Bullock quit writing. (812 to 838½ pages or 5 pages per day.)” (WRj 11:69). On 22 Feb. 1845, Bullock recorded: “Office all day writing Church history” (CHOj 1:28). Since, according to Richards, Bullock was averaging five pages per day during this time, and Bullock was sick on 23 Feb., he probably finished Book B-1, 849, on 24 Feb. 1845.

9. CHOj 1:29.

10. On 3 May 1845, Bullock wrote that he had “finished July 1842 being the end of vol 3” (CHOj 1:38; see also 3:8), which corresponds to Book C-1, 1361 (cf. DHC 5:84; chap. 4). Several entries mention leaving blanks. On 15 Mar., for instance, Richards recorded that Bullock had reached page 1004 of Book C-1 and that he had left “blank all Large documents to be copied afterwards” (WRj 11:91). On 5 Apr. 1845, Richards recorded: “Bullock has written to Feb 1842.—leaving blanks for three pieces in the times & seasons” (WRj 11:112). This coincides with Book C-1, 1273 (cf. DHC 4:510; chap. 30).

11. Date determined by other fixed dates. Both WR and TB recorded that TB had reached Book C-1, 912, on 8 Mar. 1845 (WRj 11:84; CHOj 2:10). On 15 Mar. 1845, TB recorded: “at office all day writing History—(have written 56 pages the last 7 days) finished the year 1839” (CHOj 2:11). Thus, from 8-15 Mar. 1845, TB recorded Book C-1, 912-1004.

12. On this day, Bullock wrote: “Bro. Willmer Benson came about 10 and staid till near 4 practicing writing” (CHOj 3:9).

13. FDRj 4:31.



### Review by Apostolic Committee (July–September 1845)

Brigham Young was nearly always present when reviewing this portion of the History. He was accompanied by either Heber C. Kimball or George A. Smith, or both. They began reviewing the latter portions of Book B-1, pages 782–849, on 2 July 1845, and completed it on the 14th.<sup>14</sup> On the last day, Wilmer Benson recorded: “reading book No 2 to B Young[,] G A Smith & W Richards till 1 PM ... finished reading vol 2nd,”<sup>15</sup> and Bullock wrote: “reading to B. Young, G.A. Smith, & W Richards finished examining book 2.”<sup>16</sup>

On 29 July, the committee began reviewing Book C-1,<sup>17</sup> and on 2 September 1845 reached the excerpt of Parley P. Pratt’s account of his escape from the Columbia, Missouri, prison in July 1839 on pages 961–63.<sup>18</sup>

During this time, Thomas Bullock and Franklin D. Richards were making corrections to Book C-1. On 4 September 1845, for example, Bullock recorded: “F. D. Richards assisting T.B. in correcting Book C,” and Richards wrote: “I assisted TB to make the corrections decided upon yesterday.”<sup>19</sup> On 19 September, Richards noted: “I rectified some errors in Book C.”<sup>20</sup>

### Books B-1 and C-1 Addenda (August 1845–January 1846)

The work of the revision committee resulted in the addition of several addenda to Book B-1 (i.e., Notes U–Z), added by Wilmer Benson probably in August 1845.<sup>21</sup> Then, in September, Thomas Bullock and Franklin D. Richards added sixteen dated addenda to Book C-1 (Addenda, 1–16), six of which pertain to this volume. Another addendum was added by Bullock shortly after 28 November 1845.<sup>22</sup>

### Manuscript History, Book B-2, 704–76, and Book C-2, 1–114 (August–September 1845)

Wilmer Benson, who began copying Book B-1 into B-2 on 16 May 1845, reached the beginning of the year 1838, or page 704, on 6 August 1845, and finished the remaining seventy-two pages of this volume on 22 August (cf. DHC 3:1–195; chaps. 1–13).<sup>23</sup> On 2 August 1845, Franklin D. Richards

---

14. See vol. 7, IV.4, Apostolic Review of Book B-1, which seems to record the committee’s progress as follows: 2 July, pp. 782–99; [2/4?] July, pp. 800–22; 4 July, pp. 823–31; 14 July, 823–49.

15. CHOj 5:5.

16. CHOj 3:19.

17. On 29 July 1845, WR wrote: “2 P.M. B. Young. H C Kimball[,] Geo. A. Smith read history commenced Letter C” (WRj 11:227). For reviewers’ notes for 29 July 1845 of Book C-1, 850–61, by GAS, BY, and HCK, see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1.

18. On 2 Sept. 1845, FDR wrote: “Prest Young and his clerk E. M. Green, came in and I commenced reading History Book C. read till 11½ oclock” (CHOj 6:12). For the revisers’ notes for 2 Sept. 1845, see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1.

19. CHOj 3:26; 6:13.

20. CHOj 6:19.

21. Notes U–X were probably added shortly before 6 Aug. 1845, when WB wrote: “In Mor[nin]g wrote in old Book B 2½ Pages addenda Y” (CHOj 5:8). Note Z was composed after 6 Aug. and before it was incorporated in Book B-2, 767, which was before 20 Aug. 1845 (CHOj 3:23).

22. This addendum for 25 Dec. 1838 (cf. DHC 3:241; chap. 16) was added by TB on p. 19 of the Addenda for Book C-1 shortly after 28 Nov. 1845, when the TB made a note to have it copied into C-1 (see vol. 7, IV.7).

23. On 22 Aug. 1845, TB wrote that “W Benson finished book 2 at noon” (CHOj 3:23).

began copying Book C-1 into C-2, and reached the material for early July 1839 on page 114 sometime in September 1845 (cf. DHC 3:195-402; chaps. 13-28).<sup>24</sup>

### **Thomas Bullock's Examination of Book C-1 (November-December 1845)**

On 28 November 1845, Thomas Bullock began "examining" Book C-1 with Franklin D. Richards, who was then copying Book C-2.<sup>25</sup> Bullock kept notes of corrections and problems he found as they worked through nearly the entire text between 28 November and 29 December.<sup>26</sup> According to these notes, they apparently reached the portion covering July 1839 on page 963 on 4 December.<sup>27</sup>

### **Thomas Bullock Examines Book B-2 (October-November 1845)**

On 15 July 1845, Thomas Bullock began "examining" Book B-2 and reached the year 1838 about the end of October 1845.<sup>28</sup> On 18 November, he recorded in his journal: "At office examining Book B to the end."<sup>29</sup> In the CHOj journal, he wrote: "T.B. & F.D. Richards examined Book B[.] finished it."<sup>30</sup>

### **Books B-1 and B-2, Note 1 (July 1854)**

On 21 July 1854 in Salt Lake City, a note was simultaneously added to Books B-1 and B-2 by Jonathan Grimshaw.<sup>31</sup> The note is based on Brigham Young's reminiscence about giving Joseph Smith financial advice about 16 January 1838. This note was added too late to be included in the *Deseret News*, which published this section of the History on 5 March 1853.

### **Thomas Bullock Inserts Joseph Smith Letter in Book C-1 (16 December 1854)**

On 16 December 1854, Bullock visited Presendia Huntington Buell and copied a letter Joseph

---

24. On 1 Sept. 1845, FDR recorded: "I copied Book C passed the 100 page about noon" (CHOj 6:12). The next fixed date is 13 Oct. 1845, when CHOj records both FDR and WB copying in C-2. On this day, TB wrote: "F.D. Richards copying 2 or 3 pages in book C" (CHOj 3:27), and WB recorded: "writing in Books A and C a little then examining Book B with T.B." (CHOj 7:5). Since WB's hand begins on page 157, it follows that FDR wrote pages 101-56 between 2 Sept.-13 Oct. 1845. It is therefore likely that FDR reached page 114 sometime in Sept.

25. On 28 Nov. 1845, TB wrote in his journal: "I examined history in book C with F.D. Richards" (TBj, 8); on the same day, he wrote in his notes: "Novr. 28 ep [evening prayer] 1 commenced page 850" in Book C-1 (see vol. 7, IV.7).

26. TB's notes conclude with 6 Dec. 1845: "[Decr.] 6 left off 1104 23 [line]" (see vol. 7, IV.7). On 29 Dec. 1845, TB wrote: "F.D. Richards & myself comparing book C to page 1123 finished about ep [evening prayer] 2" (CHOj 3:36). It is likely that comparing of C-1 and C-2 was keeping pace with copying, but there is apparently no record of TB's examining C-1 for the remaining pages (1124-1361), some of which were copied in Nauvoo (1124-66) and some in Salt Lake City (1166-1361).

27. On 4 Dec. 1845, TB recorded in his notes: "Thursday 4th left off 972 35 line Decr. 4 — left off 1034 — 3 line" (see vol. 7, IV.7).

28. On 15 Oct. 1845, Bullock recorded in his journal: "Examined book B. to 695¾" (TBj, 4; *BYU Studies* 31:26).

29. TBj, 8 (*BYU Studies* 31:33).

30. CHOj 3:31.

31. An entry in CHOj for 21 July 1854 probably pertains to these addenda: "J.G. engaged in old record books & writing Addenda" (CHOj 17:107).

Smith sent to her from Liberty Jail, dated 15 March 1839.<sup>32</sup> Bullock's copy was inserted in Book C-1, between pages 897 and 898 in Book C-1, and attached with red sealing wax. This was too late to be included in the *Deseret News*, which had published this portion of Joseph Smith's History on 19 January 1854. It was nevertheless included in DHC 3:285-86 (chap. 26).

### Sources

In compiling this portion of Joseph Smith's History, the editors drew from Smith's journals (JSj [1838]; JSj [1838-39]; JSj [1839]), correspondence (JSLB, JSLR, and JSLs), and various items from his papers (JScSup). They also used official church records such as the Far West Record (FWR), the Teacher's Quorum Minutes (TQM), and General Church Minutes (GCM), and quoted from church periodicals such as *The Evening and The Morning Star* (E&MS and E&MS-R), *Messenger and Advocate* (M&A), *Millennial Star* (MSt and MiEng), and *Elders' Journal* (EJ). Versions of Joseph Smith's sermons were also supplied from "Willard Richards Pocket Companion, written in England" (WRPC).

For the journey of the Kirtland Camp, the editors incorporated large sections of Samuel D. Tyler's daily account (SDTj), with a small part from Elias Smith's history (ESj). B. H. Roberts deleted passages based on Tyler's journal, which appeared almost daily in the History's narrative between 5 July and 2 October 1838, and substituted Elias Smith's account in two chapters (9-10). This work restores the deleted passages and retains the two added chapters.

For the section of the History dealing with the Mormon conflict in Missouri, the editors drew on various published sources, such as Parley P. Pratt's 1839 *History of the Late Persecution Inflicted by the State of Missouri upon the Mormons* (HiLP and LP), John P. Greene's 1839 *Facts Relative to the Expulsion of the Mormons or Latter Day Saints, from the State of Missouri, under the "Exterminating Order"* (FREM), Sidney Rigdon's 1840 *An Appeal to the American People* (AAP), Missouri Fifth Circuit Court's 1841 publication of *Document Containing the Correspondence, Orders, &c. in Relation to the Disturbances with the Mormons; and the Evidence Given Before the Hon. Austin A. King, ... on the Trial of Joseph Smith, Jr., and Others, for High Treason and Other Crimes Against the State* (DCCO), and the affidavits of Hyrum Smith, Brigham Young, Parley P. Pratt, George W. Pitkin, Lyman Wight, and Sidney Rigdon, given before the Nauvoo Municipal Court, 1 July 1842, and published in the *Times and Seasons* (NMCDB, 60-150; T&S 4:246-76; cf. DHC 3:403-466), as well as various unpublished sources, such as Mormon redress petitions (MRP), Hyrum Smith's undated Bill of Damages (in UC), William P. Peniston's 10 August 1838 statement before Judge King (in UC), Albert Perry Rockwood's journal for 1838 (APRj), David H. Redfield 13 Jan. 1839 report (DHR), John D. Lee and Levi Stewart's 1845 statement about the election-day riot at Gallatin (JDL-LS), Amanda Smith Barnes's 18 April 1839 statement (ASB), Alanson Ripley's 1845 statement (AR), Anson Call's undated statement (AC), Theodore Turley's 1845 memorandum (TT), and various correspondence from W. W. Phelps's papers (WWPc).

For the account of the Mormon exodus to Illinois, the editors drew on Minutes of the Committee on Removal (MCR), as well as on Stephen Markham Interview, conducted on 1 March 1845, which has yet to be located (SM [1845]).

For their continued account of the apostolic mission to Britain, the editors relied heavily on "Mission to England, or the First Foreign Mission of the Latter-Day Saints," composed mostly by Willard Richards and published in the *Millennial Star* in April 1841 (MiEng). This was supplemented with entries from the journals of Heber C. Kimball (HCKj [1840]), and Willard Richards (WRj).

---

32. CHOj 17:252.

In addition to the above sources, there was also direct input by Willard Richards, Heber C. Kimball, George A. Smith, and Brigham Young.

### **Publication**

The portion of Joseph Smith's History covering January 1838 to July 1839 appeared in the *Deseret News* between 5 March 1853 and 11 May 1854. Willard Richards continued as editor of the *News* until his death on 11 March 1854, when Albert Carrington took over.

HISTORY OF  

---

---

JOSEPH SMITH *and*  
THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST  
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS  

---

---



1.

## JOSEPH SMITH MOVES TO MISSOURI

January–March 1838

[DN 3 (5 March 1853): 1]

<sup>1/2</sup>[January, 1838.]<sup>3</sup> A new year dawned upon the Church in Kirtland in all the bitterness of the spirit of Apostate Mobocracy; which continued to rage and grow hotter and hotter, until Elder Rigdon and myself were obliged to flee from its deadly influence, as did the Apostles and Prophets of old, and as Jesus said, “when they persecute you in one City, flee to another,” and<sup>4</sup> on the evening of the 12th of January,<sup>5</sup> about 10 o’clock<sup>6</sup>, we left Kirtland, on horseback, to escape mob violence, which was about to burst upon us under the color of legal process to cover the<sup>7</sup> hellish designs, <sup>8</sup>and to<sup>9</sup> save themselves from the just judgment of the law.

We continued our travels during the night, and at 8 o’clock on<sup>10</sup> the morning of the 13th, arrived among the brethren in Norton Township, Medina County, Ohio, <sup>11</sup>a distance of 60 miles from Kirtland. Here<sup>12</sup> we tarried about 36 hours, when our families arrived, and on the 16th <sup>13</sup>pursued

---

1. *Source*: Undetermined for this and next paragraph. Composed by WR on 20 Feb. 1844 (see MSHi Chronology), possibly with JS’s help.

2. Handwriting of WR continues in Book B-1, 780, to p. 812 (chap. 6); WB’s handwriting continues in Book B-2, 704, to p. 709 (this chapter).

3. Brackets in *DN*. DHC 3:1: omits brackets; Book B-1, 780, Book B-2, 704: month and day in margin

4. DHC 3:1: omits “and” and starts new sentence

5. Date of JS’s departure from Kirtland probably derived from JS, Far West, MO, to Presidency in Kirtland, OH, 29 Mar. 1838, copied by GWR into JSj [1838], 23 (*PJS* 2:221; *JSP* 1:245; *APR*, 166–67; DHC 3:10), which mentions his arrival in Far West “after a long & tedious journey of two months & one day,” and his arrival near Far West on 13 Mar. and entrance into the city the following day (JSj [1838], 16 [GWR]; *PJS* 2:212–13; *JSP* 1:237; *APR*, 160). Also, an uncanonized revelation directing JS to leave Kirtland “as soon as it is practicable” is dated 12 Jan. 1838 (JSj [1838], 53 [*PJS* 2:255; *JSP* 1:283; *APR*, 192–93]). Before leaving Kirtland, JS received three revelations on 12 Jan. 1838 (JSj [1838], 151–53; *JSP* 1:281–84), which the History later says were received “the day I left Kirtland” (see DHC 3:44; chap. 5).

6. Book B-1, 780: “<about 10 o’clock>” (WR)

7. Book B-1, 780: replaces “the” with “these”

8. DHC 3:1: adds “of our enemies”

9. Book B-1, 780, Book B-2, 704: omit “to”

10. Book B-1, 780: “on” overwrites “of”; incorporated in Book B-2, 704.

11. Book B-1, 780: adds “~~having~~”

12. Book B-1, 780, Book B-2, 704: continue preceding sentence by replacing “Here” with “where”

13. DHC 3:2: adds “we”

our journey with our families, in covered wagons toward the City of Far West, in Missouri; passing<sup>14</sup> through Dayton and<sup>15</sup> Eaton, &c.<sup>16</sup>, to<sup>17</sup> Dublin, Indiana, where<sup>18</sup> we tarried nine days, and refreshed ourselves.

<sup>19</sup>About January 16, 1838, being destitute of money to pursue my journey, I said to Brother Brigham Young: “You are one of the Twelve who have charge of the kingdom in all the world; I believe I shall throw myself upon you, and look to you for counsel in this case.” Brother Young<sup>20</sup> thought I was not earnest, but I told him I was. Brother Brigham then said, “If you will take my counsel it will be that you rest yourself, and be assured you shall have money in<sup>21</sup> plenty to pursue your journey.”

There was a brother living in the place who had tried for some time to sell his farm but could not; he asked counsel of Brother Young concerning his property; Brother Young told him that if he would do right, and obey counsel, he should have an opportunity to sell. In about three days Brother <sup>22</sup>Tomlinson came to Brother Brigham and said he had an offer for his place; Brother Brigham told him that this<sup>23</sup> was the manifestation of<sup>24</sup> the hand of the Lord <sup>25</sup>to deliver Brother Joseph Smith from his present necessities<sup>26</sup>. Brother Brigham’s promise was soon verified, and I got three hundred dollars from Brother Tomlinson, which enabled me to pursue my journey.

<sup>27</sup>The weather was extremely cold <sup>28</sup>we were obliged to secrete ourselves in our wagons, sometimes<sup>29</sup>, to elude the grasp of our pursuers who continued their race<sup>30</sup> more than 200 miles<sup>31</sup> from Kirtland, armed with pistols &c.<sup>32</sup>, seeking our lives. They frequently crossed our track, twice they were in the houses where<sup>33</sup> we stopped, once we tarried all night in the same house with them, with only a partition between us and them; and heard their oaths, and imprecations, and threats concerning us, if they could catch us; and late in the evening they came in <sup>34</sup>our room and examined us, but decided

---

14. DHC 3:2: replaces “passing” with “We passed”

15. Book B-1, 780, Book B-2, 704: omit “and”

16. DHC 3:2: omits “&c.” and adds “in Ohio”

17. DHC 3:2: replaces “to” with “and”

18. DHC 3:2: replaces “where” with “in the latter place”

19. Following two paragraphs did not appear in DN. Book B-1, 780: adds “<See addenda. 10 pa[ge]>” (TB), with marginal note: “Addenda No 1 page 10” (RLC). Book B-2, 704: adds “<(See Addenda Note 1 page 800.)>” (RLC). Both addenda added by JG probably on 21 July 1854 (see MSHi Chronology). Text from DHC 3:2. *Source*: Probably added under BY’s direction after Mar. 1853 (cf. MSHiBY [1968], 24; DN [17 Feb. 1858]: 393).

20. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: replace “Young” with “Brigham”

21. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: omit “in”

22. Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: adds “<James>”

23. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: omit “this”

24. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: omit “the manifestation of”

25. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: add “for”

26. Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note 1, Book B-2, Addenda, 800, Note 1: “necessity”

27. *Source*: Undetermined for this and next paragraph. Composed by WR on 20 Feb. 1844 (see MSHi Chronology), possibly with JS’s help.

28. Book B-1, 780: adds “&.”; Book B-2, 704: adds “and”

29. Book B-1, 780: “some” overwrites “many”

30. DHC 3:3: replaces “race” with “pursuit of us”

31. Book B-1, 780: “<miles>” (WR)

32. DHC 3:3: replaces “&c.” with “and guns”

33. Book B-2, 704: “were”

34. DHC 3:3: adds “to”



we were not the men. At other times we passed them in the streets, and gazed upon them, and they on us, but they knew us not, one Lyons was one of our pursuers.

I parted with Brother Rigdon at Dublin, and traveling different routes we met at Terre Haute, where, after resting, we separated again, and I pursued my journey, crossing the Mississippi River at Quincy, Illinois.

<sup>35</sup>*Minutes of the proceedings of the Committee of the whole Church in Zion, in General Assembly, at the following places, to wit; At Far West, Feb. 5th, 1838,* <sup>36</sup>***Carter's Settlement on the 6th; Durphy's Settlement on the 7th; Curtis' Dwelling-house on the 8th; and Haun's Mills on the 9th.*** Thomas B. Marsh, Moderator, John Cleminson, Clerk.

After Prayer the Moderator stated the object of the meeting, giving a relation of the recent organization of the Church here, and in Kirtland.<sup>37</sup> He also read a certain Revelation given in Kirtland, September 3d,<sup>38</sup> 1837, which made known that John Whitmer, and W.<sup>39</sup> W. Phelps, were in transgression, and if they repented not, they should be removed out of their places. Also read a certain clause contained in the appeal published in the old *Star*, on<sup>40</sup> the 183 Page as follows:

“And to sell our lands would amount to a denial of our faith, as that is the place where the Zion of God shall stand, according to our faith and belief in the revelations of God.”

Elder John Murdock then took the stand and showed to the Congregation, why the High Council proceeded thus, was, that the Church might have a voice in the matter; and that he considered it perfectly legal, according to the instructions of President Joseph Smith, Junior.

Elder G[eorge]. M. Hinkle then set forth the way in which the Presidency of Far West, had been labored with, that a committee of three, of whom he was one, had labored with them. He then read a written document containing a number of accusations against the three Presidents. He spoke many things against them, setting forth in a plain and energetic manner the iniquity of <sup>41</sup>Phelps and Whitmer in using the monies which were loaned to the Church. Also David Whitmer's wrong in persisting in the use of Tea, Coffee, and Tobacco.

Bishop Partridge then arose and endeavored to rectify some mistakes of minor importance, made by Elder Hinkle; also the Bishop spoke against the proceedings of the meeting as being hasty and illegal, for he thought they ought to be had before the Common Council, and said that he could not lift his hand against the Presidency at present; he then read a letter from President Joseph Smith, Junior.

A letter was then read by T[homas]. B. Marsh, from William Smith<sup>42</sup>, who made some comments on the same, and also on the letter read by Bishop<sup>43</sup> Partridge.

Elder George Morey who was one of the committee sent to labor with the Presidency, spoke, setting forth in a very energetic manner, the proceedings of the Presidency, as being iniquitous.

---

35. Source: Closely follows *EJ* 1 (July 1838): 44-45. Unless indicated otherwise, deleted material supplied here in bold type from *EJ*. Cf. FWR, 96-100 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 137-41). The printed version is basically the same, except the last two paragraphs are reversed and slightly modified.

36. Bolded text appears only in DHC 3:3.

37. Heading and first sentence is a rewrite based on *EJ* 1:44.

38. *EJ* 1:44: replaces “3d” with “4”

39. *EJ* 1:44, Book B-1, 781: “William”

40. *EJ* 1:44, Book B-1, 781: replace “on” with “under”; Book B-2, 705 (darker ink): “{\on/}”

41. DHC 3:4: adds “Elders”

42. DHC 3:4: moves “from William Smith” to follow “A letter”

43. *EJ* 1:44: replaces “Bishop” with “E[dward].”

Elder [Thomas] Grover, also, being one of the committee, spoke against the conduct of the Presidency and <sup>44</sup>Oliver Cowdery, on their visit to labor with them.

Elder D[avid]. W. Patten, then<sup>45</sup> spoke with much zeal against the<sup>46</sup> Presidency, and in favor of Joseph Smith, Junior, and that the wolf<sup>47</sup> alluded to, in his letter, were the dissenters in Kirtland.

Elder Lyman Wight stated that he considered all other accusations of minor importance compared to their<sup>48</sup> selling their lands in Jackson County; that they (Phelps and Whitmer,)<sup>49</sup> had set an example which all the Saints<sup>50</sup> were liable to follow: he said that it was a hellish principle<sup>51</sup>, and that they had flatly denied the faith in so doing.<sup>52</sup>

Elder Elias Higbee sanctioned what had been done by the Council, speaking against the Presidency.

Elder Murdock stated that sufficient had been said to substantiate the accusations against them.

Elder Solomon Hancock plead<sup>53</sup> in favor of the Presidency, stating that he could not raise his hand against them.

Elder John Corriell then spoke<sup>54</sup> against the proceedings of the High Council, and labored hard to show that the <sup>55</sup>meeting was illegal, and that the Presidency ought to be had before a proper tribunal, which he considered to be a Bishop and twelve High Priests. He labored in favor of the Presidency, and said that he should not raise his hands against them at present, although he did not uphold the Presidents in their iniquity.

Simeon Carter spoke against the meeting as being hasty.

Elder Grover<sup>56</sup> followed Brother Carter in like observations **and of like nature**.

Elder Patten again took the stand in vindication of the cause of the meeting.

Elder Morley spoke against the Presidency, at the same time pleading mercy.

Titus Billings said he could not vote until they had a hearing in the Common Council.

Elder Marsh said that the meeting was according to the direction of Brother Joseph, he therefore considered it legal.

Elder Moses Martin spoke in favor of the legality of the meeting, and <sup>57</sup>against the conduct of the Presidency **of Zion**, with great energy, alleging that the present corruptions of the Church here, were owing to the wickedness and mismanagement of her leaders.

The Moderator then called the vote in favor of the present<sup>58</sup> Presidency; the negative was then<sup>59</sup> called, and the vote against David Whitmer, John Whitmer, and William W. Phelps,

---

44. DHC 3:4: adds "of"

45. DHC 3:4: omits "then"

46. Book B-1, 781: "this"

47. DHC 3:4: "wolves"

48. DHC 3:4: replaces "their" with "Brothers Phelps and Whitmer"

49. DHC 3:4: omits "(Phelps and Whitmer,)"

50. *EJ* 1:44: replaces "Saints" with "members"

51. DHC 3:4: adds "on which they had acted"

52. WWP evidently disputed Wight's accusation and requested that GAS and WW print a correction, to which they declined (see transcription of GAS and WW to WWP, 2 Sept. 1858, in vol. 8, VII.4).

53. DHC 3:4: "pleaded"

54. DHC 3:4: "spoke"

55. Book B-1, 781: adds "~~proceedings of the~~"

56. *EJ* 1:44, Book B-1, 782: "Groves"; Book B-2, 705 (darker ink): "Grove{\r/}"; DHC 3:5: "Groves"

57. Book B-2, 706: adds ellipses over erasure

58. DHC 3:5: replaces "present" with "Missouri"

59. Book B-2, 706: "the\n/"

was unanimous, excepting 8 or 10, and this minority only wished them to continue in office a little longer, or until Joseph Smith, Junior, came up<sup>60</sup>.

**THOMAS B. MARSH, Moderator,**  
**JOHN CLEMINSON, Clerk.**<sup>61</sup>

In S[imeon]. Carter's settlement the Saints assembled **agreeable to appointment** on the 6th instant, when they unanimously rejected the three above-named Presidents. On the 7th the Saints assembled at Edmond Durphy's, agreeable to appointment, where the above-named Presidents were unanimously rejected; also on the 8th at Nahum<sup>62</sup> Curtis's dwelling-house, they were unanimously rejected by the Assembly; also at Haun's Mills on the 9th, the Saints unanimously rejected them.

At a meeting of the High Council the Bishop and his Council, February 10th, 1838, it was moved, seconded, and carried, that Oliver Cowdery, William W. Phelps, and John Whitmer, stand no longer as Chairman and Clerks to sign and record licenses.

<sup>63</sup>Voted that Thomas B. Marsh, and David W. Patten, be authorized to attend to such business<sup>64</sup> for the time being.

Also voted that Thomas B. Marsh and David W. Patten, be Presidents, pro tempore; of the Church of Latter-day Saints in Missouri, until Presidents Joseph Smith, Junior, and Sidney Rigdon, arrive in the land of Zion.

J. MURDOCK, Moderator,  
T. B. MARSH, Clerk.

[...]<sup>65</sup>

<sup>66</sup>The High Council of Zion met in Far West, on Saturday, March 10th, 1838, agreeable to adjournment.

**The council was organized in the following order viz: Tho[ma]s B. Marsh and David W. Patten, Presidents. [Counselors:] 1. Simeon Carter, 2 Jared Carter, 3 Isaac Higbee, 4 Tho[ma]s Grover, 5 Levi Jackman, 6 Samuel Bent, 7 George Morey, 8 Newel Knight, 9 G. M. Hinkle, 10 George W. Harris, 11 Elias Higbee, 12 John Murdock.**

**Opened by singing and prayer by Elder Grover after which President Marsh read a clause in the Book of Covenants respecting the duties of Elders in holding Conferences, and made a few remarks upon the same.**

**Instructions were then given to the Council from Pres[iden]t[s] Patten and Marsh;**<sup>67</sup> when after discussion it was Resolved,

**<sup>68</sup>1st Resolved—That the H[igh] Council recommend to the branches, of this Church, that they receive no members of this Church, who may come among them, unless they bring a certificate of their standing. An appeal case was presented, pending**

60. DHC 3:5: replaces "came up" with "arrived"

61. Bolded names only in DHC 3:5.

62. Book B-1, 782, Book B-2, 706: "Nahom"

63. This and next paragraph reversed in FWR, 99-100.

64. FWR, 100: "to the afforsaid buisness of Recording and signing licence[s]"

65. Book B-1, 782: adds penciled marginal note: "See statement of Z[era] Pulsipher on file" (TB). *Source*: ZP, which gives an account of the departure of the Mormons from Kirtland in Feb. 1838 (transcription in vol. 8, III.1).

66. *Source*: Closely follows EJ 1 (July 1838): 46. Cf. FWR, 104-8 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 145-49). EJ and FWR are basically the same except the printed version silently omits some material, which is supplied here in bold type.

67. EJ 1:46 abbreviates this to "the Council being organized, was opened by singing, and prayer by Elder Grover."

68. The deletion of this resolution resulted in the renumbering of the two resolutions that follow.

**between John Lemons and Solomon Wixom, which was put over until the last Saturday in April next.**

1st: That the High Council recommend by writing to the various Branches of this Church, that all those who wish to receive ordination, procure a recommend from the Branch<sup>69</sup> to which he belongs<sup>70</sup>, and have it<sup>71</sup> pass through the hands of the different Quorums for inspection, previous to his<sup>72</sup> ordination.<sup>73</sup>

2d. Resolved that the High Council recommend to all those who hold licenses, between the ages of 18 and 45, and do not officiate in their respective offices, to<sup>74</sup> be subject to Military duty.

A charge was then preferred against William W. Phelps and John Whitmer, for persisting in unchristian-like conduct.

Six Councilors were appointed to speak, viz.: Simeon Carter, Isaac Higbee and Levi Jackman, on the part of the accuser<sup>75</sup>, and<sup>76</sup> Jared Carter, Thomas Grover<sup>77</sup>, and Samuel Bent, on the part of the accused<sup>78</sup>; when the following letter was read by Brother Marcellus [F.]<sup>79</sup> Cowdery, bearer of the same, belonging to Thomas B. Marsh<sup>80</sup>, previous to giving it to its rightful owner<sup>81</sup>:

<sup>82</sup>FAR WEST, March 10th, 1838.

Sir:—It is contrary to the principles of the Revelations of Jesus Christ, and his Gospel, and the Laws of the Land, to try a person for an offense, by an illegal tribunal, or by men prejudiced against him, or by authority that has<sup>83</sup> given an opinion, or decision beforehand, or in his absence.

Very respectfully we have the honor to be,

David Whitmer,

W[illiam]. W. Phelps,

John Whitmer,

Presidents of the Church of Christ in Missouri.

To T[homas].<sup>84</sup> B. Marsh, one of the <sup>85</sup>traveling Councilors.

Attested,

Oliver Cowdery,

Clerk of the High Council

of the Church of Christ in Missouri.

I certify the foregoing to be a true copy from the original.

OLIVER COWDERY,

Clerk of the High Council.

---

69. DHC 3:6: “branches”

70. DHC 3:6: replaces “he belongs” with “they belong”

71. DHC 3:6: replaces “it” with “such recommends”

72. DHC 3:6: replaces “his” with “the applicants”

73. Book B-2, 706 (darker ink): “{ \his ordination/ }” (prob. TB)

74. *Ej* 1:46, DHC 3:6: omit “to”

75. FWR, 105: replaces “accuser” with “plaintiff”

76. *Ej* 1:46, Book B-1, 782: omit “and”

77. Book B-2, 706: “Grove\r/”; second “r” *u.o.* “s”

78. FWR, 105: replaces “accused” with “defendant”

79. Book B-1, 782 (pencil): “Marcellus \F/” (US)

80. DHC 3:6-7: moves “belonging to Thomas B. Marsh” to follow “of the same”

81. Book B-1, 782 (different ink): at *coln* “\owner/” (WR)

82. Quotation marks in *Ej* and FWR.

83. Book B-2, 706: “\h/as”

84. Book B-2, 706 (darker ink): “<T>”

85. DHC 3:7: adds “[Twelve]”

All the effect the above letter had upon the Council, was, to convince them <sup>86</sup>more of the wickedness of those men, by endeavoring to palm themselves <sup>87</sup>upon the Church, as her Presidents, after the Church had by a united voice, removed them from their presidential office, for their ungodly conduct; and the letter was considered no more, nor less, than a direct insult, or contempt cast upon the Authorities of God, and the Church of Jesus Christ; therefore the Council proceeded to business.

**Witnesses:**

**Albert Perry testifies that he loaned some money to W. W. Phelps and J[ohn]. Whitmer, telling them, he would want it to enter some land with, after a short time.**

**After some time he went to J. Whitmer and told him he wanted to enter a piece of land on which there was some timber; to which he replied that he could enter the land, but the benefit of the timber was all he could have, as it was on the commons; but shortly after this entered the land himself.**

**Br. [James] Newberry testifies that he talked with J. Whitmer respecting the word of wisdom; to which he replied that a man could drink liquor once in a while, but not make a free use of it &c.**

**Bro. [Lyman] Leonard testifies that he was in company with W. W. Phelps, on his way to Lexington, last fall, when he (W. W. Phelps) remarked that if he (Leonard) wanted to be a man of God in full he must by land of him.**

**Edward Partridge testifies that he spake to those brethren to come in and settle-to which they complied the second invitation, when Br. Phelps said the Bishop should not complain of his not living to his covenant, therefore, endorsed on the mortgage, fifty dollars for his lot: but John Whitmer thought the lots which had been appropriated for the benefit of certain individuals ought to be granted &c. also, that if the house of the Lord was not built, the \$2,000 which they had subscribed ought to come to them and they seemed to claim it on the ground that others withdrew their subscriptions. The above sums are the avails of the profits of the Town Plot.**

**The Bishop further testifies that he understood that the land which was purchased with the Fry money was to be transferred into his hands instead of land purchased with money obtained in the South for "Poor Bleeding Zion" with this reserve that they have pay for their services &c. and that 2,000 dollars be applied to the purpose of building a house to the Lord out of the avails of this land.**

**They required the Bishop to pay them for their labors in the Church more than six hundred dollars also, to pay the purchase money.**

**W[illard]. Snow testifies that he was at a Council in which the Town Plot was spoken of and concluded to go into the hands of the Bishop, when W. W. Phelps and J. Whitmer said they had subscribed \$2,000 for the building a house to the Lord and they had depended upon the profits of the Plot to pay the amount mentioned when one of the Counselors said it was as easy for the Church to pay it out of the profits as for them.**

A number of charges were sustained against these men, the principal of which was for<sup>88</sup> claiming \$2,000 Church funds, which they had subscribed for building an<sup>89</sup> house to the Lord in this place, when they held in their possession the City Plot<sup>90</sup>, and were sitting in the Presidential Chair; which subscription they were intending to pay from the avails of the town lots: but when

---

86. Book B-1, 783: "\still/ [w.o. "more"] and"; EJ 1:46, Book B-2, 706, DHC 3:7: add "still"

87. DHC 3:7: adds "off"

88. DHC 3:7: omits "for"

89. DHC 3:7: "a"

90. DHC 3:7: "plat"

the Town Plot<sup>91</sup> was transferred into the hands of the Bishop for the benefit of the Church, it was agreed that the Church should take this subscription off the hands of W.W. Phelps, and John Whitmer, but in the transaction of the business, they bound the Bishop in a heavy Mortgage, to pay them the above \$2,000, in two years from the date thereof, a part of which they had<sup>92</sup> already received, and claim<sup>93</sup> the remainder.

The six Councilors made a few appropriate remarks,<sup>94</sup> none of whom<sup>95</sup> felt to plead for mercy, as it had not been asked on the part of the accused,<sup>96</sup> all with one consent declared that Justice ought to have her<sup>97</sup> demands.

After some remarks by Presidents Marsh and Patten, setting forth the iniquity of those<sup>98</sup> men in claiming the \$2,000 spoken of, which did not belong to them,<sup>99</sup> any more than<sup>100</sup> any other person in the Church. It was decided that William W. Phelps, and John Whitmer, be no longer members of the Church of Christ of Latter-day Saints, and be given over to the buffetings of Satan, until they learn to blaspheme no more against the Authorities of God, nor fleece the flock of Christ.

The Council was<sup>101</sup> then asked, if they concurred with the decision; if so, to manifest it by rising, when<sup>102</sup> they all arose.

The vote was then put to the Congregation, which was carried unanimously.

The negative was called, but no one voted.

Brother<sup>103</sup> Marcellus [F.] Cowdery arose and said he wished to have it understood that he did not vote either way, because he did not consider it a legal tribunal: He also offered insult to the High Council, and to the Church, by reading a letter belonging to Thomas B. Marsh, before giving it to him; and in speaking against the Authorities of the Church.

A motion was then made by President Patten, that fellowship be withdrawn from Marcellus [F.]<sup>104</sup> Cowdery, until he make satisfaction; which was seconded and carried unanimously.

Thomas B. Marsh, and<sup>105</sup>  
David W. Patten,  
Presidents.  
Ebenezer Robinson,  
Clerk of High Council.

<sup>106</sup>When I had arrived within 120 miles of Far West, the brethren met me with teams and money

---

91. DHC 3:7: "plat"

92. *EJ* 1:46, Book B-1, 783: "have"

93. DHC 3:7: "claimed"

94. DHC 3:7: adds "but"

95. DHC 3:7: omits "of whom"

96. *EJ* 1:46, Book B-1, 783, Book B-2, 707: add "but"; DHC 3:8: adds "and"

97. Book B-1, 783, Book B-2, 707: replace "her" with "his"

98. Book B-2, 707: "th\ e/se"; first "e" *w.o.* "o"

99. Book B-2, 707: adds ellipses over erasure

100. DHC 3:8: adds "to"

101. *EJ* 1:46, Book B-1, 783: "were"

102. DHC 3:8: omits "when"

103. *EJ* 1:46, FWR, 107: replace "Brother" with "Mr."

104. Book B-1, 783 (pencil): "\F/" (US)

105. *EJ* 1:46, FWR, 108, Book B-1, 783, Book B-2, 707, DHC 3:8: omit "and"

106. *Source*: Except for first sentence, following three paragraphs closely follow JSj [1838], 16 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:212-13; *JSP* 1:237; *APR*, 160). First sentence based on JS, Far West, MO, to Presidency in Kirtland, OH, 29 Mar.

to help me forward, and when 8<sup>107</sup> miles from the City, we were met by an escort, viz.: Thomas B. Marsh, and others who received us with open arms; and on the 13th of March, I with my family and some others <sup>108</sup>put up at Brother [John]<sup>109</sup> Barnard's for the night. Here we were met by an<sup>110</sup> escort of the Brethren from the Town, who came to make us welcome to their little Zion.

On the 14th [of March] as we were about entering Far West, many of the brethren came out to meet us, who also with open arms welcomed us to their bosoms. We were immediately received under the hospitable roof of Brother George W. Harris, who treated us with all possible kindness, and we refreshed ourselves with much satisfaction, after our long and tedious Journey, the brethren<sup>111</sup> bringing in such things as we had need of for our comfort and convenience<sup>112</sup>.

After being here two or three days, my Brother Samuel arrived with his family.

<sup>113</sup>Shortly after his arrival, while walking with him, and certain other brethren, the following sentiments occurred to my mind, <sup>114</sup>MOTTO of the CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST<sup>115</sup> OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS.

The Constitution of our Country formed by the Fathers of Liberty. Peace and good order in Society. Love to God, and good will to man. All good and wholesome laws; <sup>116</sup>virtue and truth above all things, and aristarchy<sup>117</sup>; live for ever!!! But woe to tyrants, mobs, aristocracy, anarchy, and toryism; and all those who invent or seek out unrighteous and vexatious law suits, under the pretext and<sup>118</sup> color of law, or office, either religious or political. Exalt the standard of<sup>119</sup> Democracy! Down with that of Priestcraft, and let all the People say Amen! That the blood of our Fathers may not cry from the ground against us. Sacred is the memory of that blood which bought for us our Liberty.

**Signed**<sup>120</sup>

Joseph Smith, Junior,  
Thomas B. Marsh,  
David W. Patten,  
Brigham Young,  
Samuel H. Smith,  
George W.<sup>121</sup> Hinkle,  
John Corrill,  
George W. Robinson.

1838, copied by GWR into the same journal, pp. 23–24 (*PJS* 2:221; *JSP* 1:245; *APR*, 166–67; *DHC* 3:10). The party from Far West had been sent by a 24 Feb. 1838 order of the high council (*FWR*, 100; *FWR* [1983], 142).

107. Book B-1, 783: “8{0}”. Corrected by the apostolic committee in July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.4).

108. Book B-1, 784: adds “arrived within 8 miles of Far West and”; this is consistent with JSj [1838], 16.

109. Brackets this editor's.

110. *DHC* 3:8: replaces “an” with “another”

111. Book B-2, 707 (darker ink): “<brethren>” (prob. TB)

112. JSj [1838], 16: replaces “convenience” with “necessities”

113. *Source*: Following political mottos from JSj [1838], 16–17 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:213; *JSP* 1:237–38; *APR*, 160–61).

114. *DHC* 3:9: adds “The Political”

115. Book B-1, 784: “of <Jesus> Christ” (prob. WB); *DHC* 3:9: omits “OF JESUS CHRIST”

116. Book B-1, 784: adds “and”

117. Book B-1, 784: adds marginal note keyed to “Aristarchy” that reads: “<most> Perfect Government” (WR); Book B-2, 707: adds asterisk, but no note.

118. JSj [1838], 16, Book B-1, 784: replace “and” with “or”

119. Book B-2, 708 (darker ink): “<of>” (WB)

120. JSj [1838], 17: adds “Signed”

121. JSj [1838], 17, Book B-1, 784, Book B-2, 708, *DHC* 3:9: “M.”



<sup>122</sup>QUESTIONS ON SCRIPTURE.[D&C 113]<sup>123</sup>

Who is the Stem of Jesse spoken of in the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, and<sup>124</sup> 5th verses of the 11[th] chapter of Isaiah?<sup>125</sup>

Verily thus saith the Lord, it is Christ.

What is the rod spoken of in the first verse of the 11th chapter of Isaiah that should come of the Stem of Jesse?

Behold thus saith the Lord, it is a servant in the hands of<sup>126</sup> Christ, who is partly a descendant of Jesse as well as of Ephraim, or of the House of Joseph, on whom there is laid much power. What is the root of Jesse spoken of in the 10th verse of the 11th chapter?

Behold thus saith the Lord, it is a descendant of Jesse as well as of Joseph unto whom rightly belongs the Priesthood, and the keys of the Kingdom, for an ensign, and for the gathering of my people in the last days.

Questions by Elias Higbee<sup>127</sup>, as follows<sup>128</sup>:

What is meant by the command in Isaiah, 52d chapter, 1st verse, which saith, put on thy strength O Zion, and what people had Isaiah reference to?

He had reference to those whom God should call in the last days, who should hold the power of Priesthood to bring again Zion, and the redemption of Israel; and to put on her strength is to put on the Authority of the Priesthood, which she (Zion) has a right to by lineage; also to return to that power which she had lost.

What are we to understand by Zion's loosing herself from the bands of her neck, 2d verse?

We are to understand that the scattered remnants are exhorted to return to the Lord from whence they have fallen, which if they do, the promise of the Lord is that he will speak to them, or give them Revelation, see 6th, 7th, and 8th verses: The bands of her neck are the curses of God upon her, or the remnants of Israel in their scattered condition among the Gentiles.

## [DN 3 (19 March 1853): 1]

<sup>129</sup>Far West, March 29th, 1838.

<sup>130</sup>To the <sup>131</sup>Presidency of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints in Kirtland:

Dear and well beloved Brethren:—Through the grace and mercy of our God; after a long and tedious journey of two months and one day; I and my family arrived safe<sup>132</sup> in the City of Far West, having been met at Huntsville, 120 miles from this place, by<sup>133</sup> my<sup>134</sup> brethren with teams and money, to forward us on our journey. When within 8 miles of the City of Far West we were met by an escort of brethren from the City, viz: Thomas B. Marsh, John Corrill,

122. Source: JSj [1838], 17-18 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:213-14; *JSP* 1:239-40; *APR*, 161-62). DHC 3:9: adds "The Prophet's Answers to"

123. First canonized in D&C [1876].

124. Book B-1, 784: "<&>"

125. Book B-1, 784: adds "Christ"

126. Book B-2, 708 (darker ink): "<of>" (US)

127. JSj [1838], 18, Book B-1, 784: "Higby"; Book B-2, 708 (darker ink): "Higb{\ee/}"

128. JSj [1838], 18, DHC 3:10: omit "as follows"

129. Source: JSj [1838], 23-26 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:221-24; *JSP* 1:245-47; *APR*, 166-69; *PWJS*, 395-97).

130. DHC 3:10: omits this line

131. JSj [1838], 23: adds "first"

132. Book B-1, 785: omits "safe"

133. Book B-2, 708 (darker ink): "<by>" (US)

134. JSj [1838], 23, Book B-1, 785: omit "my"



Elias Higbee, and several others of the faithful of the West, who received us with open arms and warm hearts, and welcomed us to the bosom of their society. On our arrival in the City we were greeted on every hand, by the Saints, who bid us welcome <sup>135</sup>to the land of their inheritance.

Dear brethren, you may be assured that so friendly a meeting and reception paid us well for our long seven years of servitude, persecution, and affliction in the midst of our enemies, in the land of Kirtland: yea verily our hearts were full, and we feel grateful to Almighty God, for his kindness unto us. The particulars of our journey, brethren, cannot well be written; but we trust that the same God, who has protected us, will protect you also, and will sooner, or later, grant us the privilege of seeing each other, face to face, and of rehearsing all our sufferings.

We have heard of the destruction of the Printing Office, which we presume to believe must have been occasioned by the Parrish Party<sup>136</sup>, or more properly the Aristocrats or Anarchies<sup>137</sup>.

The Saints here have provided a room for us, and daily necessities, which are brought in from all parts of the country to make us comfortable; so that I have nothing to do but to attend to<sup>138</sup> my spiritual concerns or the spiritual affairs of the Church.

The difficulties of the Church had been adjusted before my arrival here, by a judicious High Council, with Thomas B. Marsh and David W. Patten, who acted as presidents “pro tempore” of the church of Zion being appointed by the voice of the Council and Church, William W. Phelps and John Whitmer having been cut off from the church, David Whitmer remaining, as yet. The Saints at this time are in union; and peace, and love prevails throughout; in a word heaven smiles upon the Saints in Caldwell. Various and many have been the falsehoods written from thence<sup>139</sup> to this place, but <sup>140</sup>have availed nothing. We have no uneasiness about the power of our enemies in this place to do us harm.

Brother Samuel H. Smith and family arrived here soon after we did, in good health. Brothers Brigham Young, Daniel S. Miles, and Levi Richards arrived here when we did, they were with us on the last part of our journey which ended much to our satisfaction. They also are well. They have provided places for their families, and are now about to break the ground for seed.

Having been under the hands of <sup>141</sup>wicked and vexatious law suits for seven years past, my business <sup>142</sup>was so deranged<sup>143</sup> that I was not able to leave it in so good a situation as I had anticipated, but if there are any wrongs they shall all be noticed, so far as the Lord gives me ability and power to do so.

Say to all the brethren that I have not forgotten them, but remember them in my prayers. Say to mother [Sarah]<sup>144</sup> Beaman, that I remember her, also Brother Daniel Carter, bro. [Ezra] Strong and family, bro. [Oliver] Granger and family, finally I cannot enumerate them all for want of room; I will just name brother [Vinson] Knight, the Bishop &c., my best respects to them all, and I commend them and the church of God in Kirtland to our heavenly Father, and the word of his grace, which is able to make you wise unto salvation.

I would just say to brother Marks that I saw in a vision while on the road, that whereas he was closely pursued by an innumerable concourse of enemies, and as they pressed upon him

---

135. Book B-1, 785: “welcome, ~~welcome~~”

136. JSj [1838], 24: “Parrishites”; Book B-1, 785: “Parrishity <party>” (prob. TB)

137. DHC 3:11: “anarchists”

138. Book B-2, 709 (darker ink): “\to/”

139. DHC 3:11: replaces “thence” with “Kirtland”

140. DHC 3:11: adds “[they]”

141. DHC 3:11: adds “[men who urged against me]”

142. DHC 3:11: adds “[in Kirtland]”

143. JSj [1838], 25: replaces “deranged” with “dangerous”

144. This and following three brackets this editor’s.

hard, as if they were about to devour him, and<sup>145</sup> had seemingly obtained some degree of advantage over him, but about this time a chariot of fire came, and near the place, even<sup>146</sup> the Angel of the Lord put forth his hand unto bro. Marks and said unto him, “thou art my son come here,” and immediately he was caught up in the chariot, and rode away triumphantly out of their midst. And again the Lord said [“I will raise thee up for a blessing unto many people.”] Now the particulars of this whole matter cannot be written at this time, but the vision was evidently given to me that I might know that the hand of the Lord would be on his behalf.

**J[oseph]. Smith Jun.**<sup>147</sup>

I transmit to you the *motto* of the *Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints*<sup>148</sup>.

/<sup>149</sup>We left President Rigdon 30 miles this side of Paris, Illinois, in consequence of the sickness of bro. Geo[rge]. W. Robinson’s wife.

On yesterday bro. Robinson arrived here, who informed us that his father-in-law (S[idney]. Rigdon) was at Huntsville, detained on account of the ill health of his wife. They will probably be here soon.

Choice seeds of all kinds of fruit; also choice breed<sup>150</sup> of Cattle would be in much demand,<sup>151</sup> and best blood of horses, garden seeds of every description, and hay seeds of all sorts, are much needed in this place.

Very respectfully I subscribe myself your servant in Christ, our Lord and Savior.

JOSEPH SMITH, Junior.  
President of the Church of Jesus Christ  
of Latter Day Saints.

---

145. JSj [1838], 25: “&” overwrites “It”

146. JSj [1838], 25, Book B-1, 786: replace “even” with “and”

147. JSj [1838], 26, Book B-1, 786: add “J. Smith Jr.”; Book B-2, 709: adds a long dash over erasure of about six words

148. JSj [1838], 26: adds “Recorded on Pages 16 & 17 of J Smith Jr Scriptorium Record Book A”; Book B-1, 786: replaces “of the Latter Day Saints” with “&c” followed by “(as recorded on page 784)”; Book B-2, 709: “Church <of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints> [eof of about four words]” (WR); DHC 3:12: omits “of Jesus Christ”

149. Handwriting of WB ends and FDR begins in Book B-2, 709, and continues to p. 710 (chap. 2).

150. DHC 3:12: “Breeds”

151. JSj [1838], 26: adds “also”; Book B-1, 786: “~~also~~”

2.

EXCOMMUNICATION OF  
OLIVER COWDERY AND DAVID WHITMER  
April 1838

[DN 3 (19 March 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>The work continued to prosper in England and Elders Richards and Russell having previously been called to Preston to prepare for <sup>2</sup>America, a general Conference was held in the Temperance Hall, (Cock Pit) Preston, on Sunday April 1st, for the purpose of setting in order the churches, &c. Brother Joseph Fielding was chosen President over the whole church in England, and Willard Richards, and William Clayton were chosen his Counselors, and<sup>3</sup> were ordained to the Presidency and high Priesthood<sup>4</sup>. This was the first notice <sup>5</sup>elder Richards had given him<sup>6</sup>, that he should<sup>7</sup> continue in England. At this Conference eight Elders were ordained, (among whom was Thomas Webster) and several Priests, Teachers, and Deacons, about forty were confirmed who had previously been baptized; about sixty children were blessed, and twenty baptized that day. Conference continued without intermission from 9 a.m., to 5 p.m.—<sup>8</sup>About 50 official members met in Council in the evening<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>10</sup>President Rigdon arrived at Far West with his family, Wednesday April 4th, having had a tedious journey, and his family having suffered many afflictions.

---

1. BHR moved following paragraph to location indicated below (from p. 13 to p. 20). *Source*: Probably composed by WR on 22 Feb. 1844 (see MSHi Chronology; cf. MiEng, 295; WRHi 27:151).

2. DHC 3:20: adds “their return to”

3. Book B-1, 786: “and” overwrites “who”

4. DHC 3:20: replaces “Presidency and High Priesthood” with “High Priesthood and to the Presidency”

5. DHC 3:20: adds “given”

6. DHC 3:20: omits “had given him”

7. DHC 3:20: replaces “should” with “would be required to”

8. Book B-1, 786: adds “and in the evening Elder Kimball and Hyde preached their farewell to an overwhelming congregation flooded with tears.”

9. Book B-1, 786: “<met in council in the evening>” (WR)

10. *Source*: Date of SR’s arrival in Far West probably taken from his affidavit presented before the Nauvoo Municipal Court in July 1843 (cf. T&S 4:269; NMCDB, 132; DHC 3:449; vol. 5, chap. 24).

<sup>11/12</sup>Far West, April 6th, 1838.

Agreeably<sup>13</sup> to a resolution passed by<sup>14</sup> the High Council of Zion March 3rd, 1838, the Saints in Missouri assembled in<sup>15</sup> this place, to celebrate<sup>16</sup> the anniversary of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, and to transact Church business, <sup>17</sup>Joseph Smith junior<sup>18</sup>, and Sidney Rigdon Presiding.

The meeting was opened by singing and prayer by David W. Patten, after which President Joseph Smith junior read the order of the day as follows: Doors will be opened<sup>19</sup> at 9 o'clock a.m., and the meeting will commence by singing and prayer. A Sexton will then be appointed for a door keeper, and other services in the House of the Lord. Two Historians will then be appointed to write and keep the Church History; also a General Recorder to keep the Records of the whole church, and to be the Clerk of the first Presidency. And a Clerk will be appointed for the High Council, and to keep the Church Records of this Stake. Three Presidents will be appointed to preside over this Church<sup>20</sup> of Zion, after which an address will be delivered by the Presidency. Then an intermission of one hour **will take place**, when the meeting will again convene, and open by singing and prayer. The Sacrament will then be administered, and the blessing of infants attended to.

The meeting then<sup>21</sup> proceeded to business. George Morey, was appointed Sexton, and Dimick Huntington assistant; John Cor[r]ill and Elias Higbee, Historians; George W. Robinson, General Church Recorder and Clerk to the first Presidency; Ebenezer Robinson, Church Clerk and Recorder for Far West<sup>22</sup>, and Clerk of<sup>23</sup> the High Council; Thomas B. Marsh President pro tempore of the Church in Zion, and Brigham Young, and David W. Patten, his assistant Presidents.

After one hour's adjournment, <sup>24</sup>meeting<sup>25</sup> again opened by David W. Patten, **after which** the bread and wine were administered, and ninety-five infants were **brought forward and** blessed. **When on motion the meeting closed.**

JOSEPH SMITH, junior, President.  
E[BENEZER]. ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>26</sup>Agreeable to a resolution of the High Council **assembled at Far West, on Saturday**, March 3rd, 1838. The general Authorities of the church met, to hold the first<sup>27</sup> *Quarterly Conference* of the Church of Latter Day Saints, **Zion** at Far West, on the 7th of April 1838.

---

11. Source: EJ 1 (July 1838): 46–47. Deleted material added here in bold type. Cf. nearly identical minutes in FWR, 114–15 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 157–58). For another version of the minutes, see JSj [1838], 29 (PJS 2:227–28; JSP 1:250; APR, 171–73).

12. Handwriting of FDR ends and WB's begins in Book B-2, 710, and continues to p. 776 (chap. 13).

13. DHC 3:14: "Agreeable"

14. Book B-1, 787: "<by>" (US)

15. Book B-1, 787: replaces "in" with "at"

16. EJ 1:46: replaces "celebrate" with "hold"

17. EJ 1:46: deletes remainder of paragraph; probably from JSj [1838], 29.

18. Book B-1, 787: "<Jr>" (prob. WR)

19. Book B-1, 787: "open"

20. Book B-1, 787: "stake <church>" (WR)

21. DHC 3:13: omits "then"

22. EJ 1:47: replaces "Far West" with "this stake of Zion"

23. EJ 1:47: replaces "of" with "for"; Book B-1, 787, Book B-2, 710: replace "of" with "to"

24. Book B-2, 710: adds erasure

25. EJ 1:47: replaces "After ... meeting" with "The meeting adjourned for one hour—and"

26. Source: EJ 1 (July 1838): 47. Some light editing. Deleted material supplied here in bold type. Cf. nearly identical minutes in FWR, 115–17 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 159–62).

27. DHC 3:14: omits "first"

Presidents<sup>28</sup> Joseph Smith, junior, Sidney Rigdon, T[homas]. B. Marsh, D[avid]. W. Patten, and B[righam]. Young, took the stand, after which the several quorums; the High Council, the High Priests, the Seventies, the Elders, the Bishop<sup>29</sup>, the Priests, Teachers, and Deacons, were organized by their Presidents.

President Joseph Smith junior, made some remarks, also gave some instructions<sup>30</sup> respecting the order of the day. **The conference was then opened by singing, “O God Our Hope in Ages Past,” and prayer by President B[righam]. Young. Also a hymn was sung, “How Firm a Foundation.”**

<sup>31</sup>After singing, prayer by B[righam]. Young, and singing again; President Smith then<sup>32</sup> addressed the congregation at considerable length **on some important items**, followed by President Rigdon.

**President Rigdon continued the subject for a length of time, after which on motion, the meeting** adjourned 20 minutes.

**Pursuant to adjournment, the conference convened and** opened as usual<sup>33</sup> **by prayer** by D[avid]. W. Patten, who also made some remarks respecting the Twelve Apostles. He spoke of T[homas]. B. Marsh, Brigham Young, Heber C. Kimball, Orson Hyde, Parley P. Pratt, and Orson Pratt, as being men of God whom he could recommend with cheerfulness, and confidence<sup>34</sup>. He spoke somewhat doubtful of William Smith, from something he had heard respecting his faith in the work. He also spoke of William E. McLellin, Luke [S.] Johnson, Lyman [E.] Johnson, and John F. Boynton, as being men whom he could not recommend to the Conference.

President John Murdock represented the High Council. The report was favorable. **He stated that** the seats of Elisha H. Groves, Calvin Bebee, and Lyman Wight were vacant in consequence of their having moved so far away they could not attend the Council.

<sup>35</sup>Thomas B. Marsh nominated Jared Carter, to fill the seat of Elisha H. Groves; John P. Green[e] that of Calvin Bebee; and George W. Harris, that of Lyman Wight, which nominations were severally and unanimously sanctioned.

George W. Harris was ordained High Priest.<sup>36</sup>

On motion Conference adjourned to the 8th, 9 o'clock a.m.

Sunday April 8th, 9 o'clock a.m.<sup>37</sup> **Pursuant to adjournment the** Conference convened and opened as usual, **by singing and** prayer by Brigham Young.

President J[oseph]. Smith junior made a few remarks respecting the Kirtland Bank, who<sup>38</sup> was followed by B[righam]. Young<sup>39</sup>, who gave a short history of his travels to Massachusetts and New York.

President Charles C. Rich **who is the president of the High Priests in Zion** represented his quorum of High Priests, and read their names, the principal part were in good standing.

---

28. DHC 3:14: “President”

29. DHC 3:14: “Bishops”

30. *EJ* 1:47, Book B-1, 787: “instruction”

31. First sentence is a summary of previous bolded words.

32. Book B-1, 787: omits “then”

33. DHC 3:14: omits “as usual”

34. *EJ* 1:47: “cheerful confidence”

35. This paragraph condensed from three similarly worded paragraphs.

36. *EJ* 1:47: “Presidency then ordained him [George W. Harris] to the office of High Priest.”

37. *EJ* 1:47: omits time.

38. DHC 3:15: replaces “who” with “He” and starts new sentence

39. Book B-1, 788 (pencil): adds note in margin “B.Y’s history” (prob. RLC); RLC began working on BY’s History in 1856 (e.g., CHOj 19:205, 206, 208-9, 212, 215-16, 229).

President Daniel S.<sup>40</sup> Miles, and Levi [W.] Hancock represented the Seventies.

The quorum of Elders was<sup>41</sup> represented by their President, Harvey Green, numbering 124 in good standing.

President Joseph Smith [Jun.] made a few remarks on the word of wisdom, giving the reason of its coming forth, saying it should be observed.

**On motion, the conference** adjourned for one hour.

Conference convened agreeable to adjournment, and opened as usual, **by singing and prayer**, after which Bishop Partridge represented his Council and the lesser Priesthood; and made a<sup>42</sup> report of receipts and expenditure<sup>43</sup> of Church Funds<sup>44</sup> which had passed through his hands.

It was then motioned<sup>45</sup>, seconded and carried, that the first Presidency be appointed to sign the Licenses of the official members of the church.

**After which, on motion, the** Conference adjourned until the first Friday in July next.

JOSEPH SMITH, junior, President.

E[BENEZER]. ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>46</sup>From the 1st, to the 8th [of April], Presidents Kimball and Hyde visited the churches a short distance from Preston, and on the 8th attended meeting in the [“]Cock Pit.[”] After preaching by Elder Richards, they bore their farewell testimony to the truth of the work. After they had closed, and <sup>47</sup>Elder Russell was speaking, the enemy severed the gas pipes which lighted the house, and overwhelmed<sup>48</sup> the assembly in<sup>49</sup> darkness in an instant. The damage was soon repaired, and the design of breaking up the meeting<sup>50</sup> frustrated.

<sup>51</sup>The following letter was sent to John Whitmer, in consequence of his withholding the Records of the church in the city of Far West, when called for by the Clerk, &c<sup>52</sup>.

#### Far West April 9th 1838.<sup>53</sup>

Mr. J[ohn]. Whitmer, Sir:—We were desirous of honoring you by giving publicity to your notes on the history of the Church of Latter Day Saints, after <sup>54</sup>making<sup>55</sup> such corrections as we thought would be necessary; knowing your incompetency as a Historian, and that writings coming from your pen, could not be put to <sup>56</sup>press without our correcting them, or else the church must suffer reproach. Indeed, Sir, we never supposed you capable of writing a history; but were willing to let it come out under your name, notwithstanding it would really not be yours

40. Book B-1, 788: omits “S.”; Book B-2, 711: “<S>”

41. DHC 3:15: “were”

42. Book B-1, 788, Book B-2, 711: omit “a”

43. DHC 3:15: “expenditures”

44. In *EJ* 1:47, first part of sentence reads: “He gave an account of the incomes and outgoes of Church property”

45. DHC 3:15: replaces “motioned” with “moved”

46. BHR moved following paragraph from this location to the place indicated below (from p. 15 to p. 21).

47. DHC 3:21: adds “while”

48. DHC 3:21: replaces “overwhelmed” with “threw”

49. DHC 3:21: “into”

50. Book B-1, 788: “assembly”

51. *Source*: Introduction and letter from JSj [1838], 28 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:226–27; *JSP* 1:249–50; *APR*, 171).

52. DHC 3:15: omits “&c.”

53. This line appears only in JSj [1838], 28, and Book B-1, 788.

54. Book B-1, 788: adds “such”

55. JSj [1838], 28: omits “making”

56. JSj [1838], 28, Book B-1, 788, Book B-2, 712: add “the”

but ours, we are still willing to honor you, if you can be made to know your own interest, and give up your notes, so that they can be corrected and made fit for the press; but if not we have all the materials for another, which we shall commence this week to write.

Your humble servants,

JOSEPH SMITH, junior,

SIDNEY RIGDON,

Presidents of the whole Church of Latter Day Saints.

Attest: E[BENEZER]. ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>57</sup>Tuesday 10th [of April], <sup>58</sup>12 o'clock noon<sup>59</sup> Elders<sup>60</sup> Kimball and Hyde left Preston, on<sup>61</sup> coach for Liverpool.

<sup>62</sup>Wednesday [April] 11th<sup>63</sup>, Elder Seymour Bronson<sup>64</sup> preferred the following charges against Oliver Cowdery, to the High Council at Far West.

To the Bishop and Council of the church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, <sup>65</sup>I **do hereby** prefer the following charges against <sup>66</sup>Oliver Cowdery, **which consists of nine in number.**

1st. For persecuting the brethren by urging on vexatious law suits against them<sup>67</sup> and thus distressing the innocent.<sup>68</sup>

2nd. For seeking to destroy the character of President Joseph Smith junior by falsely insinuating that he was guilty of adultery, &c<sup>69</sup>.

3rd. For treating the Church with contempt by not attending meeting<sup>70</sup>.

4th. For virtually denying the faith by declaring that he would not be governed by any ecclesiastical authority, nor revelation<sup>71</sup> whatever, in his temporal affairs.

5th. For selling his lands in Jackson County contrary to the revelations.

6th. For writing and sending an insulting letter to President Thomas B. Marsh while on the High Council, attending to the duties of his office as President of the Council; and by insulting the High<sup>72</sup> Council with the contents of said letter.

---

57. BHR moved this paragraph to location indicated below (from p. 16 to p. 21). *Source*: Possibly based on HCKj [1840], 40, or MiEng, 295, both of which date the event to 9 Apr. 1838. Date perhaps changed by WR based on WRj 1:72.

58. DHC 3:21: adds "at"

59. DHC 3:21: omits "noon"

60. Book B-1, 788: omits "Elders"; Book B-2, 712 (darker ink): "<Elders>" (US)

61. DHC 3:21: replaces "on" with "by"

62. *Source*: Following minutes from JSj [1838], 29-30 (GWR) (PJS 2:228-29; JSP 1:251-54; APR, 172-73). Deleted material supplied here in bold type. Cf. FWR, 118-19 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 163).

63. Book B-1, 789: replaces first part with "On the 11th of April ..."

64. DHC 3:16: "Brunson"

65. FWR, 118: adds "in Missouri"

66. FWR, 118: adds "President"

67. JSj [1838], 30: replaces "them" with "Bretheren"; Book B-1, 789: "the<m> brethren"

68. In FWR, 118, this charge reads: "1st, For stirring up the enemy to persecute the brethren by urging on vexatious Lawsuits and thus distressing the innocent."

69. DHC 3:16: omits "&c."

70. FWR, 118, DHC 3:16: "meetings"

71. DHC 3:16: "or revelations"

72. FWR, 119: replaces "High" with "whole"



7th. For leaving his calling in which God had appointed him, by revelation, for the sake of filthy lucre, and turning to the practice of Law.

8th. For disgracing the church by being connected in the Bogus business, as common report says.

9th. For dishonestly retaining notes after they have<sup>73</sup> been paid; and finally for leaving or<sup>74</sup> forsaking the cause of God, and returning<sup>75</sup> to the beggarly elements of the world and neglecting his high and holy calling according<sup>76</sup> to his profession.

**Far West April the 7th 1838.**<sup>77</sup>

**Seymour Brunson.**

<sup>78</sup>The Bishop and High Council assembled at the Bishop's Office, **in trial of the above charges**, April 12th, 1838. After the organization of the Council, the above charges of the 11th inst[ant]. were read, also a letter from O[liver]. Cowdery as will be found recorded in the Church Record of the city of Far West, book A.<sup>79</sup> The 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 7th, 8th, and 9th, charges were sustained. The 4th, and 5th, charges were rejected and the 6th was withdrawn. Consequently he (Oliver Cowdery) was considered no longer a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, also voted by the High Council that Oliver Cowdery be no longer a Committee to select locations for the gathering of the saints.

<sup>80</sup>April 13th, the following charges were preferred against David Whitmer before the High Council at<sup>81</sup> Far West in Council assembled.<sup>82</sup>

**To the High Council of the Church of Latter day Saints in Missouri.**

**I prefer the following charges before your Honorable body against David Whitmer.**

1st. For not observing the word<sup>83</sup> of wisdom.

2nd. For unchristian-like conduct in neglecting to attend meetings, in uniting with and possessing the same spirit of the dissenters.

3rd. In writing letters to the dissenters<sup>84</sup> in Kirtland unfavorable to the cause, and to the character of Joseph Smith junior.

4th. In neglecting the duties of his calling, and separating himself from the Church, while he had<sup>85</sup> a name among us.

73. JSj [1838], 30, FWR, 119, Book B-1, 789, Book B-2, 712, DHC 3:16: "had"

74. DHC 3:16: replaces "or" with "and"

75. FWR, 119: replaces "returning" with "betaking himself"

76. JSj [1838], 30, FWR, 119: replace "according" with "contrary"

77. Date and signature added from FWR, 119. Date of the charges was changed to "April 11th 1838" when copied into JSj [1838], 30, without this dateline.

78. *Source*: Closely follows JSj [1838], 29-31 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:228-30; *JSP* 1:254-55; *APR*, 171-74). Deleted material supplied here in bold type. Cf. minutes in FWR, 118-26 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 162-69).

79. This is a reference to the original minutes that HSt later copied into what is now known as the Far West Record (see discussion in Sources Cited under FWR). When Book B-1 was being reviewed by the apostolic committee on 2 July 1845, WB made a note: "enquiries to be made for Book A. Far west Record" (see vol. 7, IV.4, Apostolic Review of Book B-1).

80. *Source*: Following minutes closely follow JSj [1838], 31 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:230-31; *JSP* 1:256; *APR*, 173-74). Deleted material supplied here in bold type. Cf. minutes in FWR, 131-32 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 176-77).

81. Book B-1, 789: "at" overwrites "of"

82. JSj [1838], 31: replaces "at Far West ... assembled" with "which assembled on the 13th of April 1838 for the purpose of attending to such Charges. Which Charges are as follows."

83. Book B-1, 789: "words"

84. Book B-2, 712 (darker ink): "<3rd. In ... dissenters>" (TB)

85. JSj [1838], 31, Book B-1, 789, Book B-2, 713: "has"



5th. For signing himself President of the Church of Christ, after he had been cut off from the Presidency<sup>86</sup>, in an insulting letter to the High Council.

**A[lanson]. Ripley.**

After reading the above charges together with a letter sent to the President of said Council (a copy of which may be found in Far West Record, book A,) <sup>87</sup> the Council considered<sup>88</sup> the <sup>89</sup>charges sustained, and consequently considered him (David Whitmer)<sup>90</sup> no longer a member of the Church of Jesus Christ<sup>91</sup> of Latter Day Saints.

<sup>92</sup>The same day three charges were preferred against Lyman E. Johnson, which were read together with a letter from him, in answer to the one recorded in Far West Record, book A<sup>93</sup>. The charges were sustained, and he was cut off from the church.

[...]<sup>94</sup>

While the Elders were in Liverpool they wrote as follows:

<sup>95</sup>Liverpool, Good Friday, April 13th, 1838.

Dear brothers and sisters in Preston, it seemeth good unto us and also to the Holy Spirit, to write you a few words which cause pain in our hearts, and will also pain you when they are fulfilled before you; yet you shall have joy in the end. Brother Webster [Thomas Webster]<sup>96</sup> will not abide in the Spirit of the Lord, but will reject the truth, and become the enemy of the people of God and expose the mysteries that<sup>97</sup> have been committed to him, that a righteous judgment may be executed upon him, unless he speedily repent. When this sorrowful prediction shall be fulfilled, this letter shall be read to the church, and it shall prove a solemn warning to all to beware.

Farewell in the Lord,

HEBER C. KIMBALL,  
ORSON HYDE.<sup>98</sup>

<sup>99</sup>The foregoing letter was written and sealed in the presence of Presidents [Joseph] Fielding and [Willard] Richards, who had gone to Liverpool to witness the brethren sail, and by the writers committed to their special charge that no one should know the contents until the fulfillment thereof.

---

86. JSj [1838], 31: omits “from the Presidency”; DHC 3:19: moves “after he ... Presidency” to end of sentence

87. DHC 3:19: omits words in parentheses. Cf. letter in FWR, 132–33 (*FWR* [1983], 177).

88. DHC 3:19: replaces “considered” with “held that”

89. Book B-1, 789: adds “above”

90. JSj [1838], 31: omits name; DHC 3:19: removes parentheses

91. DHC 3:19: omits “of Jesus Christ”

92. *Source*: Closely follows JSj [1838], 31–32 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:231; *JSP* 1:256–57; *APR*, 174). Cf. minutes and letter in FWR, 126–31 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 171–76).

93. DHC 3:20: omits “book A”

94. DHC moves three paragraphs dealing with the Church in England as indicated above to this location (from pp. 13, 15, 16 to pp. 20–21).

95. *Source*: *MSt* 2 (May 1841): 8.

96. *MSt* 2:8: omits bracketed name; DHC 3:21: omits bracketed name and adds first name in text

97. *MSt* 2:8, Book B-1, 790: replace “that” with “which”

98. *MSt* 2:8, Book B-1, 790, Book B-2, 713: reverse names

99. *Source*: Based on an editorial that accompanied publication of the above letter by Willard Richards and Joseph Fielding: “Remarkable Prophecy Fulfilled,” *MSt* 2 (May 1841): 8.

<sup>100</sup>Previous to this period very little<sup>101</sup> of the foolish and wicked stories which filled the weekly journals and pamphlets in America, concerning the “Mormons,” [as the saints were termed] had found its<sup>102</sup> way into the English prints, but immediately after, Elders Kimball and Hyde left Preston, on<sup>103</sup> or about the 15th of April, one [Richard]<sup>104</sup> Lives[e]y (a Methodist Priest, who had previously spent some years in America, and said he heard nothing about the saints in America) came out with<sup>105</sup> a pamphlet made up of forged letters, apostate lies, and “walk on the water” stories, he found in old American papers, which he had picked up while in America, but he stopped the circulation of his own pamphlet<sup>106</sup> by stating to a public congregation that he had accidentally found the contents of the<sup>107</sup> pamphlet in old papers in his trunk, which was quite providential, to stop such abominable work as the Saints were engaged in.—And in the same lecture said he “wished the people to purchase his pamphlets as he had been at a great expense to procure the materials for writing it.” His hearers retired.

[...] <sup>108</sup>

---

100. *Source*: Probably composed by WR based on MiEng 1:295 and the contents of Livesey’s pamphlet (see Livesey 1838).

101. DHC 3:21: replaces “little” with “few”

102. DHC 3:22: replaces “its” with “their”

103. Book B-1, 790, Book B-2, 713: omit “on”

104. Brackets this editor’s.

105. Book B-2, 713 (darker ink): “<with>” (pos. TB)

106. Book B-1, 790: “pamphlets”; Book B-2, 713 (darker ink): “pamp{\hlet/}”

107. DHC 3:22: replaces “the” with “his”

108. BHR moved the entry for 20 Apr. 1838, which appears in the next chapter in chronological order, to this location (from p. 23 to p. 22).

3.

## SETTLEMENT OF AFFAIRS AT FAR WEST

### April-May 1838

[DN 3 (19 March 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>I received the following Revelation given at Far West, April 17th, 1838<sup>2</sup>.

[D&C 114]

Verily thus saith the Lord, it is wisdom in my servant David W. Patten, that he settle up all his business as soon as he possibly can and make a disposition of his Merchandise, that he may perform a mission unto me, next spring, in company with others even Twelve, including himself, to testify of my name, and bear glad tidings unto all the world; for verily thus saith the Lord, that inasmuch as there are those among you who deny my name, others shall be planted in their stead and receive their Bishopric. Amen.

<sup>3</sup>Also I received the following Revelation Given to Brigham Young at Far West, April 17th, 1838<sup>4</sup>.

Verily thus saith the Lord, let my servant Brigham Young, go unto the place which he has bought, on Mill Creek, and there provide for his family until an effectual door is opened for the support of his family, until I shall command him to go hence, and not to leave his family until they are amply provided for. Amen.

<sup>5</sup>April 20th<sup>6</sup>, Elders Kimball and Hyde sailed from Liverpool on the ship *Garrick*.

---

1. *Source*: JSj [1838], 32 (GWR) (PJS 2:231; JSP 1:257; APR, 174-75). First canonized in D&C [1876].

2. JSj [1838], 32, dates the revelation to “April 11th 1838”; Book B-1, 790: “1844<38>” (pos. WB); DHC 3:23: omits year and moves date to beginning of sentence

3. *Source*: JSj [1838], 32 (GWR) (PJS 2:231-32; JSP 1:257-58; APR, 175).

4. DHC 3:23: omits date

5. *Source*: Based on MiEng 1:295. BHR moved this paragraph to the end of the previous chapter (from p. 23 to p. 22).

6. Book B-1, 790: moves date to end of sentence; DHC 3:22: “On the 20th of April ...”

<sup>7</sup>I received the following Revelation, given at Far West April 26th, 1838<sup>8</sup>, making known the will of God concerning the building up of this<sup>9</sup> place, and of the Lord's House, &c<sup>10</sup>.

[D&C 115]

[1.] Verily thus saith the Lord unto you, my servant Joseph Smith junior, and also my servant Sidney Rigdon, and also my servant Hyrum Smith, and your Counselors who are and shall be appointed hereafter; and also unto you my servant Edward Partridge, and his Counselors; and also unto my faithful servants, who are of the High Council of my church in Zion (for thus it shall be called,) and unto all the Elders and people of my Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, scattered abroad in all the world; for thus shall my Church be called in the last days, even the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. Verily I say unto you all; arise and shine forth, that thy light may be a standard for the nations, and that the gathering together upon the land of Zion, and upon her stakes, may be for a defense, and for a refuge from the storm, and from wrath when it shall be poured out without mixture upon the whole earth.

[2.] Let the City, Far West, be a holy and consecrated land unto me, and it shall be called most holy, for the ground upon which thou standest is holy: therefore I command you to build a House unto me, for the gathering together of my Saints, that they may worship me; and let there be a beginning of this work; and a foundation, and a preparatory work, this following summer; and let the beginning be made on the 4th day of July next, and from that time forth let my people labor diligently to build an house unto my name, and in one year from this day let them re-commence laying the foundation of my house; thus let them from that time forth labor diligently until it shall be finished, from the corner stone thereof unto the top thereof until there shall not any thing remain that is not finished.

[3.] Verily I say unto you, let not my servant Joseph, neither my servant Sidney, neither my servant Hyrum, get in debt any more for the building of an house unto my name; but let an house be built unto my name according to the pattern which I will show unto them, and if my people shall build it not according to the pattern which I shall show unto their Presidency, I will not accept it at their hands; but if my people do build it according to the pattern which I shall show unto their Presidency, even my servant Joseph and his Counselors, then I will accept it at the hands of my people. And again, verily I say unto you, it is my will that the City of Far West should be built up speedily by the gathering of my Saints; and also that other places should be appointed for stakes in the regions round about, as they shall be manifested unto my servant Joseph, from time to time: for behold I will be with him, and I will sanctify him before the people, for unto him have I given the keys of this kingdom and ministry, even so, Amen.

<sup>11</sup>Far West, April 26th<sup>12</sup>, the Teachers <sup>13</sup>voted <sup>14</sup>not to hold any member of the quorum in fellowship, who would not settle his own difficulties in the church and show himself approved in all things, and that they would not hold any member of the quorum<sup>15</sup> in fellowship who would take unlawful interest.

---

7. Book B-2, 714: adds erasure, probably of date. *Source*: JSj [1838], 32-34 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:232-33; *JSP* 1:258-60; *APR*, 175-76). First published in *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 52-53; canonized in D&C [1876].

8. DHC 3:23: omits year and moves date to beginning of sentence

9. DHC 3:23: replaces "this" with "that"

10. DHC 3:23: omits "&c."

11. *Source*: Based on TQM, 18 (ACG) (transcription in vol. 8, III.2).

12. DHC 3:25: omits place and date

13. Book B-1, 791, Book B-2, 714, DHC 3:25: add "quorum"

14. DHC 3:25: adds "today [April 26th]"

15. Book B-2, 715 (darker ink): "<of the Quorum>" (TB)

<sup>16</sup>April 27, this day I chiefly spent, in writing a history of this<sup>17</sup> Church from the earliest period of its existence, up to this date, **by Presidents Joseph Smith, Jr., Sidney Rigdon, [and] myself [George W. Robinson] also** <sup>18</sup>**engaged in keeping this record.**

<sup>19</sup>Saturday, April 28th, 1838. This morning Presidents J[oseph]. Smith junior, and S[idney]. Rigdon <sup>20</sup>attended the High Council, by invitation.

The business before the Council was <sup>21</sup>an appeal case from the branch of the Church near G[u]ymon's <sup>22</sup>Mill. <sup>23</sup>Jackson<sup>24</sup> was plaintiff<sup>25</sup> and Aaron Lyon defendant<sup>26</sup>. **Council called to order.** Thomas B. Marsh, and David W. Patten Presiding.

It appeared, in calling the Council to order, that some of the seats were vacant, which the Council proceeded to fill, but as there were not a sufficient number present <sup>27</sup>who were eligible for<sup>28</sup> the station, Presidents Smith and Rigdon were strongly solicited to act as Councilors, or to preside and let the Presiding Officers act as Councilors, &c<sup>29</sup>.

They accepted the former proposal, and President Smith was chosen to act on the part of the defense, and to speak upon the case together with George W. Harris.

President Rigdon was chosen to speak on the part of the prosecution together with George M. Hinkle<sup>30</sup>.

**After the council was organized and opened by prayer, the notorious case of Aaron Lyon was called in question.** After some arbitrary speeches to know<sup>31</sup> whether witnesses should be admitted to testify against A[aron]. Lyon, or whether he should have the privilege of confessing his own sins; it was decided that witnesses should be admitted, and also the written testimony of the wife of said<sup>32</sup> Jackson.

<sup>33</sup>**As to this man, Lyon, it is a well known fact, and without contradiction that he**

---

16. Source: JSj [1838], 34 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:233; *JSP* 1:260; *APR*, 176-77). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

17. DHC 3:25: replaces "this" with "the"

18. JSj [1838], 34: adds "was"

19. Source: JSj [1838], 34-37 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:233-37; *JSP* 1:261-63; *APR*, 177-79). Some light and heavy editing. Unless indicate otherwise, omitted material supplied here from JSj in bold type. Cf. minutes in FWR, 137-40, 157-59 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 183-85, 206-8).

20. JSj [1838], 34: adds "and myself [GWR]"

21. Book B-1, 792: adds "the"

22. JSj [1838], 34: adds "horse"; Book B-1, 792: adds "have"

23. Book B-1, 792: adds a long dash in place of first name; DHC 3:25: adds "A brother"

24. Book B-1, 792: "son" overwrites illegible

25. DHC 3:25: replaces "plaintiff" with "accuser"

26. DHC 3:25: replaces "defendant" with "accused"

27. Book B-1, 792: adds "for the"

28. Book B-1, 792, Book B-2, 715: replace "for" with "to"

29. DHC 3:26: omits "&c."

30. Book B-1, 792: adds "after the council was organized &c."; Book B-2, 715: adds erasure of about seven words

31. DHC 3:25: replaces "arbitrary speeches to know" with "discussion as to"

32. DHC 3:26: replaces "said" with "a brother of the name of"

33. Following four paragraphs appear in MSHJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:26 and replaced with the following bracketed summary: "[This trial is written up at great length in the minutes of the Far West Record, and also in G. W. Robinson's summary of the proceedings [in JSj] heretofore printed [in DN and MSt]. Condensed, the account of the fault of Brother Aaron Lyon was this: He claimed to have had a revelation that a Sister Jackson, who was a married woman, and whose husband was still living, was to become his wife. Lyon claimed that it had been revealed to him that the woman's husband was dead. He exerted undue influence in persuading her of these things, and she consented to be his wife; but before they were married the woman's husband appeared on the scene,

has been in transgression ever since he first came to<sup>34</sup> Kirtland, which is some four or five years, as appeared this day by different witnesses which are unimpeachable. The witnesses against Lyon were first Sarah Jackson, wife of plaintiff Jackson, one brother Burt<sup>35</sup>, brother [Shadrach]<sup>36</sup> Roundy,<sup>37</sup> John P. Barnard, brother Thomas Gyman<sup>38</sup>, also brother Benjamin, and the plaintiff, which testimony says that<sup>39</sup> some time last season, the plaintiff sent his wife from Alton, Illinois to this country, as he himself could not come at that time: accordingly his wife, Mrs. Jackson, came and settled in the branch first above mentioned.

Now this man Lyon had settled in this branch also, and was their Presiding High Priest, and had gained to himself great influence in and over that branch, and it also appears that this man had great possessions; and, (if we may judge from testimony given this day) calculates to keep them, let the saint's necessities<sup>40</sup> be what they may, and it also appears that this man was in want of a wife, (if actions bespeak the desire of any man,) consequently set his wits<sup>41</sup> to work to get one. He commenced, (as he said) by getting a Revelation from God that he must marry Mrs. Jackson; or that she was the woman to make his wife; and it appeared that these revelations were frequently received by him, and shortly introduced to Mrs. Jackson. It was also manifested that the old man had sagacity enough to know that unless he used his Priestly Office to assist him in accomplishing his designs, he would fail in the attempt;<sup>42</sup> he therefore told Mrs. Jackson that he had had a Revelation from God that her husband was dead, &c., and that she must consent to marry him, or she would be for ever miserable; for he had seen her future state of existence, and that she must remember that whomsoever he blessed would be blessed, and whomsoever he cursed would be cursed, influencing her mind, if possible, to believe his power was sufficient to make her<sup>43</sup> for ever miserable, provided she complied not with his request, &c.; accordingly they came to an agreement and were soon to be married; but fortunately or unfortunately for both parties, previous to the arrival of the nuptial day; behold! to the astonishment of our defendant, the husband of Mrs. Jackson arrived at home, and consequently disannulled the preceding contract<sup>44</sup>.

The old gentleman, Lyon, at this time, (if not before) knew very well that his God who gave these Revelations (if Revelations he had) must of course be no less than the devil, and in order to palliate the injustice of his crime, saddled the whole burden upon the devil, that in scourging the person who had previously befriended him, and counseled him in his former days, peradventure he might extricate himself from the snare of his own setting and dictation. But, alas, it was too late for the old man. The testimony being closed, the sword of justice began to be unsheathed which fell upon

---

with the result, of course, that the prospective marriage did not take place. The witnesses were permitted to testify, although Brother Lyon confessed the facts and admitted his error. The conclusion of the matter follows as stated by G. W. Robinson, clerk of the Council].”

34. Book B-1, 792, Book B-2, 715: “into”

35. JSj [1838], 35, FWR, 138: “Best”. Possibly Henry Best (*FWR* [1983], 186n4, 249; *JSP* 1:261n122).

36. Brackets this editor’s.

37. Book B-1, 792: adds “Bro.”

38. Book B-1, 792: “Gimon”; Book B-2, 715: “Gymon”

39. Book B-2, 715: “<that>” (pos. WR)

40. Book B-1, 792: “necessityies”

41. Book B-2, 715 (darker ink): “<wits>” (pos. TB)

42. JSj [1838], 35: “<he would fail in the attempt>”

43. Book B-2, 715: “<her>” (US)

44. JSj [1838], 36: “disanuled the proceedings of the above alluded parties”

the defendant like a scourge of ten thousand lashes, wielded by the hands of President Rigdon, and George M. Hinkle, inspired by the spirit of justice accompanied by a flow of eloquence which searched for the feelings like the sting of so many scorpions which served to atone for past iniquity. There were no feelings that were not felt after; there were no sores that were not probed, there were no excuses rendered that were not exceptionable.

When justice ceased to speak<sup>45</sup>, mercy advanced to the rescue<sup>46</sup>, which inspired the heart of President Smith, and George W. Harris, who with profound eloquence, with a deep and sublime thought, and clemency of feeling, spoke in favor of the defendant; but in length of time while mercy appeared to be doing her utmost in contending against justice, the latter gained the ascendancy, and took full possession of<sup>47</sup> the mind of the speaker, who leveled a volley of darts, which came upon the old man like a hurricane upon the mountain tops, which seemingly was about to hurl the old man beyond the reach of mercy<sup>48</sup>, but mercy still claimed the victim, and saved him in the church<sup>49</sup>. Happy is it for those whose sins<sup>50</sup>, (like this man's) go before them to<sup>51</sup> judgement that they may repent and be saved in the kingdom of God.

Council decided, that, inasmuch as this man had confessed his sins, and asked forgiveness, and promised to make<sup>52</sup> well the paths of his feet and do (inasmuch as lay<sup>53</sup> in his power) what God should require at his hands, <sup>54</sup>he should give up his license as High Priest, and stand as a member in the church; and this in consequence of his being considered incapable of magnifying that office &c<sup>55</sup>. **Council adjourned.**

G. W. ROBINSON, *Scribe*.

<sup>56</sup>Sunday 29th, I spent <sup>57</sup>mostly<sup>58</sup> in meeting with the saints administering<sup>59</sup> the words of life.

<sup>60</sup>Monday 30th, the first Presidency were engaged in writing the<sup>61</sup> Church History, and in recitation of grammar lessons, which recitations at this period, were<sup>62</sup> usually attended each morning before writing.

<sup>63</sup>May 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, the first Presidency were engaged in writing Church history, with

---

45. JSj [1838], 36: replaces "speak" with "weild his <its> sword"

46. JSj [1838], 36: "rescue its victom"

47. JSj [1838], 36: "full power over <possession of>"

48. JSj [1838], 37: "about to sweep the victom entirely out of the reach of mercy, but amidst the clashing of the sword of Justice"

49. JSj [1838], 37: adds "of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, and in this last kingdom"

50. Book B-1, 793: "sin"; Book B-2, 716: "sin\s/"

51. Book B-2, 716 (darker ink): "\to/"

52. JSj [1838], 37, Book B-1, 793: replace "make" with "mark"

53. DHC 3:26: replaces "inasmuch as lay" with "as much as lies"

54. Book B-1, 793: adds "sh"

55. DHC 3:26: omits "&c."

56. *Source*: JSj [1838], 37 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:237; *JSP* 1:263; *APR*, 179).

57. DHC 3:26: adds "the day"

58. JSj [1838], 37, DHC 3:26: replace "mostly" with "chiefly"

59. DHC 3:26: "ministering"

60. *Source*: JSj [1838], 37 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:237; *JSP* 1:263-64; *APR*, 179). Some light editing.

61. Book B-1, 793, Book B-2, 716: omit "the"

62. Book B-1, 793: "were"; Book B-2, 716 (pencil): "was<ere>"

63. *Source*: Summarizes JSj [1838], 37-38 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:237; *JSP* 1:264; *APR*, 179-80). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.



receiving lectures on grammar by President [Sidney] Rigdon [on the 2nd], administering to the sick on the 3rd, and<sup>64</sup> receiving a letter from John E. Page on the fourth.

<sup>65</sup>Saturday 5th, the Presidency wrote for the *Elders' Journal*, also received intelligence from Canada, by brother Bailey, <sup>66</sup>that 200 wagons with their families would probably be here in three weeks, also attended<sup>67</sup> an address delivered by Gen. Wilson (Federal<sup>68</sup> Candidate for Congress) on political matters<sup>69</sup>.

<sup>70</sup>Sunday May 6th, I preached to the saints, setting forth the evils that existed, and <sup>71</sup>would exist, by reason of hasty judgment, or decisions upon any subject given by any people—or in judging before they had heard both sides of the<sup>72</sup> question. I also cautioned the saints against men who should come<sup>73</sup> amongst them whining and growling about their money, because they had kept<sup>74</sup> the saints, and bore<sup>75</sup> some of the burden with others, and thus thinking that others (who are still poorer and have borne greater burdens than <sup>76</sup>themselves,) ought to make up their loss, &c.<sup>77</sup>; I cautioned the saints to beware of such, for they were throwing out foul<sup>78</sup> insinuations here and there, to level as it were<sup>79</sup> a dart at the best interests<sup>80</sup> of the Church, and if possible to<sup>81</sup> destroy the character of its Presidency. I also gave some instructions in the mysteries of the kingdom of God; such as the <sup>82</sup>history of the Planets, &c., &c.<sup>83</sup>; of<sup>84</sup> Abraham's writings upon the planetary systems<sup>85</sup>, &c.

In the afternoon, I spoke again on different subjects; the principles of wisdom, <sup>86</sup>the word of wisdom, &c.<sup>87</sup>.

<sup>88</sup>The Teachers quorum at Far West numbered 24 members.

---

64. DHC 3:26: omits “on the 3rd, and” and starts new sentence

65. Source: JSj [1838], 38 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:238; *JSP* 1:264; *APR*, 180). Some light editing.

66. Book B-1, 793: adds “who”

67. DHC 3:27: replaces “attended” with “listened to”

68. JSj [1838], 38: “Federalist”

69. DHC 3:27: moves “on political matters” to follow “an address”

70. Source: This and next paragraph from JSj [1838], 38 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:238–39; *JSP* 1:266; *APR*, 180). Some light editing and change to first person.

71. DHC 3:27: adds “that”

72. DHC 3:27: replaces “the” with “a”

73. DHC 3:27: replaces “should come” with “came”

74. JSj [1838], 38: replaces “kept” with “helpt”

75. DHC 3:27: “borne”

76. DHC 3:27: adds “they”

77. DHC 3:27: omits “&c.”

78. DHC 3:27: omits “foul”

79. DHC 3:27: omits “as it were”

80. Book B-1, 794: “interest”

81. DHC 3:27: omits “to”

82. Book B-1, 794: adds “his”

83. DHC 3:27: omits “&c., &c.”

84. DHC 3:27: omits “of”

85. JSj [1838], 38, Book B-1, 794: “system”

86. DHC 3:27: adds “and”

87. DHC 3:27: omits “&c.”

88. Source: TQM, 19 (ACG), records the names of twenty-four teachers under 2 May 1838 (transcription in vol. 8, III.2).



<sup>89</sup>Monday 7th, I spent <sup>90</sup>in company with Judge [Josiah]<sup>91</sup> Morain, one of our neighboring county Judges, and Democrat Candidate for the state senate.

I also visited with elder Reynolds [Reynolds] Cahoon and Parley P. Pratt, who had this day arrived in Far West; the former from Kirtland, the latter from New York City, where he had been preaching for some time, and our hearts were made glad with the pleasing intelligence of the gathering of the saints from all parts of the earth to this place to avoid the destructions which are coming upon this generation, as spoken by all the holy Prophets since the world began.

<sup>92</sup>James G. Marsh, son of Thomas B. Marsh, aged 14 years 11 months and 7 days, died this day in the full triumphs<sup>93</sup> of the Everlasting Gospel.

[DN 3 (2 April 1853): 1]

<sup>94</sup>Tuesday <sup>95</sup>8th, I spent <sup>96</sup>with Elder Rigdon in visiting Elder Cahoon and<sup>97</sup> the place he had selected for his residence, and in attending to some of our private, personal affairs; also in the afternoon I answered the questions which were frequently asked me, while on my last journey but one from<sup>98</sup> Kirtland to Missouri, as printed in the *Elders' Journal*, vol. 1st, No. 2, pages 28 and 29, as follows:

<sup>99</sup>1st. "Do you believe the Bible?"

If we do we are the only people under heaven that does, for there are none of the religious sects of the day that do.

2nd. "Wherein do you differ from other sects?"

Because<sup>100</sup> we believe the Bible and all other sects profess to believe their interpretations of the Bible, and their creeds.

3rd. "Will everybody be damned but Mormons?"

Yes, and a great portion of them, unless they repent and work righteousness.

4th. "How and where did you obtain the Book of Mormon?"

Moroni <sup>101</sup>who deposited the plates (from whence the Book of Mormon was translated)<sup>102</sup> in a hill in Manchester, Ontario County, New York, being dead and raised again therefrom, appeared unto me, and told me where they were; and gave me directions how to obtain them: I obtained them and the Urim and Thummim with them; by the means of which I translated the plates; and thus came the Book of Mormon.

---

89. Source: This and next paragraph from JSj [1838], 39 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:239; *JSP* 1:266-67; *APR*, 180-81). Some light editing.

90. DHC 3:27: adds "the day"

91. This and next brackets this editor's.

92. Source: Combines JSj [1838], 39 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:239; *JSP* 1:267; *APR*, 181), and the obituary in *EJ* 1 (July 1838): 48. Some light editing.

93. DHC 3:28: "triumph"

94. Source: Combines JSj [1838], 39 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:239; *JSP* 1:267; *APR*, 181), and *EJ* 1 (Nov. 1837): 28.

95. Book B-1, 794: adds "the"

96. DHC 3:28: adds "the day"

97. DHC 3:28: replaces "and" with "at"

98. Book B-2, 717: "from" overwrites "to"

99. Source: *EJ* 1 (July 1838): 42-44. The questions were previously printed in *EJ* 1 (Nov. 1837): 28-29.

100. DHC 3:28: replaces "Because" with "In that"

101. Book B-1, 794: adds "the person"; Book B-2, 717: adds an interlinear erasure

102. DHC 3:28: omits words in parentheses

5th. “Do you believe Joseph Smith junior<sup>103</sup> to be a Prophet?”

Yes, and every other man who has the testimony of Jesus. “For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.[”] Revelation, 19th, 10th verse.

<sup>104</sup>6th. “Do the Mormons believe in having all things <sup>105</sup>common?”

No!

7th. “Do the Mormons believe in having more wives than one?”

No, not at the same time. But they believe that if their companion dies, they have a right to marry again. But we do disapprove of the custom, which has gained in the world, and has been practiced among us, to our great mortification, of<sup>106</sup> marrying in five or six weeks, or even in two or three months after the death of their companion. We believe that due respect ought to be had to the memory of the dead, and the feelings of both friends and children.

8th. “Can they <sup>107</sup>raise the dead?”

No, nor <sup>108</sup>any other people that now lives, or ever did live. But God can raise the dead, through man as an instrument.

9th. “What signs do<sup>109</sup> Jo[seph].<sup>110</sup> Smith give of his divine mission?”

The signs which God is pleased to let him give; according as his wisdom thinks best; in order that he may judge the world agreeably to his own plan.

10th. “Was not Jo[seph]. Smith a money digger?”

Yes, but it was never a very profitable job for<sup>111</sup> him, as he only got fourteen dollars a month for it.

11th. “Did not Jo[seph]. Smith steal his wife?”

Ask her, she was of age, she can answer for herself.

12th. “Do the people have to give up their money when they join his church?”

No other requirement than to bear their proportion of the expenses of the church and support the poor.

13th. “Are the Mormons Abolitionists?”

No, unless delivering the people from Priestcraft, and the Priests from the power of Satan, should be considered such<sup>112</sup>. But we do not believe in setting the Negroes free.

14th. “Do they not stir up the Indians to war and to commit depredations?”

No, and they who reported the story knew it was false when they put it in circulation; these and similar reports are palmed<sup>113</sup> upon the people by the Priests, and this is the <sup>114</sup>reason why we ever thought of answering them.

15th. “Do the Mormons baptize in the name of Jo[seph].<sup>115</sup> Smith?”

No, but if they did, it would be as valid as the baptism administered by the Sectarian Priests.

---

103. Book B-2, 717: “<Junr.>” (TB)

104. Book B-1, 795: adds “Question”

105. DHC 3:28: adds “in”

106. DHC 3:29: replaces “of” with “in”

107. DHC 3:29: adds “[the Mormons]”

108. DHC 3:29: adds “can”

109. DHC 3:29: “does”

110. Book B-1, 795: “Joseph”; Book B-2, 718: “Jo”

111. *EJ* 1:43, Book B-1, 795: replace “for” with “to”

112. DHC 3:29: replaces “such” with “abolition”

113. *EJ* 1:43, Book B-1, 795: “pawnd”; Book B-2, 718 (pencil): “palmed” overwrites “pawnd”

114. DHC 3:29: adds “only”

115. DHC 3:29: “Joe”

16th. “If the Mormon doctrine is true, what has become of all those who have<sup>116</sup> died since the day<sup>117</sup> of the Apostles?”

All those who have not had an opportunity of hearing the Gospel, and being administered unto by an inspired man in the flesh, must have it hereafter, before they can be finally judged.

17th. “Does not Jo[seph].<sup>118</sup> Smith profess to be Jesus Christ?”

No, but he professes to be his brother, as all other Saints have done and now do. Matthew, 12th, 49th, 50, “and he stretched forth his hand<sup>119</sup> towards<sup>120</sup> his disciples and said, behold my mother, and my brethren; for whosoever shall do the will of my father, which is in heaven; the same is my brother, and sister, and mother.[”]

18th. “Is there any thing in the Bible which licenses you to believe in Revelation now-a-days?”

Is there any thing that does not authorize us to believe so? If there is, we have, as yet, not been able to find it.

19th. “Is not the canon of the Scriptures full?”

If it is, there is a great defect in the book, or else it would have said so.

20th. “What are the fundamental principles of your religion?”

The fundamental principles of our religion is<sup>121</sup> the testimony of the Apostles, and Prophets, concerning Jesus Christ, that he died, was buried, and rose again the third day, and ascended up into heaven; and all other things, are only appendages to these<sup>122</sup>, which pertain to our religion<sup>123</sup>. But in connection with these, we believe in the gift of the Holy Ghost; the power of faith; the enjoyment of the spiritual gifts according to the will of God; the restoration of the house of Israel, and the final triumph of truth.

<sup>124</sup>I published the foregoing answers to save myself the trouble of repeating the same a thousand times over and over again.

<sup>125</sup>Wednesday, <sup>126</sup>9th, I attended the funeral of James G.<sup>127</sup> Marsh, and complied with the request that I should preach on the occasion, **and we were greatly edified.**

<sup>128</sup>Thursday 10th, I listened to an address on the political policy of our nation, delivered by President Rigdon, at the school house, in the southwest quarter of the city, to a large concourse of people from all sections of the County, and from other counties also. Although President Rigdon was suffering under a severe cold, and great hoarseness, yet being<sup>129</sup> assisted by the Spirit of God, he was

---

116. DHC 3:29: omits “have”

117. *EJ* 1:43, DHC 3:29: “days”

118. DHC 3:29: “Joe”

119. Book B-1, 795: “hands”

120. *EJ* 1:43, DHC 3:29: “toward”

121. DHC 3:30: “are”

122. DHC 3:30: replaces “these” with “it”

123. DHC 3:30: moves “which pertain to our religion” to follow “other things”

124. *Source*: Composed by WR about 28 Feb. 1844 (see MSHi Chronology), possibly with JS’s help.

125. *Source*: JSj [1838], 39 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:240; *JSP* 1:267; *APR*, 181). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied in bold type.

126. Book B-1, 796: adds “the”

127. JSj [1838], 39, Book B-1, 796: omit “G.”

128. *Source*: JSj [1838], 39–40 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:240; *JSP* 1:267–68; *APR*, 181–82). Some light and heavy editing and change to first person without altering meaning.

129. Book B-2, 719: “be<ing>” (US)

enabled clearly to elucidate the policy of the Federal and Democratic parties from their rise <sup>130</sup>in our country to<sup>131</sup> the present time, to the understanding of all present, giving an impartial hearing<sup>132</sup> to both sides of the question. This address was delivered in consequence of a partial electioneering, Federal speech of Gen[era]l. [John]<sup>133</sup> Wilson at the same place a short time previously, and the politics of the Church of Latter Day Saints, generally, being Democratic,<sup>134</sup> it seemed desirable to hear an elucidation of the principles of both parties, with which I was highly edified.

<sup>135</sup>Friday 11th, I attended<sup>136</sup> the trial of W[illia]m. E. McLellin, and Dr. McCord for transgression, before the Bishop's Court, **who were found in transgression.**

McCord said <sup>137</sup>“he was sorry to trouble the Council on his account, for he had intended to withdraw from the Church, before he left the place; that he had no confidence in the work of God, or his Prophet, **which he has raised up in these last days**, and should go his own<sup>138</sup> way.” He gave up his license and departed.

W[illia]m. E. McLellin stated about the same as McCord: and that “he had no confidence in the heads of the Church, believing they had transgressed, and had got out of the way; consequently he quit praying, and keeping the commandments of God<sup>139</sup> **and went his own way**, and indulged himself in his lustful desires, but when he heard that the first Presidency had made a general settlement and acknowledged their sins, he began to pray again, &c<sup>140</sup>.” When I interrogated him, he said “he had seen nothing out of the way himself, but he judged from hearsay.” **But we are constrained to say, O! foolish Man! what excuse is that thou renderest for thy sins, that because thou hast heard of some man's transgression, that thou shouldest leave thy God, and forsake thy prayers, and turn to those things that thou knowest to be contrary to the will of God; we say unto thee, and to all such, beware! beware! for God will bring thee into judgement for thy sins.**

<sup>141</sup>Saturday 12th, President Rigdon and myself attended the High Council, for the purpose of presenting for their consideration some business relating to our pecuniary concerns.<sup>142</sup>

We stated to the Council our situation, as to maintaining our families, and the relation we now stand in to the Church; spending as we have for eight years, our time, talents, and property, in the service of the Church; and being reduced as it were to beggary, and being still detained in the business and service of the Church, it appears necessary that something should be done for the support of our families by the Church, or else we must do it by our own labors; and if the Church say to us “help

---

130. Book B-1, 796: adds “to the”

131. Book B-1, 796: omits “to”

132. DHC 3:30: replaces “hearing” with “review”

133. Brackets this editor's.

134. Preceding words based on JSj [1838], 40: “the Politics of this Church (with but few exceptions onley,) are that of the Democracy; which is the <Also> the feelings of the speaker <who spoke> this day, and <all> of <all> the first presidency, It <is> my [GWR] principles also.”

135. *Source*: This day's entry from JSj [1838], 40-41 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:240-41; *JSP* 1:268; *APR*, 182). Some light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

136. JSj [1838], 40: “the presidency attend[ed]”

137. DHC 3:31: deletes quotation marks

138. DHC 3:31: omits “own”

139. Book B-1, 796: omits “of God”

140. JSj [1838], 41: replaces “&c.” with “and to keep the commandments of God”; DHC 3:31: omits “&c.”

141. *Source*: This day's entry from JSj [1838], 41-42 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:241-42; *JSP* 1:269; *APR*, 182-83). Some light editing and change to first person. Cf. minutes in *FWR*, 140-41 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 186-87).

142. JSj [1838], 41: “some business pertaining to themselves directly, and individually.”

yourselves,” we will thank them, and immediately do so; but if the Church say “serve us” some provision must be made for our sustenance.

The Council investigated the matter, and instructed the Bishop to make over to Presidents Joseph Smith junior, and Sidney Rigdon, each, an eighty-acre lot of land from the property of <sup>143</sup>Church, situated adjacent to the City Corporation; also appointed three of their number, viz, George W. Harris, Elias Higbee<sup>144</sup>, and Simeon Carter, a Committee to confer<sup>145</sup> with said Presidency and satisfy them for their services the present year: not for preaching, or for receiving the word of God by Revelation: neither for instructing the Saints in righteousness: but for services rendered in the Printing establishment, in translating the Ancient Records, &c., &c. Said Committee agreed that Presidents Smith and Rigdon should receive \_\_\_\_\_\$<sup>146</sup> as a just remuneration for their services this year.

<sup>147</sup>Sunday 13th, Elder Reynolds Cahoon preached in the forenoon; and in the afternoon President Rigdon <sup>148</sup>preached a funeral sermon on the death of [Joseph]<sup>149</sup> Swain Williams, son of Frederick G. Williams.

<sup>150</sup>Monday 14th, I spent in plowing my garden, while Elder Rigdon was preparing and correcting some matter for the press, when<sup>151</sup> Elder Harlow Redfield arrived from Kirtland, Ohio. **And I [George W. Robinson] have spent this day in helping Pres[iden]t Smith, and also in writing.**

---

143. Book B-1, 797, Book B-2, 719, DHC 3:32: add “the”

144. Book B-1, 797: “Higb\ e/e”; first “e” *w.o.* “y”

145. JSj [1838], 42: replaces “confer” with “contract”

146. JSj [1838], 42, Book B-1, 797: add blank spaces and delete “\$”; Book B-2, 719: “[*blank space*] { \$ }”; DHC 3:32: “\$1,100 each”

147. *Source*: JSj [1838], 42 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:243; *JSP* 1:270; *APR*, 183). Light editing.

148. Book B-2, 719: adds erasure

149. Brackets this editor’s.

150. *Source*: JSj [1838], 42 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:243; *JSP* 1:270; *APR*, 183). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

151. Book B-2, 719: “<when>” (US); DHC 3:33: omits “when”



4.

# SETTLEMENT IN CALDWELL AND DAVIESS COUNTIES

May-June 1838

[DN 3 (2 April 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Friday [May] 18th, I left Far West, in company with Sidney<sup>2</sup> Rigdon, T[homas]. B. Marsh, D[avid]. W. Patten, Bishop Partridge, E[lias]. Higbee, S[imeon]. Carter, Alanson Ripley, and many others, for the purpose of visiting the North Country, and laying off stake[s]<sup>3</sup> of Zion; making locations, and laying claims<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>to facilitate the gathering of the Saints, and for the benefit of the poor, in upholding the Church of God. We traveled to the mouth of Honey Creek, which is a tributary of Grand River, where we camped for the night. We passed <sup>6</sup>a beautiful country of land<sup>7</sup>, a majority<sup>8</sup> of which is prairie (untimbered land)<sup>9</sup> and thickly covered with grass and weeds, among which is <sup>10</sup>plenty of game; such as Deer, Turkey, Hen, Elk, &c.<sup>11</sup> We discovered a large black Wolf and my Dog gave him chase,<sup>12</sup> but he outran us. We have nothing to fear in camping out, except the rattlesnake, which is natural<sup>13</sup> to this country, though not very numerous. We turned our horses loose, and let them feed on the prairie.

<sup>14</sup>Saturday 19th, this morning we struck our tents and formed a line of march, crossing Grand

---

1. Source: JSj [1838], 42-43 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:243-44; *JSP* 1:270-71; *APR*, 183-84). Light editing and change to first person.

2. Book B-1, 797: "S."

3. JSj [1838], 42, Book B-1, 797, Book B-2, 720: "stakes"; DHC 3:34: "a stake"

4. DHC 3:34: "claim"

5. DHC 3:34: adds "to lands"

6. DHC 3:34: adds "through"

7. DHC 3:34: omits "of land"

8. DHC 3:34: replaces "a majority" with "the greater part"

9. DHC 3:34: omits words in parentheses

10. Book B-1, 797: adds "a"

11. DHC 3:34: replaces "Hen, Elk, &c." with "and prairie hen"

12. JSj [1838], 43: "Prest Smith put on his dog after the wolf"

13. JSj [1838], 43: "peculiar <natural>"; DHC 3:34: replaces "natural" with "native"

14. Source: This day's entry from JSj [1838], 43-44 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:244-45; *JSP* 1:271; *APR*, 184). Some light editing and change to first person.

River at the mouth of Honey Creek, and Nelson's Ferry. Grand River, is a large, beautiful, <sup>15</sup>deep and rapid stream, during the high waters of spring, <sup>16</sup>and will undoubtedly, admit of steamboat<sup>17</sup> navigation and other water craft; and<sup>18</sup> at the mouth of Honey Creek is a splendid harbor, and<sup>19</sup> good landing<sup>20</sup>. We pursued our course up the river mostly in the<sup>21</sup> timber, <sup>22</sup>about 18 miles<sup>23</sup>, when we arrived at Col. Lyman Wight's<sup>24</sup>, who<sup>25</sup> lives at the foot of Tower Hill (a name I gave it in consequence of the remains of an old Nephite<sup>26</sup> Altar or Tower<sup>27</sup>) where we camped for the Sabbath.

In the afternoon, I went up the river about half a mile to Wight's Ferry, accompanied by President Rigdon, and my Clerk, George W. Robinson, for the purpose of selecting and<sup>28</sup> laying claim to a city plat near said Ferry, in Davis<sup>29</sup> County, Township 60, range 27 and 28, and sections 25, 36, 31 and 30, which the brethren called ["Spring Hill,"] but by the mouth of the Lord it was <sup>30</sup>named Adam-ondi-Ahman, because, said he, it is the place where Adam shall come to visit his people, or the Ancient of days shall sit: as spoken of by<sup>31</sup> Daniel, the Prophet. [Cf. D&C 116]

<sup>32</sup>Sunday 20th, <sup>33</sup>was spent by our company principally, at Adam-ondi-Ahman; but near the close of the day, we struck our tents and traveled about six miles north, and encamped for the night in company<sup>34</sup> with Judge [Josiah]<sup>35</sup> Morin<sup>36</sup> and company, who were also traveling north.

<sup>37</sup>Monday 21st, this morning, after making some locations in this place, which is in Township 61, range 27 and 28; we returned to Robinson's Grove, about 2 miles, to secure some land near Grand River, which we passed the day <sup>38</sup>previous and finding a mistake in the former survey, I sent the Surveyor south five or six miles to obtain a correct line, while some of us tarried to obtain water for the camp.

In the evening I called a Council of the brethren to know whether it was wisdom to go immediately into the North Country, or tarry here and hereabouts, to secure land on Grand River, &c. The brethren spoke their minds freely on the subject, when I stated to the Council that I felt impressed to tarry and secure all the land near by, that is not secured between this and Far West, *especially* on Grand

---

15. Book B-1, 797: adds "~~and~~"

16. JSj [1838], 43: omits "during the high waters of spring"

17. DHC 3:34: "by steamboat" and moves it to follow "navigation"

18. DHC 3:34: omits "and"

19. DHC 3:34: omits "splendid harbor, and"

20. JSj [1838], 43: replaces "good landing" with "for the safety of which crafts, and also for landing freight"

21. DHC 3:35: replaces "in the" with "through"

22. JSj [1838], 43, DHC 3:35: add "for"

23. JSj [1838], 43: "ten miles"

24. DHC 3:35: adds "home"

25. DHC 3:35: replaces "who" with "He" and begins new sentence

26. JSj [1838], 43: "Nephitish"

27. DHC 3:35: adds "that stood there"

28. Book B-1, 797: "<selecting &>" (WR)

29. DHC 3:35: "Davies"

30. JSj [1838], 43: adds "after wards"

31. Book B-2, 720 (darker ink): "\by/" (pos. TB)

32. *Source*: JSj [1838], 44 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:245; *JSP* 1:271; *APR*, 184). Light editing.

33. DHC 3:36: adds "This day"

34. DHC 3:36: omits "in company"

35. Brackets this editor's.

36. Book B-1, 798, Book B-2, 720: "Morain"

37. *Source*: This and next paragraph from JSj [1838], 44 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:245; *JSP* 1:271-73; *APR*, 184-85).

Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

38. Book B-1, 798: adds "~~before~~"



River. President Rigdon concurred, and **said if they should go to [the] north in this expedition he thought it best to go immediately to that place, but thought it best by all means to secure the land near by on the river, &c. The question was put by Pres[iden]t Smith** and the Council voted unanimously to secure the land on Grand River, and between this and Far West.

<sup>39</sup>Elders Kimball, and Hyde, <sup>40</sup>arrived at Kirtland, from England.

<sup>41</sup>Tuesday 22nd, President Rigdon went east with a company and selected some of the best locations in the county, and returned with a good report of that vicinity, and <sup>42</sup>valuable locations which might be secured. Following awhile in<sup>43</sup> the course of the company, **but could not find them and consequently** I returned to camp in Robinson's Grove, and from<sup>44</sup> thence went west to obtain some game to supply our necessities. We discovered some Antiquities about one mile west of the camp, consisting of stone mounds, apparently erected in square piles, though somewhat decayed, and obliterated, by the weather of many years<sup>45</sup>. These<sup>46</sup> mounds were probably<sup>47</sup> erected by the Aborigines of the land, to secrete treasures. We returned without game.

<sup>48</sup>Wednesday 23rd, we all traveled east locating lands, to secure a claim<sup>49</sup>, on Grove Creek, and near the City of Adam-ondi-Ahman. Towards evening I accompanied Elder Rigdon to Col[onel]. Wight's, and the remainder of the company returned to their tents.

<sup>50</sup>Thursday 24th, this morning the company returned to Grove Creek to finish the survey, accompanied by President Rigdon and Col[onel]. Wight, and I returned to Far West.

<sup>51</sup>Friday 25th, the company put<sup>52</sup> up the<sup>53</sup> river, and made some locations. In the afternoon<sup>54</sup>, they struck their tents and removed to Col[onel]. Wight's.

<sup>55</sup>Saturday 26th, they surveyed lands on the other side of the river opposite Adam-ondi-Ahman.

<sup>56</sup>Sunday 27th, they<sup>57</sup> <sup>58</sup>spent <sup>59</sup>at Col[onel]. Wight's.

---

39. Source: *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 55, which announced the arrival of Kimball and Hyde and said they had been "absent from their homes eleven months and eight days." This was calculated from a departure date of 13 June 1837 (cf. DHC 2:492-93; chap. 34). Cf. *HCKj* [1840], 43, which dates arrival to 22 May, "having been absent eleven months and nine days."

40. DHC 3:36: adds "this day (21st May)"

41. Source: JSj [1838], 44-45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:246; *JSP* 1:273; *APR*, 185). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

42. DHC 3:36: adds "with information of"

43. DHC 3:37: omits "in"

44. DHC 3:37: omits "from"

45. JSj [1838], 45: "by the almost continual rains"

46. Book B-2, 721: "The\se/"

47. JSj [1838], 45: "undoubtedly"

48. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:246; *JSP* 1:273; *APR*, 185). Light editing and change to first person.

49. JSj [1838], 45: omits "to secure a claim"

50. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:246; *JSP* 1:273; *APR*, 185-86). Light editing and change to first person.

51. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:246; *JSP* 1:274; *APR*, 186).

52. DHC 3:37: replaces "put" with "went"

53. DHC 3:37: replaces "the" with "Grand"

54. Book B-1, 798: replaces "afternoon" with "P.M."

55. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:247; *JSP* 1:274; *APR*, 186).

56. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:247; *JSP* 1:274; *APR*, 186).

57. DHC 3:37: replaces "they" with "the company"

58. DHC 3:37: adds "locating lands"

59. DHC 3:37: adds "the day"

<sup>60</sup>Monday 28th, the company started for home, (Far West,) and I left Far West the same day in company with Brother Hyrum Smith and 15 or 20 others, to seek locations in the north, and about noon we met President Rigdon and his Company going in to the city where they arrived the same evening.

<sup>61</sup>President Hyrum Smith returned to Far West on the 30th, and I returned on the 1st of June, on account of my family for I had a son born unto me<sup>62</sup>.

<sup>63</sup>Monday June 4th, I left Far West with President Rigdon, my brother Hyrum and others for Adam-ondi-Ahman, and stayed at Brother Moses Dailey's over night; and on the morning of the 5th, went to Col[onel]. Lyman Wight's in the rain. We continued surveying, building houses, &c.<sup>64</sup>, day after day, for many days until the Surveyor had completed the city plat<sup>65</sup>. **This day was spent in diverse labors for the Church, together with a greater share of this month and the ensuing one.**

<sup>66</sup>Monday June<sup>67</sup> 11th, President Joseph Fielding was married to Hannah Greenwood, Preston, England.

<sup>68</sup>June 16th<sup>69</sup>, my uncle, John Smith, and family with six other families arrived in Far West all in good health and spirits. I counseled them to settle at Adam-ondi-Ahman.

<sup>70</sup>Adam-ondi-Ahman, Missouri, Davis<sup>71</sup> County June 28th, 1838.<sup>72</sup> A Conference of Elders and Members of the Church of<sup>73</sup> Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, was held in this place this day, for the purpose of organizing this stake of Zion, called ADAM-ONDI-AHMAN.

The meeting convened at 10 o'clock a.m., in the Grove, near the house of Elder Lyman Wight.

President Joseph Smith junior, was called to the Chair; who explained the object of the meeting which was to organize a Presidency and High Council, to preside over this stake of Zion; and attend to the affairs of the Church in Davis<sup>74</sup> County.

It was then motioned<sup>75</sup>, seconded, and carried by the unanimous voice of the assembly, that President John Smith should act as President of the stake of *Adam-ondi-Ahman*.

---

60. Source: JSj [1838], 45 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:247; *JSP* 1:274; *APR*, 186). Light editing and change to first person.

61. Source: JSj [1838], 45-46 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:247; *JSP* 1:274; *APR*, 186). Light editing and change to first person.

62. JSj [1838], 45: "on account of his wives sickness who was delivered of a son [on 2 June]"

63. Source: JSj [1838], 46 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:247-48; *JSP* 1:275; *APR*, 186). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

64. DHC 3:38: omits "&c."

65. Book B-1, 799, Book B-2, 721: "plot"

66. Source: Probably composed by WR based on WRj 1:76 (transcription in vol. 8, III.3). See also JFj [1837-38], 73 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.19).

67. Book B-1, 799: replaces "Monday June" with "and on the"

68. Book B-1, 799: adds "<p 6 addenda note V>" (WB). This paragraph was added to Book B-1, Addenda, 6, Note V, by WB before 6 Aug. 1845, and was incorporated in Book B-2, 721, by WB between 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). For the earliest draft of Note V, see vol. 7, III.5. Source: Evidently based on information supplied by GAS. BY's Memoranda for Book B-1 (vol. 7, III.3) mentions "page 799—13 line corrections, addenda to be made by GAS" (cf. GASHi, 71; GASM, 107). The minutes of the apostolic committee for July 1845 mentions "page 799—line 13 addition to be made by G.A.S." (See Apostolic Review of Book B-1 in vol. 7, IV.4).

69. Book B-1, Addenda, 6, Note V: adds "1838"

70. Source: *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 60-61.

71. DHC 3:38: "Daviess"

72. Place and date appear at the end of the minutes in *EJ* 1:61.

73. Book B-2, 721: "<the Church of>" (prob. WB)

74. DHC 3:38: "Daviess"

75. DHC 3:38: replaces "motioned" with "moved"

Reynolds Cahoon was unanimously chosen 1st Counselor and Lyman Wight 2nd Counselor.

After prayer the Presidents ordained Elder Wight as 2nd assistant<sup>76</sup> Counselor.

Vinson Knight was chosen acting Bishop pro tempore by the unanimous voice of the assembly.

President John Smith then proceeded to organize the High Council. The Councilors were chosen according to the following order, by a unanimous vote: John Lemon 1st, Daniel Stanton 2nd, Mayhew Hillman 3rd, Daniel Carter 4th, Isaac Perry 5th, Harrison Sagers 6th, Alanson Brown 7th, Thomas Gordon 8th, Lorenzo D.<sup>77</sup> Barnes 9th, George A. Smith 10th, Harvey Olmstead 11th, Ezra Thayer 12th.

After the ordination of the Councilors, who had not previously been ordained to the High Priesthood, President Joseph Smith junior made remarks by way of charge to the Presidents and Counselors instructing them in the duties of their callings, and the responsibility of their stations, exhorting them to be cautious and deliberate in all their councils, and be careful and<sup>78</sup> act in righteousness in all things.

President John Smith, R[eynolds]. Cahoon, and L[yman]. Wight, then made some remarks.

Lorenzo D.<sup>79</sup> Barnes was unanimously chosen Clerk of this Council and stake, and<sup>80</sup> after singing the well known hymn, Adam-ondi-Ahman, the meeting closed by prayer by President Cahoon, and a benediction by President Joseph [Smith]<sup>81</sup> junior.

**Joseph Smith, Jr. Chair[ma]n<sup>82</sup>**

LORENZO D.<sup>83</sup> BARNES,

ISAAC PERRY, Clerks.

<sup>84</sup>Adam-ondi-Ahman is situated<sup>85</sup> immediately on the north side of Grand River in Davis<sup>86</sup> County, Missouri, about 25 miles north of Far West. It is beautifully<sup>87</sup> situated on an elevated spot of ground, <sup>88</sup>overlooking the river and the country round about which renders the place as healthy as any part of the United States.

<sup>89</sup>[June 28]<sup>90</sup> This day<sup>91</sup> Victoria was crowned Queen of England.

---

76. DHC 3:38: omits "assistant"

77. Book B-1, 799: "<D.>"

78. *EJ* 1:61, Book B-1, 799: replace "and" with "to"

79. Book B-2, 722 (darker ink): "\D./"

80. DHC 3:39: omits "and" and begins new sentence

81. Book B-1, 799, Book B-2, 722, DHC 3:39: add "Smith"

82. This line appears only in *EJ* 1:61 and Book B-1, 799.

83. Book B-1, 799: "<D>"

84. *Source*: A portion of Alanson Ripley's description of northern Missouri in *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 52.

85. DHC 3:39: replaces "located" with "situated"

86. Book B-1, 799, DHC 3:39: "Davie's"

87. DHC 3:39: omits "beautifully"; *EJ* 1:61: "situated on a beautiful elevated spot"

88. DHC 3:39 rewrites remainder of sentence as follows: "which renders the place as healthful as any part of the United States, and overlooking the river and the country round about, it is certainly a beautiful location."

89. This paragraph appears above before the entry for June 11th in Book B-1, 799. Guidelines were subsequently added indicating that it be moved to this position. This paragraph was inserted interlinearly by TB in Book B-2, 722. *Source*: Possibly based on an almanac such as the one inserted in GASj [1840-42], 41 (see Sources Cited, under H&D Almanac). WR noted in his journal "Coronati[o]n" (WRj 4:8).

90. Book B-1, 799: "Friday June 28th"

91. Book B-1, 799: omits "this day"



5.

EVENTS AND REVELATIONS  
AT FAR WEST  
July 1838

[DN 3 (2 April 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>July 4th, <sup>2</sup>was spent in celebrating the declaration of Independence of the United States of America, and also in<sup>3</sup> the Saints making a declaration of independence from all mobs and persecutions which have been inflicted upon them, time after time, until they could bear it no longer: having been driven by ruthless mobs, and enemies of truth from their homes, <sup>4</sup>their property confiscated, their lives exposed, and their all jeopardized by such barbarous conduct; also in laying<sup>5</sup> the corner stones of the houses<sup>6</sup> of the Lord, agreeably<sup>7</sup> to the commandment<sup>8</sup> of the Lord unto us given April 26th, 1838<sup>9</sup>.

Joseph Smith junior was President of the day; Hyrum Smith vice President, and Sidney Rigdon Orator, Reynolds Cahoon chief Marshal, and<sup>10</sup> G[eorge]. M. Hinckle and J[efferson].<sup>11</sup> Hunt assistant marshals, <sup>12</sup>Geo[rge]. W. Robinson Clerk.<sup>13</sup>

The order of the day was splendid **and beautiful. Several thousands of spectators were present to witness the same. The address was delivered on the public square under the hoisted flag representing the Liberty and Independence of these United States of America.**

---

1. *Source*: Following three paragraphs from JSj [1838], 46–47 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:248–49; *JSP* 1:275–78; *APR*, 186–87). Some light editing. Deleted material supplied in bold type. Cf. detailed report in *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 60.

2. DHC 3:41: adds “This day”

3. DHC 3:41: replaces “in” with “by”

4. DHC 3:41: adds “and having had”

5. DHC 3:41: omits “also in laying”

6. JSj [1838], 46: “house”

7. DHC 3:41: “agreeable”

8. DHC 3:41: “commandments”

9. DHC 3:41: adds “were laid”

10. DHC 3:41: omits “and”

11. Brackets this editor’s.

12. DHC 3:41: adds “and”

13. JSj [1838], 46: “and myself [GWR] commanded the Regiment”; Book B-1, 800 (pencil): “Col<lk>.”; Book B-2, 722 (darker ink): “C{\lk/}.” GWR was a colonel in the Caldwell County regiment (see *JSP* 1:276n165).

<sup>14</sup>The procession commenced forming at 10 o'clock a.m., in the following order, first the infantry<sup>15</sup>, 2nd the Patriarchs of the Church; the President, vice President, and Orator, the Twelve<sup>16</sup>, Presidents of the Stake<sup>17</sup>, and High Council, Bishop and Counsel [council]<sup>18</sup>, Architects, Ladies and Gentlemen, and<sup>19</sup> the Cavalry in<sup>20</sup> rear. <sup>21</sup>The procession was large,<sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup>marched to music and formed a circle round the excavation<sup>24</sup> with the Ladies in front when<sup>25</sup> the south<sup>26</sup> corner stone of the Lord's House in Far West, Missouri, was laid by the Presidents of the Stake, assisted by twelve men; <sup>27</sup>**the southwest corner, by the Presidents of the Elders, assisted by twelve men;** the northwest corner by the Bishop<sup>28</sup>, assisted by twelve men; and the northeast corner by the President of the Teachers, assisted by twelve men. <sup>29</sup>This house is to be 110 feet long and 80 feet broad.

After which<sup>30</sup> the Oration was delivered by President Rigdon, (afterwards published in the *Far West*) [the Liberty Clay County print]<sup>31</sup> at the close of which was<sup>32</sup> a shout of Hosanna; and a song composed for the occasion by Levi [W.] Hancock was sung by Solomon Hancock. The most perfect order prevailed throughout the day.

<sup>33</sup>**The Seventies assembled in the Lord's House in Kirtland on the 6th of March [1838] to devise the best means of removing their quorum to Missouri according to the Revelations; and on the 10th it was made manifest by vision and prophecy, that they should go up in a camp, pitching their tents by the way. On the 13th, they adopted a Constitution and laws to govern them on their journey, which was soon signed by 175 of the brethren. The privilege was given for any one to go, who did not belong to the Seventies, provided they would abide the Constitution, and all the faithful who could, improved the opportunity for fearful sights, and great signs were**

---

14. Source: Next two paragraphs based on *EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 60.

15. DHC 3:41: adds "(militia)"

16. DHC 3:41: adds "Apostles"

17. DHC 3:41: "stakes"

18. DHC 3:41: "counselors"

19. DHC 3:41: omits "and" and starts new sentence

20. *EJ* 1:60, DHC 3:41: replace "in" with "brought up the"

21. DHC 3:41: continues previous sentence by adding "of"

22. DHC 3:41: replaces "The procession was large" with "the large procession"

23. DHC 3:41: adds "which"

24. *EJ* 1:60, Book B-1, 800: replace "excavation" with "cellar"; Book B-2, 722: "[*erasure*] <excavation>" (US); DHC 3:41: moves "round the excavation" to follow "in front"

25. DHC 3:41: omits "when" and starts new sentence

26. *EJ* 1:60, Book B-1, 800, DHC 3:41: "southeast"; Book B-2, 722: "south<east>" (US)

27. Bolded words omitted in *DN*, but appear in Book B-1, 800, and DHC 3:42; added above the line in darker ink in Book B-2, 722 (US).

28. Book B-2, 722: "<by the Bishop>" (WB)

29. Next sentence added above the line by TB in Book B-1, 800, and is based on WWP's 7 July 1837 letter, which reported that "a cellar for this great edifice, 110 feet long by 80 broad was nearly finished" (*M&A* 3 [July 1837]: 529; cf. DHC 2:496).

30. DHC 3:42: omits "After which"

31. DHC 3:42: omits words in parentheses as well as bracketed words. BHR noted: "The oration soon after appeared in *The Far West*, a periodical published at Liberty, Clay County Missouri. It was also published in pamphlet form from the office of the 'Elder's Journal.' (See statement by Ebenezer Robinson in *The Return*, vol. 1, p. 70)" (DHC 3:42n). See Rigdon 1838.

32. Book B-2, 722 (darker ink): "<was>" (pos. TB)

33. This and next paragraph appear in MSHjS and *DN*, but omitted in DHC 3:42. Source: Based on ESj, 1-15 (cf. DHC 3:87-101; chap. 9), and SDTj, 1-2 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). For a discussion of this deletion, as well as the deletion of material dealing with the Kirtland Camp in chaps. 5-8, see introduction to Elias Smith's history in chap. 9.

shown forth in and around Kirtland, clearly manifesting to the honest heart that God was not unmindful of his word, and that he would bring upon the place those judgments he had declared by his servants.

Elders James Foster, Zerah Pulsipher, Joseph Young, Henry Herriman, Josiah Butterfield, Benjamin Wilber, and Elias Smith were counselors to lead the camp; which was divided into companies of tens with a Captain over each; Elias Smith was chosen Clerk and Historian; and Jonathan H. Hale, Treasurer, and on the 5th of July they met <sup>34</sup>about ¼ mile south of the Lord's House and pitched their tents in form of <sup>35</sup>a hollow square. On the 6th<sup>36</sup>, at noon they struck their tents and began to move toward the south and in 30 minutes the whole camp was under motion consisting of 515<sup>37</sup> souls, <sup>38</sup>249 males, 266 females; 27 Tents, 59 Wagons, 97 Horses, 22 Oxen, 69 Cows, and 1 Bull. Jonathan Dunham was engineer. The camp traveled to Chester 7 miles the 1st day, and pitched their tents in form of a hollow square <sup>39</sup>formed by their wagons.

<sup>40</sup>[July 6]<sup>41</sup> This day I received a letter from Heber C. Kimball, and Orson Hyde, dated at Kirtland, Ohio, expressive<sup>42</sup> of<sup>43</sup> their good feelings, firmness in the faith, and prosperity, &c<sup>44</sup>.

Also another letter from my brother<sup>45</sup>, as follows:

<sup>46</sup>Nine miles from Terre Haute, Indiana.

Brother Joseph: I sit down to inform you of our situation at the present time. I started from Norton, Ohio, the 7th of May, in company with father, William, Wilkins<sup>47</sup> Jenkins Salisbury, W[illia]m. McClary, and Lewis Robbins, and families<sup>48</sup>, also sister [Margaret Leasure]<sup>49</sup> Singly **is one of our number**. We started with 15 Horses, 7 Wagons, and 2 Cows. We have left 2 Horses by the way sick, **one with a swelling on his shoulder**, and a third Horse (as it were<sup>50</sup> our <sup>51</sup>dependence) was taken lame last evening and is not able to travel, and we have stopped to doctor him. We were disappointed on every hand before we started in getting money. We got no assistance whatever, only as we have taken in sister Singly, and she has assisted us as far as her means extended<sup>52</sup>. We had when we started \$75 in money, we sold the 2 cows for thirteen dollars and fifty cents per Cow. We have sold of your goods to the amount of \$45.74, and now we have only \$25 to carry 28 souls and 13 Horses 500 miles.

34. Book B-1, 800: adds "~~on the land owned by Jacob Bump~~"

35. Book B-1, 800: "<form of>" (WR)

36. Book B-1, 800: "13th"; Book B-2, 723: "{\6/}"

37. Book B-1, 801 (pencil): "529 <515>"; Book B-2, 723: "5{\15/}"

38. Book B-2, 723: adds an erased interlinear insertion

39. Book B-1, 801, Book B-2, 723: add "within a hollow square"

40. *Source*: Summary of letter copied in JSj [1838], 48-49 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:250-52; *JSP* 1:278-80; *APR*, 188-89).

41. DHC 3:43: adds "July 6"

42. DHC 3:43: "expressing"

43. DHC 3:43: omits "of"

44. DHC 3:43: omits "&c."

45. DHC 3:43: adds "Don Carlos Smith"

46. *Source*: JSj [1838], 50-51 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:252-53; *JSP* 1:280-81; *APR*, 189-91). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

47. Book B-1, 801, Book B-2, 723: omit "Wilkins"

48. Book B-1, 801: "famil\ie/s"; "ie" *w.o.* "y"

49. Brackets this editor's (cf. *JSP* 1:280).

50. DHC 3:43: omits "as it were"

51. DHC 3:43: adds "main"

52. JSj [1838], 50, Book B-1, 801: "extends"; Book B-2, 723: "extend{\ed/}"



We have lived very close and camped out at night<sup>53</sup>, notwithstanding the rain and cold, and my babe only two weeks old when we started. Agnes [Coolbrith Smith]<sup>54</sup> is very feeble, father and mother are not well and very much fatigued; mother has a severe cold, and in fact it is nothing but the prayer of Faith, and the power of God, that will sustain them, and bring them through. Our courage is good and I think we shall be brought through. I leave it with you and Hyrum to devise some way to assist us to some more expense money. We have <sup>55</sup>unaccountable<sup>56</sup> bad roads, had our horses down in the mud, and broke one wagon tongue and thills, and broke down the carriage twice, and yet we are all alive and encamped on a dry place for almost the first time, poverty is a heavy load, but we are all obliged to welter under it.

It is now dark and I close; may the Lord bless you all, and bring us together is my prayer. Amen. All the arrangements that brother Hyrum left for getting money failed; they did not gain us one cent.

DON C. SMITH.

To J. Smith Jr.<sup>57</sup>

<sup>58</sup>Saturday [July] 7th, the Kirtland Camp, moved forward to Aurora 13 miles and encamped for the Sabbath. Sunday 8th, there was some sickness in the camp. They held a public meeting and the leaders informed them that the destroyer was in their midst, and some would fall victims unless they adhered strictly to the covenant they had made, laid aside all covetousness and live by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord, they were threatened, this night, with Tar and Feathers from the mob of the place, and were obliged to keep a close watch to keep their Horses from being stolen by the mob, who threw a club and hit Elder [Samuel D.] Tyler on the breast.

<sup>59</sup>The three Revelations which I received January 12th, 1838, the day I left Kirtland, were read in the public congregation at Far West; and the same day I inquired of the Lord and received the following Revelation<sup>60</sup>, given at Far West, July<sup>61</sup> 8th, 1838<sup>62</sup>, which was also read in public. [“]O Lord! Show unto thy servant<sup>63</sup> how much thou requirest of the properties of thy people for a tithing?[”]<sup>64</sup>

53. Book B-1, 801: “a nights”; Book B-2, 723: “{\at/}”

54. Brackets this editor’s.

55. JSj [1838], 50, Book B-1, 801: add “had”

56. DHC 3:43: “unaccountably”

57. This line only in JSj [1838], 51.

58. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:44. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 3-5 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), and possibly ESj, 15-16 (cf. DHC 3:101; chap. 9).

59. *Source*: JSj [1838], 51, 56 (GWR) (PJS 2:253, 257; JSP 1:281, 288; APR, 191, 194). BHR reported that he was unable to locate the three uncanonized revelations, despite “diligent search ... through the several packages of Church documents in the Historians Office” (DHC 3:44n); however, they were copied into JSj [1838], 51-53 (PJS 2:253-55; JSP 1:282-84; APR, 191-93).

60. DHC 3:44: replaces “Revelation” with “answer”

61. JSj [1838], 56: “Jun. <July>”

62. DHC 3:44: moves “given at Far West, July 8th, 1838” below to form part of the heading for the revelation

63. JSj [1838], 56: “servants”

64. Quotation marks added in DHC 3:44, which deletes question mark and moves it above to follow “inquired of the Lord”



ANSWER.<sup>65</sup>[D&C 119; 1844:107]<sup>66</sup>

[1.] Verily thus saith the Lord, I require all their surplus property to be put into the hands of the Bishop of my Church of Zion, for the building of mine house, and for the laying of the foundation of Zion, and for the Priesthood, and for the debts of the Presidency of my Church, and this shall be the beginning of the Tithing of my people; and after that, those who have thus been tithed, shall pay one-tenth of all their interest annually; and this shall be a standing law unto them forever, for my holy Priesthood saith the Lord.

[2.] Verily I say unto you it shall come to pass, that all those who gather unto the land of Zion, shall be tithed of their surplus properties, and shall observe this law, or they shall not be found worthy to abide among you, and I say unto you if my people observe not this law, to keep it holy, and by this law, sanctify the land of Zion unto me, that my statutes and my judgments may be kept thereon; that it may be most holy; behold verily I say unto you; it shall not be a land of Zion unto you, and this shall be an ensample unto all the stakes of Zion, even so Amen.

<sup>67</sup>Also <sup>68</sup>I received the following Revelation given July 18th<sup>69</sup>, 1838, making known the disposition of the properties tithed as named in the preceding Revelation.

[D&C 120]<sup>70</sup>

Verily, thus saith the Lord, the time has now come that it shall be disposed of by a Council composed of the first Presidency of my Church; and of the Bishop and his Council; and by my<sup>71</sup> High Council, and by<sup>72</sup> mine own voice unto them, saith the Lord, even so. Amen.

<sup>73</sup>Also I received the following Revelation given to William Marks, Newel K. Whitney, Oliver Granger and others, Zion<sup>74</sup> July 8th, 1838.

[D&C 117]<sup>75</sup>

[1.] Verily thus saith the Lord unto my servant William Marks, and also unto my servant N. K. Whitney, let them settle up their business speedily and journey from the land of Kirtland, before I the Lord send again<sup>76</sup> the snows upon the earth<sup>77</sup>; let them awake, and arise, and come forth, and not tarry, for I the Lord command it; therefore if they tarry it shall not be well with them, let them repent of all their sins, and of all their covetous desires, before me saith the Lord,

65. DHC 3:44: replaces "ANSWER" with "*Revelation, Given at Far West, July 8, 1838*"

66. Source: This revelation also copied into JSj [1838], 56 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:258; *JSP* 1:288; *APR*, 195).

67. Source: This paragraph from JSj [1838], 57 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:259; *JSP* 1:289; *APR*, 195).

68. Book B-1, 802: adds "~~the same day~~"

69. JSj [1838], 57, Book B-1, 802, Book B-2, 724, DHC 3:44: "8th"

70. Source: JSj [1838], 57 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:259; *JSP* 1:289; *APR*, 195). First canonized D&C [1876].

71. JSj [1838], 57: "<my>"

72. JSj [1838], 57: "<by>"

73. Source: JSj [1838], 57 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:259; *JSP* 1:289; *APR*, 195).

74. DHC 3:45, JSj [1838], 57: "at Far West"

75. Source: JSj [1838], 57-59 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:259-60; *JSP* 1:289-90; *APR*, 195-97). First canonized in D&C [1876].

76. JSj [1838], 57: moves "again" to follow "snows"

77. JSj [1838], 57: replaces "earth" with "ground"

for what is property unto me saith the Lord; let the properties of Kirtland be turned out for debts saith the Lord. Let them go saith the Lord, and whatsoever remaineth let it remain in your hands saith the Lord; for have I not the fowls of heaven; and also the fish of the sea, and the beasts of the mountains? Have I not made the earth? Do I not hold the destinies of all the armies of the nations of the earth, therefore will I not make solitary places to bud and to blossom, and to bring forth in abundance, saith the Lord?

[2.] Is there not room enough upon the mountains of Adam-ondi-Ahman, and upon the plains of Olaha Shinehah, or <sup>78</sup>the land where Adam dwelt; that you should not covet that which is but the drop, and neglect the more weighty matters. Therefore come up hither unto the land of my people even Zion. Let my servant William Marks be faithful over a few things, and he shall be ruler over many. Let him preside in the midst of my people in the City of Far West, and let him be blessed with the blessings of my people. Let my servant N. K. Whitney, be ashamed of the Nicholatine band, and of all their secret abominations, and of all his littleness of soul before me, saith the Lord, and come up to the land of Adam-ondi-Ahman, and be a Bishop unto my people, saith the Lord, not in name but in deed, saith the Lord.

[3.] And again I say unto you, I remember my servant Oliver Granger, behold verily I say unto him that his name shall be had in sacred remembrance from generation to generation, for *ever* and *ever*, saith the Lord. Therefore let him contend earnestly for the redemption of the first Presidency of my Church, saith the Lord, and when he falls he shall rise again, for his sacrifice shall be more sacred unto me, than his increase, saith the Lord; therefore let him come up hither speedily, unto the land of Zion, and in the due time he shall be made a Merchant unto my name, saith the Lord, for the benefit of my people: therefore let no man despise my servant Oliver Granger, but let the blessings of my people be on him for ever and ever. And again verily I say unto you, let all my servants in the land of Kirtland, remember the Lord their God, and mine house also, to keep and preserve it holy, and to overthrow the money changers in mine own due time saith the Lord, even so, Amen.

<sup>79</sup>Also I received the following Revelation, given at Far West, July 8th, 1838. Show unto us thy will, O Lord! Concerning the Twelve?

ANSWER.<sup>80</sup>

[D&C 118]<sup>81</sup>

Verily thus saith the Lord, let a Conference be held immediately, let the Twelve be organized, and let men be appointed to supply the place<sup>82</sup> of those who are<sup>83</sup> fallen. Let my servant Thomas remain for a season in the land of Zion, to publish my word. Let the residue continue to preach from that hour, and if they will do this in all lowliness of heart, in meekness and humility<sup>84</sup>, and longsuffering, I the Lord <sup>85</sup>give unto them a promise that I will provide for their families, and an effectual door shall be opened for them, from henceforth; and next spring let them depart to go over the great waters, and there promulgate my gospel, the fullness thereof, and

---

78. JSj [1838], 58: adds "in"

79. Source: JSj [1838], 54 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:256; *JSP* 1:285; *APR*, 193).

80. DHC 3:46: omits "ANSWER"

81. Source: JSj [1838], 54-55 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:256-57; *JSP* 1:285; *APR*, 193-94). First canonized in D&C [1876].

82. JSj [1838], 54: "place<s>"

83. JSj [1838], 54: omits "are"

84. JSj [1838], 54: replaces "humility" with "pureness"

85. JSj [1838], 54: adds "God"

bear record of my name. Let them take leave of my Saints in the City Far West on the 26th day of April next, on the building spot of my house saith the Lord. Let my servant John Taylor, and also, my servant John E. Page,<sup>86</sup> also my servant Wilford Woodruff, and also my servant Willard Richards, be appointed to fill the places of those who have fallen and be officially notified of their appointment.<sup>87</sup>

<sup>88</sup>Far West, July 9th, 1838, a Conference of the Twelve Apostles of the last days<sup>89</sup> assembled at Far West agreeably<sup>90</sup> to a<sup>91</sup> Revelation given July 8th, 1838.

**Council called to order. Persons present belonging to said quorums.** President<sup>92</sup> Thomas B. Marsh, David W. Patten, Brigham Young, Parley P. Pratt and William Smith: T. B. Marsh, Presiding.

**Council opened by prayer by president.**

Resolved first that the persons who are to fill the places of those who are fallen, be immediately notified to come to Far West,<sup>93</sup> also, those of the Twelve who are not present.

Resolved 2nd, that Thomas B. Marsh notify Wilford Woodruff, that P[arley]. P. Pratt notify O[rson]. Pratt, and that President Rigdon notify Willard Richards, who is now in England.

Voted that President Marsh publish the same in the next *Journal*<sup>94</sup>.

President Rigdon gave some counsel<sup>95</sup> concerning the provision<sup>96</sup> necessary to be made for the families of the Twelve, while laboring in the cause of their Redeemer, advising them to instruct their converts to move without delay to the places of gathering, and there to strictly attend to the law of God.

T. B. MARSH, President,  
G. W. ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>97</sup>**This day the Kirtland Camp passed on to Talmadge 20 miles with great fatigue, the weather being very hot.**

[DN 3 (16 April 1853): 1]

<sup>98</sup>Tuesday 10th, about this time I visited Adam-ondi-Ahman in company with President Rigdon, brother Hyrum, and George W. Robinson. <sup>99</sup>**We saw a deer or two on the way. President Smith set**

86. JSj [1838], 55: adds "and"

87. JSj [1838], 55: adds "even so Amen"

88. *Source: EJ* 1 (Aug. 1838): 61. Light editing. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

89. DHC 3:47: omits "of the last days"

90. *EJ* 1:61, DHC 3:47: "agreeable"

91. DHC 3:47: replaces "a" with "the"

92. *EJ* 1:61: omits "President"; DHC 3:47: replaces "President" with "present"

93. DHC 3:47: adds "as"

94. DHC 3:47: "next number of *The Elders' Journal*"

95. *EJ* 1:61: replaces "counsel" with "instructions"

96. DHC 3:47: "provisions"

97. This paragraph in MSHJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:47. *Source: Based on SDTj*, 5 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. *ESj*, 16-17 (DHC 3:101-2).

98. *Source: Based on JSj* [1838], 47 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:249; *JSP* 1:276; *APR*, 187), which states only that the event occurred "Shortly after" 4 July 1838.

99. *Source: The remainder of this and next three paragraphs are from a deleted portion of JSj* [1838], 47 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:249; *JSP* 1:276-78; *APR*, 187).

his dogs after them, one of which was a greyhound, which caught the deer but could not hold him, although he threw him down; yet he injured the dog so badly that he let him go, and we lost him. The race was quite amusing indeed.

[June 1838]<sup>100</sup> I would mention or notice something about O[liver] Cowdery, David Whitmer, Lyman E. Johnson, and John Whitmer who being guilty of base iniquities and that too, manifest in the ages of all men, and being often entreated would continue in their course seeking the lives of the First Presidency and to overthrow the Kingdom of God which they once testified of.

President Rigdon preached one Sabbath [17 June 1838] upon the salt that had lost its savor that it is henceforth good for nothing but to be cast out and trodden under foot of men, and the wicked flee when no man pursueth. These men took warning and soon they were seen bounding over the prairie like the scape goat to carry off their own sins. We have not seen them since. Their influence is gone and they are in a miserable condition. So also it [is] with all who turn from the truth to lying, cheating, defrauding, and swindling.

Some time past was spent in trying to obtain pay from these men who are named above who have absconded and endeavored to defraud their creditors.

<sup>101</sup>It happened about these times that some excitement was raised in the adjoining counties, that is Ray and Clay, against us in consequence of the sudden departure of these wicked characters of the apostates from this Church into that vicinity reporting false stories and statements, but when they come to hear the other side of the question their feelings were all allayed upon that subject especially.

The emigration to this land is very extensive and numerous. Some few are troubled with the ague and fever. The First Presidency are chiefly engaged in counseling and settling the emigrants to this land. The prophets [prophecies] are fulfilling very fast upon our heads and in our day and generation. They are gathering from the North, and from the South, from the East, and from [the] West unto Zion for safety against the day of wrath which is to be poured out without mixture upon this generation according to the prophets. [D&C 115:6]

<sup>102</sup>This morning [July 10] the Counselors of the Camp drew up six Resolutions, which were unanimously adopted in substance as follows:

- 1st. The Engineer shall receive advice from the Counselors concerning his duties.
- 2nd. At four o'clock a.m., the horn shall blow for rising, and at 20 minutes past four for prayers, at which time each overseer shall see that the inmates of his tent are ready for worship.
- 3rd. The head of each division, shall keep a roll of all his able bodied men to stand guard in turn, as called for by the Engineer, one half in the former the other half in the latter part of the night.
- 4th. Each company of the Camp is entitled to an equal proportion of the milk, whether they own the cows or not.
- 5th. Thomas Butterfield shall be appointed herdsman, to drive the cows and stock, and see that they are taken care of,

---

100. JSj [1838], 47 (lighter ink): adds in margin "June" (pos. WR). See also "Material facts left out of the history, in vol. 7, IV.1, where WR dates the following passage to "1838 Last of May or first June".

101. This and next paragraph are from a deleted portion of JSj [1838], 54 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:255-56; *JSP* 1:284; *APR*, 193).

102. Following bolded paragraphs dealing with the activities of the Kirtland Camp, from 10 to 24 July 1838, appear in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:47. *Source*: Based on ESj, 17-28 (cf. DHC 3:102-14; chap. 9), and SDTj, 5-19 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). First part dealing with the resolutions of the 10th from ESj, 17-18.

and call for assistance when needed. 6th. That in no case at present, shall the Camp move more than<sup>103</sup> 15 miles per day, unless circumstances absolutely require it.

The Camp moved six miles this day and encamped near Akron, on the Ohio Canal, where they lightened their loads by putting some of their goods on a Boat to be conveyed by water.

<sup>104</sup>Wednesday 11th, 10 a.m., Elder [Benjamin] Wilber's child died and was buried at 1 p.m. The Camp moved eleven miles and tarried over night at Chippeway, and although they were thoroughly drenched with a heavy shower, and retired to their lodgings wet, one man who had been troubled with the rheumatism said next morning, Thursday 12th, he had not felt so well and spry for a long time. Camp traveled to Wayne 17 miles, having some rain <sup>105</sup>and a little murmuring.

Friday 13th, passed on to Mohican 17 miles, exciting great curiosity among the inhabitants<sup>106</sup>; attended with some hard speeches about Jo. Smith; while one honest looking Dutchman said he wished he was ready to go along with them.

<sup>107</sup>Saturday 14th, the Camp moved to Mifflin<sup>108</sup> 10 miles. This was the first day since leaving Kirtland, that they did not break one or more wagons. N. B. Baldwin preferred a <sup>109</sup>charge against Abraham Bond, for murmuring and other unchristian like conduct. After hearing both parties the Council referred them to the company of their own tent for settlement.

<sup>110</sup>Sunday 15th, the Camp was engaged in preaching the first principles of the Gospel and many came to listen.

Monday 16th, traveled 16 miles, and encamped at Springfield. Three or four miles east of Mansfield<sup>111</sup>, the Camp was met by the County Sheriff<sup>112</sup>, his deputy, and Mr. Stringer, who had taken out a warrant for several of the brethren for "Kirtland Safety Society Money," and took Josiah Butterfield, Jonathan Dunham, and Jonathan H. Hale for Joseph Young, and committed them to Jail; many threats were reported that the Camp should not pass Mansfield, but they were disturbed only by the repeated discharge of cannon, to frighten their Horses as they passed the Court House.

<sup>113</sup>Tuesday 17th, the Camp traveled 16 miles and pitched their tents on the prairie in Whetstone Township at 7 p.m. The Court was in session at Mansfield, and the case of the imprisoned brethren was called up at eight this morning but no bill was found, and they were discharged at four minutes past one p.m., and joined the Camp at seven having traveled 22 miles. While in prison they prayed and sung, and rejoiced that they were counted worthy to suffer for Christ's sake, and in the night a light equal to noonday burst into the prison; Elder Dunham took

103. Book B-2, 726 (darker ink): "<move> more <than>"

104. This and next paragraph based on SDTj, 5-8 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

105. Book B-1, 804: adds "~~two or three broken waggons~~"

106. Book B-1, 804: adds "~~as they passed~~ <w> along"

107. This paragraph based on ESj, 21-22 (cf. DHC 3:106-7; chap. 9), with stopping place supplied from SDTj, 8 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

108. Book B-1, 805, Book B-2, 726: "Miflin"

109. Book B-1, 805: adds "~~complaint~~"

110. This and next paragraph based on ESj, 22-23 (cf. DHC 3:107-8; chap. 9), and SDTj, 10-11 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

111. Book B-1, 805: "~~Madison~~ <Mansfield>" (WR)

112. Book B-1, 805: "<Sheriff>" (WR)

113. This paragraph based on SDTj, 13 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

out his watch and saw that it was three minutes past one, and he received a testimony that they would be liberated the same hour, that afternoon which proved true<sup>114</sup>.

<sup>115</sup>Wednesday morning 18th, the Council <sup>116</sup>appointed Dominicus Carter Commissary of the Camp. At one p.m., the Camp halted to refresh on the edge of a prairie the first privilege they had enjoyed without paying for it, and encamped in the town of Grand Prairie 16 miles.

<sup>117</sup>Thursday 19th, traveled 7½ miles and encamped on a prairie in a line for the first time. In their travels this day they fell in with a Lamanite, of the Wyandot tribe, Elder Parker gave him the stick of Joseph, which pleased him much. When he saw the camp moving he exclaimed, *Dis surprise me mazingly*.

Friday morning 20th, <sup>118</sup>the Council <sup>119</sup>reproved some of the Camp<sup>120</sup> for their covetousness, and complaining, and were told they must leave off all such evil practices, and banish such feelings or they would be scattered to the four winds. Encamped this night in<sup>121</sup> the highway about one mile from Burlington, 9½ miles travel. The company was thoroughly wet by a heavy shower this night.

Saturday 21st, roads very muddy and bad; <sup>122</sup>some disputings and not half food enough for dinner, and some were hungry enough to eat raw corn before they could procure supper. Traveled 16 miles and encamped by the roadside seven miles from the Sciota river.

Sunday 22nd, the Camp was obliged to travel <sup>123</sup>part of the day to get forage. Received a salute of rotten eggs from a house as they passed; <sup>124</sup>administered the sacrament for the first time on their journey. Some time during this night a luminous body about the size of a cannon ball came down over the encampment near the ground, then whirled around some forty or fifty times and moved off in a horizontal direction passing out of sight. 188 miles from Kirtland.

Monday 23rd, a wheel of a<sup>125</sup> wagon heavily loaded ran over the leg of Elder Peck's son, which nearly severed the flesh to the bone; Elder Peck laid his hands on his son in the name of the Lord, and he was able to walk, and the next morning there was not so much as a colored spot to be seen on the leg.

Tuesday 24th, while the sisters were washing, the brethren chopped seven acres of under-wood, and reaped and bound three acres of wheat, for which they received \$19.00.

<sup>126</sup>Thursday 26th, the first Presidency, High Council, and Bishop's Court assembled at Far West,

114. Book B-1, 805: "<which proved true>" (WR)

115. This paragraph based on ESj, 23-24 (cf. DHC 3:109-10; chap. 9).

116. Book B-1, 805: adds "~~gave attention to the overseers of tents and~~"

117. Following five paragraphs based on ESj, 24-28 (cf. DHC 3:110; chap. 9), and SDTj, 15-19 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

118. Book B-1, 805: adds "~~another complaint was prefered against Abram Bond for faultfin[d]ing &c and he was severely reprimanded by~~"

119. Book B-1, 805: adds "~~others also were~~"

120. Book B-1, 805: "<some of the camp>" (pos. WR)

121. Book B-1, 805: "in" overwrites "by"

122. Book B-1, 805: adds "~~one axle tree broke~~"; omitted in Book B-2, 727.

123. Book B-1, 806: adds "a"

124. Book B-1, 806: adds "and"; Book B-2, 727: adds erasure

125. Book B-1, 806: "<wheel of a>" (WR)

126. Source: This day's entry from JSj [1838], 59-60 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:261-62; *JSP* 1:291-93; *APR*, 197-98). Some light and heavy editing.



to dispose of<sup>127</sup> the public properties of the Church in the hands of the Bishop; many of the brethren having consecrated their surplus property according to the Revelations.

It was agreed that the first Presidency should keep all their properties<sup>128</sup> that they could dispose of to advantage for their support, and the remainder be put into the hands of the Bishop or Bishops according to the commandments.

Moved, seconded, and carried unanimously:

1st, that the first Presidency shall have their expenses defrayed in going to, and returning from Adam ondi-Ahman; equally by the Bishop of each place.

2nd, that all the traveling expenses of the first<sup>129</sup> Presidency shall be defrayed.

3rd, that the Bishop be authorized to pay orders coming from the East inasmuch as they will consecrate liberally, but this is to be done under the inspection of the first Presidency.

4th, that the first Presidency shall have the prerogative to say to<sup>130</sup> the Bishop<sup>131</sup> whose orders shall or may be paid by him in this place, or in his jurisdiction.

5th, that the Bishop of Zion receive all consecrations,<sup>132</sup> East, West, and South, who are not in the jurisdiction of a Bishop of any other stake.

6th, that we use our influence to put a stop to the selling of Liquors in the City Far West, or in our midst, that our streets may not be filled with drunkenness; and that we use our influence to bring down the price of provisions.

7th, that brother William W. Phelps, be requested to draw up a petition to locate<sup>133</sup> the county seat at Far West.

<sup>134</sup>**July 27th. [For] some time past the brethren or saints have come up day after day to consecrate and to bring their offerings into the store house of the Lord to prove him now herewith and see if he will not pour us out a blessing<sup>135</sup> that there will not be room enough to contain it. They have come up hither. Thus far, according to the order of the Danites<sup>136</sup>, we have a company of Danites in these times, to put to right physically that which is not right, and to cleanse the Church of very great evils which hath hitherto existed among us, inasmuch as they cannot be put to right by teachings and persuasions. This company or a part of them exhibited on the fourth day of July. They come up to consecrate, by companies of tens, commanded by their captain over ten.**

<sup>137</sup>**Friday 27th, the Camp could not buy forage because “they were Mormons,” and one man threatened to shoot Captain [Jonathan] Dunham the Engineer.**

127. Book B-1, 806: “<of>” (prob. WR)

128. Book B-1, 806: “propert\ie/s”; “ie” *w.o.* “y”

129. Book B-1, 806: “\1st/”

130. DHC 3:48: replaces “say to” with “direct”

131. DHC 3:48: adds “as to”

132. DHC 3:48: adds “from those living”

133. Book B-1, 806: “~~remove~~ <locate>” (pos. WB)

134. This paragraph from a unused portion of JSj [1838], 60–61 (GWR) (cf. *PJS* 2:262; *JSP* 1:293; *APR*, 198).

135. JSj [1838], 60: “blessings”

136. JSj [1838], 61, possibly read before cancellation of entire paragraph: “according to the order of the Danites <Revelater>” (prob. WR)

137. This paragraph appears in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:48. *Source*: Based on ESj, 29–30 (cf. DHC 3:115–16; chap. 9), and SDTj, 22 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

<sup>138</sup>Saturday 28th, I left Far West for Adam-ondi-Ahman in company with President Rigdon to transact some important business, and to settle some Canadian brethren in that place as they are emigrating rapidly<sup>139</sup> to this land from all parts of the country.

Elder [Almon]<sup>140</sup> Babbit[t], with his company from Canada has arrived, and brother [Theodore] Turley is with him.

<sup>141</sup>Sunday 29th, Elders Kimball and Hyde preached at Far West<sup>142</sup>, having just returned from England **from a mission of something over a year's duration. They bring glad tidings of great joy from that people. They baptized between one and two thousand and left Greater prospects than they had ever before seen. [They] ordained a large number of Elders, Priests, Teachers and Deacons. Thus the word is spreading rapidly through the country.**

**A large majority of the saints in Kirtland have and are arriving here every day. Kirtland has been broken up by those who have professed the name of Latter Day Saints and have denied the faith which they once preached and by their preaching gathered many saints into this land, and now have betrayed them. O Justice! where hast thou fled, and thou administrations whither hast thou concealed thyself.**

<sup>143</sup>Monday 30th, the Circuit Court sat in Far West, Judge King Presiding. **Quite a number of lawyers were here from Liberty and Richmond, &c. They have just returned from Daviess County session. President Hyrum Smith and myself attended court.**

<sup>144</sup>Brother [Abram]<sup>145</sup> Bond was disfellowshipped by the Camp for murmuring and not giving heed to counsel<sup>146</sup>.

I returned this evening from Adam-ondi-Ahman to Far West, with President Rigdon.

<sup>147</sup>Tuesday<sup>148</sup> 31st; attended the Circuit Court awhile, and received a visit from Judge King.<sup>149</sup> **Counselor [Thomas] Burch, who is also the Circuit Attorney, called upon President [Sidney] Rigdon this day, and had a short interview with him, soliciting him very hard to preach this evening as, he said, those gentlemen of his profession wished to hear him, as also did Judge King; but being quite fatigued in consequence of his absence and labors, returning last evening with President Smith from Adam-ondi-Ahman. Court adjourned for its regular sessions.**

138. *Source*: This and next paragraph from JSj [1838], 61 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:262-63; *JSP* 1:294; *APR*, 198). Light editing.

139. JSj [1838], 61: replaces "rapidly" with "numerously"; Book B-1, 806: "~~numerously~~ <rapidly>" (pos. WR)

140. Brackets this editor's.

141. *Source*: This and next paragraph from JSj [1838], 61 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:263; *JSP* 1:294; *APR*, 198). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

142. DHC 3:48: moves "preached at Far West" to end of sentence

143. *Source*: This and third paragraph based on JSj [1838], 62 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:263; *JSP* 1:294; *APR*, 199). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

144. This paragraph appears in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:48. *Source*: Based on ESj, 31, which dates Bond's disfellowshipment to 29 July (cf. DHC 3:117; chap. 9). Cf. SDTj, 25 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), which mentions Bond and his family leaving the camp on 30 July.

145. Brackets this editor's.

146. Book B-1, 806: "~~the rules~~, counsel, &c."

147. *Source*: JSj [1838], 62 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:264; *JSP* 1:296; *APR*, 199). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

148. Book B-1, 807: "Tuesday" overwrites "Wednesday"

149. Preceding based on JSj [1838], 62: "This day was spent principally in Court by most of the Presidency. Judge King waited upon President J[oseph] Smith, Jr., and spent a short time with him."



<sup>150</sup>Some time in July we succeeded in publishing the third number of the *Elders' Journal*; Joseph Smith junior Editor; T[homas]. B. Marsh, Printer and Publisher. In this number of the Journal was published the following Epistle of David W. Patten one of the Twelve Apostles of the last days.

<sup>151</sup>To the Saints scattered abroad:

Dear Brethren:—Whereas many have taken in hand to set forth <sup>152</sup>the kingdom of God on earth, and have testified of the grace of God, as given unto them to publish unto you; I also feel it my duty to write unto you, touching the grace of God given unto me, to you-ward, concerning the dispensation we have received; which is the greatest of all dispensations; and has been spoken of by the mouth of all the holy Prophets since the world began.

In this my communication to you, I design to notice some of these Prophecies. Now, the Apostle Paul says on this wise: “For I would not brethren that you <sup>153</sup>should be ignorant of this mystery, (lest you <sup>154</sup>should be wise in your own conceit<sup>155</sup>) that blindness in part has<sup>156</sup> happened unto<sup>157</sup> Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in: and so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, there shall come out of Zion<sup>158</sup> a<sup>159</sup> deliverer and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob.” [Rom. 11:25–26] What is it<sup>160</sup> that he says? “For I would not have you ignorant.” Ignorant of what? Why of this mystery, that blindness in part had happened unto Israel, and to what end? Why, that salvation might come unto the Gentiles, see Romans 11th chapter, 12th and 13th verses<sup>161</sup>: “Now if the fall of them be the riches of the world, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles; how much more their fullness?” “For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am an Apostle of<sup>162</sup> the Gentiles, I magnify mine office.” Now we are to understand the Apostle, as speaking of the return of Israel, when he said, “How much more their fullness,” in their return. “For I would not have you ignorant concerning this matter,” that blindness will depart from them in the day that the fullness of the Gentiles is come in. And the reason is very obvious, because it is said, that “Out of Zion<sup>163</sup> shall come <sup>164</sup>the deliverer;” and for what cause? Why? That the word of God might be fulfilled, that<sup>165</sup> this deliverer might, through the grace and mercy of God, [“]turn away ungodliness from Jacob.” This work evidently commences, at the time God begins to take the darkness from the minds of Israel, for this will be the work of

---

150. Book B-1, 807: adds at *coln* “\ (See Letter A. this page, 30th line)/” (WR). This directs the scribe to skip entries for 1–6 Aug. (which appear in next chapter) and to copy the line marked “A” at bottom of page, which commences David W. Patten’s letter (807–12). The letter concludes with “\ See B. page 807/” (WR), which directs the scribe to return to page 807 and resume with entries for 1–6 Aug. This reordering was incorporated in Book B-2, 728–34, when copied by WB about 9–16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology), and followed in *DN* and *DHC* 3:49–58.

151. *Source*: *EJ* 1 (July 1838): 39–42.

152. *EJ* 1:39: adds “the order of”

153. *DHC* 3:49: “ye”

154. *DHC* 3:49: “ye”

155. *DHC* 3:49: “conceits”

156. *DHC* 3:49: replaces “has” with “is”

157. Book B-2, 729: “unto”; *DHC* 3:49: “to”

158. *EJ* 1:39, Book B-1, 807, Book B-2, 729, *DHC* 3:49: “Sion”

159. *DHC* 3:49: replaces “a” with “the”

160. Book B-1, 807: replaces “it” with “~~this~~”

161. *DHC* 3:49: moves “see Romans ... verses” below to follow “mine office”

162. *EJ* 1:40, Book B-1, 808: replace “of” with “to”; Book B-2, 729 (darker ink): “{\to/}”

163. *DHC* 3:49: “Sion”

164. Book B-2, 729: adds ellipses over erasure

165. *EJ* 1:40: omits “that” and starts new sentence

God by the deliverer, for he shall turn away ungodliness from the whole family of Jacob; “For this is my covenant with<sup>166</sup> them, when I shall take away their sins.”

Now then we can see that this deliverer is a kind of Harbinger or Forerunner, that is, one that is sent to prepare the way for another, and this deliverer is such a one, for he comes to turn away ungodliness from Jacob, consequently he must receive a dispensation, and <sup>167</sup>authority, suitable to his calling, or he could not turn away ungodliness from Jacob, nor fulfill the Scriptures. But the words of the Prophets must be fulfilled, and in order to do this, to this messenger must be given the dispensation of the fullness of times according to the Prophets. For Paul says again in speaking of the dispensation of the fullness of times, Ephesians 1st, 9th<sup>168</sup>, “Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure, which he had purposed in himself, that in the dispensation of the fullness of times, he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth, <sup>169</sup>in him.” And Isaiah says in the 11th chapter, 11th verse<sup>170</sup>, “And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people.” Now <sup>171</sup>is the time that the deliverer shall come out of Zion and turn away ungodliness from the house of Israel. Now the Lord has said that he would set his hand the second time, and we ask, for what but to recover the house of Jacob? From<sup>172</sup> what have they fallen? Most assuredly they have broken the covenant, that God had made with their fathers, and through their fathers with them. For Paul says, Romans 11th, 19, 20<sup>173</sup>, “Thou wilt say then the branches were broken off that I might be grafted in, well, because of unbelief they were broken off, and thou standest by faith. Be not highminded but fear.”

Now it is evident that the Jews did forsake the Lord, and by that means they broke the covenant, and now we see the need of the Lord setting his hand the second time to gather his people according to Ephesians 1st, 10th, “That the dispensation of the fullness of times &c.”<sup>174</sup> Now I ask what is a dispensation? I answer, it is power and authority to dispense the word of God, and to administer in all the ordinances thereof. This is what we are to understand by it, for no man ever had the Holy Ghost to deliver the gospel, or to prophesy of things to come, but had liberty to fulfill his mission: consequently the argument is clear: for it proves itself; nevertheless I will call on the Scriptures to prove the assertion, Ephesians 3rd, 2nd<sup>175</sup>: “If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God, which is given me, to your ward<sup>176</sup>; how that by Revelation he made known unto me the mystery, as I wrote in few words.” And also, Colossians 1st, 25th: “Whereof I am made a minister according to the dispensation of God which is given to me for you, to fulfill the word of God.” It is evident then, that the dispensation given <sup>177</sup>the Apostle, came to him by Revelation from God. Then by this we may understand, in some degree the power by which he spake; and also the dispensation of the fullness of times.

Now, this, at first thought, would appear very small to some who are not acquainted

---

166. Book B-2, 729 (different ink): “~~with~~ <unto>”; incorporated in DHC 3:49.

167. DHC 3:50: adds “an”

168. DHC 3:50: moves reference to end of quote

169. Book B-1, 808, Book B-2, 729, DHC 3:50: add “even”

170. DHC 3:50: moves reference to end of quote

171. Book B-1, 808: adds “this”

172. DHC 3:50: replaces “From” with “For”

173. DHC 3:50: moves reference to end of quote

174. DHC 3:50: replaces “&c.” with “he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth”

175. DHC 3:50: moves reference to end of quote

176. *EJ* 1:40, Book B-1, 809, Book B-2, 730, DHC 3:50: “you-ward”

177. DHC 3:51: adds “to”

with the order of God from the beginning; but when we take unto<sup>178</sup> consideration the plan of God for the salvation of the world, we can readily see that plan carried out most faithfully in all its bearings. See<sup>179</sup> after the fall of Adam, the plan of salvation was made known to him of God himself; who in like manner, in the meridian of time, revealed the same in sending his first begotten Son Jesus Christ, who also revealed the same to the Apostles; and God raised him from the dead to perfect the plan, and the Apostles were made special witnesses of that plan; and testified<sup>180</sup> [“that in the dispensation of the fullness of times, God would gather together<sup>181</sup> in one, all things in Christ, whether they be things in heaven, or things on the earth.”]

Now the thing to be known, is, what the fullness of times means, or the extent and authority thereof. It means this, that the dispensation of the fullness of times is made up of all the dispensations that ever have been given since the world began, until this time. Unto Adam first was given a dispensation. It is well known that God spake to him with his own voice in the garden, and gave him the promise of the Messiah. And unto Noah also was a dispensation given; for Jesus said, as “It was in the days of Noah so shall it be at the coming<sup>182</sup> of the Son of man[”]; and as the righteous were saved then, and the wicked destroyed, so it will be now. And<sup>183</sup> Noah to Abraham; and from Abraham to Moses; and from Moses to Elias; and<sup>184</sup> Elias to John the Baptist; and from then<sup>185</sup> to Jesus Christ, and from Jesus Christ to Peter, James, and John; the Apostles all having<sup>186</sup> received in their<sup>187</sup> dispensation by Revelation from God; to accomplish the great scheme of restitution, spoken<sup>188</sup> by all the holy Prophets since the world began; the end of which is, the dispensation of the fullness of times; in which all things shall be fulfilled that have been spoken of since the Earth was made.

Now the question, is, unto whom is this dispensation to be given? Or by whom to be revealed? The answer is, to the deliverer that was<sup>189</sup> to come out of Zion, and<sup>190</sup> given to him by the Angel of God, Revelations, 14th, 7th<sup>191</sup>: “And I saw another Angel flying in the midst of heaven having the everlasting gospel to preach to<sup>192</sup> them that dwell on the Earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, saying with a loud voice, fear God, and give glory to him, for the hour of his judgment is come; worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.” Now observe this Angel<sup>193</sup> delivers the everlasting gospel to man on the earth, and that too, when the hour of the judgments of God had come on the generation, in<sup>194</sup> which the Lord should set his hand the second time<sup>195</sup>, as stated above. Now we have learned that this deliverer must be clothed with the power of all the other dispensa-

---

178. Book B-1, 809, Book B-2, 730: “into”; DHC 3:51: “under”

179. DHC 3:51: replaces “See” with “Soon”

180. Book B-1, 809: adds quotation marks

181. Book B-1, 809: adds “all things”

182. DHC 3:51: replaces “at the coming” with “also in the days”

183. *EJ* 1:41, Book B-1, 809, Book B-2, 730, DHC 3:51: add “from”

184. Book B-1, 809, DHC 3:51: add “from”

185. *EJ* 1:41, Book B-1, 809: replace “then” with “John”

186. DHC 3:51: omits “having”

187. Book B-1, 809, Book B-2, 730, DHC 3:51: add “time a”

188. *EJ* 1:41, Book B-1, 809, DHC 3:51: add “of”

189. DHC 3:51: replaces “was” with “is”

190. DHC 3:51: adds “be”

191. DHC 3:51: moves reference to end of quote

192. DHC 3:51: “unto”

193. Book B-2, 730: adds long dash over erasure

194. *EJ* 1:41, Book B-1, 810, Book B-2, 731: add “the”

195. DHC 3:52: adds “to gather his people”

tions, or it<sup>196</sup> could not be called the <sup>197</sup>fullness of times: for this is what<sup>198</sup> it means, that all things shall be revealed both in heaven and on earth; for the Lord said there was nothing secret that should<sup>199</sup> not be revealed, or hid that should<sup>200</sup> not come abroad, and be proclaimed upon the house top, and this may with propriety be called the fullness of times.

The authority connected with the ordinances, renders the time very desirable to the man of God, and renders him happy, amidst all his trials and afflictions. To such a one through the grace of God we are indebted for this dispensation, as given by the Angel of the Lord. But to what tribe of Israel was it to be delivered? We answer to Ephraim, because to him were the greater blessings given. For the Lord said to his Father Joseph: “a seer shall the Lord raise up of the fruit of my<sup>201</sup> loins, and he shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my<sup>202</sup> loins; yea he truly said; thus saith the Lord, a choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins, and he shall be esteemed highly, and unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with their Fathers. And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none<sup>203</sup> other work save the work which I shall command him, and I will make him great in mine eyes, for he shall do my work, and he shall be great like unto Moses; and out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all people, unto the restoring of the house of Israel, saith the Lord.”

And thus prophesied Joseph saying “behold that seer will the Lord bless, and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded. Behold I am sure of the fulfillment of this promise, and his name shall be called after <sup>204</sup>the name of his Father, and he shall be like unto me, for the thing which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand by the power of the Father shall bring my people unto salvation.”

Thus prophesied Joseph: “I am sure of this thing even as I am sure of the promise of Moses,” 2nd book of Nephi, 2d chapter [3:6–16]. And again Jesus says, as recorded in the Book of Mormon, 526 page, 2d edition (3 Nephi 20:43–45)<sup>205</sup>: “Behold my servant shall deal very prudently; he shall be exalted, and shall be<sup>206</sup> esteemed<sup>207</sup>, and be very high, as many as were astonished at thee; [...]”<sup>208</sup> So shall he sprinkle many nations. <sup>209</sup>Kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not<sup>210</sup> been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.” Upon this servant is bestowed the keys of the dispensation of the fullness of times. That from him the Priesthood of God, through our Lord Jesus Christ, might be given to many, and the order of this dispensation established on the earth. And to the Church he has said by commandment (see Book of Commandments, 46 section, 2nd paragraph. [D&C 21])

---

196. DHC 3:52: replaces “it” with “his dispensation”

197. DHC 3:52: adds “dispensation of the”

198. DHC 3:52: omits “is what”

199. DHC 3:52: “shall”

200. DHC 3:52: “shall”

201. DHC 3:52: “thy”

202. DHC 3:52: “thy”

203. Book B-2, 731 (darker ink): “no\ne/”

204. Book B-1, 810, Book B-2, 731: add “me; and it shall be after”

205. Book B-1, 810, Book B-2, 731: omit reference

206. DHC 3:52: omits “shall be”

207. DHC 3:52: replaces “esteemed” with “extolled”

208. DHC 3:52: adds ellipses

209. DHC 3:52: adds “the”

210. *EJ* 1:42, Book B-1, 811, DHC 3:52: omit “not”

“Wherefore, meaning the Church, thou shalt give heed unto<sup>211</sup> all his words, and commandments which he shall give unto you as he receiveth them, walking in all holiness before me; for his word ye shall receive as from my own mouth, in all patience and faith, for by doing these things, the gates of hell shall not prevail against you.”

Now my readers you can see in some degree the grace given to this man of God, to us-ward: that we by the great mercy of God, should receive from under his hands<sup>212</sup>, the gospel of Jesus Christ: and<sup>213</sup> having the promise of partaking of the fruit of the vine, on the earth with him, and with the holy Prophets and Patriarchs our Fathers. For those holy men are Angels now; and these are they, who make the fullness of times complete with us; and they who sin against this authority given to him (the before mentioned<sup>214</sup> man of God,) sins<sup>215</sup> not against him only but against Moroni, who holds the keys of the stick of Ephraim,<sup>216</sup> and also, with<sup>217</sup> Elias, who holds the keys of bringing to pass, the restitution of all things;<sup>218</sup> and also John the son of Zacharias, which Zacharias Elias visited, and gave promise that he should have a son, and his name should be John, and he should be filled with the spirit of Elias which John I have sent unto you, my servants Joseph Smith junior, and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you to this first Priesthood, even as Aaron. And also Elijah who holds the keys of committing the power, to turn the hearts of the Fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to the Fathers, that the whole earth may not be smitten with a curse. And also of<sup>219</sup> Joseph and Jacob,<sup>220</sup> and Abraham your Fathers, by whom the promises remain, and also Michael, or Adam, the Father of all, the prince of all, the Ancient of days; and also Peter and James and John, whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you, and confirmed you to be Apostles, and especial witnesses of my name and bear the keys of your ministry, and of the same things I revealed unto them, unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last time<sup>221</sup>, and for the fullness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth. [See D&C 27:5-13]

Therefore brethren beware concerning yourselves, that you sin not against the authority of this dispensation, nor think lightly of those whom God has counted worthy for so great a calling, and for whose sake he hath made them servants unto you, that you might be made the heirs of God to inherit so great a blessing, and be prepared for the grand<sup>222</sup> assembly, and sit there with the Ancient of days, even Adam our Father, who shall come to prepare you for the coming of Jesus Christ our Lord; for the time is at hand, therefore gather up your effects, and gather together upon the land, which the Lord has appointed for your safety.

DAVID W. PATTEN.

---

211. Book B-2, 731: “[*erasure*] <unto>” (WB)

212. *EJ* 1:42, Book B-1, 811, Book B-2, 732: “hand”

213. DHC 3:53: omits “and”

214. DHC 3:53: replaces “before mentioned” with “aforementioned”

215. DHC 3:53: “sin”

216. DHC 3:53: adds “[Book of Mormon]”

217. DHC 3:53: omits “with”

218. *EJ* 1:42: adds “or the restoration of all things”

219. *EJ* 1:42, Book B-1, 811, Book B-2, 732, DHC 3:53: omit “of”

220. *EJ* 1:42, Book B-1, 811, Book B-2, 732, DHC 3:53: add “and Isaac”

221. DHC 3:53: “times”

222. DHC 3:54: replaces “grand” with “great”



6.

## TROUBLE IN CALDWELL AND DAVIESS COUNTIES

August 1838

[DN 3 (16 April 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Wednesday, August 1st, I tarried at home with my family, also the 2nd, and 3rd to refresh myself after my many late fatigues, and arduous duties <sup>2</sup>which I had been called to perform. **Therefore nothing of importance transpired during this time. We saw the publication of the Oration delivered by President Rigdon on the 4th day [of] July 1838; it was published in the *Far West*, a paper published in Liberty, Clay County, Missouri.**

<sup>3</sup>During this period the Camp had stopped to rest their teams, and the brethren were engaged in making half a mile of Turnpike, and other like jobs to procure means to prosecute their journey, and on the evening of the fourth the names were called and those who could not give a reasonable excuse for absenting themselves from labor, were reprimanded by the Council, who directed they should receive no rations according to the Scripture, “the Idler shall not <sup>4</sup>eat the bread of the laborer.” Three brethren were appointed assistant counselors, and judges to settle minor difficulties in the camp.

<sup>5</sup>Sunday the <sup>6</sup>5th, I attended meeting; Elder Erastus Snow, preached, after which I addressed the congregation, and particularly the Elders, on the principle of wisdom, &c. President Rigdon preached

---

1. *Source*: This paragraph based on JSj [1838], 62–63 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:264; *JSP* 1:296; *APR*, 199). Heavy editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

2. Book B-2, 732: adds ellipses over erasure

3. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:55. *Source*: Based on ESj, 33 (under 31 July), 34 (under 3 Aug.), 35 (under 4 Aug.) (cf. DHC 3:120, 121, 122; chap. 9). Cf. SDTj, 26 (under 1 Aug.), 28 (under 3 Aug.) (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

4. Book B-1, 807: adds “**receive**”

5. *Source*: This paragraph based on JSj [1838], 63 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:264; *JSP* 1:296; *APR*, 199). Heavy editing and change to first person.

6. DHC 3:55: omits “the”



in the afternoon<sup>7</sup>, and several were confirmed,<sup>8</sup> among whom was Frederick G. Williams, who had recently been re-baptized.

<sup>9</sup>Monday 6th, **this day is the day for General Election throughout the State for officers; office seekers from without the Church who depend very much on our help begin to flatter us with smooth stories, but we understand them very well through the wisdom of God given unto us; they cannot deceive us for God is with us and very near us, for he speaks often unto us, through the means he has appointed.**

This morning my Council met me at my house, to consider the conduct of certain Canada brethren who had settled on the forks of Grand river contrary to counsel, on investigation it was resolved that they must return to Adam-ondi-Ahman, according to counsel **of God**, or they would not be considered one with us, **just as the Lord has said in a revelation to us given July 8th 1838.**<sup>10</sup>

This day the citizens of Caldwell county assembled at Far West, and organized by calling Elias Higbee to the Chair, and appointing George W. Robinson Secretary. W. W. Phelps having resigned the office of Post Master, it was voted unanimously that Sidney Rigdon be recommended<sup>11</sup> to the Post Master General, as the person of our choice to fill the place of W. W. Phelps as Post Master<sup>12</sup> in this City, **and also worthy of our sufferage.**

[...]<sup>13</sup>

<sup>14</sup>In the afternoon the citizens of Far West assembled in the School House **in the S[outh]. W[est]. q[uarte]r. of the Town** and organized the meeting by calling Judge Elias Higbee to the Chair, and appointing George W. Robinson Secretary. I stated to the meeting that the time had come when it was necessary that we should have a weekly Newspaper to unite the people, by giving<sup>15</sup> the News of the day &c.<sup>16</sup>, when<sup>17</sup> it was unanimously agreed that such a paper be established, and that President Sidney Rigdon should be the Editor. It was <sup>18</sup>voted that a petition be circulated to locate<sup>19</sup> the county seat at Far West. I addressed the meeting on the propriety of the measure, and also on the duty of the brethren to come into cities to build, and live, and carry on their farms out of the cities, according to the order of God. President Rigdon and brother Hyrum Smith<sup>20</sup> spoke upon the same subject.

7. Book B-1, 807: replaces "afternoon" with "P.M."

8. In JSj [1838], 63, preceding text reads: "At the close thereof, Elder Simeon Carter and Myself [GWR] were called upon to administer unto severall by the laying on of hands for their conformation and the giving of the Holy Ghost."

9. *Source*: Following four paragraphs based on JSj [1838], 63-65 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:265-66; *JSP* 1:297-98; *APR*, 199-201). Heavy editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

10. Possibly a reference to D&C 117:8-9.

11. Book B-2, 733 (darker ink): "<be recommended>" (TB)

12. Book B-1, 807: "<as post master>" (pos. WR)

13. Book B-1, 807: inserts in space between paragraphs "\ (See C. page 812. 2nd line) /" (WR). This instructs scribe to skip David W. Patten's letter, which was moved to end of preceding chapter by notes marked A, B, and C in Book B-1. This reordering was incorporated in Book B-2, 728-34, when copied by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology), and followed in DN and DHC 3:49-58.

14. Handwriting of WR ends and TB's begins in Book B-1, 812, and continues to Book C-1, 986 (vol. 4, chap. 2).

15. DHC 3:56: replaces "by giving" with "and give"

16. DHC 3:56: omits "&c."

17. DHC 3:56: omits "when" and starts new sentence

18. Book B-1, 812, Book B-2, 733, DHC 3:56: add "also"

19. Book B-1, 812: "~~remove~~ <locate>"

20. Book B-1, 812: omits "Smith"



<sup>21</sup>Some two weeks previous to this<sup>22</sup> Judge Morin, who lived at Mill Port, informed John D. Lee and Levi Stewart, that it was determined by the mob to prevent the Mormons from voting at the Election on the sixth day of August, and thereby elect Colonel William P. Peniston, who led the mob in Clay County. He also advised them to go prepared for an attack, to stand their ground, and have their rights.

The brethren, hoping better things, gave little heed to Judge Morin's friendly counsel, and repaired to the Polls at Gallatin, the Shire Town of Davies[s] County, without weapons.

About eleven o'clock a.m., William P. Peniston ascended the head of<sup>23</sup> a barrel, and harangued the Electors for the purpose of exciting them against the Mormons, saying that<sup>24</sup> ["the Mormon leaders are<sup>25</sup> a set of horse thieves, liars, counterfeiterers, &c.<sup>26</sup>, and you know they profess to heal the sick, <sup>27</sup>cast out devils, &c.<sup>28</sup>, and you all know that is a damned<sup>29</sup> lie["]: <sup>30</sup>that the members of the Church were dupes, and not too good to take a false oath on any common occasion; that they would steal, and <sup>31</sup>did not conceive<sup>32</sup> property safe where they were; that he was opposed to their settling there<sup>33</sup>; and if they suffered the Mormons to vote, the people would soon lose their suffrage, and, said he, (addressing the Saints) "I headed a mob to drive you out of Clay County, and would not prevent your being mobbed now."

When<sup>34</sup> Richard (called Dick) Welding, the mob bully, just drunk enough for the occasion, began a discussion with Brother Samuel Brown by saying "the Mormons were not allowed to vote in Clay County, no more than the damned<sup>35</sup> Negroes," and attempted to strike Brown, who gradually retreated, parrying the blow with his umbrella, while Welding continued to press upon him, calling him a damned<sup>36</sup> liar, &c., and while<sup>37</sup> attempting<sup>38</sup> to repeat the blow on Brown. Perry Durphy attempted<sup>39</sup> to suppress the difficulty by holding Dick's<sup>40</sup> arm, when five or six of the mobbers seized Durphy and commenced beating him with clubs, boards, &c.<sup>41</sup>, and crying "*kill him, kill, God-damn-him*<sup>42</sup> *kill him*," when a general scuffle commenced with fists<sup>43</sup> and clubs, (the mobbers being about ten to one of the Saints<sup>44</sup>.) Abraham Nelson, was knocked down, and had his clothes torn off and while trying to get up was attacked again; when his

---

21. Source: Remainder of this day's entry based primarily on SB and JDL-LS (transcriptions in vol. 8, III.5 and III.6).

22. Book B-2, 733 (darker ink): "<to this>"

23. DHC 3:56: replaces "ascended the head of" with "mounted"

24. DHC 3:57: omits "that"

25. Book B-1, 812: "were"

26. DHC 3:57: omits "&c."

27. DHC 3:57: adds "and"

28. DHC 3:57: omits "&c."

29. DHC 3:57: omits "damned"

30. DHC 3:57: adds "He further said"

31. DHC 3:57: adds "he"

32. DHC 3:57: replaces "conceive" with "consider"

33. DHC 3:57: replaces "there" with "in Daviess county"

34. DHC 3:57: omits "when"

35. DHC 3:57: omits "damned"

36. DHC 3:57: omits "damned"

37. DHC 3:57: "meanwhile"

38. DHC 3:57: replaces "attempting" with "trying"

39. DHC 3:57: replaces "attempting" with "sought"

40. DHC 3:57: replaces "Dick's" with "Welding's"

41. DHC 3:57: omits "&c."

42. DHC 3:57: omits "*kill, God-damn-him*"

43. DHC 3:57: "fists"

44. DHC 3:57: replaces "Saints" with "brethren"

brother, Hyrum Nelson ran in amongst them and knocked the mobbers down with the butt of his whip—Riley Stewart struck Dick<sup>45</sup> Welding on the head, which brought him to the ground. The mob cried out “Dick Weldin’s dead by God<sup>46</sup>, who killed Dick?” And they fell upon Riley, knocked him down, kicked him, and hallooed<sup>47</sup>, “Kill him, God damn him<sup>48</sup>, kill him, shoot him by God<sup>49</sup>,” and <sup>50</sup>would have killed him, had not John L. Butler sprung in amongst them and knocked them down; during about five minutes it was one continued<sup>51</sup> knock down<sup>52</sup>, when the mob dispersed to get Fire arms.

Very few of the brethren voted. Riley <sup>53</sup>escaping across the river, had his wounds dressed, and returned home.

[John L.] Butler called the brethren together and made a speech, saying “We are American citizens; our Fathers fought for their liberty, and we will maintain the same principles,” &c.<sup>54</sup>; when<sup>55</sup> the Authorities of the County <sup>56</sup>came to them<sup>57</sup>, and requested them to withdraw, stating that it was a pre-meditated thing to prevent the Mormons <sup>58</sup>voting.

The brethren held a Council about one-fourth of a mile out of town, where they saw mobbing<sup>59</sup> recruits coming in, in small parties, from five and ten, to twenty-five in number, <sup>60</sup>armed with Clubs, Pistols, Dirks, Knives<sup>61</sup> and some Guns, cursing and swearing<sup>62</sup>. The brethren not having arms thought it wisdom to return to their farms, collect their families, and hide them in a thicket of hazel bush, which they did, and stood sentry<sup>63</sup> around them, through the night, while the women and children lay on the ground in the rain.

<sup>64</sup>Tuesday [7th] morning<sup>65</sup> a report came to Far West, by way of those not belonging to the Church, <sup>66</sup>that at the Election at Gallatin, yesterday two or three of our brethren were killed by the Missourians, and left upon the ground, and not suffered to be interred, that the brethren were prevented from voting, and a majority of the inhabitants of Davies[s] County were determined to drive the Saints from that County.

On hearing this report, I started for Gallatin to assist the brethren, accompanied by President

---

45. DHC 3:57: omits “Dick”

46. DHC 3:57: omits “by God”

47. DHC 3:57: replaces “and hallooed” with “crying”

48. DHC 3:57: omits “God damn him”

49. DHC 3:57: omits “by God”

50. DHC 3:57: adds “they”

51. DHC 3:58: replaces “continued” with “succession of”

52. DHC 3:58: “downs”

53. Book B-1, 812, Book B-2, 734: add “succeeded in”

54. DHC 3:58: omits “&c.”

55. DHC 3:58: omits “when” and begins new sentence

56. DHC 3:58: adds “finally”

57. DHC 3:58: replaces “them” with “the brethren”

58. DHC 3:58: adds “from”

59. DHC 3:58: “mob”

60. DHC 3:58: adds “and”

61. DHC 3:58: omits “knives”

62. DHC 3:58: moves “cursing and swearing” to follow “in number”

63. DHC 3:58: replaces “sentry” with “guard”

64. *Source*: This day’s entry based on JSj [1838], 65–67 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:268–69; *JSP* 1:298–300; *APR*, 201–2). Heavy editing and change to first person.

65. DHC 3:58: “this morning” and moves it to follow “Far West”

66. DHC 3:58: adds “to the effect”

Rigdon, brother Hyrum Smith<sup>67</sup> and fifteen or twenty others, who were armed for their own protection, and the command<sup>68</sup> was given to George W. Robinson<sup>69</sup>.

On our way we were joined by the brethren from different parts of the country<sup>70</sup>, some of whom were attacked by the mob, but we all reached Colonel Wight's that night, in safety, where we found some of the brethren who had been<sup>71</sup> mobbed at Gallatin, with others, waiting for<sup>72</sup> our counsel. Here we received the cheering intelligence that none of the brethren were killed, although several were badly wounded.

From the best information about one hundred and fifty Missourians warred against from six to twelve of our brethren, who fought like Lions; several Missourians had their skulls cracked—blessed be the memory of those few brethren who contended so strenuously for their constitutional rights, and religious freedom, against such an overwhelming force of desperadoes.

[DN 3 (30 April 1853): 1]

<sup>73</sup>Wednesday 8th, after spending the night in counsel at Colonel Wight's, I rode out with some of the brethren to view the situation of affairs in that region, and among others, called on Adam Black, Justice of the Peace, and Judge elect for Davies[s] County, who had some time previous sold his farm to Brother Vinson Knight,<sup>74</sup> and received part pay according to agreement, and afterwards united himself with a band of mobbers to drive the Saints from, and prevent their settling in Davies[s] County. On interrogation, he confessed what he had done, and in consequence of this violation of his oath as Magistrate, we asked him to give us some satisfaction so that we might know whether he was our friend or enemy, whether<sup>75</sup> he would administer the law in justice; and politely requested him to sign an agreement of peace; but being jealous, he would not sign it, but said he would write one himself, to our satisfaction, and sign it, which he did as follows:

<sup>76</sup>I Adam Black a Justice of the Peace of Davies[s] County, do hereby Sertify to the people, *coled Mormon*, that he is bound to *support* the Constitution of this State, and of the United State, and he is not attached to any mob; nor will not attach himself to any such people, and so long as they will not molest me, I will not molest them. This the 8th day of August 1838.

(Signed)<sup>77</sup> ADAM BLACK, J.P.

<sup>78</sup>Hoping he would abide his own decision and support the law, we left him in peace and returned to Colonel Wight's at Adam-ondi-Ahman.

67. Book B-1, 813, Book B-2, 734: omit "Smith"

68. DHC 3:58: adds "of the company"

69. Book B-1, 813: adds "~~a Colonel in the Militia~~"

70. DHC 3:59: "county"

71. Book B-1, 813, Book B-2, 734: replace "had been" with "were"

72. Book B-2, 734: "<for>"

73. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 67 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:270; *JSP* 1:300; *APR*, 202-3). Some light and heavy editing and change to first person.

74. Part about Vinson Knight does not appear in JSj [1838], 67, but is from *AAP*, 19.

75. DHC 3:59: adds "or not"

76. Book B-1, 813 (pencil): adds note in margin "See original Documents and make corrections if necessary" (pos. WB). *Source*: RDft 1:4 instructs scribe to take document from *AAP*, 20 (cf. JSc, RP, Bx 4, fd 1, 33).

77. "(Signed)" appears only in *AAP*, 20.

78. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on JSj [1838], 67 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:270; *JSP* 1:300-301; *APR*, 202), and *AAP*, 20.

In the evening some of the citizens from Mill Port called on us and we agreed to meet some of the principal men of the County in council, at Adam-ondi-Ahman the next day<sup>79</sup> at twelve o'clock<sup>80</sup>.

<sup>81</sup>**The Camp still continued their labors in Ohio, many were sick and evil spirits were striving to trouble the brethren. Elders Dunham, Carter, Knight<sup>82</sup>, Pettingil, Brown and Perry spent the evening in walking through the tents rebuking diseases and foul spirits, and standing between the Saints and the destroyer. Brother Byington's<sup>83</sup> child died, and many were healed.**

<sup>84</sup>[Thursday 9th]<sup>85</sup> The Committee assembled at Adam-ondi-Ahman at twelve according to previous appointment, viz, on the part of <sup>86</sup>citizens, Joseph Morin, Senator elect; John Williams, Representative elect; James B. Turner, Clerk of the Circuit Court, and others: on the part of<sup>87</sup> the Saints, Lyman Wight, Vinson Knight<sup>88</sup>, John Smith, Reynolds Cahoon, and others: at this meeting both parties entered into a covenant of peace, to preserve each other's rights, and stand in their<sup>89</sup> defense; that if men should do<sup>90</sup> wrong, neither party should<sup>91</sup> uphold them or endeavor to screen them from justice, but deliver up all offenders to be dealt with according to law and justice. The assembly dispersed on these friendly terms, myself and friends returning to Far West, where we arrived about midnight and found all quiet.

<sup>92</sup>Friday 10th, being somewhat fatigued I spent the day with my family, transacting but little business.

<sup>93</sup>**Sickness continued in the Camp. Brother Carrico's<sup>94</sup> child died. Elder [Samuel D.] Tyler was healed by the prayer of Faith.**

The spirit of mobocracy continued to stalk abroad, notwithstanding all our treaties of peace, as will be seen by the following affidavit.

<sup>95</sup>State of Missouri,    }  
Ray County.            } [ss.]<sup>96</sup>

Personally appeared before me, the undersigned, Judge of the fifth Judicial Circuit, William P. Peniston, and makes oath that he has good reason to believe, and that he verily does believe, that there is now collected and embodied in the County of Davies[s], a large body

79. Book B-2, 735: "<day>"

80. Book B-2, 735: "[*erasure*] <o'clock>"

81. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:60. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 32 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), and ESj, 37 (DHC 3:124; chap. 10).

82. Book B-1, 813, Book B-2, 735: "Knights"

83. Book B-1, 813: "Boynton's"; Book B-2, 735 (different ink): "B{\ying/}ton's"

84. *Source*: JSj [1838], 67-68 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:270-71; *JSP* 1:301; *APR*, 203), and *AAP*, 20.

85. Book B-1, 813: adds "Thursday 9" in margin; Book B-2, 735: adds "9" in margin; DHC 3:60: adds "*Thursday, 9.*"

86. Book B-1, 813: adds "the"; DHC 3:60: adds "Mill Port"

87. Book B-2, 735: "<the part of>" (TB)

88. Book B-1, 813: "Knights"

89. DHC 3:60: replaces "their" with "each other's"

90. DHC 3:60: replaces "should do" with "did"

91. DHC 3:60: "would"

92. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 68 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:271; *JSP* 1:301; *APR*, 203).

93. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:60. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 33 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 37 (DHC 3:125; chap. 10).

94. Book B-2, 735: "Carico's"

95. *Source*: MS copy in UC. The original has apparently been located in private possession (see *JSP* 1:304n234). Copy in CHL has a file notation by TB stating that it was "recorded [on] page 814 [of Book B-1]".

96. DHC 3:61: adds "ss."

of armed men; whose movements and conduct are of a highly <sup>97</sup>insurrectionary and unlawful character, that they consist of about five hundred men, and that they, or a part of them, to the number of one hundred and twenty, have committed violence against Adam Black, by surrounding his house, and taking him in a violent manner, and subjecting him<sup>98</sup> to great indignities, by forcing him under threats of immediate death to sign a paper writing of a very disgraceful character and by threatening to do the same to all the old settlers and citizens of Davies[s] County, and that they have, as a collected and armed body, threatened to put to instant death this affiant on sight, and that he verily believes they will accomplish that act without they are prevented, and also that they have threatened the same to Wm. Bowman, and others, and this affiant states that he verily believes all the above facts to be true, and that the body of men now assembled do intend to commit great violence to many of the citizens of Daviess County, and that they have already done so to Adam Black; and this affiant verily believes from <sup>99</sup>information of others that Joseph Smith junior, and Lyman Wight are the leaders of this body of armed men, and the names of others thus combined are not certainly known to this affiant; and he further states the fact to be that it is his opinion and he verily believes that it is the object of this body of armed men, to take vengeance for some injuries or imaginary injuries done to some of their friends, and to intimidate and drive from the County all the old citizens and possess themselves of their lands, or to force such as do not leave to come into their measures and submit to their dictation.

WILLIAM P. PENISTON.

Sworn to and subscribed before me the undersigned Judge as aforesaid this 10th day of August 1838.

AUSTIN A. KING.

The above was also sworn to by William Bowman, Wilson McKinney, and John Netherton.<sup>100</sup> So it is that when men's hearts become hard<sup>101</sup> and corrupt as to glory in devising, robbing, plundering, mobbing and murdering innocent men women and children by wholesale<sup>102</sup>, they will more readily swear to lies <sup>103</sup>than speak the truth.

<sup>104</sup>At this time some of<sup>105</sup> the brethren had removed with their families from the vicinity of Gallatin, to Diahman, and Far West, for safety.

<sup>106</sup>Saturday 11th, this morning I left Far West, with my Council and Elder Almon W. Babbitt, to visit the brethren on the Forks of Grand River, who had come from Canada with Elder Bab[b]itt<sup>107</sup>, and settled at that place contrary to counsel.

In the afternoon after my departure a Committee from Ray County arrived at Far West to inquire

---

97. Book B-2, 735: adds ellipses over erasure

98. Book B-2, 735: "<him>" (pos. WB)

99. Book B-1, 814, Book B-2, 736: add "the"

100. At the end of the preceding document, these men certified that "from their own knowledge in part, & from the information of others they verily believe the fact & statements in the foregoing affidavit to be true."

101. DHC 3:61: "hardened"

102. DHC 3:61: omits "as to glory ... wholesale"

103. Book B-2, 736: adds ellipses over erasure

104. *Source*: Probably based on JDL-LS (transcription in vol. 8, III.6).

105. Book B-1, 814: "<some of>" (TB)

106. *Source*: This day's entry (except last paragraph) based on JSj [1838], 68-69 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:271-72; *JSP* 1:302-3; *APR*, 203-4). Light and heavy editing and change to first person.

107. Book B-1, 814, Book B-2, 736: "Babbit"

into the proceedings of our society in going armed into Davies[s] County. Complaint having been entered in Ray County by Adam Black, William P. Peniston and others. The Committee from Ray<sup>108</sup> requested an interview with a Committee of Caldwell, and a general meeting was called at the City Hall at six in the evening, when it was stated that they were assembled to take into consideration the doings of the citizens of Ray County, wherein they have accused the Mormons of this place of breaking the peace, in defending their rights and that of their brethren in the County of Davies[s]; and<sup>109</sup> the meeting<sup>110</sup> organized by appointing Bishop E[dward]. Partridge, Chairman; and Geo. W. Robinson, Clerk.<sup>111</sup>

<sup>112</sup>Resolved first, that a Committee of seven be appointed to confer with the Committee, from Ray<sup>113</sup>.

Resolved second, that this Committee, with their Secretary, be authorized to answer such questions as may be offered by the Committee from Ray<sup>114</sup>, and as are named in the document presented<sup>115</sup> this meeting purporting to be the preamble and resolutions of the citizens of Ray<sup>116</sup>.

Resolved third, that whereas the document referred to has no date or signature, that<sup>117</sup> our Committee judge of the fact and act accordingly.

Resolved fourth, that our Committee report their proceedings to this meeting as soon as possible.

EDWARD PARTRIDGE, Chairman,

Geo. W. Robinson, Clerk<sup>118</sup>.

<sup>119</sup>**Elder Dominicus Carter's little daughter, Sarah, died in the Camp.**

<sup>120</sup>Sunday 12th, I continued with the brethren at the Forks of Grand River offering such counsel as their situation required.

<sup>121</sup>**The Camp held a public meeting, as was common with them on the Sabbath. Another Camp consisting of Saints from Canada was in the vicinity, led by Elder John E. Page, who preached to the Kirtland Camp in the afternoon.**

<sup>122</sup>Monday 13th, I returned with my Council to Far West **at evening all sound and well, though some what fatigued with the journey**; we were chased by some evil, designing men, ten, or

---

108. DHC 3:62: adds "county"

109. DHC 3:62: omits "and"

110. DHC 3:62: adds "was"

111. DHC 3:62: adds "The meeting adopted the following."

112. Resolutions heavily edited without change in meaning.

113. DHC 3:62: adds "county"

114. DHC 3:62: adds "county"

115. DHC 3:62: adds "to"

116. DHC 3:62: adds "county"

117. DHC 3:62: omits "that"

118. JSj [1838], 69, Book B-1, 815, Book B-2, 736: replace "Clerk" with "Secretary"

119. This paragraph appears in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:62. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 33 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), or ESj, 37 (DHC 3:125; chap. 10).

120. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 70 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:273; *JSP* 1:303; *APR*, 204).

121. This paragraph appears in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:63. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 24 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), or ESj, 37-38 (DHC 3:125-26; chap. 10).

122. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 70 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:273; *JSP* 1:303; *APR*, 204). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.



twelve miles<sup>123</sup>, but we eluded their grasp<sup>124</sup>. When within about eight miles of home, we met some brethren who had come to inform us that a writ had been issued, by Judge King, for my arrest, and that of Lyman Wight, for attempting to defend our rights against the mob.

<sup>125</sup>**The camp** <sup>126</sup>**as a body** <sup>127</sup>**were not**<sup>128</sup> **united, and did not improve their time and labor as they ought. Some were faithful; in the evening they** <sup>129</sup>**were instructed in all meekness, forbearance and love, but in great faithfulness, by Elders Zera Pulsipher and Elias Smith.**

<sup>130</sup>[Tuesday and Wednesday] 14th and 15th, I spent principally at home, engaged in domestic affairs<sup>131</sup>.

<sup>132</sup>Thursday 16th, I spent principally at home.

The Sheriff of Davies[s] <sup>133</sup>accompanied by Judge [Josiah]<sup>134</sup> Morin, called and notified me that he had a writ for<sup>135</sup> to take me to Davies[s] County, on<sup>136</sup> trial, for visiting that County on the seventh instant.

It had been currently reported that I would not be apprehended by legal process, and that I would not submit to the laws of the land; but I told the Sheriff that I calculated<sup>137</sup> always to submit to the laws of our country, but I wished to be tried in my own County as the citizens of Davies[s] County were highly exasperated at me, and that the laws of the country gave me this privilege. Upon hearing this, the Sheriff declined serving the writ and said he would go to Richmond and see Judge King on the subject. I told him I would remain at home until his return.

The Sheriff returned from Richmond, and found me at home (where I had remained during his absence) and informed me very gravely that I was out of his jurisdiction and that he could not act in Caldwell<sup>138</sup>; and retired.

<sup>139</sup>**Some of the brethren**<sup>140</sup> **passed on from the Camp, to work on another job near Dayton.**

<sup>141</sup>**Elder Nathan H. Knight and family were cut off from the camp by the assistant council. Elder Nathan Baldwin was appointed councilor pro tem in the absence of Elder Stringham.**

123. DHC 3:63: moves “ten, or twelve miles” to follow “were chased”

124. DHC 3:63: replaces “grasp” with “pursuit”

125. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:63. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 24-25 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 38 (DHC 3:126; chap. 10).

126. Book B-1, 815: adds “~~continued to work on the Road and embankment but~~”

127. Book B-1, 815: adds “~~they~~”

128. Book B-2, 737: “<not>” (prob. WB)

129. Book B-1, 815: adds “~~were called together and received precept upon precept, that they might have no excuse, and~~”

130. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 70 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:273; *JSP* 1:304; *APR*, 205). Light editing and change to first person.

131. JSj [1838], 70: replaces “domestic affairs” with “secular buisness”

132. *Source*: This day’s entry based on JSj [1838], 70-71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:273-74; *JSP* 1:304-5; *APR*, 205). Light editing and change to first person.

133. DHC 3:63: adds “county”

134. Brackets this editor’s.

135. Book B-2, 737: “<for>” (prob. WB)

136. DHC 3:63: replaces “on” with “for”

137. DHC 3:63: replaces “calculated” with “intended”

138. DHC 3:63: adds “county”

139. Following six paragraphs appear in MSHiJS, but omitted in DHC 3:63; first, fifth and sixth paragraphs appear in DN, but not second, third, and fourth paragraphs. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 36-38 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 39-41 (DHC 3:127-30; chap. 10).

140. Book B-1, 815: “~~laborers~~ <brethren>” (pos. WR)

141. Next three paragraphs did not appear in DN or DHC. They appear in Book B-1, 815, but were canceled and not copied into Book B-2, 737, by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Text here from B-1.

Friday 17th. Elder Knight appealed to and was heard by the council, who confirmed the decision of the assistant council.

Saturday 18th. Elder George Brooks and family were cut off from the camp, and brother Miller and family left by advice and consent of the Council. Sister [Martha] Higby's child died in the camp.

Sunday 19th, Elder Joel Johnson preached<sup>142</sup> to the Camp<sup>143</sup> in the morning, and the Sacrament was administered in the afternoon<sup>144</sup> by Elders Johnson and Hale.

Monday 20th, Elders Nathan K. Knight<sup>145</sup> and George<sup>146</sup> Brooks having previously been cut off<sup>147</sup>, left the Camp with their families. In the evening, one of the children of the Camp was seized by an evil spirit, which drew the child's face quite out of shape, and produced great suffering. The Elders rebuked the spirit and it departed. This evening, Elder Willey was taken sick; he had laid his hands on his child, and rebuked an evil spirit, which left the child and entered into him. The Elders gathered round him as he lay in his wagon, and all his conversation was in rhyme. Elder Hale stepped into the wagon to lift him up, when he jumped forward at Elders Snow and Carter crying, yow, yow, yow, gnashing his teeth and chomping most horribly. They laid hands on him and rebuked the foul spirit in the name of Jesus, when he called for drink and laid quietly down, but soon recommenced his poetry. Elder Duncan McArthur,<sup>148</sup> laid hands upon him and began to rebuke the spirit, at the same instant he groaned, yelled, and screamed out as it were all in a whistling sound, and he began again to talk like a man. As soon as Elder McArthur was done he<sup>149</sup> lay down,<sup>150</sup> went to sleep, and remained well.

<sup>151</sup>[August 20.] Nothing peculiar transpired at Far West, from the sixteenth to this day, when the inhabitants of the different parts of the County met to organize themselves into Agricultural Companies. I was present and took part in their deliberation. One Company was formed, called "the Western Agricultural Company," who<sup>152</sup> voted to enclose one field for grain containing twelve sections, which contain<sup>153</sup> seven thousand six hundred and eighty acres of land. Another Company also was<sup>154</sup> organized, called "the Eastern Agricultural Company," the extent of the field not decided.

<sup>155</sup>Tuesday 21st, another Company was formed; called, "the Southern Agricultural Company," the field to be as large as the first mentioned.<sup>156</sup>

---

142. Book B-2, 737: "<preached>" (TB)

143. Book B-1, 815: "<to the camp>" (WR)

144. Book B-1, 815: replaces "afternoon" with "P.M."

145. Book B-1, 815: "<Nathan K.> Knights" (WR); incorporated in Book B-2, 737.

146. Book B-1, 815: "<George>" (WR)

147. Book B-1, 815: "<having previously been cut off>" (WR)

148. Book B-2, 737: adds ellipses over erasure

149. Book B-1, 816: omits "he"; Book B-2, 737: "<he>" (pos. WR)

150. Book B-2, 737: adds ellipses over erasure of probably "and"

151. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:274; *JSP* 1:305; *APR*, 205). Light editing and change to first person.

152. DHC 3:64: replaces "who" with "which"

153. DHC 3:64: omits "which contain"

154. DHC 3:64: "was also"

155. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:274; *JSP* 1:305; *APR*, 205).

156. Book B-2, 738: adds ellipses



<sup>157</sup>**Tuesday 21st<sup>158</sup>, there were two births in the Camp.**

<sup>159</sup>Wednesday 22nd, I spent part of the day in counseling with several brethren upon different subjects.

The brethren continued to gather to Zion, daily.

<sup>160</sup>Some time this month the Saints were warned by the mob to leave De Witt<sup>161</sup>.

[...] <sup>162</sup>

[DN 3 (14 May 1853): 1]

<sup>163</sup>**Thursday [August] 23rd, the brethren of the Camp, made five rods of Turnpike in addition to their job, and the Blacksmiths<sup>164</sup> were engaged in setting wagon tires, Horse shoes, &c., so as to be ready for traveling. They had erected a forge and burned pit Coal for their use, at this place; brother John Hammond and family were cut off from the Camp because he did not govern his family, and stand in his lot, as Tent Master. The duty of a Tent Master is to see that prayer is attended to in its season; to call all the inmates into the tent, and call the brethren by name who are<sup>165</sup> to lead in prayer, for they pray in their turns or lot, and he is to watch over his tent for good and see that no iniquity exists, and if he discovers iniquity, he must put it down in righteousness; but if he cannot, he must call for help; and if that will not do, he must prefer a charge in writing against the offender or offenders, and report them to the Council; also he must draw daily rations for his tent. Elders Dunham, Pattingill, Carter, and Hale laid hands upon sister Willey (who was very sick and troubled with the powers of darkness) and prayed for her and rebuked her disease; Elder Dunham was immediately seized with terrible pain in his side, shoulders, neck, &c., and with difficulty succeeded in speaking to ask the Elders to lay hands on him in the name of Jesus, which they did, and rebuked the devil, and he left him; but soon returned, and he again called the Elders to rebuke this evil spirit, which they had to do sharply, and it left him very sore; for when it had dominion over him he felt as though he must die.**

<sup>166</sup>This day I spent transacting a variety of business about the City.

<sup>167</sup>Friday 24th, I was at home. Also on the 25th, 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th, and 30th.

[...] <sup>168</sup>

---

157. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:64. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 38 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), or ESj, 41 (DHC 3:130; chap. 10).

158. Book B-1, 816: omits date

159. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on JSj [1838], 71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:275; *JSP* 1:306; *APR*, 205). Change to first person.

160. *Source*: Undetermined.

161. DHC 3:64: adds "Carroll county"

162. Book B-1, 816: adds "~~Brother [Nathan] Staker left the camp~~" (cf. SDTj, 39, under 22 Aug. 1838; transcription in vol. 8, III.4; RDft 1:8); Book B-2, 738: adds "~~{[illegible] of the last}~~"

163. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:64. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 39-41 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 42 (DHC 3:130; chap. 10).

164. Book B-1, 816: "<black>Smiths" (pos. WR)

165. Book B-1, 816: "is"; Book B-2, 738: "{\are/}"

166. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:275; *JSP* 1:306; *APR*, 206). Change to first person.

167. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 71 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:275; *JSP* 1:306; *APR*, 206). Change to first person.

168. Book B-1, 816: adds "~~The camp made five rods of Turnpike~~" (cf. SDTj, 39, under 23 Aug. 1838; transcription in vol. 8, III.4)

<sup>169</sup>On the 25th<sup>170</sup>, brother Joseph Coon's son died in the Camp, <sup>171</sup>which was reorganized<sup>172</sup>; because by transgression and leaving<sup>173</sup>, the first organization had been in some degree broken.

Sunday 26th, President Joseph Young preached to the Camp<sup>174</sup> in the morning and two were confirmed in the Church. There were many spectators present. Sacrament in the evening. Two strangers came to dispute, but went away confounded.

<sup>175</sup>Monday 27. The Camp made out five furlongs and nine rods of turnpike and expect to start on the 28th but deferred it till tomorrow.

<sup>176</sup>STATE OF MISSOURI, }  
COUNTY OF DAVIESS. } ss.

Before me William Dryden, one of the Justices of the Peace of said County, personally came Adam Black, who being duly sworn according to law, deposeth and saith; that on or about the 8th day of August 1838, in the County of Daviess, then<sup>177</sup> came an armed force of men, said to be 154, to the best of my<sup>178</sup> information and surrounded his house and family, and threatened him <sup>179</sup>with instant death if he did not sign a certain instrument of writing, binding himself as a Justice of the Peace for said County of Davies[s], not to molest the people called Mormons, and threatened the lives of myself and other individuals, and did say they intended to make every citizen sign such obligation and further said they intended to have satisfaction for abuse they had received on <sup>180</sup>Monday previous, and they could<sup>181</sup> not submit to the laws; and further saith, that from the best information and his own personal knowledge, that Andrew [Alanson]<sup>182</sup> Ripley, George A.<sup>183</sup> Smith, Ephraim Owens, Harvey Humstead<sup>184</sup>, Hiram Nelson, A. Brown, John L. Butler, Cornelius [P.]<sup>185</sup> Lott, John Wood<sup>186</sup>, H. Redfield, Riley Stewart, James Whitaker, Andrew Thor, Amos Tubbs, Dr. Gourze, and Abram Nelson was guilty of aiding and abetting in committing and perpetrating the above offense.

ADAM BLACK.

169. Following three paragraphs appear in MSHJS, but omitted in DHC 3:64; first two paragraphs in DN, but third omitted. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 41–43 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 42–43 (DHC 3:131; chap. 10).

170. Book B-1, 816: omits “On the 25th”; “25” in margin.

171. Book B-1, 816: adds “~~Made seven rods of turnpike, and reorganized the camp~~”

172. Book B-1, 816: “<which> was <reorganized>” (WR)

173. Book B-1, 816: “<& leaving>” (WR)

174. Book B-1, 816: “<to the camp>” (WR)

175. This paragraph not published in DN and DHC. Book B-1, 817, cancels this paragraph, and it was not copied into Book B-2, 738, by WB. Text here from B-1.

176. *Source*: RDft 1:9 directs scribe to copy document from DCCO, 15.

177. DHC 3:64: replaces “then” with “there”

178. DHC 3:64: replaces “my” with “his”

179. Book B-2, 738: adds ellipses over erasure

180. DHC 3:64: adds “the”

181. DCCO, 15, Book B-1, 817, Book B-2, 738: “would”

182. Book B-1, 817 (darker ink): “<[Alanson]>” (WB); incorporated in Book B-2, 739.

183. DCCO, 15: omits “A.”; Book B-1, 817 (darker ink): “<[A.]>” (WB); incorporated in Book B-2, 739.

184. DCCO, 15: “Umstead”

185. Book B-1, 817 (darker ink): “<[P]>” (WB); incorporated in Book B-2, 739.

186. DCCO, 15, Book B-1, 817, Book B-2, 739: “Woods”

Sworn to and subscribed this the<sup>187</sup> 28th<sup>188</sup> of August 1838.

W. DRYDEN.

Justice of the Peace of the County aforesaid.

<sup>189</sup>This document with that of said Black of the eighth of August<sup>190</sup> shows him in his true light, a detestable, unprincipled mobocrat and *perjured man*.

<sup>191</sup>**Wednesday 29th, at three o'clock, the trumpet of the Camp sounded, it being one hour earlier than usual, to give time to prepare for the journey. Every heart leaped with joy, and even the children were so delighted, that they appeared like a lot of playful lambs. The divisions moved off 4, 3, 2, 1, (i.e.) in transposition, and at nine in the morning the encampment was vacated which had been occupied for one month. Elder Martin H. Peck, was left at Dayton, sick. [...]**<sup>192</sup>**They passed through Montgomery into Jackson Township, traveled 18 miles, and tented in the road two hundred and seventy miles from Kirtland.**

**Thursday 30th, Camp passed<sup>193</sup> through Liberty Ville, and Preble County Seat, to the line of Ohio and Indiana, and encamped within twenty rods of the place where the Camp tented that went up to Missouri in 1834; two hundred and ninety<sup>194</sup> miles from Kirtland. Elder Shumway's child died.**

[Thursday, 30.] This day Governor Boggs issued the following order to General Atchison:

<sup>195</sup>Head Quarters of Militia, Adjutant }  
General's office, August 30th, 1838. }

Gen. David R. Atchison, 3rd Division, Missouri Militia.

Sir.—Indications of Indian disturbances on our immediate frontier and the recent civil disturbances in the Counties of Caldwell, Davies[s], and Carroll, render it necessary, as a precautionary measure, that an effective force of the Militia be held in readiness, to meet either contingency. The commander-in-chief therefore orders that you cause to be raised immediately within the limits of your Division to be held in readiness, and subject to further orders, four hundred mounted men, armed and equipped as infantry or riflemen, and formed into companies according to law, under officers already in commission. The Commander-in-Chief suggests the propriety of your causing the above<sup>196</sup> to be carried into effect, in a manner calculated to produce as little excitement as possible, and report your proceedings to him through the Adjutant General.

By order of the Commander-in-Chief,

B. M. LISLE, Adjutant-General.

187. DCCO, 15, Book B-1, 817, Book B-2, 739: omit "the"

188. DCCO, 15: adds "day"

189. *Source*: This paragraph probably composed by WR in RDft 1:9 about 13-21 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology in vol. 7).

190. DHC 3:65: moves "of the eighth of August" to follow "with that"

191. This and next paragraph appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:65. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 43-44 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 44-45 (DHC 3:132-33; chap. 10).

192. Book B-1, 817: adds "~~The brethren received the credit of making their turnpike better than any other company, and that the whole camp did not cause so much trouble in the neighborhood as of Irishmen who had worked in that place six weeks~~" (cf. SDTj, 44; transcription in vol. 8, III.4)

193. Book B-1, 817: replaces "passed" with "travelling"

194. SDTj, 45 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4), Book B-1, 817, Book B-2, 739: add "two"

195. *Source*: RDft 1:9 directs scribe to copy document from DCCO, 20.

196. DCCO, 20, Book B-1, 817: add "order"

<sup>197</sup>A similar letter was also addressed to Major Generals, John B. Clark, Samuel D. Lucas, David Willock, Lewis Bolton, Henry W. Crawther, and Thomas D. Grant.

<sup>198</sup>**Friday 31st, Camp passed through Richmond, and over White Water River, and through Centerville, Jackson Township, to German Town, and encamped in a stubble field near the town; bought Corn standing in the field, for their horses at ten dollars per acre: <sup>199</sup>traveled 18 miles.**

<sup>200</sup>[August 31.]<sup>201</sup> I spent considerable time this day in conversation with brother John Corrill in consequence of some expressions made by him, in presence of several<sup>202</sup> brethren, who **might perhaps be weak in the faith, as they** had not been long in the place; **therefore consequently [his remarks] were made very unwisely.** Brother Corrill's conduct for some time had been very unbecoming, especially in a man in<sup>203</sup> whom so much confidence had been placed. **He has been diffculted to keep track and walk step by step with the great wheel which is propelled by the arm of the great Jehovah.** He said he would not yield his judgment to any thing proposed by the Church, or any individuals of the Church, or even <sup>204</sup>the Great I Am, given through the appointed organ, as revelation, but will always act upon his own judgment, let him believe in whatever religion he may<sup>205</sup>. He stated <sup>206</sup>he "would always say<sup>207</sup> what he pleased, for he is a Republican, and as such he will do, say, act, and believe what he pleases<sup>208</sup>."

Mark such Republicanism as this: a man to oppose his own judgment to the judgment of God, and at the same time to profess to believe in that same God, when that God<sup>209</sup> has said,<sup>210</sup> the wisdom of God is foolishness with men, and the wisdom or judgment of men is foolishness with God.<sup>211</sup>

President Rigdon also made some observations to brother Corrill which he afterwards acknowledged were correct, and that he understood things different after the interview from what he did before.

---

197. *Source*: This paragraph follows the preceding document in *DCCO*, 20, where it is bracketed.

198. This paragraph appears in *MSHiJS* and *DN*, but omitted in *DHC* 3:65. *Source*: Based on *SDTj*, 46–48 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. *ESj*, 45 (*DHC* 3:133–34; chap. 10).

199. Book B-1, 818: adds "~~This day~~"

200. *Source*: Following three paragraphs based on *JSj* [1838], 74–75 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:278–79; *JSP* 1:309–10; *APR*, 209–10). Light editing and change to first person. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

201. Brackets this editor's. In deleting the above paragraph, *DHC* 3:65 makes it appear that the events described in this and subsequent paragraphs occurred on 30 Aug., rather than 31.

202. *JSj* [1838], 74: replaces "several" with "some considerable number of"

203. Book B-2, 740 (darker ink): "~~on~~ <in>" (US)

204. *JSj* [1838], 74, Book B-1, 818, Book B-2, 740: add "the voice of"

205. *DHC* 3:66: replaces "may" with "might"

206. Book B-1, 818, Book B-2, 740: add "that"

207. Book B-2, 740: "<say>" (TB)

208. *DHC* 3:66: "pleased" and deletes quotation marks

209. *DHC* 3:66: replaces "when that God" with "who"

210. Book B-2, 740: "<has said,>" (TB)

211. *DHC* 3:66: "'The foolishness of God is wiser than man; and the weakness of God is stronger, than man.'" 1 Cor. 1:25.

7.

# INCREASING DIFFICULTIES IN CALDWELL AND DAVIESS COUNTIES

September 1838

[DN 3 (14 May 1853): 1]

<sup>1</sup>Saturday September 1st, 1838, the First Presidency with Judge Higbee (as Surveyor) started this morning for the halfway house (as it is called) kept by brother [Waldo]<sup>2</sup> Littlefield, some 14 or 15 miles from Far West, directly north, for the purpose of appointing a City of Zion, for the gathering of the Saints in that place, for safety, and from the storm, which will soon come upon this generation, and that the brethren may be together **in the hour of the coming of the Son of Man** and that they may receive instruction<sup>3</sup> to prepare them for that great day which will come upon this generation as a thief in the night.

There is great excitement at present among the Missourians, <sup>4</sup>seeking if possible an occasion against us, they are continually chafing<sup>5</sup> us, and provoking us to anger if possible, one sign<sup>6</sup> of threatening after another, but we do not fear them, for the Lord God the Eternal Father is our God, and Jesus the Mediator is our Savior, and in the great I Am is our strength and confidence.

We have been driven time after time, and that without cause, and smitten again and again, and that without provocation, until we have proved the world<sup>7</sup> with kindness, and the world proved us that we have no designs against any<sup>8</sup> man or set of men; that we injure no man; that we are peaceable with all men; minding our own business, and our business only; we have suffered our rights and our liberties to be taken from us; we have not avenged ourselves of those wrongs; we have appealed to Magistrates, to Sheriffs, to Judges, to Government<sup>9</sup> and to the President of the United States, all in vain; yet we

---

1. *Source*: Following four paragraphs closely follow JSj [1838], 75-77 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:279-81; *JSP* 1:311-12; *APR*, 210-11). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

2. Brackets this editor's (cf. *JSP* 1:311).

3. JSj [1838], 75: "instruction<s>"; DHC 3:67: "instructions"

4. DHC 3:67: adds "who are"

5. Book B-1, 818: "ch\af/ing"; "af" *u.o.* "op". Corrected by the apostolic committee in July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.4).

6. JSj [1838], 75: replaces "sign" with "sene [scene]"

7. In JSj [1838], 76, this and next "world" apparently read "wor\ld/" with "l" *u.o.* "d"

8. Book B-2, 740: "<any>" (TB)

9. JSj [1838], 76: "govonour<s>"

have yielded peaceably to all these things. We have not complained at the Great God, we murmured not, but peaceably left all, and retired into the back country, in the broad and wild prairie, in the barren and desolate plains, and there commenced anew; we made the desolate places to bud and blossom as the rose; and now the fiend-like race are<sup>10</sup> disposed to give us no rest. Their Father (the Devil) is hourly calling upon them to be up and doing, and they like willing and obedient children need not the second admonition; but in the name of Jesus Christ the son of the living God, we will endure it no longer, if the great God will arm us with courage, with strength and with power, to resist them in their persecutions. We will not act on the offensive, but always on the defensive; our rights and our liberties shall not be taken from us, and we peaceably<sup>11</sup> submit to it, as we have done heretofore, but we will avenge ourselves of our enemies, inasmuch as they will not let us alone.

But to return again to our subject. We found the place for the City, and the brethren were instructed to gather immediately into it, and soon they should be organized according to the laws of God. A more particular history of this City may be expected hereafter, perhaps at its organization and dedication.<sup>12</sup> We found a new route home, saving I should think, three or four miles. We arrived at Far West, about the close of day light<sup>13</sup>.

**<sup>14</sup>This day the Camp passed through Cambridgeville, Dublin, Lousville, Ogdenville, Raysville, Knightstown<sup>15</sup>, and encamped in Frankville Township where they found it difficult to get grain, the people being disposed to take advantage of them. 22 miles; 332 from Kirtland.**

<sup>16</sup>The High Priests met at brother Pea's at Far West, and received Levi Richards into their Quorum.

**<sup>17</sup>Sunday 2nd, Camp passed through Charlottsville, Portand, Jackson, Greenfield, and pitched tents near the bridge in Jones Township. Brother Merriam's child died at Centre Township. This afternoon a miserable, malicious, drunken stage driver ran his horses aside out of their course, and struck the fore wheel of one of the Camp wagons and stove it in pieces, and then drove off exulting in his mischief. The Stage was marked J. P. VOORHEES. Traveled 21 miles.**

<sup>18</sup>[Sunday, 2.] The First Presidency attended meeting as usual in the morning; I tarried at home in the evening to examine Church Records, and spent a part of the time in company with a gentleman from Livingston County who had become considerably<sup>19</sup> excited, on account of a large collection of people, as they say<sup>20</sup>, to take Joseph Smith Junior, and Lyman Wight for going to one Adam Black's in

---

10. DHC 3:68: "is"

11. Book B-2, 740: "peacible"

12. Preceding sentence added by GWR at bottom of JSj [1838], 77. However, the planned community, which was to be named Seth, did not materialize.

13. DHC 3:68: omits "light"

14. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:68. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 48-49 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 45 (DHC 3:134; chap. 10).

15. Book B-1, 819: "Knightsville"; Book B-2, 741 (darker ink): "Knightsville<town>" (prob. WB)

16. This sentence inserted interlinearly by TB in Book B-1, 819 (darker ink); incorporated in Book B-2, 740, by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). *Source*: Undetermined.

17. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:68. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 49-50 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 45-46 (DHC 3:134; chap. 10).

18. *Source*: Following two paragraphs closely follow JSj [1838], 77-78 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:281-82; *JSP* 1:312-13; *APR*, 211-12), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHiJS. Light editing and change to first person.

19. JSj [1838], 77, Book B-1, 819: "considerable"; Book B-2, 740: "considerabl\y/"; "y" *u.o.* "e"

20. DHC 3:68: replaces "they say" with "he said"



Davies[s] County; and as they<sup>21</sup> said, President Smith and Colonel Wight, had resisted the officer, who had endeavored to take them, &c., and<sup>22</sup> accordingly these men are assembling to take them (as they say.) They are collected<sup>23</sup> from every part of the country to Davies[s] county. Report says they are collecting from eleven Counties, to help take 2 men who had never resisted the law or officer, neither<sup>24</sup> thought of doing so, and this they<sup>25</sup> knew at the same time, or many of them at least<sup>26</sup>; this looks a little too much like mobocracy, it foretells some evil intentions; the whole <sup>27</sup>upper Missouri is all<sup>28</sup> in an uproar and confusion.

This evening I<sup>29</sup> sent for General [David R.]<sup>30</sup> Atchison of Liberty, Clay County, who is the Major General of this division, to come and counsel with us, and to see if he could not put a stop to this collection of people, and to put a stop to hostilities in Davies[s] County. I<sup>31</sup> also sent a letter to Judge [Austin A.] King containing a petition for him to assist in putting down and scattering the mob, which are<sup>32</sup> collecting at Davies[s]<sup>33</sup>.

<sup>34</sup>Monday 3rd, nothing of importance transpired this day<sup>35</sup>, only<sup>36</sup> reports <sup>37</sup>concerning the collection of a mob in Davies[s] County which has been collecting<sup>38</sup> ever since the Election in Davies[s]<sup>39</sup> on the sixth of August last. I was at home most of the day.<sup>40</sup>

This evening General Atchison arrived in Far West<sup>41</sup>.

<sup>42</sup>**This morning Elder Willey's wife died, after <sup>43</sup>burial, the Camp passed Cumberland Village and Indianapolis, the capital of Indiana, where they were threatened, but passed unmo-  
lested, with the exception of one brick bat which was hurled at one of the brethren, but passed him unharmed<sup>44</sup>, and encamped in Wayne Township near the house of brother David R. Miller;  
17 miles; 370 from Kirtland.**

**Tuesday 4th, Camp passed Bridgeport, Plainfield, Guilford, Belleville, Stilesville in Morgan**

---

21. DHC 3:68: replaces "they" with "the"

22. DHC 3:69: omits "&c., and"

23. Book B-1, 819, Book B-2, 741, DHC 3:69: "collecting"

24. DHC 3:69: replaces "neither" with "nor had they"

25. DHC 3:69: replaces "they" with "their enemies"

26. DHC 3:69: adds "knew it"

27. DHC 3:69: adds "of"

28. DHC 3:69: omits "all"

29. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "~~we~~ <I>" (WR)

30. Brackets this editor's.

31. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "~~we~~ <I>" (WR)

32. DHC 3:69: omits "which are"

33. DHC 3:69: adds "county"

34. *Source*: This and next paragraph closely follow JSj [1838], 78 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:282; *JSP* 1:314; *APR*, 212), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHiJS.

35. DHC 3:69: replaces "transpired this day" with "occurred today"

36. DHC 3:69: omits "only" and begins new sentence

37. DHC 3:69: adds "come in"

38. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "collecting <collected>" (WR); Book B-1, 819 (darker ink): "collected<ing>"

39. DHC 3:69: adds "county"

40. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "<I was ... day>" (WR)

41. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "~~in Town~~ <at Far West>" (WR)

42. This and next paragraph appear in MSHiJS and *DN*, but omitted in DHC 3:69. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 50-51 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 46-47 (DHC 3:134-36; chap. 10).

43. Book B-1, 819: adds "the"

44. Book B-1, 819: "un<h>armed"

**County, to Marion Township in Putnam County. This morning the Presidency of the Camp exhorted the brethren to humble themselves before the Lord and put away selfishness, covetousness, complainings and murmurings or else expect to meet the indignation of heaven. Traveled 22 miles, had an excellent encampment and plenty of dry wood.**

<sup>45</sup>[Tuesday 4.] This day I<sup>46</sup> spent in council with General [David R.]<sup>47</sup> Atchison<sup>48</sup>; he says he will do all in his power to disperse the mob, &c.<sup>49</sup>; we employed him and [Alexander] Doniphan (his partner) as our Lawyers and Counselors<sup>50</sup> in Law. They are considered the first lawyers in <sup>51</sup>upper Missouri.

President Rigdon and myself<sup>52</sup> commenced this day the study of Law under the instruction of<sup>53</sup> Generals Atchison and Doniphan. They think by diligent application we can be admitted to the bar in 12 months.

The result of the Counsel<sup>54</sup> was that myself<sup>55</sup> and Colonel Wight volunteer, and be tried by Judge [Austin A.]<sup>56</sup> King in Davies[s] County. Colonel Wight, was present<sup>57</sup> having been<sup>58</sup> previously notified to attend the Council<sup>59</sup>; accordingly Thursday next was appointed for the trial, and word to that amount<sup>60</sup> was sent to Judge King (who had previously agreed to volunteer, and<sup>61</sup> try the case) to meet all<sup>62</sup> at brother [Waldo]<sup>63</sup> Littlefield's near the county line in the southern part<sup>64</sup> of Davies[s]<sup>65</sup>. I was at home in the evening after six o'clock.

Wednesday 5th, I gave the following affidavit that the truth might appear before the public in the matter in controversy.

<sup>66</sup>STATE OF MISSOURI,     }  
CALDWELL COUNTY.     } ss.

Before me Elias Higbee one of the Justices of the County Court, within and for the County of Caldwell aforesaid, personally came Joseph Smith junior, who been<sup>67</sup> duly sworn according to law, depose and saith; That on the seventh day of August, 1838, being informed

45. Source: Following three paragraphs based on JSj [1838], 78-79 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:282-83; *JSP* 1:314; *APR*, 212), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHjS.

46. Book B-1, 819: "I" overwrites "~~was~~" (WR)

47. Brackets this editor's.

48. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "<Atchison>" (WR)

49. DHC 3:69: omits "&c."

50. DHC 3:69: replaces "Lawyers and Counselors" with "counsel"

51. JSj [1838], 78, Book B-1, 819: add "the"; Book B-2, 742: "~~the~~"

52. This "myself" probably refers to GWR, since in this entry JS is subsequently referred to in the third person.

53. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "<the instruction of>" (WR)

54. DHC 3:69: replaces "the Counsel" with "our consultation with out lawyers"

55. JSj [1838], 79 (pencil): "~~Prest. Smith~~ <myself>" (WR)

56. Brackets this editor's.

57. Book B-1, 819: replaces "was present" with "(being present.)"; Book B-2, 742: "{\was/}" (pos. WR)

58. Book B-1, 819: replaces "having been" with "being"; Book B-2, 742: "<having> been" (pos. WR)

59. DHC 3:70: replaces "Council" with "consultation"

60. DHC 3:70: replaces "amount" with "effect"

61. DHC 3:70: omits "volunteer, and"

62. DHC 3:70: "All are to meet"

63. Brackets this editor's (cf. *JSP* 1:314).

64. JSj [1838], 78 (pencil): "~~South of~~ <in the southern part>" (WR)

65. DHC 3:70: adds "county"

66. Source: RDft 1:12 directs scribe to copy from *AAP*, 21-23 (cf. *JSc*, R.P, Bx 4, fd 1, 38-40).

67. Book B-1, 820, Book B-2, 742, DHC 3:70: replace "been" with "being"



that an affray had taken place in Davies[s] County, at the Election, in the Town of Gallatin, in which two persons were <sup>68</sup>killed, and one person was badly wounded, and fled to the woods to save his life; all of which were said to be persons belonging to the society of the Church of Latter Day Saints; and further said informant stated that those persons who committed the outrage would not suffer the bodies of those who had been killed to be taken off the ground and buried.

These reports, with others, one of which was that the Saints had not the privilege of voting at the polls as other citizens; another was that those opposed to the Saints were determined to drive them from Davies[s] County, and also that they were arming and strengthening their forces and preparing for battle; and that the Saints were preparing and making ready to stand in self defense; these reports having excited the feelings of the citizens of Far West and vicinity, I was invited by Dr. Avard and some others to go out to Davies[s] County, to the scene of these outrages; they having previously determined to go out and learn the facts concerning said reports.

Accordingly some of the citizens, myself among the number, went out, two, three, and four, in companies, as they got ready. The reports and excitement continued until several of those small companies through the day were induced to follow the first; who were all eager to learn the facts concerning this matter. We arrived in the evening at the house of Lyman Wight about three miles from Gallatin, the scene of the reported outrages, here we learned the truth concerning the said affray, which had been considerably exaggerated; yet there had been a serious outrage committed; we there learned that the mob was collected at Millport to a considerable number, <sup>69</sup>that Adam Black was at their head, and <sup>70</sup>were to attack the Saints the next day, at the place <sup>71</sup>we then were<sup>72</sup>, called Adam-ondi-Ahman; this report we were still<sup>73</sup> inclined to believe might be true, as this Adam Black, who was said to be their leader, had been, but a few months before, engaged in endeavoring to drive those of the society who had settled in that vicinity, from the County. This had become notorious, from the fact that said Black had personally ordered several of <sup>74</sup>said society to leave the County.

The next morning we dispatched a Committee to said Black's to ascertain the truth of these reports, and to know what his intentions were; and as we understood he was a Peace Officer, we wished to know what we might expect from him. They reported<sup>75</sup> that Mr. Black, instead of giving them any assurance of <sup>76</sup>peace, insulted them and gave them no satisfaction. Being desirous of knowing<sup>77</sup> the feelings of Mr. Black for myself, and being in want of good water, and understanding that there was none nearer than Mr. Black's spring, myself with several others mounted our horses and rode up to Mr. Black's fence.

Dr. Avard, with <sup>78</sup>one or two others who had rode ahead, went into Mr. Black's house; myself and some others went to the spring for water. I was shortly after sent for, by Mr. Black, and invited into the house, being introduced to Mr. B[lack]., by Dr. Avard, Mr. Black wished me to be seated; we then commenced a conversation on the subject of the late difficulties, and present excitement. I found Mr. Black quite hostile in his feelings towards the Saints; but he

---

68. DHC 3:70: adds "[reported]"

69. AAP, 22, Book B-1, 820: add "and"; Book B-2, 742: adds erasure

70. DHC 3:71: adds "that they"

71. AAP, 22: adds "where"

72. DHC 3:71: adds "in"

73. AAP, 22, Book B-1, 820: omit "still"

74. AAP, 22, Book B-1, 820: add "the"

75. AAP, 22, Book B-1, 820: "report"; Book B-2, 743 (darker ink): "report\ed/"

76. AAP, 22: adds "preserving the"

77. AAP, 22: "to know"

78. Book B-2, 743: adds erasure

assured us he did not belong to the mob; neither would he take any part with them; but said he was bound by his oath to support the Constitution of the United States, and the laws of the State of Missouri. Deponent then asked him, if he would make said statement<sup>79</sup> in writing, so as to refute the arguments<sup>80</sup> of those who had affirmed that he (Black) was one of the leaders of the mob. Mr. Black answered in the affirmative; accordingly he did so, which writing is in possession of the<sup>81</sup> deponent. The deponent further saith, that no violence<sup>82</sup> was offered to any individual in his presence, or within his knowledge; and that no insulting language was given by<sup>83</sup> either party, except on the part of Mrs. Black, who while Mr. Black was engaged in making out the above-named writing, (which he made with his own hand) gave to this deponent, and others of this<sup>84</sup> society, highly insulting language, and false accusations, which were calculated in their nature to greatly irritate, if possible, the feelings of the bystanders, belonging to said Society, in language like this; being asked by the deponent if she knew anything in the Mormon people derogatory to the character of gentlemen; she answered in the negative—but said she did not know but <sup>85</sup>the object of their visit was to steal something from them. After Mr. Black had executed the writing deponent asked Mr. Black if he had any unfriendly feelings towards the deponent, and if he <sup>86</sup>had not treated him genteelly. He answered in the affirmative; deponent then took leave of said Black and repaired to the house of Lyman Wight. The next day we<sup>87</sup> returned to Far West, and further this deponent saith not.

(Signed)<sup>88</sup> JOSEPH SMITH, junior.

Sworn to and subscribed this fifth day of September A.D., 1838.

(Signed) ELIAS HIGBEE, J.C.C.C.C.<sup>89</sup>

<sup>90</sup>Judge King arrived at Far West on his way to Davies[s] to meet the proposed trial. General Atchison had gone before Judge King arrived, and the Judge tarried all night. <sup>91</sup>I was at home after six o'clock in the evening.

<sup>92</sup>**Brother Nickerson's child died in the Camp this morning. Camp<sup>93</sup> passed through Mount Vernon, Mount Meridian, Putnamsville, Manhattan,<sup>94</sup> Washington Township, Pleasant Garden, into Van Buren Township, Clay County 20 miles, and tented in the road, about one furlong west of Grass<sup>95</sup> Creek. There was much sickness in the country through which the Camp passed.**

---

79. *AAP*, 22, Book B-1, 820: "statements"

80. DHC 3:71: replaces "arguments" with "statement"

81. Book B-2, 743: "<the>"

82. Book B-2, 743: "violation"

83. Book B-2, 743 (darker ink): "{\by/}"

84. *AAP*, 22, Book B-1, 821: replace "this" with "the"; DHC 3:71: replaces "this" with "his"

85. Book B-2, 743: adds ellipses over erasure

86. DHC 3:72: adds "[the deponent]"

87. DHC 3:72: replaces "we" with "he"

88. This and next "(Signed)" appear only in *AAP*, 22.

89. DHC 3:72: omits one "C". JCCC represents "Justice of Caldwell County [Civil?] Court".

90. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838], 79 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:283; *JSP* 1:316; *APR*, 212).

91. Remainder of paragraph does not appear in JSj [1838], 79.

92. This and next paragraph appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:72. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 51-52 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 47 (DHC 3:136; chap. 10).

93. Book B-1, 821: omits "Camp"; Book B-2, 743: "<Camp>" (pos. WB)

94. Book B-2, 743: "Man<h>attan"

95. Book B-1, 821, Book B-2, 743: "Grays". Apparently, the typesetters of DN misread the "y" in B-2 as a long "s".

**Thursday 6th, Camp traveled 17 miles and encamped two miles east of Terra Haute; roads very dusty.**

<sup>96</sup>[Thursday, 6.] At half-past seven<sup>97</sup> this morning I started on horseback accompanied by several brethren, among whom was my brother Hyrum, and Judge E[lia]. Higbee, to attend my trial at brother [Waldo]<sup>98</sup> Littlefield's. I thought it not wisdom to make my appearance before the public in that place<sup>99</sup> in consequence of the many threats made against me and the high state of excitement. The trial could not proceed on account of the absence of the plaintiff, and lack of testimony and the Court adjourned until tomorrow at ten o'clock in the morning, at a Mr. [John]<sup>100</sup> Raglin's, some six or eight miles further south, and within half a mile of the line of Caldwell. Raglin<sup>101</sup> is a regular mob character; we all returned to Far West, where we arrived before dark.

[DN 3 (28 May 1853): 1]

<sup>102</sup>Friday 7th, about sunrise<sup>103</sup> I started with my friends and arrived at Mr. Raglin's at the appointed hour; we did not know<sup>104</sup> but there would be a disturbance among the mob characters today, we accordingly had a company of men placed at the county line so as to be ready at a minute's warning if there should be any difficulty at the trial.

The trial commenced; William P. Peniston<sup>105</sup>, who was the prosecutor had no witnesses but Adam Black, who<sup>106</sup> contrived to swear a great many things that never had an existence until he swore them<sup>107</sup>, and I presume never entered the heart of any <sup>108</sup>man to conceive<sup>109</sup>, and in fine, I think he swore by the job and that he was employed so to do by Peniston.

The witnesses on the part of the defense were Dimick<sup>110</sup> B. Huntington, Gideon Carter, Adam Lightner, and George W. Robinson.

The Judge bound Colonel Wight and myself over to Court, in a five hundred dollar bond. There was no proof against us to criminate us, but it is supposed he did it to pacify as much as possible the feelings of the mobbers. The Judge stated afterwards in the presence of George W. Robinson, that there was nothing proven against us worthy of bonds, but we submitted without murmuring a word, gave the bonds with sufficient securities, and all returned home the same evening.

---

96. Source: Closely follows JSj [1838], 79-80 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:283-84; *JSP* 1:316; *APR*, 212-13). Light editing and change to first person.

97. Time of departure not given in JSj [1838], 79; possibly a surmise.

98. Brackets this editor's.

99. DHC 3:72: replaces "in that place" with "at the county seat of Daviess county"

100. Brackets this editor's (cf. *JSP* 1:316).

101. Book B-1, 821: "Raglins"; Book B-2, 744: "Raglins"

102. Source: Following five paragraphs closely follow JSj [1838], 80-81 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:284-85; *JSP* 1:316-18; *APR*, 213-14), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHJS. Changed to first person.

103. Time of departure not given in JSj [1838], 80; possibly a surmise.

104. Book B-2, 744: "<know>" (pos. TB)

105. Book B-1, 821: "Penniston"

106. DHC 3:73: replaces "who" with "but he"

107. DHC 3:73: omits "until he swore them"

108. DHC 3:73: adds "other"

109. DHC 3:73: omits "to conceive"

110. Book B-1, 821: "Demic"; Book B-2, 744: "~~dime~~ <Dimick>" (RLC)

We<sup>111</sup> found two persons in Davies[s] <sup>112</sup>at the trial, which gentlemen<sup>113</sup> were sent from Chariton County, as a Committee, to inquire into all this matter, as the mobbers had sent to that place for assistance, they said to take Smith and Wight, but their real object was to drive the brethren from the County of Davies[s] as was<sup>114</sup> done in Jackson County; they said the people in Chariton <sup>115</sup>did not see proper to send help without knowing for what purpose they were doing it, and this they said was their errand. They accompanied us to Far West to hold a council with us, in order to learn the facts of this great excitement, which is, as it were, turning the world upside down. <sup>116</sup>We arrived home in the evening.

<sup>117</sup>**This morning a daughter of Elder Shumway died in Camp, also Mrs. Clark's child. The Camp passed through Terre Haute, and over<sup>118</sup> the River Wabash, in a North-westerly direction through Fayette Township, and encamped about a furlong west of E. S. Wolf's store, and within two miles of the<sup>119</sup> west line<sup>120</sup> of Indiana, eleven miles; 423 from Kirtland.**

<sup>121</sup>**The work continued to spread in England. The Saints had some trials particularly in Preston. While Satan was trying to mob and murder the Church in Missouri, he was at the same time trying to stir up strife and weaken the faith of the saints in England. This day Elder Willard Richards went into Burslem, among the Staffordshire Potteries and recommenced a work which was begun a short time previous by Elder William Clayton, who had preached there a few times, and led a few into the water.**

<sup>122</sup>**Saturday 8th, the Camp passed on into the state of Illinois, leaving Pilot Grove on the right, traveled twenty-five miles; 448 from Kirtland.**

<sup>123</sup>[September 8.]<sup>124</sup> The Presidency met in council with the Committee from Chariton County, together with General Atchison, where a relation was given of the whole matter<sup>125</sup>, the present state of excitement and the cause of all this confusion. These<sup>126</sup> gentlemen <sup>127</sup>expressed their fullest satisfaction

---

111. DHC 3:73: replaces "We" with "I"

112. DHC 3:73: adds "county"

113. DHC 3:73: replaces "which gentlemen" with "who"

114. DHC 3:73: replaces "was" with "had been"

115. DHC 3:73: adds "county"

116. Remainder of paragraph does not appear in JSj [1838], 81.

117. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:73. *Source:* Based on SDTj, 52-53 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 47 (DHC 3:136; chap. 10, herein).

118. Book B-1, 822: replaces "over" with "through"; Book B-2, 744: "{\over/}" (prob. WB)

119. Book B-2, 744: "<the>" (WB)

120. Book B-1, 822: "miles \of/ west \line/" (TB)

121. This paragraph appears in the RDft 1:12-13, but canceled in Book B-1, 822, and omitted in Book B-2, 744, DN, and DHC 3:73. In the margin of B-1 is written "1839", which probably indicates the reason for cancellation. WRj for 7 Sept. 1839 records "To Burslem" (1:102). Text here from B-1.

122. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:73. *Source:* Based on SDTj, 53-55 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 47-48 (DHC 3:136-37; chap. 10).

123. *Source:* This and next paragraph closely follow JSj [1838], 81 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:285; *JSP* 1:318; *APR*, 214), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHiJS.

124. Brackets this editor's. When the above paragraph was omitted in DHC, it made it appear that the subsequent material occurred on the previous day.

125. DHC 3:74: replaces "the whole matter" with "our affairs in general"

126. DHC 3:74: replaces "These" with "The"

127. DHC 3:74: adds "from Chariton"

upon the subject, considering<sup>128</sup> they had been<sup>129</sup> outrageously imposed upon in this matter; they left this afternoon apparently perfectly satisfied with the interview.

News came this evening that the mob were to attack Adam-ondi-Ahman, and a few of the brethren<sup>130</sup> started to assist the brethren to defend themselves.<sup>131</sup>

<sup>132</sup>Sunday 9th, this morning, a company in addition to what<sup>133</sup> went last evening, went to Adam-ondi-Ahman to assist the brethren there in their defense against the mob.

Captain William Allred<sup>134</sup> took a company of ten mounted men<sup>135</sup>, and went to intercept a team with guns and ammunition<sup>136</sup> from Richmond for<sup>137</sup> the mob in Davies[s]<sup>138</sup>. They found the wagon broke<sup>139</sup> down, and the boxes of guns drawn into the high grass near by the wagon,<sup>140</sup> no one present that could be discovered. In a short time two men on horseback, came from towards the camp of the mob, and immediately behind them was a man with a wagon; they all came up and were taken by virtue of a writ, supposing them to be the men who<sup>141</sup> were abetting the mob in<sup>142</sup> carrying the<sup>143</sup> guns and ammunition to those murderers<sup>144</sup>, yea, and murderers too in cool blood. The men were taken together with the guns to Far West; the guns were distributed among the brethren for their defense, and the prisoners were held in custody. This was a glorious day indeed, the plans of the mob were frustrated in losing their guns, and all their efforts appeared to be blasted.

The mob continued<sup>145</sup> to take prisoners at their pleasure; some they keep, and some they let go, they try all in their power to make us commit the first act of violence. They frequently send in word that they are torturing the prisoners to death, in the most aggravating<sup>146</sup> manner, but we understand all their ways, and their cunning and wisdom is not past finding out.<sup>147</sup> Captain Allred<sup>148</sup> acted<sup>149</sup> under the civil Authorities in Caldwell, who issued the writ for securing the arms and arresting the carriers. The prisoners were brought to Far West for trial.

---

128. DHC 3:74: "considered"

129. Book B-2, 745 (darker ink): "<been>" (prob. TB)

130. DHC 3:74: adds "from Far West"

131. JSj [1838], 81 (pencil): "<and a few ... themselves>" (WR)

132. *Source*: Following three paragraphs closely follow JSj [1838], 81-82 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:286-87; *JSP* 1:318-19; *APR*, 214-15), which includes penciled alterations made by WR, who later edited the text for inclusion in MSHjS.

133. DHC 3:74: replaces "what" with "that which"

134. Book B-1, 822, Book B-2, 745: "Alred"

135. JSj [1838], 81, Book B-1, 822: "ten men, all mounted"

136. DHC 3:74: adds "sent"

137. DHC 3:74: replaces "for" with "to"

138. DHC 3:74: adds "county"

139. Book B-1, 822: "broke<en>"; DHC 3:74: "broken"

140. DHC 3:74: adds "there was"

141. DHC 3:74: replaces "supposing them to be the men who" with "on the supposition that they"

142. DHC 3:74: replaces "in" with "by"

143. DHC 3:74: omits "the"

144. DHC 3:74: replaces "those murderers" with "them" and deletes remainder of sentence

145. Book B-1, 822, DHC 3:74: "continue"

146. DHC 3:75: replaces "aggravating" with "cruel"

147. Remainder of paragraph does not appear in JSj [1838], 82, which DHC 3:74 moves to beginning of paragraph.

148. Book B-1, 822, Book B-2, 745: "Alred"

149. Book B-2, 745: "<acted>" (pos. RLC)

<sup>150</sup>The Camp traveled two miles before breakfast, and tented on<sup>151</sup> each side of the little Ambro, near the west line of Edgar County, where the sisters made a washing,<sup>152</sup> directed by the Council, as they had not had the privilege for some days, while some had died and others were sick. The Camp was instructed that they could not all go up to Zion in a body, but<sup>153</sup> it was wisdom that some should look out places and stop through the winter, and work, and get means to help themselves<sup>154</sup> when they arrived, as the money received at Bath was growing short; but the Seventies ought to go up and locate their families, and go forth and preach the gospel.

Monday 10th, [...] <sup>155</sup>nine or ten families concluded to look for a place and stop over winter. The Camp passed Independence, and across fifteen mile prairie in all twenty-two miles, and encamped by a small stream.

<sup>156</sup>[Monday, 10.] This day the prisoners,<sup>157</sup> John B. Comer, William L. McHoney, and Allen Miller, were brought before Albert Petty, Justice of the Peace for examination. The prisoners asked for bail, to allow time to get counsel. The law allowed no bail, but the Court adjourned till Wednesday, to give time to <sup>158</sup>prisoners to get counsel.

<sup>159</sup>After the arrest, the facts were communicated to Judge King by letter, asking his advice how to dispose of the guns and prisoners, under the date of “Richmond, September tenth,”<sup>160</sup> Judge King advised by letter, to “turn the prisoners<sup>161</sup> loose, and let them receive kind treatment[”]; that the guns were Government property in the care of Captain Pollard of his vicinity, but whether they went by his authority or permission he could not say, he was at a loss to give any advice about them,<sup>162</sup> [“]they shall<sup>163</sup> not through any agency of mine<sup>164</sup> be taken from you<sup>165</sup> to be converted and used for illegal purposes. <sup>166</sup>A. A. KING.” (Directed to Messrs. Smith and Rigdon.)

<sup>167</sup>Under the same date, Judge King advised General Atchison “to send two hundred or more men and dispel the forces in Davies[s] <sup>168</sup>and all the assembled armed forces in Caldwell, and cause those Mormons who refuse to give up, to surrender, and be recognized, for it will not do to compromise the law with them[”]—What compromise need there be Judge King, for no Mormons had

150. This and next paragraph appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:74–75. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 55–56 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 48–49 (DHC 3:137–38; chap. 10).

151. Book B-2, 745: “<on>” (US)

152. Book B-1, 822: adds “as”; Book B-2, 745: adds erasure

153. Book B-1, 823, Book B-2, 745: add “that”

154. Book B-1, 823: adds “with”; Book B-2, 745: adds erasure

155. Book B-1, 823: adds “~~There was a child born this morning in camp—son of Reuben Daniels~~” (cf. SDTj, 55; transcription in vol. 8, III.4)

156. *Source*: This paragraph based on JSj [1838], 82–83 (GWR) (*PJS* 2:287; *JSP* 1:319; *APR*, 215).

157. DHC 3:75: adds “taken by Captain Allred on Sunday, viz.”

158. DHC 3:75: adds “the”

159. *Source*: First sentence introducing letter from AAP, 25; remainder of paragraph based on Austin A. King to JS, 10 Sept. 1838, in JSLR, Bx 3, fd 1, 14–16 (transcription in vol. 8, III.18).

160. DHC 3:75: moves “under the date of Richmond, September 10th” to precede “asking his advice” (cf. MS Letter, 1)

161. MS Letter, 2: replaces “the prisoners” with “those three men”

162. DHC 3:75: adds “but said that”

163. DHC 3:75: “should”

164. DHC 3:75: replaces “mine” with “his”

165. DHC 3:75: replaces “you” with “us”

166. DHC 3:75: adds “The letter was signed by” and deletes quotation marks

167. *Source*: DCCO, 28–29. Quote lightly edited.

168. DHC 3:75: adds “county”



refused to surrender to the requisitions of the law[?] It is mob violence alone that the Mormons are contending against.

<sup>169</sup>A petition was this day made out by the citizens of Ray County, directed to General Atchison,  
<sup>170</sup>to call out the Militia to suppress this<sup>171</sup> insurrection in Caldwell and Davies[s]<sup>172</sup>, and save the effu-  
sion of blood, which must speedily take place unless prevented; signed by Jesse Coates and twenty-eight  
others.

<sup>173</sup>**Tuesday 11th, the Camp traveled sixteen miles across the prairie and pitched tents in  
Macan<sup>174</sup> County.**

**Wednesday 12th, Camp traveled twenty-nine miles; 534 from Kirtland.**

<sup>175</sup>[Wednesday, 12.] This day the prisoners <sup>176</sup>John B. Comer and his comrades were put upon  
trial. It was proven to the Court that the guns were taken by one of the prisoners, and that they<sup>177</sup> were  
taking them to Davies[s] County to arm the mob. It was also proved that the mob was collecting for  
the purpose of driving the Saints from their homes. The prisoners were held to bail for their appear-  
ance at the Circuit Court; Comer as principal, the others were hired into his service.

<sup>178</sup>This day also a communication was made<sup>179</sup> to Governor Boggs, dated Davies[s] County, con-  
taining all the falsehoods and lies that the evil geniuses<sup>180</sup> of mobocrats, villains, and murderers could  
invent, charging the Mormons with every crime they themselves had been guilty of, and calling the  
Mormons impostors, rebels, Canadian refugees, emissaries of the prince of darkness, &c.<sup>181</sup>, <sup>182</sup>signed,  
“The citizens of Davies[s] and Livingston Counties.”

<sup>183</sup>Under this date, General Atchison informed the Governor by letter from headquarters at  
Richmond, that on the solicitation of the citizens and advice of the Judge of the Circuit he had ordered  
out four companies of fifty men each from the Militia of Clay County, and a like number from Ray;  
also four hundred men to hold themselves in readiness if required, all mounted and Riflemen, except  
one company of Infantry. The troops will<sup>184</sup> proceed immediately to the scene of excitement and  
insurrection.

---

169. *Source*: DCCO, 29.

170. DHC 3:76: adds “asking him”

171. DHC 3:76: replaces “this” with “the”

172. DHC 3:76: adds “counties”

173. This and next paragraph appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:76. *Source*: Based on SDTj,  
56–57 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 49 (DHC 3:138–39; chap. 10).

174. Book B-1, 823: “Macon”

175. *Source*: Based on the previous entry of 10 Sept. 1838 from JSj [1838], 82, and AAP, 25–26.

176. DHC 3:76: adds “[Allred’s]”

177. DHC 3:76: replaces “they” with “he with the others”

178. *Source*: Based on DCCO, 18–19.

179. DHC 3:76: replaces “made” with “sent”

180. DHC 3:76: “genius”

181. DHC 3:76: omits “&c.”

182. DHC 3:76: adds “and”

183. *Source*: Based on DCCO, 19–20.

184. DHC 3:76: replaces “will” with “were to”





8.

# KIRTLAND CAMP ARRIVES AT FAR WEST

September-October 1838

[DN 3 (28 May 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>About this time [September 12th]<sup>2</sup> sixty or more mobbers entered De Witt and warned the brethren to leave the<sup>3</sup> place.

<sup>4</sup>Thursday 13th, the Camp traveled to Bolivia, twelve miles Brother [Ira] Thorton's<sup>5</sup> child died in the evening, and was buried on the morning of the 14th<sup>6</sup>.

Friday 14th, <sup>7</sup>the Camp <sup>8</sup>passed through Springfield, which it is expected will soon be the Capital of Illinois, instead of Vandalia. Much opposition was manifested at Springfield in the countenances of men, in their hard and unrighteous remarks against Joseph Smith, and the Church, and in much laughing. Fever and Ague, and Chills and Fever are the prevailing diseases in this place. The drouth continues, the water in the wells is very low, and many springs entirely dry; many families found stopping places before arriving here. The Camp is sometimes short of food, both for man and beast, and they know what it is to be hungry. Their living for the last one<sup>9</sup> hundred miles, has been boiled corn, and shaving pudding, which is made of new corn ears shaved upon a jointer or fore plane—It is excellent with milk, butter, or sweetening, or<sup>10</sup> with an occasional mixture of pork, flour, potatoes, pumpkins, melons, &c., makes a comfortable living. The<sup>11</sup> cobs and remaining corn is given to the horses, so that nothing is lost; hence the proverb

---

1. *Source*: Undetermined.

2. DHC 3:77: inserts this date; RDft 1:15: adds this sentence interlinearly at the beginning of the entry for 13 Sept. 1838

3. DHC 3:77: replaces "the" with "that"

4. This and next paragraph appear in MSHijS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:77. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 57-59 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 49-51 (DHC 3:139-40; chap. 10).

5. Book B-1, 824: "Thornton's"

6. Book B-1, 824: omits "the 14th"

7. Book B-1, 824, adds "before"; Book B-2, 746: adds ellipses over erasure

8. Book B-1, 824: adds "started, which"; Book B-2, 746: adds ellipses over erasure of about four words

9. Book B-2, 747: "<one>" (WB)

10. Book B-1, 824: replaces "or" with "and"

11. Book B-2, 747: "<The>" (WB)

goes forth in the world: “The Mormons would starve a host of enemies to death, for they will live where every body else would die.” The camp numbers about two hundred and sixty. There was five hundred and 15<sup>12</sup>, but they have been scattered to the four winds, and it is because of selfishness, covetousness, murmurings and complainings, and not having fulfilled their covenants that they have been thus scattered. Traveled twenty-three miles, and tented five miles west of Springfield; 569 miles from Kirtland.

<sup>13</sup>[Friday, 14] I was at home after three o’clock in the evening.

<sup>14</sup>[September 15.]<sup>15</sup> William Dryden, Justice of the Peace in Davies[s] County, stated to the Governor in a long communication “That he had issued a writ against Alanson<sup>16</sup> Ripley, George A.<sup>17</sup> Smith, and others, for assaulting and threatening Adam Black on the eighth of August last; and that the officer with a guard of ten<sup>18</sup> men in attempting to serve the writ, was forcibly driven from the town where<sup>19</sup> the offenders were supposed to be, and that the Mormons were so well armed and so numerous in Caldwell and Davies[s], that the judicial power of the<sup>20</sup> counties was wholly unable to execute a writ against a Mormon, and that the Mormons held the ‘Institutions of the country in utter contempt,’” with many more such lies<sup>21</sup> of the blackest kind: upon which Governor Boggs issued an order to General David R. Atchison, of the third Division of Missouri Militia, through the Adjutant General, B. M. Lisle, to raise a sufficient force of troops under his command, and aid the Civil Officers in Davies[s] County to execute all writs and other processes, in their charge and especially assist the officer charged with the execution of a writ issued by William Dryden, Justice of the Peace, on the twenty-ninth of August last, for the arrest of Alanson<sup>22</sup> Ripley, George A.<sup>23</sup> Smith, and others, and bring the offenders to Justice.

The following letter gives a tolerable<sup>24</sup> fair view of the movements of the Militia for a few days past:

<sup>25</sup>Headquarters, 1st Brigade,<sup>26</sup> 3rd Division, Missouri Militia,  
Camp at Grand River, September 15th, 1838.

Major General, David<sup>27</sup> R. Atchison, commanding 3rd Division Missouri Militia.

Sir,—In pursuance of your orders dated 11th inst[ant]., I issued orders to Col[onel]. W[illiam]m. A. Dunn, commanding the 28th regiment, to raise four companies of mounted

12. Book B-1, 824: “thirty”; Book B-2, 747 (darker ink): “{fifteen/}” (pos. WB)

13. Source: Based on JSj [1838–39], 3 (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

14. Source: First part of paragraph (“William Dryden ... blackest kind”) based on William Dryden’s 15 Sept. 1838 letter in *DCCO*, 21–22. Quote has been heavily edited, which might be the reason BHR deleted quotation marks. Remainder of paragraph based on L. W. Boggs to B. M. Lisle, 15 Sept. 1838, and B. M. Lisle to D. R. Atchison, 15 Sept. 1838, in *DCCO*, 22–23.

15. Brackets this editor’s.

16. *DCCO*, 21: “Andrew”; Book B-1, 824: “~~Andrew~~ <Alanson>” (WB)

17. Book B-1, 824: “<A.>” (WB)

18. Book B-2, 747: “seven” made into “ten”

19. Book B-2, 747 (pencil): “w<h>ere”

20. DHC 3:77: replaces “the” with “those”

21. DHC 3:77: replaces “lies” with “falsehoods”

22. Book B-1, 824: replaces “Alanson” with “~~Andrew~~”; Book B-2, 747 (darker ink): “A{lanson/}” (pos. WB)

23. Book B-1, 824: “<A.>” (WB)

24. DHC 3:78: “tolerably”

25. Source: *DCCO*, 24–25.

26. Book B-2, 747: “<1st Brigade>”

27. Book B-2, 747: “<David>” (TB)

Riflemen, consisting of fifty men each; also to Col[onel]. John Boulware, commanding <sup>28</sup>70th regiment, to raise two companies of mounted Riflemen, consisting each of like number, to start forthwith for service in the Counties of Caldwell, and Davies[s].

On the same day,<sup>29</sup> Colonel Dunn obtained the four companies of volunteers required from the 28th regiment, and<sup>30</sup> on the morning of the 12th I took the command in person, and marched to the line of Caldwell, at which point, I ordered the Colonels to march the regiments to the timber on<sup>31</sup> Crooked River. I then started for Far West, the County Seat of Caldwell, accompanied by my aid alone.

On arriving at that place, I found Comer, Miller, and McHoney<sup>32</sup>, the prisoners mentioned in your order; I demanded of the guard who had them in confinement, to deliver them over to me, which was promptly done. I also found that the guns, that had been captured by the Sheriff and citizens of Caldwell, had been distributed and placed in the hands of the soldiery and scattered over the country; I ordered them to be immediately collected and delivered up to me. I then sent an express to Col[onel]. Dunn to march the regiment by daylight, for that place, where he arrived about 7 <sup>33</sup>a.m., making forty miles since 10 o'clock, a.m., on the previous day.

When my command arrived, the guns were delivered up, amounting to forty-two stand, three stand could not be produced, as they had probably gone to Davies[s] County. I sent these guns under a guard, to your command in Ray County, together with the prisoner Comer, the other two being citizens of Davies[s], I retained and brought with me to this County, and released them on parol [peril] of honor, as I conceived their detention illegal.

At 8 o'clock a.m., we took up the line of march, and proceeded through Millport in Davies[s] County, thirty-seven miles from our former encampment, and arrived at the camp of the citizens of Davies[s] and other adjoining Counties, which<sup>34</sup> amounted to between two and three hundred, as their Commander, Dr. Austin of Carroll <sup>35</sup>informed me. Your order, requiring them to disperse, which had been forwarded in advance of my command, by your aid James M. Hughes, was read to them, and they were required to disperse; they professed that their object for arming and collecting was solely for defense, but they were marching and counter marching guards out, and myself and others who approached the camp were taken to task, and required to wait the approach of the Sergeant of the Guard. I had an interview with Dr. Austin, and his professions were all pacific, but they still continue in arms, marching and counter marching.

I then proceeded with your aid, J. M. Hughes, and my aid Benjamin Holliday, to the Mormon encampment commanded by Colonel Lyman Wight; we held a Conference with him, and he professed entire willingness to disband and surrender up to me every one of the Mormons accused of crime, and required in return that the hostile forces, collected by the other citizens of the County, should also disband, at the camp commanded by Dr. Austin. I demanded the prisoner, demanded in your order, who had been released on the evening after my arrival in their vicinity.

I took up <sup>36</sup>line of march, and encamped in the direct road between the two hos-

---

28. Book B-1, 824: adds "the"

29. DCCO, 24: moves "on the same day" to end of previous sentence

30. Book B-2, 747: "<and>" (pos. RLC)

31. DHC 3:78: replaces "on" with "of"

32. DCCO, 25: "McHany"; Book B-1, 825: "McHon<e>y"

33. DCCO, 25, Book B-1, 825, Book B-2, 748: add "o'clock"

34. DCCO, 25, Book B-1, 825: replace "which" with "they"; Book B-2, 748: "{\which/}"

35. DHC 3:79: adds "county"

36. DHC 3:79: adds "my"

tile encampments, where I have remained since, within about two and a half miles of Wight's encampment, and sometimes the other camp is nearer, and sometimes further from me. I intend to occupy this position until your arrival, as I deem it best to preserve peace, and prevent an engagement between the parties, and if kept so for a few days, they will doubtless disband without coercion. I have the honor to be, yours with respect.

A. W. DONIPHAN,  
Brig.-Gen[era]l. 1st Brig[ade].,  
3rd Div[ision]. Mo. Mi[litia].

<sup>37</sup>By this it is clearly seen that the officers and troops acting under the Governor's orders, had very little regard to the laws of the land, otherwise, Comer, Miller, and McHoney<sup>38</sup> would not have been discharged by them.

<sup>39</sup>I was at, and about home this day attending to my business as usual.

<sup>40</sup>**The Camp traveled twelve miles before breakfast, and pitched tents near Elder Keelers—there was some contention among them, and Bro[ther].<sup>41</sup> Pierce's child died<sup>42</sup> this afternoon, and was buried in the Camp ground.**

<sup>43</sup>Sunday 16th, <sup>44</sup>held meeting in the afternoon, had preaching and breaking of bread. I was at home all day with my family.

<sup>45</sup>Monday 17th, I was counseling with the brethren at home and about the city.

<sup>46</sup>**The Camp passed through Jacksonville in Morgan County to Geneva twenty-five miles. There was a small Church at Geneva, and a few members in Jacksonville.**

[DN 3 (18 June 1853): 1]

<sup>47</sup>Headquarters 3rd Di[vision]., Mo., Mi[litia].,  
Grand River, Sep. 17th, 1838.

To his Excellency the Commander-in-Chief:

Sir.—I arrived at the County seat of this County, Davies[s], on the evening of the 15th inst[ant]., with the troops raised from the Militia of Ray County, when I was joined by the troops from Clay County under the command of General Doniphan; in the same neighborhood I found from two to three hundred men in arms principally from the Counties of Livingston, Carroll and Saline. These men were embodied under the pretext of defending the citizens of Davies[s] County, against the Mormons, and were operating under the orders of a Dr. Austin from Carroll County. The citizens of Davies[s], or a large portion of them, residing on each

37. *Source*: Composed by WR in RDft 1:16 between 13–21 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

38. Book B-1, 825: “McHon<e>y”; Book B-2, 748: “McHony”

39. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838–39], 3 (JM) (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

40. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:79. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 59–60 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 51 (DHC 3:140; chap. 10).

41. Book B-2, 748: “\bro:/.”

42. Book B-1, 825: “<died>” (US)

43. *Source*: First sentence probably WR's guess based on day of week; second sentence based on JSj [1838–39], 3 (JM) (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

44. Book B-1, 825: adds “and”

45. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838–39], 3 (JM) (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

46. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:80. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 61 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 51 (DHC 3:140; chap. 10).

47. *Source*: DCCO, 26.

side of <sup>48</sup>Grand River, had left their farms and removed their families either to the adjoining Counties, or collected them together at a place called the Camp Ground. The whole County on the east side of Grand River appears to be deserted, with the exception of a few who are not so timid as their neighbors. The Mormons of Davies[s] County have also left their farms, and have encamped for safety at a place immediately on the east bank of Grand River, called Adam-ondi-Ahman. The numbers are supposed to be about two hundred and fifty men, citizens of Davies[s] County, and from fifty to one hundred men, citizens of Caldwell County; both parties have been scouting through the country, and occasionally taking prisoners, and threatening and insulting each other, but as yet no blood has been shed. I have ordered all armed men from adjoining Counties to repair to their homes; the<sup>49</sup> Livingston County men, and others, to the amount of one hundred men, have returned, and there remain now about one hundred and fifty who will, I am in hopes, return in a few days. I have been informed by the Mormons, that all of those who have been charged with a violation of the laws, will be in today for trial, when that is done, the troops under my command will be no longer required in this County, if the citizens of other Counties will return to their respective homes. I have proposed to leave two companies, of fifty men each, in this County, and discharge the remainder of the troops; said two companies will remain for the preservation of order, until peace and confidence are restored. I also enclose to your Excellency the report of General Doniphan, and refer you for particulars to Major Rogers.

I have the honor to be your obedient servant,

D. R. ATCHISON,  
Major General, 3rd Division Mo. Mi[litia].

<sup>50</sup>Tuesday 18th, I have been at home all day; considerable<sup>51</sup> unwell, but am some<sup>52</sup> better this evening.

<sup>53</sup>**The Camp traveled to Brussels, Philip's<sup>54</sup> Ferry, fifteen miles, and a part crossed over the Illinois River.**

<sup>55</sup>This day the Governor ordered Captain Childs to have the Boonville Guards mounted, with ten days' provisions, and in readiness to march on his arrival at the end of the week. The Governor also ordered General S. D. Lucas of the fourth division to march immediately with four hundred mounted men to the<sup>56</sup> scene of difficulties<sup>57</sup>, and co-operate with General Atchison. Similar orders were issued to Major Generals, Lewis Bolton, John B. Clark, and Thomas D. Grant.

<sup>58</sup>Wednesday 19th, I was at, and about home.

---

48. *DCCO*, 26, Book B-1, 826: add "the"

49. *DHC* 3:80: replaces "the" with "and"

50. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 3 (JM) (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

51. *DHC* 3:81: "considerably"

52. *DHC* 3:81: "somewhat"

53. This paragraph appears in MSHjS and DN, but omitted in *DHC* 3:81. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 61-62 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 51-52 (*DHC* 3:140-41; chap. 10).

54. Book B-1, 826: "Phillips"

55. *Source*: First sentence based on L. W. Boggs via B. M. Lisle to Capt. Childs, 18 Sept. 1838, in *DCCO*, 23. Second sentence based on L. W. Boggs via B. M. Lisle to S. D. Lucas, 18 Sept. 1838, in *DCCO*, 24. Third sentence based on a bracketed note that follows preceding document in *DCCO*, 24.

56. Book B-2, 749: "<the>"

57. *DHC* 3:81: "difficulty"

58. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (*PJS* 2:305; *JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

<sup>59</sup>The Camp finished crossing the River, and passing through Griggsville<sup>60</sup> and Pittsfield,<sup>61</sup> encamped on the prairie thirteen miles.

Thursday 20th, the Camp traveled twenty-two miles, crossing the Mississippi River on the Steamer *Rescue*, opposite Louisiana, into Pike County, Missouri, pitched tents one mile west of the town;<sup>62</sup> 656 miles<sup>63</sup> from Kirtland. To show a feeling that is striving to prevail throughout the State of Missouri I give the following extract from Elder John [Samuel]<sup>64</sup> D. Tyler's journal from which most of the facts in this history are derived.

This afternoon I was driving the herd, I had occasion to go back after a cow that strayed on the prairie where we baited. I found her, and went on, and met two men who had crossed in the Steam Boat and had quarreled with some of the Camp before me. The spokesman asked me, "do you belong to this gang of Mormons?" "Yes I do" said I, "are you a Mormon?" "Yes, I am." "Well stop." "I am in too much hurry to be stopped and you have not power to stop me." "Are you such a fool as to let those people lead you right into danger?" "What danger?" "Why don't you know the Missourians are raising armies to cut you all to pieces?" "We don't fear armies." "God damn you<sup>65</sup>, don't you fear me?" said he, at the same time making an attempt to take his arms from his side, for he was armed with a brace of pistols, and a dirk. "No I don't fear you any more than I do any other man." "Well God damn ye<sup>66</sup>, what do you fear?" "We fear nothing but God Almighty." "Well stop! stop!! damn ye stop!!! or I'll shoot you down." "Well shoot if you like, said I, and passed along, while he kept swearing he would shoot me, and said he, you will all get killed before you get up the bluff."

<sup>67</sup>[Thursday, 20.] I was at home until about ten o'clock, when I rode out on horseback. I returned a little before sunset, and was at home through the evening.

The following extracts from General Atchison's letter to the Governor, of this date<sup>68</sup>, from Liberty, will give a pretty correct view of the army, &c.<sup>69</sup>

<sup>70</sup>Head Quarters, 3 Div. Mo. Mi[litia]. }  
Liberty, September 20th 1838. }

To His Excellency, the Commander-in-Chief of the Mo. Mi[litia].

Sir.—The troops ordered out for the purpose of putting down the insurrection, supposed to exist in the Counties of Davies[s] and Caldwell, were discharged on the 20th inst[ant]., with the exception of two companies of the Ray Militia, now stationed in the County of Davies[s], under the command of Brigadier General Parks. It was deemed necessary in the state of excite-

59. Following three paragraphs appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:81. Source: Based on SDTj, 62–63 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 52 (DHC 3:141–42; chap. 10).

60. Book B-1, 826: "Griggensville"

61. Book B-1, 826: adds "and"; Book B-2, 750: "and"

62. Book B-1, 826: adds "twenty two miles"

63. Book B-1, 826: "<miles>" (pos. WR)

64. The obvious error in first name, which originated in RDft 1:17, has been corrected by this editor.

65. Book B-1, 827: "ye"

66. Book B-2, 750: "{\ye/}"

67. Source: Based on JSj [1838–39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:305; JSP 1:328; APR, 228).

68. DHC 3:81: moves "of this date" to follow "letter"

69. DHC 3:81: replaces "army, &c." with "movements of the militia."

70. Source: DCCO, 27–28. Deleted portions supplied here in bold type.



ment in that County, that those companies should remain there for a short period longer, say some twenty<sup>71</sup> days, until confidence and tranquility should be restored.

**The reason that an officer of General Parks' rank was left in command, were, 1st. that, if necessary he might call to his assistance upon the shortest notice, the whole force of his Brigade. 2d., the moral influence of an officer of his rank would be greater than an officer of less grade. 3d, I could not find an officer of less grade in my Division to manage affairs of so much delicacy and importance.** All the offenders against the law in that County, against whom process was taken out were arrested and brought before a Court of Inquiry, and recognized to appear at the Circuit Court. Mr. Thomas C. Birch<sup>72</sup> attended to the prosecuting<sup>73</sup>, on the part of the State. The citizens of other Counties who came in armed, to the assistance of the citizens of Davies[s] County, have dispersed and returned to their respective homes; and the Mormons have also returned to their <sup>74</sup>homes; so that I consider the insurrection, for the present at least, to be at an end, **but from the state of feeling in the county of Daviess and the adjoining counties, it is very much to be feared it will break out again, and if so, without the interposition of the Commander-in-Chief, the consequences will be awful.** From the best information I can get, there are about two hundred and fifty Mormon families in Davies[s] County, nearly one half of the population, and the whole of the Mormon forces in Davies[s], Caldwell and the adjoining Counties, is estimated at from thirteen to fifteen hundred men, capable of bearing arms.

**If an attack is made upon the Mormons in Daviess county, for the purpose of driving them from that county, it is very much to be feared that the Mormons, to a man, will assist the Mormons of that county; this will be the case I have no doubt. I will further inform your Excellency, that the Mormons are well armed, most of them being equipped with a good rifle or musket, a brace of large belt pistols, and a broad sword, so that from their position, and their fanaticism, and their unalterable determination not to be driven, much blood will be spilt, and much suffering endured, if a blow is once struck, without the interposition of your Excellency.**

Major Rogers, I presume, has given your Excellency a history of the immediate cause of the disturbance in Daviess county, and also Judge King has given a detail of facts as far as he could learn them; I send you copies of Judge King's communication to me, upon the subject of ordering out a military force; also a petition from the citizens of Ray county, I was also urged to take that step by the citizens of the most respectable classes in the county of Clay, and was urged to it by the citizens of Daviess county, also of Caldwell county; from all which representations, I deemed it my duty to order out all the military forces and I have now no doubt of the propriety of the measure; it has prevented blood being shed, for the present, and I am in hopes for the future; it has convinced the Mormons that the law will be enforced, and other citizens that it can be enforced, and is ample to redress all grievances. The Mormons of Davies[s] County, as I stated in a former report, were encamped in a town called Adam-ondi-Ahman, and are headed by Lyman Wight, a bold, brave, skillful, and I may add, a desperate man; they appeared to be acting on the defensive, and I must further add, gave up the offenders with a good deal of promptness. The arms taken by the Mormons, and prisoners were also given up, upon demand, with seeming cheerfulness. **Your order in relation to raising five hundred mounted men, will be attended to with promptness.**

---

71. Book B-2, 750: "{\twenty/}" (US)

72. DCCO, 27, Book B-1, 827, Book B-2, 750: "Burch"

73. DHC 3:81: "prosecution"

74. DHC 3:82: adds "respective"

I have the honor to be, &c.,

DAVID R. ATCHISON,

Maj. Gen'l. 3 Div. Mo. Mi[litia].

<sup>75</sup>The mob <sup>76</sup>again threatened De Witt.

<sup>77</sup>Friday 21st, I was about home.

<sup>78</sup>**The Camp traveled seventeen miles. It rained much during the day. The Saints crowded into their tents in their wet clothes, and fasted till morning. The women and children slept well, and there was no complaint of “taking cold.”**

<sup>79</sup>**Saturday 22nd, traveled eighteen miles, and tented in a grove; having to go half a mile after water, which was often the case.**

<sup>80</sup>[Saturday, 22.] I went out early in the morning, returned to breakfast at half past seven, and took an airing on horseback at nine in the morning.

<sup>81</sup>**The following petition is from the Saints at De Witt.**

<sup>82</sup>De Witt, Carroll County, State of Missouri,  
September 22nd, 1838.

To his Excellency Lilburn W. Boggs, Governor of the State of Missouri.

Your Petitioners, citizens of the County of Carroll, do hereby petition your Excellency, praying for relief: That whereas, your petitioners have on the 20th instant, been sorely aggrieved, by being beset by a lawless mob, certain inhabitants of this and other Counties, to the injury of the good citizens of this and the adjacent places: that on the aforesaid day, <sup>83</sup>came from one hundred to one hundred and fifty armed men, and threatened with force and violence, to drive certain peaceable citizens from their homes, in defiance of all law, and threatened then <sup>84</sup>to drive said citizens out of the County, but on deliberation, concluded to give them, said citizens, till the first of October next to leave said County, and threatened if not gone by that time, to exterminate them, without regard to age or sex, and destroy their chattels, by throwing them in <sup>85</sup>the river: We therefore pray you to take such steps as shall put a stop to all lawless proceeding<sup>86</sup>; and we, your Petitioners will ever pray, &c., &c.<sup>87</sup>

Benj. Kendrick,  
Dudley Thomas,  
W[illia]m. P. Lundow,  
Jno. Kendrick,

Oliver Olney,  
John Thorp,  
H. T. Chipman,  
David Dixon,

75. Source: Undetermined.

76. DHC 3:82: adds “this day”

77. Source: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:306; JSP 1:328; APR, 228).

78. Following two paragraphs appear in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:82. Source: Based on SDTj, 63-64 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 52-53 (DHC 3:142; chap. 10).

79. Book B-1, 827: adds “on”

80. Source: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:306; JSP 1:328; APR, 228).

81. This introduction appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:82.

82. Source: DCCO, 29-30. DHC 3:82-83 rearranges names.

83. DHC 3:82: adds “there”

84. Book B-2, 751: at *boln* “\then/” (prob. WB)

85. DHC 3:82: replaces “in” with “into”

86. Book B-1, 828, Book B-2, 751: “proceedings”

87. DHC 3:82: omits second “&c.”



Thos. Dehart,  
 Francis Brown,  
 John Ti[l]lford,  
 H. G. Sherwood,  
 John Murdock,  
 G. M. Hinkle,  
 James Valance,  
 Jabez Lake,  
 Albert Loree<sup>89</sup>  
 Samuel Lake,  
 Asa Manchester,  
 Wm. Winston,  
 John Clark,  
 Thos. Hollingshead,  
 Asa W. Barnes,  
 Elijah T. Rogers,  
 John Dougherty,  
 Moses Harris,  
 Perry Thayer,  
 B. B.<sup>90</sup> Bartley,  
 Jonathan Harris,  
 Wm. J. Hatfield,

Benj. Hensley,  
 Franklin N. Thayer,  
 H. M. Wallace,  
 D. Thomas, (no<sup>88</sup> Mormon.)  
 Nathan Harrison,  
 Elizabeth Smith,  
 Henry Root,  
 A. L. Caldwell,  
 Rufus Allen,  
 Ezekiel Barnes,  
 D. H. Barnes,  
 Wm. S. Smith,  
 James Hampton,  
 Robert Hampton,  
 Jonathan Hampton,  
 George Peacock,  
 Daniel Clark,  
 John Proctor,  
 James McGuin,  
 Smith Humphrey.

<sup>91</sup>Sunday 23rd, I attended meeting both forenoon and afternoon<sup>92</sup>, and was at home in the evening.

<sup>93</sup>The funds of the Camp were nearly exhausted, and the counsel was to proceed on with the journey and encamped two miles west of Paris, twenty-two miles—Some disorder in the movement of the teams, and some murmurings: Satan is trying to divide and destroy.

<sup>94</sup>Elder Custer had to return nine miles after his horses, with great difficulty the herd was kept together. Brother Gaylord broke a wagon wheel and was badly hurt.

They were hailed in Paris, and asked where they were driving the cattle to? Towards the Rocky Mountains. “Well you are going into trouble.” Elder Tyler replied “we have been in that place before, and know how to take it.” The people growled and grumbled like wolves.

Monday 24th, the Camp was called together and the Council informed them of their scanty means, and that there had been a delinquency in consecrating their monies and goods according to the pattern; that the Council had hired large sums of money for which they were bound, and <sup>95</sup>liable to imprisonment in case of failure, and must wait on the brethren for their

---

88. DHC 3:83: replaces “no” with “non-”

89. *DCCO*, 30: “Albert Soree”

90. *DCCO*, 30: “B. R.”

91. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838–39], 4 (JM) (*JSP* 1:328; *APR*, 228).

92. Book B-1, 828: “A.M. and P.M.”

93. Following four paragraphs appear in MSHiJS, but omitted in DHC 3:83; all but second paragraph published in *DN*. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 64–66 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 53–54 (DHC 3:142–43; chap. 10).

94. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS, but omitted in *DN* and DHC 3:83. Book B-1, 828, cancels this paragraph, and it was not copied into Book B-2, 751, by WB about 9–16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

95. Book B-1, 828: adds “were”

pay, and these sums had been expended for the benefit of the Camp. They were required to bring forward their goods, which they did, and Elders B[enjamin]. Wilber and D[ominicus]. Carter went forward with the Commissaries wagon to sell them. The Camp went on, and passing through Madisonville (where they were assailed with all kinds of bugbear stories about the Mormons, war, &c.,) tented on the west side of the north branch, of Salt River, on the encampment that Elder<sup>96</sup> John E. Page had left on Saturday with his Canada Camp. The brethren were told that the governor was just a head with a Military force to stop them, to which they gave no heed.

<sup>97</sup>[Monday, 24.] I was at home until half-past eight a.m., when I rode out on horseback, and returned about five in the evening.

<sup>98</sup>The Governor having heard that peace had been restored in Davies[s] and Caldwell<sup>99</sup>, ordered Generals Clark, Crowther, Lewis, and Bolton to discharge their troops. The order was dated at Jonesborough.

<sup>100</sup>Tuesday 25th, General Parks wrote the Governor from Mill Port that he had been in the upper part of Davies[s] County to assist the Constable in bringing offenders to justice, and that the Major General, with the troops from Ray and Clay<sup>101</sup>, on the 18th inst[ant]., (except two companies from Ray under his command,) were disbanded. Says General Parks in this letter<sup>102</sup>:

<sup>103</sup>Head Quarters, 2d Brig. 3d Div. Mo. Mi[litia].  
Mill Port, Sept. 25, 1838. }

*His Excellency, Lilburn W. Boggs, Commander-in-Chief.*

Sir:—I received this morning, after my return from a tour in the upper part of this county, with a detail of the troops under my command, in assisting the constable in bringing offenders against the laws to justice, your despatch to Major General Atchison, which I took the liberty to open. The Major General left here with the troops from Clay and Ray, except two companies from Ray ordered to remain under my command, on the 18th inst.; since that time I have been employed in assisting the peace officers to execute the laws, and in bringing offenders to justice.

I am happy to inform you that there is not any necessity to use a larger force here at present; that now under my command I deem amply sufficient for the present purpose; should occasion require it, I have thought I could detach a sufficient force from the Brigade under my command. Whatever may have been the disposition of the people called Mormons, before our arrival here, since we have made our appearance they have shown no disposition to resist the laws, or of hostile intentions.

I deemed it my duty to visit their town in this county, and as soon as they saw the militia interpose between them and the people of this, and some of the adjoining counties who had assembled in arms, they went to work, abandoned their hostile attitude, and at this time peace and tranquility has every appearance of being restored. How long things may maintain their present attitude, I know not, but if the Maj.

---

96. Book B-2, 752: "<Elder>" (TB)

97. Source: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:306; JSP 1:329; APR, 228).

98. Source: DCCO, 31.

99. DHC 3:83: adds "counties"

100. Source: Based on DCCO, 32-33, the text of which follows.

101. DHC 3:83: adds "counties"

102. DHC 3:84: "In this letter General Parks said"

103. Source: DCCO, 32-33. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

General had not taken the field with a sufficient force, as promptly as he did, there is every reason to fear a dreadful conflict would have ensued. On next Saturday there will be brought to trial some fifteen or twenty individuals, of the Mormons, before a Justice of the Peace; a committee has been appointed on behalf of the citizens of Daviess county, to meet the Mormons on to-morrow, for the purpose of proposing to buy or sell out to them; they will meet at Adam-on-diahmon, when I will attend with a force to insure tranquility.

There has been so much prejudice and exaggeration concerned in this matter, that I found things **on my arrival here** entirely<sup>104</sup> different from what I was prepared to expect. **It is true that a great excitement did prevail between the parties, and I am happy to say that my exertions, as well as those of Major General Atchison, and the officers and men under my command, have been crowned with success.** When we arrived here, we found a large body of men from the Counties adjoining, armed and in the field, for the purpose, as I learned, of assisting the people of this County against the Mormons, without being called out by the proper authorities. **This force, the Major General very promptly prevailed upon to return to their homes, and left directions with me to see that they had done so. I have the honor to say to you, that duty has been promptly attended to, all of which I have advised General A[tchison]. thereof. I have thought it necessary to be thus minute in detailing to you our operations since we took the field; for further particulars I beg your Excellency may refer to the Major General, who I doubt not will communicate to you all the information in his possession; in the mean time, I assure you that any orders, given by you, or the Major General, relative to this matter, shall be promptly attended to.**

I have the honor to remain, your obd't servant,

H. G. PARKS, Brigadier General.

P.S.—Since writing the above, I received information that if the Committee do not agree, the determination of the Davies[s] County men is to drive the Mormons with powder and lead; **should any further measures take place, of importance, I will immediately advise the Major General of the Division thereof.**

H. G. PARKS, Brig. Gen'l.

The same day, General Parks wrote General Atchison as follows:

<sup>105</sup>Head Quarters, 2d Brig. 3d Div. }  
 Mill Port, Sept. 25, 1838. }

Major General Atchison,

Dear Sir:—I received this morning a despatch from the Governor, directed to you, which I took the liberty to open and advise you thereof. You will see by the letter of the Commander-in-Chief that he is bringing into the field a large body of troops, as I understand, under the command of four Major Generals. I have thought it my duty to advise the Commander-in-Chief, that I deemed the forces now under my command amply sufficient to preserve tranquility and enforce the laws. Since my last to you by Mr. Stone, I have been at this place, employed in fulfilling the orders left by you. I am happy to be able to state to you, that the deep excitement existing between the parties, has in a great degree ceased; and so far I have had no occasion to resort to force, in assisting the Constables. On tomorrow, a Committee from Davies[s] County meets a Committee of the Mormons at

104. DCCO, 32: replaces "entirely" with "totally"

105. Source: DCCO, 33-34. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

Adam-ondi-Ahman, to propose to them to buy or sell, and I expect to be there.<sup>106</sup> **On Saturday the 29th inst, there are fifteen or twenty of the Mormons cited to trial at Gallatin, where, Lyman Wight has pledged himself to me, they will attend. The officers and men are all in good health at present, and have been activity employed in the above duties. I have this moment heard a threat, thrown out by the men of this county, that should the above measures fail, their intention is to drive the Mormons with power and lead from this county. How far such a measure will be executed I know not, but I will exercise my utmost vigilance in this affair, and advise you thereof, from time to time.**

**I remain, your obd't servant,**

**H. G. PARKS, Brig. Gen'l.**

<sup>107</sup>The mob Committee met a Committee of the brethren, and the brethren entered into an agreement to purchase all the lands and possessions of those who desired to sell and leave Davies[s] County.

On Saturday the 29th inst[ant]., there are<sup>108</sup> fifteen or twenty of the Mormons cited to trial at Gallatin where Lyman Wight has pledged himself to me that<sup>109</sup> they will attend.

[...]<sup>110</sup>

<sup>111</sup>[25th]<sup>112</sup> **I was at home until eight o'clock, when I rode out on horseback; returned about 11 a.m., and continued through the afternoon<sup>113</sup>, and evening.**

<sup>114</sup>**The Camp passed through Huntsville, in Randolph County, which has been appointed as one of the stakes of Zion, and is the ancient site of the City of Manti, and pitched tents at Dark Creek, Salt Licks, seventeen miles. It was reported to the Camp, that one hundred and ten men had volunteered from Randolph and gone to Far West to settle difficulties.**

**Wednesday 26th.**<sup>115</sup> **This morning Elder James Foster, one of the Counselors, proposed to the Council to stop and<sup>116</sup> break up the Camp, on account of existing<sup>117</sup> circumstances, so much excitement, so many moving west and in large bodies too, it was wisdom for them to go to work, and provide for their families, until the difficulties should be settled, or they heard from**

106. Book B-2, 752: "<expect to be there.>" (WB)

107. Book B-1, 829: adds "<(p 7 addenda note U)>" (WB). This paragraph was added to Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note U, by WB before 6 Aug. 1845, and incorporated in Book B-2, 752, by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). DHC 3:84: moves this paragraph below under 26 Sept. For the earliest draft of Note U, see vol. 7, III.5. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on *DCCO*, 32.

108. DHC 3:84: replaces first part of sentence with "Wednesday, 26". BHR evidently attempted to resolve the confused dating; however, the information about a trial to be held on 29 Sept. came from a deleted portion of Parks's 25 Sept. letter quoted above (*DCCO*, 32).

109. Book B-2, 752 (lighter ink): "<that>" (US)

110. Book B-1, 829: adds partly-erased penciled note in margin "Addenda [Note?] to be made by GAS note 1" (pos. WR). Apparently this is the original location for Note U or some other note that was aborted.

111. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:84. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (*PJS* 2:306; *JSP* 1:329; *APR*, 228).

112. Brackets this editor's.

113. Book B-1, 829: replaces "afternoon" with "P.M."

114. Following four paragraphs appear in MSHiJS, but omitted in DHC 3:84-85; all except third paragraph appear in DN. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 66-69 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 55-56 (DHC 3:143-45; chap. 10).

115. Book B-1, 829: omits date; "26" in margin.

116. Book B-1, 829: omits "stop and"

117. Book B-1, 829: "~~The council informed the Camp that under~~ <This morning ... on account of> existing" (JG); Book B-2, 753: "~~The council informed the Camp, that under existing~~ <This morning ... on account of existing>" (pos. AC)

Far West. Four of the 7 Counselors were present, and three absent. Elder Young had stopped by the way. A silence prevailed. [...] <sup>118</sup> Shortly it was manifest that it was the desire of the Camp collectively, to go forward, notwithstanding their <sup>119</sup> deference always to the will of the Lord through the Council. Elder McArthur said in a low tone, that it was his impression that we might go up in righteousness, keeping the commandments, and not be molested. Some others manifested the same in concurrence with his feelings. Silence again. [...] <sup>120</sup> Here our faith was tried; and here the Lord looked down and beheld us, and lo, a gentleman who was directly from Far West, and was returning <sup>121</sup> to the East, where he belonged, left his carriage and came among us, although we were a good distance from the road, and he told us that there was no trouble in Far West and Adam-ondi-Ahman, but that we might go right along without danger of running into any body's difficulties; and further, said he, the one hundred and ten volunteers are to be discharged this day at twelve o'clock at Keytsville<sup>122</sup>. The Council replied "we believe you sir, and we thank you for your kindness." A vote of the Camp was called for, whether we should proceed, and instantly all hands were raised toward heaven!!!

<sup>123</sup> Now once more be praise and glory and honor and power and might and dominion unto the Lord, for he has over-ruled this thing, and he will over rule all things for his glory and the good of who love him, and this man was his messenger. We of the Council did not know the Will of the Lord as well before, as after this man's information is perhaps better know to them than to me, but I suppose it was because there was something wrong among them, that they were not agreed, for it was their privilege to know the will and mind of the Lord.

We pursued our journey, and in crossing a seven mile prairie we stopt in a hollow to bait the teams, and herd, and here the volunteers passed us on their homeward bound passage according to the man's word: one of the Platoon Officers said as he passed us, "well friends we will let you go this time; but the next time we will give you the devil up to the handle." The Bugler gave a blast, and said, "you'll soon reach the promised land, don't you hear Gabriel's trump?" The Camp passed on, and crossing Chariton River pitched their tents. Here they found seven of the time wagons of the Florence Camp, from Huron, which had passed them at Springfield, Illinois.

<sup>124</sup>[26th]<sup>125</sup> I was about<sup>126</sup> home until ten or eleven o'clock <sup>127</sup>when I rode out, but<sup>128</sup> returned home and spent the evening.

<sup>129</sup>Thursday 27th, I was at home and about the city.

118. SDTj, 68, Book B-1, 829, Book B-2, 753: add ellipses

119. Book B-1, 829: adds "~~due~~"

120. SDTj, 68, Book B-1, 829, Book B-2, 753: add ellipses

121. Book B-1, 829: adds "~~in his carriage~~"

122. Book B-1, 829: "Keattsville"; Book B-2, 753: "Kea<y>ttsville"

123. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC. Book B-1, 829, cancels this paragraph, and it was not copied into Book B-2, 753, by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

124. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:306; JSP 1:329; APR, 228).

125. Brackets this editor's.

126. DHC 3:84: replaces "about" with "at"

127. DHC 3:84: adds "in the morning"

128. DHC 3:84: replaces "but" with "and"

129. DHC 3:84-85: reverses order of this and following paragraph. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:306; JSP 1:329; APR, 228-29).

<sup>130</sup>26th,<sup>131</sup> [...] <sup>132</sup> the High Council of Adam-ondi-Ahman was immediately called, and Elders Don C. Smith, George<sup>133</sup> A. Smith, Lorenzo D.<sup>134</sup> Barn[e]s, and Harrison Sagers, were appointed to go immediately to the branches of the Church<sup>135</sup> in the south and east, and raise men and means to fulfill the contract; they<sup>136</sup> arrived at Far West late in the evening and called upon me and gave the above<sup>137</sup> information which<sup>138</sup> I approved of<sup>139</sup>.

<sup>140</sup>**On the<sup>141</sup> 27th<sup>142</sup>, my brother Don Carlos Smith and company left Far West for their mission.**

<sup>143</sup>**This morning some of the wagons left the Camp when it belonged to others to go, which produced confusion all day, there was also some murmurings, and covetousness, and want of liberality to impart to the hungry, &c. Passed through Keytsville<sup>144</sup> and encamped on the east side of Yellow Creek, eighteen miles; where the Council spent the evening in trying to restore order.**

<sup>145</sup>Extract of a letter from General Atchison to Governor Boggs dated

<sup>146</sup>Liberty, September 27th, 1838.

**To the Commander-in-Chief.**

**Sir:—I received a communication by express on the 26th inst., together with a report from Brigadier General Parks, who is in command of the troops, left by me in Daviess county. I have made two reports to your Excellency, one sent by Maj. Rogers, and the other by mail, neither of which I presume your Excellency has received; one date the 17th of September, the other the 20th of September.** The force under General Parks is deemed sufficient to execute the laws and keep the peace in Davies[s] County. Things are not so bad in that County as represented by rumor, and in fact, from affidavits I have no<sup>147</sup> doubt your Excellency has been deceived by the exaggerated statements of designing or<sup>148</sup> half crazy men. I have found there is no cause of alarm on account of the Mormons; they are not to

130. Book B-1, 830: adds "<(p 7 addenda note W)>" (WB). This and next paragraph added in Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note W, by WB before 6 Aug. 1845, and incorporated in Book B-2, 753, by WB about 9-16 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). For an early draft of this note, see vol. 7, III.5. *Source*: Probably added under direction of GAS (cf. GASj [1840-42], 59; GASHi, 74; GASM, 113), possibly based on JnSj [1836-40], 26 Sept. 1838, which records: "George A & Don C Smith L Barnes & Sagers Set off on a Mission to the eas<t>."

131. DHC 3:84: omits date

132. DHC 3:84: moves Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note U from above to this location

133. Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note W: "G."

134. Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note W: "<D>"

135. DHC 3:84: omits "the branches of" and changes "Church" to "churches"

136. DHC 3:84-85: replaces "they" with "The committee"

137. DHC 3:85: replaces "above" with "foregoing"

138. DHC 3:85: omits "which" and starts new sentence

139. DHC 3:85: adds "the action of the brethren"

140. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85.

141. Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note W: omits "On the"

142. Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note W: "28 <27th>" (WB)

143. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 69-70 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 56-57 (DHC 3:145-46; chap. 10).

144. Book B-1, 830: "Keattsville"; Book B-2, 754: "ke\y/tsville"; "y" *u.o.* "a"

145. DHC 3:85: changes this introduction into an italicized heading

146. *Source*: DCCO, 34. Deleted material supplied in bold type.

147. Book B-2, 754: "<no>"

148. Book B-2, 754: "{\or/}"



be feared; they are very much alarmed. **I transmit a report made to me by General Parks, dated 25th of September, and from that report I learn that the General has reported to your Excellency.**

**I have the honor to be &c.**

**DAVID R. ATCHISON,  
Maj. Gen'l. 3d Div. Mo. Mi[litia].**

[DN 3 (10 July 1853): 1]

<sup>149</sup>Friday 28th, I was about home until near sunset<sup>150</sup>, when I rode out.

<sup>151</sup>**This day the Camp passed but two houses, traveled 17 miles and tented at Parson's Creek, Lynn County. This <sup>152</sup>country is well supplied with wild turkeys, prairie hens, quails, partridges, wild geese, ducks, snipes, deer, raccoon, and squirrel, which the brethren sometimes succeeded in getting for food; green parrots, eagles, owls, turkey buzzards, and cranes are found here also.**

<sup>153</sup>Elder John E. Page, arrived at De Witt with his Canada Camp<sup>154</sup> sometime this week.

Saturday 29th, <sup>155</sup>**the Camp traveled fifteen miles passed through Chilicothe and encamped on the prairie one mile west of the town. Brother [Thomas]<sup>156</sup> Carrico's<sup>157</sup>, and [Jonathan H.] Holme's wagons upset and hurt several, and several were sick.**

<sup>158</sup>I rode out on horseback and returning about three in the afternoon<sup>159</sup> and<sup>160</sup> spent the evening at home.

<sup>161</sup>Sunday 30th, I left home about ten o'clock in the morning.

<sup>162</sup>**The Camp crossed Grand River, passed Utica, crossed Shoal Creek, and tented on the west bank in Caldwell County (fifteen miles) on the farm of Brother Oliver Walker, who gave each one a large pumpkin and plenty of shelled beans, and the brethren feel<sup>163</sup> as though they had entered the land of promise.**

<sup>164</sup>Monday October 1st, I returned home about five o'clock<sup>165</sup> where I tarried the remainder of the evening.

---

149. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:306; *JSP* 1:329; *APR*, 229).

150. DHC 3:85: "sundown"

151. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 70-71 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 57 (DHC 3:146; chap. 10).

152. Book B-1, 830, Book B-2, 754: add "part of the"

153. *Source*: Probably a surmise based on 2 Oct. 1838 arrival of Kirtland Camp. John E. Page said his company arrived at DeWitt "in the first week of Oct[ober]" (see JEP, 1; DHC 3:240-41n).

154. DHC 3:85: replaces "Camp" with "company"

155. Remainder of paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 71-72 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 57 (DHC 3:146; chap. 10).

156. This and following brackets this editor's.

157. Book B-1, 830, Book B-2, 754: "Carrico"

158. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:307; *JSP* 1:329; *APR*, 229).

159. Book B-1, 830: replaces "in the afternoon" with "P.M."

160. Book B-1, 830: omits "and"

161. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:307; *JSP* 1:329; *APR*, 229).

162. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 72 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 57-58 (DHC 3:146; chap. 10).

163. Book B-1, 830: "felt"

164. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:307; *JSP* 1:329; *APR*, 229).

165. Book B-1, 830: adds "~~in the evening~~"

<sup>166</sup>**The Camp traveled twenty miles, crossed Brush Creek, and encamped on the west bank. Elder Joshua L. Holman left the Camp this morning and went on towards Far West, which the Camp disapproved of by unanimous vote in the evening.**

<sup>167</sup>The mob having left Davies[s] County (after they were organized into the<sup>168</sup> Militia<sup>169</sup> by Atchison, Doniphan and Parks, and disbanded,) went to Carroll County, and gathered around<sup>170</sup> De Witt, threatening vengeance to the Saints without regard to age, sex, or condition,—so that<sup>171</sup> Davies[s] County was for a season freed from those peace disturbers.

Tuesday 2nd, <sup>172</sup>**volunteers were called for to drive the herd when A. P. Tyler, and Aroet L.**<sup>173</sup>**Hale offered their services with a grace becoming riper years, for they were young, and this is recorded of them as a memorial to their praise and an encouragement to others.**

<sup>174</sup>The <sup>175</sup>camp passed on towards<sup>176</sup> Far West<sup>177</sup>, and<sup>178</sup> I went in company with Sidney Rigdon, Hyrum Smith, Isaac Morley, and George W. Robinson, and met them some miles out, and escorted them into the city, where they encamped on the Public Square directly south, and close by the cellar<sup>179</sup> for the Lord's House. Here friends greeted friends in the name of the Lord. Isaac Morley, Patriarch at Far West, furnished a Beef for the Camp. President Rigdon provided a supper for the sick, and the brethren provided for them like men of God, for they were hungry, having eat<sup>180</sup> but little for several days, and had<sup>181</sup> traveled eleven miles this day 866 miles from Kirtland the way the Camp traveled.

The mob pressed harder upon De Witt and fired upon the Saints.

---

166. This paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source:* Based on SDTj, 72-73 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4). Cf. ESj, 58 (DHC 3:146-47; chap. 10).

167. *Source:* Based on AAP, 29.

168. Book B-1, 830, Book B-2, 754: omit "the"

169. Book B-2, 754: "<into militia>" (pos. WB)

170. DHC 3:85: replaces "around" with "at"

171. DHC 3:85: replaces "so that" with "but"

172. Remainder of paragraph appears in MSHiJS and DN, but omitted in DHC 3:85. *Source:* Based on SDTj, 73-74 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

173. Book B-1, 830: omits "L."; Book B-2, 754: "\L./"

174. DHC 3:85: reverses the order of this and next paragraph. *Source:* Based on SDTj, 73-74 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

175. DHC 3:85: adds "Kirtland"

176. DHC 3:85: replaces "passed on towards" with "arrived in"

177. DHC 3:85: adds "from Kirtland"

178. DHC 3:85: omits "and" and starts new sentence

179. DHC 3:86: replaces "cellar" with "excavation"

180. DHC 3:86: "eaten"

181. DHC 3:86: replaces "had" with "having"



9.

## JOURNEY OF KIRTLAND CAMP

March–August 1838

### *Kirtland Camp Journal Kept by Elias Smith*

*In deleting the daily account of the Kirtland Camp's journey from Kirtland, Ohio, to Far West, Missouri, which commenced 5 July 1838, B. H. Roberts explained: "The Prophet in his history gives an account, as already stated, of the organization of this camp and its departure from Kirtland. Then from day to day as more or less important events took place in the camp, he records such events in his own personal history, with the result that his narrative is frequently interrupted by brief paragraphs from the camp's Journal. But as we have the full daily journal of the camp's progress from Kirtland to Far West, written in a most careful and commendable style by the camp's Historian, Elias Smith, it has been decided to publish the history of the camp from the time it met for organization in Kirtland (March, 1838), until its arrival at Far West, (on the 2nd day of October, 1838), without other interruptions; and then omit from the narrative of the Prophet those occasional paragraphs taken from the said journal of the camp" (DHC 3:42n).*

*While those compiling the History drew on Elias Smith's history (ESj), especially the early part, the main source for the camp's journey was Samuel D. Tyler's account (SDTj). Under 20 Sept. 1838, a deleted paragraph stated: "I give the following extract from Elder John [Samuel] D. Tyler's journal from which most of the facts in this history are derived" (Book B-1, 826; chap. 8).*

*In this edition, the passages deleted by Roberts have been restored and his insertion of Elias Smith's journal (comprising chaps. 9-10) has been retained and checked against the original. For the most part, Roberts's transcription closely follows Elias Smith's journal and contains some light editing and expected filling out and adjusting of the text for publication. However, a few deleted portions have been supplied here in bold type, and some of the more significant changes have been documented in footnotes. A transcription of Samuel D. Tyler's journal can be found in volume 8 of this compilation (III.4).*

At a meeting of the Seventies in the House of the Lord in Kirtland, on the sixth day of March, 1838, the moving of the Saints from Kirtland to the land of Missouri, in accordance with the commandments and revelations of God, was spoken of and also the practicability of the quorum of the Seventies locating in as compact a body as possible in some stake of Zion in the west, where they could meet together when they were not laboring in the vineyard of the Lord; and also could receive counsel from the Twelve and the First Presidency in matters pertaining to their mission to the nations with greater facilities than they would if scattered here and there over all the face of the land.

The subject was discussed at some length, and a resolution was passed requesting the Councilors to consult together and make a report on the subject at the next meeting of the quorum. The meeting was then adjourned to Saturday, the 10th instant, at one o'clock p.m.

At that time the quorum met again and the Presidents reported that they had consulted together on the subject referred to them at the last meeting, and that they were of the opinion that the subject should be laid before the First Presidency of the Church for their counsel and advice; and also if it would be thought expedient to appoint the place for their location in Far West or some other place where it should seem good unto them.

The measures proposed by the Councilors were unanimously approved of by the members of the quorum present. The Presidents<sup>1</sup> further stated that they had taken into consideration the extreme poverty of the Seventies in Kirtland and vicinity, and that it seemed to them almost an impossible thing for the quorum [as such]<sup>2</sup> to move from this place under existing circumstances; that the measures entered into by the High Council and High Priests for removing the Saints had failed and they had given up making any further attempts after their scheme of going by water had fallen through, and that they had further advised [p. 1] every individual of the Church wishing to go up unto Zion to look out for himself individually and make the best of it he could.

Much was said on the subject; and while the subject of going up in a body—which seemed to be the prevailing desire<sup>3</sup> of the members present—was under discussion, the Spirit of the Lord came down, in mighty power, and some of the Elders began to prophesy that if the quorum would go up in a body together, and go according to the commandments and revelations of God, pitching their tents by the way, that they should not want for anything on the journey that would be necessary for them to have; and further that there should be nothing wanting towards removing the whole quorum of Seventies that would go in a body **for that purpose**, but that there should be a sufficiency of all things for carrying such an expedition into effect.

President James Foster arose in turn to make some remarks on the subject, and in the course of his address he declared that he saw a vision in which was shown unto him a company (he should think of about five hundred) starting from Kirtland and going up to Zion. That he saw them moving in order, encamping in order by the way, and that he knew thereby that it was the will of God that the quorum should go up in that manner.

The Spirit bore record of the truth of his assertions for it rested down on the assembly in power, insomuch that all present were satisfied that it was the will of God that the quorum should go up in a company together to the land of Zion, and that they should proceed immediately to make preparations for the journey. The Councilors were requested to devise the best course to be pursued to carry the plan into effect, and the meeting adjourned to Tuesday, 13th, at one p.m.

In the forenoon of that day the Council of the Seventies met and invited President Hyrum Smith, and sent for President William Marks, but he was not at home, and consequently did not attend. [p. 2] Benjamin S. Wilber, in absence of the clerk, was invited to act as clerk *pro tem*. After the meeting was opened by President Hyrum Smith by prayer, they proceeded to draw up under the supervision of President Smith the outlines of the following Constitution for the organization and government of the camp, which was adopted at the meeting in the afternoon.

At the time appointed in the afternoon the quorum met according to adjournment. Several of

---

1. ESj, 1: replaces "Presidents" with "Counsellors"

2. Brackets BHR's.

3. ESj, 2: replaces "desire" with "opinion"

the High Council and High Priests attended the meeting. The Spirit of God was manifested as before. The subject was discussed and the Constitution presented, which was approved by the quorum and by the visiting Elders who testified that the movement was of god and recommended it to the brethren of the Church; and said that they should lay the subject immediately before their own quorums. On motion it was resolved that two of the quorum should be appointed to act as members of the Council<sup>4</sup>, *pro tem*, in the place of Daniel S. Miles and Levi Hancock—who were then in the west—till the camp should arrive at Far West<sup>5</sup>. This to be<sup>6</sup> in accordance with the first article of the Constitution, which recognized the whole seven [First Seven Presidents of the Seventy]<sup>7</sup> as councilors of the camp.

On motion it was resolved that the President of Seventies should have the right of nominating the two assistant councilors and all other officers of the camp required by the Constitution, or on the journey, up to the land of Zion. In accordance with the above resolution Elias Smith, clerk of the Council, and Benjamin S. Wilber, were nominated and received the unanimous vote<sup>8</sup> of the quorum as Councilors of the camp. The Constitution was read and explained to the meeting item by item, that there might be no misunderstanding concerning any part of it or of the motives and designs of the Seventies in the<sup>9</sup> movement then<sup>10</sup> in agitation; and those who subscribed to the Constitution were exhorted to make all preparations in their power to carry<sup>11</sup> into effect the object of the camp, and the meeting was adjourned to Saturday, 17th, at one p.m. [p. 3]

### *The Constitution.*

**March 13th 1838.** The council of the Seventies met this day in the attic story of the Lord's House and took into consideration the propriety and necessity of the body of the Seventies going up to the land of Zion in a company together the present season, and adopted the following **Resolutions, viz:**

**Resolved that we as a body do agree to put our strength, our properties and monies, together for the accomplishment of this work, and that we adopt the following rules and laws, for the organization and government of the camp:**

First—That the Presidents of the Seventies, seven in number, shall be the Councilors [i.e. leaders]<sup>12</sup> of the camp; and that there shall be one man appointed as treasurer, who shall by the advice of the Councilors manage the financial concerns during the journey, and keep a just and accurate account of all monies received and expended for the use of the camp.

Second—That there shall be one man appointed to preside over each tent, to take charge of it; and that from the time of their appointment the tent-men<sup>13</sup> shall make all necessary arrangements for the providing of teams and tents for the journey; and they shall receive counsel and advice from the Councilors; and furthermore, shall see that cleanliness and decency are observed in all cases, the commandments kept, and the Word of Wisdom heeded, that is, no tobacco, tea, coffee, snuff or ardent spirits of any kind are to be taken internally.

---

4. ESj, 3: replaces “members of the Council” with “counsellors”

5. ESj, 3: replaces “at Far West” with “there”

6. ESj, 3: omits “This to be”

7. Brackets BHR's.

8. ESj, 3: replaces “vote” with “voice”

9. ESj, 3: “<seventies in the>”

10. ESj, 3: omits “then”

11. ESj, 3: “<carry>”

12. Brackets BHR's.

13. ESj, 4: replaces “the tent-men” with “they”

Third—That every man shall be the head of his own family, and shall see that they are brought into subjection according to the order of the camp.

Fourth—That all those who shall subscribe to the resolutions, rules and regulations, shall make every exertion, and use all lawful means to provide for themselves and their families, and for the use and benefit of the camp to which they belong; and also to hand over to the Seven Councilors all monies appropriated for that purpose on or before the day the camp shall start. [p. 4]

Fifth—That the money shall be retained in the hands of the Councilors, being divided proportionately among them for safety and to be paid over to the Treasurer as circumstances may require.

Sixth—That any faithful brethren wishing to journey with us can do so by subscribing to, and observing these rules and regulations.

Seventh—That every individual shall at the end of the journey—when a settlement is to be made, or as soon thereafter as their<sup>14</sup> circumstances will admit<sup>15</sup>—pay their proportional part of the expenses of the journey. By expenses it is understood all that is necessarily paid out for the use of **the camp after it starts and that no individual is to receive any thing for services nor for the use of**<sup>16</sup> a team, wagon or cow, if they safely arrive at the place where the camp shall finally break up.

Eighth—That these rules and laws shall be strictly observed, and every person who shall behave disorderly and not conform to them shall be disfellowshipped by the camp and left by the wayside.

Ninth—That this shall be the law of the camp in journeying from this place up to the land of Zion, and that it may be added unto or amended as circumstances may require by the voice of those who shall subscribe unto it.

<sup>17</sup>**Names of persons who subscribed to the above Constitution.**

[NAME]	[Priesthood Office]	[No. in family]
James Foster	seventy	6
Josiah Butterfield	"	4
Zerah Pulsipher	"	7
Joseph Young	"	5 <sup>18</sup>
Henry Harriman	"	2
Elias Smith	"	3
Benjn S Wilber <sup>19</sup>	"	2
Joshua S. Holman	"	8
John D Parker	"	3
Duncan McArthur	"	9
Stephen Starks	"	6
Anson Call	"	3

14. ESj, 5: "<their>"

15. ESj, 5: moves "or as soon ... admit" to end of sentence

16. Possibly omitted through haplography.

17. DHC 3:91 changes this paragraph to read: "[The names of the persons and number in their respective families, who subscribed to the foregoing constitution]." Instead of providing Elias Smith's list of heads of families and their priesthood offices or membership status, BHR took his list of names and number of family members directly from the constitution (see Backman 1983, 123–29). What follows is an amalgamated list, with ESj serving as the base text and BHR's numbers added in a third column.

18. The Constitution is blank for number in Joseph Young's family (cf. Backman 1983, 128).

19. DHC 3:91: incorrectly reads "W. S. Wilbur" (cf. Backman 1983, 76, 128)

Amos B. Fuller	"	3
Jeremiah Willey	"	4
Hiram Dayton	"	12
Truman O. Angell	"	4
Dominicus Carter	"	6
Jonathan H. Holmes <sup>20</sup>	"	3
Joseph B Noble	"	7
Levi B. Wilder	"	6
James S. Holman <sup>21</sup>	"	7
Amos Jackson <sup>22</sup>	"	6
Lewis Eager	"	3
Stephen Shumway	"	3
Enoch S. Sanborn	"	5
Jonathan Crosby	"	2 [p. 5]
Jonathan Hampton	"	4
Otis Shumway	"	7
Frederick M. Vanleuven	"	6
Harrison Burgess <sup>23</sup>	"	
Oliver Olney	"	9
William Bosley	"	2
Dana Jacobs <sup>24</sup>	"	
Alanson Pettingill	"	5
William Perry	"	4
Daniel Wood <sup>25</sup>	"	
Jonathan Dunham	"	4
Joel H. Johnson	"	6
William Carpenter	"	5
Solomon Angell	"	
Jonathan H. Hale	"	5
George W Brooks	"	4
Abraham Wood	"	4
Sherman A. Gilbert <sup>26</sup>	"	3
William D. Pratt <sup>27</sup>	"	4
Samuel Parker	"	4
Daniel Bowen	"	7
Charles Thompson	"	2
Nathan B. Baldwin	"	
Michael Griffith	"	6

---

20. DHC 3:92: "Jonathan H. Homer"

21. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "James S. Holmon" (cf. Backman 1983, 36, 125; Cook and Backman 1985, 38)

22. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "Amos Nickerson"

23. Harrison Burgess does not appear in BHR's list. He signed the Constitution but apparently subsequently withdrew and his name was canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129).

24. Dana Jacobs does not appear in BHR's list. He signed the Constitution but apparently subsequently withdrew and his name was canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129).

25. Daniel Wood does not appear in BHR's list. He signed the Constitution but apparently subsequently withdrew and his name was canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129; *MRP*, 238).

26. DHC 3:92: "Shearman A. Gilbert"

27. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "William B. Pratt" (cf. Backman 1983, 55, 127)

Henry Stevens	"	3
Eleazer King Jr	member	3
Thomas G. Fisher	Elder	4
Alfred Brown	"	2
Stephen Headlock	"	2
John B Sawyer <sup>28</sup>	Priest	4
Nathan K. Knight	Elder	9
Joel Judd	"	3
Thomas Nickerson	Priest	4
David C Demming <sup>29</sup>	member	2 <sup>30</sup>
Nancy Richerson	"	3
Joseph McCauseland <sup>31</sup>	"	4
Hiram N. Byington <sup>32</sup>	Priest	4
David Gray <sup>33</sup>	member	8
Alexander Wright	Priest	1
Adonijah Cooley	member	5
Elijah Cheney	Elder	2
Jesse Baker	"	
Elias Pulsipher	Priest	8
Jason Brunell <sup>34</sup>	"	7
Elijah B. Gaylord <sup>35</sup>	"	6
Samuel Fowler	Elder	8
David K. Dustin	Priest	2
Charles Bird	Elder	7
Thomas Butterfield	Priest	3
William Field	member	5
William Shuman	"	7
Cornelius Vanleuven	Priest	3
Benjamin K. Hull <sup>36</sup>	member	6 <sup>37</sup>
Benjamin Butterfield	"	7
Eleazer King Sen <sup>38</sup>	Elder	7
John Tanner	High Priest	10
Joseph Pine	"	6
Noah Packard	H. Counselor	9

28. DHC 3:91: incorrectly reads "John R. Folger" (cf. Backman 1983, 60, 125; Cook and Backman 1985, 41, 46, 100)

29. DHC 3:91: incorrectly reads "David D. Demming"; Constitution: "David C Deming" (cf. Backman 1983, 124)

30. The Constitution is blank for number in family (cf. Backman 1983, 124).

31. DHC 3:91: "Joseph McCaseland"

32. DHC 3:91: incorrectly reads "Hiram H. Byington". Should be "Hiram Norton Byington" (cf. Backman 1983, 12, 123)

33. Constitution: "David Grey" (cf. Backman 1983, 125)

34. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "Jason Brunett". Should be "Jacinth Brunell" (Backman 1983, 123; *MRP*, 138, 610)

35. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "E. B. Gayland" (cf. Backman 1983, 27, 125)

36. Should be "Benjamin K. Hall" (cf. Backman 1983, 31, 125).

37. The Constitution is blank for number of family (cf. Backman 1983, 125; *M&A* 3:416).

38. DHC 3:92: omits "Sen."

John M. King	member	4
Warren Smith	Elder	7
Samuel Barnet	member	5
Hezekiah Fisk <sup>39</sup>	Elder	
Austin Cowles <sup>40</sup>	H Priest	9
John Gribble <sup>41</sup>	member	8
Arnold Healey	Elder	3
Joel Harvey	"	5
Justus Blood <sup>42</sup>	member	5
Reuben Daniels	Elder	7
Jonas Putnam	Priest	6
Daniel Pulsipher		4
John Young Sen <sup>43</sup>		
Richard Brasher <sup>44</sup>	Elder	4
John Pulsipher		2
Alba Whittle		6
Joel Drury		5
Levi Osgood		5
Jonathan Fisher	Priest	5
Cyrus B. Fisher	member	6
Benjamin Baker	"	6 <sup>45</sup>
Elijah Merriam	"	2
Amasa Cheney		6
Samuel Hale	Teacher	3
Josiah Miller	Priest	10
Martin Hanchet	member	5 [p. 6]
Amos Baldwin	Member	12
Orren Cheney <sup>46</sup>	Elder	9
George Stringham		6
Mary Parker		4
Julia Johnson		8
John Lameraux	Elder	6
Jesse P. Harmon <sup>47</sup>	member	6
John Vanleuven jr		9
Aaron Cheney		6
Nathan Cheney		4

---

39. Hezekiah Fisk does not appear in BHR's list. He signed the Constitution but apparently subsequently withdrew and his name was canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129).

40. DHC 3:92: "Austin W. Cowles"; Constitution: omits middle initial (cf. Backman 1983, 124). Should be "Austin A. Cowles".

41. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "John Greabble" (cf. Backman 1983, 30, 125; Cook and Backman 1985, 41, 86)

42. DHC 3:92: incorrectly reads "Justin Blood"

43. John Young Sr. does not appear in BHR's list. He signed the Constitution but apparently subsequently withdrew and his name was canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129).

44. DHC 3:92: correctly reads "Richard Brasier" (cf. Backman 1983, 123)

45. Constitution: "4" (cf. Backman 1983, 123)

46. DHC 3:92: "Orin Cheney"; Constitution: "Orren Cheney" (cf. Backman 1983, 124)

47. Jesse P. Harmon was also a seventy (cf. Backman 1983, 125).



Edwin P. Merriam		3
John Sweat		10
Daniel Allen Jr		4
Stephen Richardson		8
Martin H. Peck		6
Zemira Draper	Priest	6
Abram Boynton	Elder	7
Michael McDonald	Member	5
James Brown	"	7 <sup>48</sup>
Alexander Campbell	"	[blank]
Joseph C. Clark	wife member	6
Henry Munro <sup>49</sup>	do	3
Ira Thornton <sup>50</sup>		7
Oliver Thornton <sup>51</sup>		6
Stephen Rowe		6
John ThorpElder		7
Daniel M. Repshire <sup>52</sup>	wife a member	3
William Gribble	member	3
Charles N. Baldwin	"	2
William Draper sen	H. Priest	2
Laban Morrill <sup>53</sup>	Elder	2
Lucius N. Scovill	"	4
Aaron Johnson	"	4
Joseph Coon	Member	4
Nathan Staker		6
Asa Wright		10
Zephaniah H. Brewster <sup>54</sup>		9
Munro Crosier		2
Samuel D. Tyler <sup>55</sup>		
Jared Porter		3
William Earl		11
Daniel Bliss		2
Isaac W. Pierce		5
Jabez Lake		5
Samuel Mulliner		5
Aaron M. York		4
James Stray <sup>56</sup>		6
Reuben Hedlock	Elder	8
Andrew Lamereaux	"	7
William Willson	member	3

---

48. The Constitution is blank for number in family (cf. Backman 1983, 123).

49. DHC 3:93: "Henry Munroe"

50. DHC 3:93: "Ira P. Thornton"

51. DHC 3:93: mistakenly reads "Oliver Rowe" (cf. Backman 1983, 128)

52. DHC 3:93: incorrectly reads "Daniel L. Nuptire". Should be "Daniel M. Repshire" (cf. Backman 1983, 126).

53. DHC 3:93: correctly reads "Laban Morris"

54. DHC 3:93: incorrectly reads "Zephaniah W. Brewster" (cf. Backman 1983, 123)

55. Samuel D. Tyler's signature does not appear on the Constitution, and therefore not in BHR's list.

56. DHC 3:93: "James Strop"

John Carter	"	2
Samuel Parker	"	4
Isaac Dewitt	"	8
Hiram Griffith <sup>57</sup>		3
John Hammond <sup>58</sup>		6
Arnold Stevens		6
Ethan A Moore		8
William Carey		[blank]
Thomas Draper		[blank]
James Leathead		[blank]
Abram Bond		3 [p. 7]

[Names in BHR's list not in ES's; all except the first taken from the Kirtland Camp Constitution.]

Brother Nickerson's family <sup>59</sup>	5
Isaac Rogers	4
Gardner Snow <sup>60</sup>	3
George Snow	2
Asaph Blanchard	1
John Rulison	8

[Name in the Kirtland Camp Constitution not in either BHR's or ES's list.]

Daniel S. Miles <sup>61</sup>	seventy
-------------------------------	---------

*March 17.*—Met again agreeable to adjournment in the attic story of the Lord's House, at 1 p.m. A general attendance of those belonging to the camp and many others belonging to the different quorums of the Church came in. The room was full to overflowing. Elder Josiah Butterfield, **Councilor**, presided. After opening by prayer the object of the meeting was stated by the chairman, viz., the removing of the Saints to Zion. Elder James<sup>62</sup> Foster next laid before the meeting the movements of the Seventies in relation to that desired object and was followed by Elders Joseph Young, Henry Harriman, Zera Pulsipher, and by others of the different quorums, who highly approved of the proceedings of the quorum of Seventies in relation to the order of removing and of the organization of the camp. The Constitution was read by the clerk, which was spoken of in terms of commendation by all who spoke. Much of the Spirit of God was manifested on this occasion and the hearts of all made glad in anticipation of their deliverance from Kirtland.

President Hyrum Smith came in and addressed the meeting at some length on the movements of the Saints in Kirtland in relation to their emigration to the land of Zion since the commandment had gone forth for the honest in heart to rise up and go up unto that land. He stated that what he had said and done in reference to chartering a steamboat, for the purpose of removing the Church as a body, he had done according to his own judgment without reference to the testimony of the Spirit of God;

57. DHC 3:93: incorrectly reads "Hiram Griffiths" (cf. Backman 1983, 125)

58. DHC 3:93: "John Hamond"

59. This is a misreading of the Constitution's listing of "Brother Hitchcocks family"; probably John Hitchcock (cf. Backman 1983, 35, 125).

60. Gardner Snow was also a seventy (cf. Backman 1983, 127).

61. Daniel S. Miles's name was subsequently canceled (cf. Backman 1983, 129). Above, it was mentioned that Miles had already left for Far West (p. 3).

62. ESj, 8: omits "James"

that he had recommended that course and had advised the High Council and High Priests to adopt that measure, acting solely by his own wisdom, for it had seemed to him that the whole body of the Church in Kirtland could be removed with less expense in the way he had proposed than in any other. [p. 8] He said further that the Saints had to act often times upon their own responsibility without any reference to the testimony of the Spirit of God in relation to temporal affairs, that he has so acted in this matter and has never had any testimony from God that the plan of going by water was approved of by Him, and that the failure of the scheme was evidence in his mind that God did not approve of it.

He then declared that he knew by the Spirit of God that the movements that were making by the quorum of the Seventies for their removal and the plan of their journeying was according to the will of the Lord<sup>63</sup>. He advised all who were calculating to go up to Zion at present, whose circumstances would admit, to join with the Seventies in their plan and go up with them; and if he were so situated that he could join the camp himself and go with them, he would do so<sup>64</sup>, and strictly comply with the rules which had been adopted for the regulation of the camp on the journey. It would be his delight to go as an individual without having any concern whatever in the management of affairs, either directly or indirectly, during the journey.

In answer to an inquiry that was made about the difficulties that might attend the movements of so large a body, he observed that no fears need be entertained by any on that score, for there would no difficulty attend the camp, if there should be 5,000 persons in it. The more the better; and the advantages of their going altogether would be greater than they could possibly be if they should go in small companies, as provisions and other necessities could be purchased in large quantities **by taking advantages and looking out before hand** much cheaper than they could by small squads who would be under the necessity of buying **many times** at great disadvantage.

After advising the camp not to be too particular in regard to the Word of Wisdom and advised them to have the assistance of the High Council in [p. 9] carrying the plan into execution, and giving other advice about organizing the camp, President Hyrum Smith retired.

The Constitution being read again, about forty who did not belong to the quorum of Seventies came forward and subscribed their names to it, making in all about<sup>65</sup> eighty. The meeting was then adjourned to Tuesday, March 20th, at 1 p.m.

*March 20.*—In the afternoon <sup>66</sup>the Seven Councilors met to consult on the best measures to be pursued for procuring teams and tents and other things necessary for the journey. After considering the subject carefully it was thought that two good teams and one tent, if no more could be obtained, would suffice for eighteen persons; and that it would be advisable to appoint the overseers of tents at the meeting to be held in the afternoon, <sup>67</sup>whose duty according to the Constitution would be to form their companies of eighteen, or as near that number as circumstances will admit of, and proceed immediately to procure teams and a tent for the same, and to make all necessary arrangements for the journey.

Elders Oliver Granger, Mayhew Hillman and Harvey Redfield and some others attended who were requested to express their views of the expedition, as a rumor had gone forth that they considered it an impracticable<sup>68</sup> undertaking and one that would never be accomplished. Elder Granger said that

---

63. ESj, 9: replaces “the Lord” with “God”

64. ESj, 9: omits “he would do so”

65. ESj, 10: replaces “about” with “above”

66. ESj, 10: “Tuesday <20th>”

67. ESj, 10: adds “~~should be appointed~~”

68. ESj, 10: replaces “impracticable” with “fallacious”

he considered it would be<sup>69</sup> the greatest thing ever accomplished since the organization of the Church or even since the exodus of Israel from Egypt if the Saints in Kirtland, considering their poverty, should succeed in going from that place in a body, and that it would require great wisdom and prudence and the most determined perseverance to effect such a measure, though he considered it possible to do it and believed God would bless them in so doing.

Elder Redfield spoke at some length and said that in consequence of the rumors which were afloat he had thought the Seventies were taking [p. 10] unwarrantable ground, and had expressed his views freely on the subject, and rather justified himself on that score, though he condemned the principle of believing reports which were put in circulation without first considering their foundation and the source from which they came. He said he was convinced that the things he had heard were untrue concerning some movements which he had heard the Seventies were making, and the declarations and denunciations they gave<sup>70</sup> some of the other quorums, which had come to his ears, were likewise without foundation. He said he was heart and hand with the Council<sup>71</sup> of the Seventies in their endeavors to remove the Saints in Kirtland<sup>72</sup> to the land of Zion, and the Spirit testified to him<sup>73</sup> that the movements were in righteousness and according to the will of God.

Elder Hillman spoke in confirmation of what his brethren had said, approved of the movement and said that the High Priests and High Council had at a meeting held a day or two previous passed a resolution to uphold and support the Seventies in their undertaking.

A selection of names for overseers of tents was made and the meeting<sup>74</sup> adjourned.

At one p.m. the members of the camp and others who attended met in the upper court of the Lord's House. Elder Henry Harriman presided, and opened by prayer. He also addressed the meeting followed by Elder Foster, both setting forth the greatness of the undertaking in hand, of<sup>75</sup> the necessity of every individual **belonging to the camp** bestirring himself and making every exertion to prepare for the journey. The names of those who had signed the Constitution were read over, that if there were any objection against their going in the camp in consequence of any difficulty that might exist or of disobedience to the commandments of the Lord it might be made manifest by those who might know of the existence of any such thing. [p. 11]

The names of those selected for overseers of tents were read over one by one and were voted in by the voice of the camp, and Jonathan H.<sup>76</sup> Hale was appointed treasurer, and the meeting was then adjourned.

After the 20th of March the Council met often to counsel on the things which from time to time pressed themselves upon their attention<sup>77</sup> relative to the preparation necessary for the journey, things both spiritual and temporal; and to ask counsel and give their advice<sup>78</sup> that they might decide<sup>79</sup> in righteousness all things pertaining to their calling and the affairs of the camp, and to implore their

---

69. ESj, 10: "<ok would be>"

70. ESj, 11: replaces "they gave" with "against"

71. ESj, 11: "counsellors"

72. ESj, 11: "<in Kirtland>"

73. ESj, 11: "<to him>"

74. ESj, 11: omits "the meeting"

75. ESj, 11: omits "in hand, of" and adds "and"

76. ESj, 12: "<H.>"

77. ESj, 12: omits "upon their attention"

78. ESj, 12: replaces "give their advice" with "wisdom of God"

79. ESj, 12: replaces "decide" with "council"

heavenly Father to provide means to soften the hearts of the enemies of the Saints, in Kirtland, and in the region round about: that His people might be delivered from their power, as they have fallen into the hands of their enemies like Israel of old, in consequence of disobedience and their slowness of heart to obey the commandments of the Lord which He had given unto them; and that He would have mercy upon them and deliver them from bondage in this land, that they might go up to the land of Zion according to the commandments and revelations of the Lord by His servant Joseph Smith, Jun., and according to the pattern given unto them.

In these meetings for counsel and prayer God truly verified His promises; for when His servants<sup>80</sup> asked they received, and His Spirit was poured out upon them abundantly, from time to time manifesting the will of the Lord concerning the movements necessary to be made in order to carry the arduous undertaking into effect, in removing the quorum of Seventies, and those that joined with them<sup>81</sup>, from Kirtland to the land of Zion.

The extreme poverty of the majority of those belonging to the camp and the depression of their spirits in consequence thereof and the downfall of Kirtland; the opposition of those who had dissented from the Church and of those who from the beginning had opposed the commandments<sup>82</sup> [p. 12] of God which He had established in the last days among the children of men, and last of all, though not least, the opposition of many who called themselves Saints, were obstacles which presented themselves in formidable aspect<sup>83</sup> against the exertions of the Council to bring about the order of things<sup>84</sup> to be entered into in order to accomplish the work, and to unite<sup>85</sup> the feelings of the brethren and to restore their confidence in each other, which had in a great measure been lost during the past year, or since the failure of their imaginary means<sup>86</sup> of speculation, of grandeur and wealth. [p. 13]

*Thursday, July 5.*—The camp commenced organizing on a piece of land in the rear of the house formerly occupied by Mayhew Hillman, about one hundred rods south of the House of the Lord, in Kirtland. The morning was beautiful. At an early hour the heavens were overspread with a cloud which continued to hide the scorching rays of the sun till towards evening, when it moved away. The horizon at every point that was unobstructed by intervening objects was clear, and everything seemed to indicate that the God of heaven has His all-searching eye upon the camp of the Saints, and had prepared the day for the express purpose of organizing the camp, that the Saints might start on their journey in the order which had been shown in the beginning. About twenty tents were pitched in the course of the day and several other companies came on late who had not time to pitch their tents. Many spectators from the towns round about came to behold<sup>87</sup> the scene, and, with few exceptions, they behaved with the greatest decorum. The day was solemn to all concerned and the greatest solemnity was visible on the countenances of the Saints who expected to tarry for a season in Kirtland, and also on the countenances<sup>88</sup> of many of the unbelievers in the everlasting Gospel of Jesus Christ and of the great work of the gathering of the Saints of the Most High in these last days of wickedness before God's judgments shall have been poured out without measure upon the wicked, to sweep them off from the face of the earth.

---

80. ESj, 12: replaces "His servants" with "they"

81. ESj, 12: "<and those that join[e]d with them>"

82. ESj, 12: replaces "commandments" with "kingdom"

83. ESj, 13: replaces "aspect" with "array"

84. ESj, 13: adds "necessary"

85. ESj, 13: replaces "unite" with "amalgamate"

86. ESj, 13: replaces "means" with "schemes"

87. ESj, 14: replaces "behold" with "see"

88. ESj, 14: omits "also on the countenances"

Between four and five hundred of the camp tented on the ground during the night. The spectators retired at a late hour and left the camp in quietude. The night was clear and the encampment and all around was<sup>89</sup> solemn as eternity; which scene, together with the remembrance of<sup>90</sup> those other scenes through<sup>91</sup> which the Saints in Kirtland had passed during the last two years all<sup>92</sup> presented themselves to the thinking mind; and, together with<sup>93</sup> the greatness of the undertaking, the length of the journey, and many other things combined, could not fail to awaken sensations that could be better felt than described.

*Friday, July 6.*—At an early hour in the morning the people began to assemble to witness the exodus of the camp, [p. 14] and several hundred persons had gathered together before all things could be arranged in order to move off from the ground without confusion, all of<sup>94</sup> which consumed most of the forenoon. At twelve o'clock, noon, the camp began to move, and at half-past twelve the whole company had left the ground in order, and took up their line of march towards Chester, south from Kirtland, where they encamped at six o'clock p.m., a distance of seven miles from Kirtland.

After the tents were pitched and all things arranged an enumeration of the camp was taken, when it was ascertained that there were in the camp 529 souls present—a few necessarily absent—of which 256 were males, and 273 females. There were 105 families, all on the ground excepting five, which had not time to get ready in season to start with the camp, two of which came up in the evening; of the others Elder Martin H. Peck joined at Petersburg; the other two, Elders S. Shumway and Brother Charles Wood, joined the camp<sup>95</sup> at the same place a few hours after. President William Marks and some other brethren from Kirtland accompanied the camp to Chester, and on parting with the Councilors blessed them, in the name of the Lord, and left his blessing with them, and with the camp, covenanting to uphold them by the prayer of faith and required<sup>96</sup> the same of the Councilors and of the brethren of the camp.

The feelings of the brethren on leaving Kirtland and parting with those who were left behind were somewhat peculiar, notwithstanding the scenes they had passed through in Kirtland ; but the consciousness of doing the will of their heavenly Father, and obeying His commandments in journeying to Zion, over balanced every other consideration that could possibly be presented to their minds, and buoyed up their spirits, and helped them to overcome the weaknesses and infirmities of human nature which men are subject to here on the earth.

*Saturday, July 7.*—Started from Chester about half-past six in the morning, and camped in Aurora, Portage county—thirteen miles from Chester—at four p.m., on the farm of Mr. Lacey. The road between Chester and Aurora, through Russell and Bainbridge, in Geauga county, was bad and somewhat [p. 15] hilly. The weather being extremely warm and the camp not being sufficiently accustomed to moving and acting in concert, all contributed to make some confusion in the camp during the latter part of the day. One wagon, Andrew Lamereaux's, broke down twice and some other small accidents happened, but nothing very serious. During the day several children were sick, some dangerously so, and some adults were attacked by the destroyer.

---

89. ESj, 14: replaces “was” with “look[e]d”

90. ESj, 14: omits “the remembrance of”

91. ESj, 14: omits “other scenes through”

92. ESj, 14: replaces “all” with “that”

93. ESj, 14: omits “and, together with”

94. ESj, 15: omits “all of”

95. ESj, 15: omits “joined the camp”

96. ESj, 15: replaces “required” with “requested”

*Sunday, July 8.*—Public worship at eleven o'clock, Elder Joseph Young preached. Many came in the course of the day to visit the camp. They generally treated us with great civility, though there were some exceptions. In the afternoon about half-past five the heads of families were called together and were instructed by Elders Foster, Pulsipher, Butterfield and Dunham to keep their families in more strict subjection to the laws of God, and to adhere strictly to the Constitution of the camp. They were told that the destroyer was in the camp and some would fall victims to his power if they did not comply with the requisitions of the Lord.

A vote was called and the camp covenanted anew<sup>97</sup> strictly to observe the laws of the camp and the commandments of the Lord. Soon after night-fall a company of marauders were heard about the camp, but we were not molested during the night.

*Monday, July 9.*—At seven in the morning the camp began to move, passed through the village of Aurora, through the corner of Streetsborough to Hudson, a handsome village, in which is situated the "Western Reserve College." Stopped at one o'clock near the south line of that town. David Elliot broke his wagon down near Streetsborough **corners**, and Samuel Hale's wagon tongue was broken a little south of the village of Hudson. The fourth division of the camp<sup>98</sup> came up about two o'clock, at which time the first moved on and passed through Stowe Corners, so called, across the Pittsburgh and Akron canal (which is yet in an unfinished state at the falls on the Cuyahoga river, which empties into Lake [p. 16] Erie at Cleveland), and encamped for the night on Mr. Camp's farm, at Talmadge, at half-past six in the evening. The first, second and third divisions came on to the grounds together, the fourth, composed chiefly of ox teams, did not come up till ten o'clock. The roads were generally good, the country level, with few exceptions, the weather extremely warm, but nearly all withstood the fatigue of the day with fortitude and patience, feeling thankful for the blessings which the Lord bestowed upon the camp of His Saints.

The country through which we passed this day was better adapted to pasturage than tillage, the grass generally looked well, some fine fields of wheat were seen which had begun to whiten for the harvest.

Joel H.<sup>99</sup> Johnson's oxen failed and were left behind<sup>100</sup>, and some others were very much fatigued and did not arrive at the encampment until late at night. Traveled twenty miles, which was three or four more than we should have done if accommodations for the teams could have been obtained short of that distance.

*Tuesday, July 10.*—Before starting the Council drew up the following resolutions for the further organization of the camp, which were unanimously adopted:<sup>101</sup>

Resolved—First. That the engineer of the camp shall receive advice from the Councilors concerning the duties of his office, and that he shall call<sup>102</sup> on his assistants to perform those duties which he cannot attend to himself, and that he shall be relieved from the arduous task of [personally] superintending the movements of the camp during the journey.

Second—That the horn shall be blown for rising at four o'clock<sup>103</sup>, and at twenty min-

---

97. ESj, 16: "<anew>"

98. ESj, 16: omits "of the camp"

99. ESj, 17: omits "H."

100. ESj, 17: "<and were left behind>"

101. ESj, 17: "~~purpose of having uniformity and regularity in all things pertaining to the movements of the body during the journey~~ <further organization of the camp which were unanimously adopted:>"

102. ESj, 17: "<call>"

103. ESj, 17: "<at four oclock in the [morning]>"



utes past four for prayer every morning, at which time each overseer shall see that the inmates of his tent are in order, that worship may commence throughout the camp at the same time, immediately after the blowing of the horn. [p. 17]

Third—That the head of each division shall keep a roll of all able-bodied men, and that he shall call out as many men each night as the engineer shall require<sup>104</sup> of his division to stand on guard. One-half of which guard shall stand the fore part of the night, and the other the latter part, being regularly relieved by the engineer or one of his assistants at one o'clock in the morning.

Fourth—That every company in the camp is entitled to an equal proportion of the milk whether the cows are owned by the individuals of the several tents or not, and that it shall be so distributed, as near as may be, among the several companies in the camp.

Fifth—That Thomas Butterfield shall be appointed herdsman of the camp, whose duty it shall be to superintend the driving of the cows and other stock, and to see that they are well taken care of on the journey, and that he shall call on as many as shall be necessary to assist him in performing<sup>105</sup> those duties.

Sixth—That in no case at present shall the camp move more than fifteen miles in one day, unless circumstances shall absolutely require it.

Joel H. Johnson sold one of his oxen for ten dollars, the other came up with the camp<sup>106</sup>.

The camp began to move at nine o'clock and passed through the village of Talmadge, one mile, then turned southwest to Middleburg a fine village situated on a branch of the Cuyahoga **river**, three miles from Talmadge, and encamped for the night in the town of Coventry<sup>107</sup>, about one mile from the village of Akron, which is situated on the Ohio and Erie<sup>108</sup> canal. At twelve o'clock, for the purpose of lightening our loads, we left<sup>109</sup> some of our goods<sup>110</sup> on the canal boats<sup>111</sup> to be conveyed by water. The wind rose<sup>112</sup> high and the roads were dusty which made it hard traveling on account of the dust. In the afternoon we had a small shower of rain, the first that had fallen since<sup>113</sup> the camp started. Benjamin Butterfield left the camp in the morning and started off by himself. Traveled this day six miles. Brother John Hammond broke his wagon,<sup>114</sup> the only accident.

*Wednesday, July 11.*—After the goods that were to be sent by water were conveyed to Akron, the camp moved on, all but the first division which waited to [p. 18] attend to the burial of Brother and Sister<sup>115</sup> Wilbur's little son, aged six months and twelve<sup>116</sup> days, who died at 11 o'clock a.m. and was interred in an orchard<sup>117</sup> on the farm of Israel Allen in Coventry, at 2 p.m. He had been sick two or three days, and some other children<sup>118</sup> in the camp had also been sick **by turns after the Camp**

104. ESj, 18: replaces "require" with "call for out"

105. ESj, 18: "<performing>"

106. ESj, 18: "<up with the camp>"

107. ESj, 18: "<in the town of Coventry>"

108. ESj, 18: "<and Erie>"

109. ESj, 18: replaces "we left" with "and leaving"

110. ESj, 18: "<our goods>"

111. ESj, 18: omits "boats"

112. ESj, 18: replaces "arose" with "<was>"

113. ESj, 18: replaces "since" with "after"

114. ESj, 18: adds "down"

115. ESj, 19: replaces "Brother and Sister" with "B. S." This was Benjamin S. Wilber.

116. ESj, 19: "~~fourteen~~ <twelve>"

117. ESj, 19: "<in an orchard>"

118. ESj, 19: "<children>"

**started**, but all recovered excepting Brother Wilbur's son. Passed this day through New Portage on the Ohio canal, which we crossed two or three miles below that place, and encamped on the farm of Mr. Bockmans, in Chippeway township, county of Wayne. A heavy shower of rain fell in the afternoon and the whole company got thoroughly wet for the first time since<sup>119</sup> we started; but very few complained, however<sup>120</sup>, and all retired to rest wet and weary after the usual duties of the evening were ended.

The country through which we passed this day was somewhat uneven and swampy. Near New Portage it is low and to all appearance must be quite unhealthful. The crops of wheat, corn and grass look well, the wheat being generally about ripe and ready to harvest. John Hammond broke his wagon again today and was left behind to repair it, and did not get up to the encampment at night. Traveled this day eleven miles.

*Thursday, July 12.*—Left the encampment at half-past eight; passed through the village of Doylestown<sup>121</sup>, situated on a hill in the township of Chippeway. Crossed Chippeway creek; some of the headwaters of the Muskingum river came through the township of Milton, where we stopped at one p.m. to feed. Then passed through the township of Green into Wayne, and encamped on the farm of Mr. \_\_\_\_\_<sup>122</sup>, two miles from Wooster, at seven in the evening. The road was rough in some places, in some places stony, and, in consequence of the shower of rain which fell the day before, in some places muddy.

The country through which we passed<sup>123</sup> today is somewhat hilly, the soil productive and the crops of wheat, corn and oats &c. look fine and beautiful. Timber, principally [p. 19] of oak, with some chestnut and some other kinds of forest trees, is scattered here and there.

John Hammond overtook us in the morning on horseback, his wagon had broken again, the third time, so it could not be easily mended. The Council advised him to go back and get the brethren residing near New Portage to assist him in exchanging it for another, or let him have one to go up to Zion with, and have it returned to them, as he had now fallen so far behind that we could not well assist him without hindering many others.

Nathan B. Baldwin broke one of his wagon tires, and Henry Harriman one of his axle-trees, and stopped near Chippeway creek to have them mended. Brother Baldwin came up in the evening and Henry Harriman the next morning.

It rained a little in the course of the day, the air was cool and the horses and oxen performed the journey with greater ease than any other day since the camp started. Traveled in the course of the day about seventeen miles.

*Friday, July 13.*—The fourth division left the encampment about eight o'clock, the third and second followed, and the first left at nine. Passed through Wooster, the county seat of Wayne county, a large and beautiful village surrounded by a fertile country and is a place of considerable business. There are eight or ten public houses and several synagogues for worship, and many other commodious and elegant buildings in the village which is in Wayne township<sup>124</sup>.

At Wooster we took the road to Mansfield, west from Wooster thirty-three miles. Passed through the village of Jefferson, a small place in the township of Plain, thence to Reedsborough in Mohican

---

119. ESj, 19: replaces "since" with "after"

120. ESj, 19: omits "however"

121. ESj, 19: "Boylstown"

122. ESj, 19: adds blank space

123. ESj, 19: replaces "passed" with "travell[e]d"

124. ESj, 20: "[~~three illegible words~~] <village which is in Wayne Township>"

township, and encamped a little after five p.m. on the farm of William Crothers, in Mohican, thirteen miles from Wooster, making this day sixteen miles.

The country west of Wooster is rather hilly, some beautiful flats on the creeks, though not in so good a state of cultivation as in many other places. Crossed Applecreek east of Wooster, and Killbuck west of the town, a branch of the White Woman and Mohican creek, which fall into the same stream in Coshocton county. The roads were somewhat better than between New Portage and Wooster, though more hilly. On the flats of Mohican the road was bad, being muddy and stony. [p. 20] The country west of Wooster is not so productive as it is north of that place through which we passed on the twelfth inst., yet some beautiful fields of grain were seen. Two wagons failed this day, Joseph C. Clark's and Edwin P. Merriam's. The first was mended at Wooster, the other broke down just at the entrance of the field in which we pitched our tents. Bought four barrels of flour, the first provisions we purchased after the camp started. The people between Kirtland and Wooster were generally apprised of our coming before we arrived, and were not so much surprised to see us as they were west of that place. After we left the main road to Columbus, as we followed<sup>125</sup> along, they seemed astonished and filled with wonder and amazement at seeing so large a body moving together, and some did not fail to express their feelings with warmth to the brethren as they passed along, declaring against the "fallacy", as they called it, of "Jo Smith's" prophecies, and expressing their pity for the deluded believers in modern revelation. We saw this day the first harvesting of grain of any kind, though many of the farmers in Wayne county had done most of their haying.

*Saturday, July 14.*—Struck our tents at seven a.m. and the fourth division left the encampment followed by the third and second, the first left at eight. We passed through Jeromeville, a small village situated on a branch of the Mohican, thence through the village of Haysville in Vermillion township, county of Richland, and pitched our tents on the farm of Mr. Solomon Braden, in the town of Petersborough. The country we passed through this day is beautifully diversified with hills and valleys. The timbered lands were covered principally with oak, the roads good, the weather warm and dry. Brother William Perry turned over his wagon and his wife and children<sup>126</sup> were hurt, though not dangerously. A young woman, a daughter of John Vanleuven, Jun.<sup>127</sup>, came very near being killed by having a wagon run over her, these were the only accidents that occurred during the day. This was the first day since we left Kirtland that we traveled without breaking down one or more wagons. [p. 21] Pitched our tents at two p.m. on a hill near the east line of Petersburg township and washed and prepared for the Sabbath. In the afternoon a complaint was prepared<sup>128</sup> by N. B. Baldwin against Abram Bond for murmuring and other unchristian-like<sup>129</sup> conduct. The Council, after hearing the complaint and the defense, referred the case to the company in their own tent to settle among themselves. This was the second complaint made to the Council of any consequence on the way from Kirtland. Traveled this day<sup>130</sup> ten miles.

*Sunday, July 15.*—The Council met in the morning and made some arrangements about the order of the day. Elder Josiah Butterfield and Joseph Young were appointed to preside during the day.

At eleven o'clock public worship commenced. Many of the citizens of the town attended, most

---

125. ESj, 21: replaces "followed" with "pass[e]d"

126. ESj, 21: "child". He is listed above with four in his family.

127. ESj, 21: omits "Jun."

128. ESj, 22: replaces "prepared" with "preferred"

129. ESj, 22: omits "like"

130. ESj, 22: adds "through [illegible]"

of whom behaved well, and treated us with respect. Elder Jonathan Dunham delivered a discourse on the first principles of the Gospel, from Mark, 16th chapter, followed by several others of the Elders.

Martin H. Peck came up and joined the camp about noon, and Stephen Shumway and Charles Wood came up in the afternoon. John Hammond, who was left behind at New Portage in consequence of breaking his wagon, also joined us again. Benjamin Butterfield, who left the camp at Talmadge, Portage county, found his way into camp again in the course of the day.

*Monday, July 16.*—Started in our usual order in the morning, traveling west toward Mansfield, through which we passed in the afternoon about four o'clock. Passed through the village of Petersburg two miles from our encampment, then through Mifflic township<sup>131</sup>, three or four miles east of Mansfield. In Madison township<sup>132</sup> we were met by the sheriff and<sup>133</sup> a deputy, and a Mr. Stringer, who had taken out a warrant<sup>134</sup> for several of the brethren for Kirtland Safety Society money, and took Josiah Butterfield, Jonathan Dunham and Jonathan H. Hale for Joseph Young, and committed [p. 22] them to jail. As we came to Mansfield we were honored by the discharge of<sup>135</sup> artillery, but as the Lord would have it we were not enjoined<sup>136</sup> nor molested more than by insulting language from some of the numerous crowd of persons that thronged the streets. From Mansfield we came through Newcastle, in the township of Springfield, and encamped on the farm of Frederick Cassel over night. Mansfield is a fine village, the county seat of Richland, situated on a hill surrounded by a fertile country. Traveled this day sixteen miles.

Benjamin Butterfield left the camp again before night in ill humor and went off by himself.

*Tuesday, July 17.*—Started at eight in the morning; passed through the village of Ontario in Springfield thence through the town of Sandusky into Jackson, in Crawford county, and encamped six<sup>137</sup> miles east of Bucyrus, the county seat of Crawford<sup>138</sup> county. Traveled sixteen miles.

The country we passed through between Mansfield and Bucyrus is the highest in the State of Ohio<sup>139</sup>, being on the headwaters of the Sciota which falls into the Ohio, and of the Sandusky that falls into **Lake** Erie, the country though high is generally level.

Just at dark the brethren who had been committed to prison came up. They were discharged by the court at 12 o'clock, noon, after which they traveled twenty-two miles.

The court for Richland county was in session and would have been adjourned the evening the brethren, Josiah Butterfield Jonathan Dunham and Jonathan H. Hale, were arrested, had it not been for that occurrence. Their case was called on the same evening and adjourned till eight o'clock next morning. Dominicus Carter went back from our camp and staid with them till they were liberated. We were all glad and thanked the Lord for their deliverance out of the hands of our enemies.

*Wednesday, July 18.*—The Council met in the morning and called together the overseers of [p. 23] tents and gave them some instructions concerning their duty in presiding over their tents, &c. and Dominicus Carter was appointed commissary of the camp, and Aaron M. York chosen overseer of tent

---

131. ESj, 22: "<then through Mifflic township>"

132. ESj, 22: "<in Madison Township>"

133. ESj, 22: replaces "and" with "of the county in compa[n]y with"

134. ESj, 22: replaces "warrant" with a blank space

135. ESj, 23: "~~in common with his excellency Joseph Vance Governor of~~ Ohio by the disch[ar]ge of <by the discharge of>"

136. ESj, 23: replaces "enjoined" with "injured"

137. ESj, 23: ~~five~~ <six>"

138. ESj, 23: "~~illegible~~ <Crawford>"

139. ESj, 23: "<of Ohio>"

No. 3, third division<sup>140</sup>, in his place; and the tent removed to No. 5<sup>141</sup>, first division. About eight the camp started, passed through Benjamin<sup>142</sup> and took the road to upper Sandusky, and stopped at one p.m. on the edge of a prairie to rest. For the first time we had the privilege of encamping without pay. The road in the afternoon in some places was rather bad in the groves between the openings of the grand<sup>143</sup> prairie, the edge of which bordered on the right of our road from our encampment east of Bucyrus till we encamped at night in the town of Grand Prairie, county of Marion, on the line between that county and Crawford, ten miles southwest from Bucyrus. Passed through the township of Antrim, in Crawford county, in the afternoon. Traveled this day sixteen miles. As we passed through Bucyrus the people seemed much agitated and made many remarks concerning us. One man said he had received a liberal education and had prepared himself for the ministry, but it now availed him nothing. The movements of the “Mormons” were actions and not words, and looked more like love and like the spirit of union than anything that had come under his observation.

*Thursday, July 19.*—The second, third and fourth divisions started about eight o’clock, the first stayed on the ground, some of them until afternoon, to repair wagons.<sup>144</sup> Traveled through a prairie country to Little Sandusky, a little north of west from the place of our encampment on the night of the eighteenth. Then turned west and pitched our tents on the west side of the prairie, about a mile and a half from the village of Sandusky. Traveled this day seven and one-half miles. No particular occurrence through the day worthy of notice. Encamped for the first time in a straight line, and being on a prairie the tents and wagons<sup>145</sup> presented a beautiful picture to a distant beholder, and could not fail to bring to the mind of anyone familiar [p. 24] with the history of the journeyings of Israel from Egypt, the prophecy of Balaam, concerning Israel’s prosperity, and his pathetic exclamation, when he beheld them abiding in their tents from the top of Peor: “How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob, and thy tabernacles, O Israel! As the valleys, as they spread forth, as gardens by the river side, as the trees of lignales which the Lord hath planted, and as cedar trees beside the waters.”

*Friday, July 20.*—The Council met in the morning to attend to another complaint preferred by E. B. Gaylord, superintendent of the fourth division, against Abram Bond for murmuring and complaining, and for personal abuse. Elder Zera<sup>146</sup> Pulsipher, who presided, gave him a severe reprimand for his conduct in general on the journey and for abusing others without any provocation, and he was informed that he would be left by the wayside if he did not reform, and behave more like a man of God than he had of late, or for a few days past. Some other business relative to our circumstances and situation in journeying was talked over and the Council unanimously decided that the camp should be called together before we started and some instructions given to them concerning their duties, and also to reprimand some for indulging themselves in covetousness and murmuring against the Council, and also others of the camp who held important stations as captains of divisions or overseers of tents<sup>147</sup>.

The camp was accordingly called together and such instructions given them as the Spirit of the Lord dictated, by Elders Pulsipher, Young, Butterfield, Foster and Harriman, which had the desired effect in restoring good order and the spirit of union in the camp.

---

140. ESj, 24: “<No 3. 3 d>”

141. ESj, 24: “<No. 5>”

142. ESj, 24: replaces “Benjamin” with “Bucyrus”

143. ESj, 24: “<openings of the Grand>”

144. ESj, 24: adds “and <have some of the brethren> set [out?] on several wagons”

145. ESj, 24: “our <tents and wagons>”

146. ESj, 25: omits “Zera”

147. ESj, 25: adds “and then adjourn[e]d”

On motion of Samuel Parker it was unanimously resolved that the Councilors should be excused from standing on guard during the journey that they might have more time to counsel together and to attend to those duties which necessarily devolved upon them as Councilors of the camp. James A. Clark, Jared Porter and Daniel Bliss [p. 25] were appointed to assist the herdsman in taking care of the herds, as it was found too arduous for one. The camp started about nine and traveled westwardly two miles to Bowsherville, which is one hundred and forty-three miles from Detroit; thence four miles in the same direction, and then turned south and came through the village of Burlington, situated on Taymockty creek, a branch of the Sandusky, and pitched our tents in the highway near a schoolhouse, about one-half mile from Burlington, in the township of Grand, Marion county, between three and four o'clock p.m.

A heavy shower of rain fell soon after we encamped and it continued to rain most of the night. Most of the company got thoroughly wet. Distance this day nine and one-half miles.

*Saturday, July 21.*—Started about eight a.m.; traveled southwesterly through the township of Goshen, Hardin county to the Sciota river, in the township of Dudley, where we stopped to refresh ourselves and teams, at Judge Wheeler's. From thence we came to Mr. Bosman's, in township of Jackson, where we encamped in the highway, seven miles from Sciota, making in all sixteen miles. It was quite cool and comfortable traveling, but the road was extremely bad, being in some places almost impassable, but the Lord attended us and His blessings were multiplied upon us so that no accident of any account happened to us during the day. Newel K. Knight broke an axle-tree out of his wagon which was mended in a short time.

*Sunday, July 22.*—On account of forage we were under the necessity of traveling about five miles through Rush creek, and pitched our tents on a rise of ground, by the wayside, on the farm of Mr. Partial, inn-keeper in the town of Rush Creek, Logan county, and held public meeting at five p.m. Attended to offering our sacraments to the Most High, breaking bread for the first time on our journey. The first two Sabbaths after we started on our journey<sup>148</sup> we were so circumstanced and thronged with visitors that [p. 26] we omitted attending to the ordinance of the Lord's Supper. At our meeting in the afternoon the Lord blessed us by the outpouring of His Spirit, our hearts were comforted and most of the camp felt thankful for the blessings conferred upon us by our heavenly Father, thus far on the journey to the land of Zion.

As we passed along the road in the morning, molesting no one, some of the company were saluted in modern style by having eggs thrown at them by some ruffians from their dwellings near the road, but on seeing some of our company stop, they desisted from their course fearing the consequences from appearances, and even showed three or four bayonets, intimating that they would defend themselves in case of assault. No one, however, intended doing<sup>149</sup> any harm to them, and only wished them to understand that we noticed their intrusion upon our privileges as citizens to travel the high<sup>150</sup> road unmolested. Sometime in the night a luminous body about the size of a cannon ball came down from over the encampment near the ground then whirled round some forty or fifty times and moved off in a horizontal direction, soon passing out of sight.

*Monday, July 23.*—The camp began to move at a quarter past seven a.m., and came through the village of Rushsylvania, where we were threatened before our arrival with prosecution for "Kirtland Bank<sup>151</sup> Money," signed by F. G. Williams, president, and Warren Parrish, cashier. Some of the company

---

148. ESj, 26: omits "on our journey"

149. ESj, 27: "<doing>"

150. ESj, 27: omits "high"

151. ESj, 27: omits "Bank"



passed on from our encampment in the morning to find out what was intended against us, but no person made any attempt to stop any one, and we passed on in safety. From Rushsylvania we came through the village of Bellefontaine, the county seat of Logan county; twelve miles thence to McKee's<sup>152</sup> creek, a branch of the Miami, in the township of Union<sup>153</sup>, and camped at the side of the creek at seven o'clock<sup>154</sup>. Traveled this day sixteen miles.

On the road near Bellefontaine one of the sons of Martin H. Peck, had a wagon wheel run over his leg, but as the Lord would have it, and to the astonishment of all—considering the weight<sup>155</sup> of the load on the wagon—he [p. 27] received no particular injury, although the wheel ran over the boy's leg on a hard road without any obstruction whatever. The wheel made a deep cut in the limb<sup>156</sup>, but after hands were laid on him in the name of the Lord, the boy was able to walk considerable in the course of the afternoon. This was one, but not the first, of the wonderful manifestations<sup>157</sup> of God's power **manifested** unto us on the journey.

After we left Bucyrus hill<sup>158</sup> we came to Bellefontaine, the road was in many places very bad, especially in the backwoods. In Marion and Hardin counties provisions were scarce and could not be obtained, consequently we were obliged to do with what we had; and here was another manifestation of the power of Jehovah, for seven and a half bushels of corn sufficed for the whole camp, consisting of six hundred and twenty souls, for the space of three days, and none lacked for food, though some complained and murmured because they did not have that to eat which their souls lusted after.

*Tuesday, July 24.*—We lay in our encampment at McKee's creek through the day to wash our clothes<sup>159</sup> and refresh our teams, as they were very much fatigued by traveling for several days on a rough and muddy road. We took two jobs<sup>160</sup>, one of chopping cord wood<sup>161</sup>, and one of shoemaking, and earned about twenty dollars, besides mending and repairing several wagons and putting things in order in the camp.

*Wednesday, July 25.*—Started on our journey and came through West Liberty, situated on Mad river, thence into the township of Salem, Champaign county, and encamped about two miles north of Terbania on the farm of Joseph Vance, Governor of the state of Ohio. The encampment was formed near his residence<sup>162</sup>, at six o'clock, having traveled twelve miles this day<sup>163</sup>. The country in the valley of Mad river is level and beautiful and very fertile. We saw extensive fields of wheat on each side of<sup>164</sup> the way, mostly reaped, and crops of all kinds were far better than any we had seen elsewhere on our journey.

In the evening the camp was called together by the Council, and some of them severely reprimanded in general terms for their unchristian-like<sup>165</sup> conduct, and much instruction [p. 28] given con-

---

152. ESj, 27: "~~stony~~ <McKee's>"

153. ESj, 27: "[~~illegible~~] <Union>"

154. ESj, 27: "<at 7 oclock>"

155. ESj, 27: replaces "weight" with "heft"

156. ESj, 28: replaces "the limb" with "his leg"

157. ESj, 28: replaces "manifestations" with "displays"

158. ESj, 28: replaces "hill" with "till"

159. ESj, 28: "<our clothes>"

160. ESj, 28: replaces "two jobs" with "a job"

161. ESj, 28: "<one of> of chopping <[cord wood?]>"

162. ESj, 28: replaces first part of sentence with "<and near his residence>"

163. ESj, 28: omits "this day"

164. ESj, 28: "<each side of>"

165. ESj, 28: omits "like"



cerning our duties to God, and a one another, in order to move on our journey in righteousness, that we might obtain the favor of the Lord, and have His blessings attend us from day to day.

After the assembly was dismissed, the Council returned and listened to a complaint presented by B. S. Wilbur against Stephen Starks, for some unchristian-like<sup>166</sup> conduct during the day. The trouble was amicably settled to the satisfaction of all concerned. The Council adjourned, after transacting some other business, at eleven o'clock p.m. From Kirtland to our encampment in Salem, is two hundred and fifteen miles.

*Thursday, July 26.*—Camp began to move at eight o'clock; the first division, however, did not leave the grounds until after eleven. Several of the brethren went out to labor both yesterday and today, in order to procure means to further us on our journey, and they did not come up with us at night. We traveled south through the village of Urbana, the county seat of Champaign county; thence into the township of Moneyfield, Clark county, and camped on the farm of Mr. A. Breneman, four and one half miles off the National<sup>167</sup> road at Springfield. Traveled twelve miles, plus two hundred and fifteen miles from Kirtland<sup>168</sup>, equals two hundred and twenty-seven miles.

The camp was called together in the evening and a timely lecture was given by Elder Pulsipher, on our situation, and all were exhorted to be united in heart and hand in order to join<sup>169</sup> together. The Spirit of the Lord was manifested and we returned to our tents feeling thankful for the blessings of the Lord **conferred** upon us.

*Friday, July 27.*—Continued our journey to Springfield on the National road<sup>170</sup>, one hundred and seventy-one miles from Wheeling, in Virginia. Crossed Buck creek, a branch of Mad river just before entering the village on the north. Springfield is a large and beautiful village, the county seat of Clark county<sup>171</sup>, containing about three thousand<sup>172</sup> inhabitants. There are many elegant buildings of brick, and it seems to be a place of considerable trade.

A little west of Springfield we left the National road and took the road to Dayton, distance from Springfield twenty-five miles, and passed through the township of Mad river, and a small village called Washington in the same township<sup>173</sup>, and pitched our tents just at dark in a grove near Lenox, in Mad river township<sup>174</sup>. [p. 29] The day was excessively warm and the road dusty, but we all arrived safely at our encampment in the evening, except some of those who stopped to labor. Many of the people all along the road seemed quite astonished to see so many in the company. Some judging there were three hundred teams, and made some curious remarks concerning us and "Jo Smith"; and one man threatened to shoot Elder Dunham if he did not immediately leave his premises when he called to procure forage for our teams at noon. After we encamped a stage went by and the passengers behaved as they passed us more like the savages of the west than anything we have seen since the commencement of our journey. Distance traveled today<sup>175</sup>, fifteen miles. J. D. Parker, who had

---

166. ESj, 29: omits "like"

167. ESj, 29: "<off the [illegible] of the National>"

168. ESj, 29: omits "from Kirtland"

169. ESj, 29: replaces "join" with "journey"

170. ESj, 29: omits "road"

171. ESj, 29: "<the county seat of Clark cou[n]ty>"

172. ESj, 29: replaces "three thousand" with blank space

173. ESj, 29: "<in the same Township>"

174. ESj, 29: "<river township>"

175. ESj, 30: omits "traveled today"

left Kirtland some time after we did, overtook us at our encampment this evening and staid<sup>176</sup> with us till Monday morning.

*Saturday, July 28.*—We removed from Mad river township and came to Fairfield, three miles, thence to<sup>177</sup> Bath township and encamped about noon half a mile from the road on the banks of Mad river in Green county, five and one half miles from Dayton. Distance this day nine miles. Distance from Kirtland, two hundred and fifty-one miles.<sup>178</sup>

*Sunday, July 29.*—We held a public meeting in a grove on a farm of Mr. Houghman, about one fourth of a mile from our encampment, at eleven o'clock, Elder Zera Pulsipher preached<sup>179</sup>.

In the afternoon we had a sacrament meeting on the camp grounds. Elder Duncan McArthur, after the administration of the Lord's<sup>180</sup> Supper, bore testimony of the truth of the revelations of the Lord in these last days to the numerous spectators who were present, and in a brief way<sup>181</sup> made known unto them some of those things that the Lord was doing in the earth; and others that<sup>182</sup> would shortly come to pass<sup>183</sup> among the inhabitants thereof. The Spirit of God attended his testimony and we had a joyful meeting.

The Council met in the morning to regulate some things relative to the duties of the day, and adjourned till five p.m. At that time<sup>184</sup> they met again and took into [p. 30] consideration the case of Abram Bond and unanimously resolved that for his murmuring and not giving heed to the regulations of the camp, he should be disfellowshipped by the camp and left to the care of himself, which decision was made known unto him and approbated by those who were present at the time. He accordingly left the camp the next day. Warren Smith, who left Kirtland about the first of June, came into the camp with his family and joined us. William Gribble—whose wife accompanied us from Kirtland—also joined the camp this day. We found many of the Saints from Kirtland and other places, and Elder John E. Page, with a part of his company<sup>185</sup> that started from Oak Point, in St. Lawrence county, New York, whither they had fled in the course of the past winter, from the commotions and<sup>186</sup> rumors of war in Canada. They were scattered along the road from Springfield to Dayton, some of them<sup>187</sup> laboring for means to prosecute their journey and some had stopped to recruit their teams as well as their purses, that they might<sup>188</sup> continue their journey after the warm season had passed. Many of them came to visit us and were received with feelings of gratitude for the goodness of our heavenly Father for the preservation of our lives and for the privilege of meeting each other in this land of strangers.

The weather has been extremely hot and<sup>189</sup> dry in the land, and in the southwestern part of the

---

176. ESj, 30: "~~staid~~ <kept>"

177. ESj, 30: "~~through~~ <[illegible] to>"

178. ESj, 30: "Distance this day 9+242=251"

179. ESj, 30: adds "from [blank space] ~~there~~ [blank space]"

180. ESj, 30: omits "Lord's"

181. ESj, 30: omits "way"

182. ESj, 30: omits "others that"

183. ESj, 30: replaces "come to pass" with "transpire"

184. ESj, 30: replaces "At that time" with "when"

185. ESj, 31: replaces "company" with "camp"

186. ESj, 31: "<commotions and>"

187. ESj, 31: "<some of them>"

188. ESj, 31: omits "might"

189. ESj, 31: "<hot and>"

state of Ohio, for many weeks: and rain was much needed<sup>190</sup>, and supplication was made to the God of Israel for rain on the land in this region of country, at the meeting in the forenoon, and at the close of the service in the afterpart of the day. Elder Dunham and Elder Charles Thompson each held a meeting in the afternoon, about two miles from camp.<sup>191</sup>

*Monday, July 30.*—We remained in our encampment during the day and were visited by several gentlemen, and were solicited to tarry in this place for a season and take a job on the Springfield and Dayton turnpike. Some of the brethren went out to make what discoveries they could relative to labor, and partly engaged some small jobs on condition that we tarried [p. 31] here for a few days. In the afternoon and evening it rained on each side of us, that is, to the north and to the south, and at no great distance from us quite hard, to all appearances; and we also had<sup>192</sup> a small shower in the afternoon, though not enough to water the earth sufficiently, yet it cooled the air and greatly revived both the animal and vegetable kingdoms, for which we thank that Being that rules the armies<sup>193</sup> of heaven and the inhabitants of the earth<sup>194</sup>, and sendeth rain both upon the just and upon the unjust.

Elder John E. Page, who preached about one mile from us in the evening, tarried with us over night and left us in the morning to go to his family at Fairfield, five miles and one half distant, where they had resided for a few weeks since the Canada camp (John E. Page's company)<sup>195</sup> had stopped.

*Tuesday, July 31.*—A part of our company went off to work on a job of raising a levee for Mr.<sup>196</sup> Hushman, and some one way and some another to labor during the day<sup>197</sup>. In the morning all the men in<sup>198</sup> the camp were called out and were made acquainted with our pecuniary circumstances, and an inquiry made who, if any wished to leave the camp and look out for themselves. One man, Brother Asa Wright, said that his wife had always been opposed to going in the camp, and that he had told some of the brethren in the camp that in consequence of that and some other things it was his choice to leave **the camp**. Elder Stephen Headlock also complained of the murmuring of some of the camp, and said that he had rather leave the camp—though he desired with all his heart to go<sup>199</sup> in it up to the land of Zion—than to hear so much complaining as he had for a few days past<sup>200</sup>, and had freely expressed his mind before to that effect to some of the brethren **before**.

He was reprimanded by Elder Pulsipher for his own neglect of duty and told to set his own tent in order, and then if he knew of any infringement on the rules of the camp by others, to try, as the law of God required, to reclaim the offenders and restore them to order that the blessings of God might be poured out upon the camp during the long and tedious journey which still lay before it<sup>201</sup>. [p. 32] A vote was taken to see how many were desirous of stopping and laboring, if the Council thought advisable to do so. **After making** some further inquiries were made<sup>202</sup> concerning the conditions that

---

190. ESj, 31: replaces "needed" with "wanted"

191. ESj, 31: inserts last sentence at *coln* and interlinearly

192. ESj, 32: replaces "had" with "experienced"

193. ESj, 32: "<the armies>"

194. ESj, 32: "<and [*illegible*] the inhabitants of the earth>"

195. ESj, 32: omits "(John E. Page's company)"

196. ESj, 32: "<mr>"

197. ESj, 32: "<to labor during the day>"

198. ESj, 32: "<all the men in>"

199. ESj, 32: "<go>"

200. ESj, 32: omits "past"

201. ESj, 32: replaces "it" with "us"

202. ESj, 33: omits "were made"

had been or might be offered to the camp to make a piece of turn pike road<sup>203</sup> or do any other work that might be obtained by the Council, and under their superintendency<sup>204</sup>, when<sup>205</sup> all, with a few exceptions,—and they were<sup>206</sup> persons unable to labor—voted to abide by the advice of the Council, and would stay or go, as they should advise or direct.

Elder John E. Page made a short speech **on the occasion**, exhorting all to fulfill their covenants, let what would come, life or death, inasmuch as they were in righteousness before God, and said that all our deeds would be had in remembrance; that we would be rewarded for them, whether good or evil, both in time and in eternity; and further observed that the journeying of the Saints to Zion in obedience to the commandments of the Lord afforded an opportunity for them to become what they desired; either to be as great and as noble as they could **wish** or to sink into obscurity in the eyes of God and His Saints<sup>207</sup> and be the least in this last kingdom which God has set His hand to build up upon the earth. After making many appropriate remarks he implored the blessings of heaven upon us, which was responded to by a hearty amen, and then all dispersed to attend to the duties of the day.

In the course of the day we took a job of making half a mile of turnpike, and removed our encampment into a beautiful grove near the edge of a prairie about one-fourth of a mile, and about the same distance from Mad river<sup>208</sup>. Here we<sup>209</sup> began to make preparations to commence work<sup>210</sup>, but made little progress, for most of the laboring men were absent, and we did not get our tents pitched till nearly night.

*Wednesday, August 1.*—Began at an early hour to make arrangements to commence our job. Sent off part of the men to finish the levee and some to build a fence around our camp, and about twelve o'clock made a beginning on the road. A few sick in the camp this day, but most of us were in good health and satisfied with our situation. [p. 33]

*Thursday, August 2.*—Very warm and dry as it had been for many days, with the exception of the showers on Monday evening.

Progressed with our labors on the road rather slowly, for we were not in condition to work to good advantage, as we had not tools enough, and had been on our journey so long that it was rather fatiguing to labor hard in the commencement. Some sickness in the camp, but no more than would be expected, owing to our change of climate, and the extreme heat and drouth in the land.

*Friday, August 3.*—Made great progress in the turnpike, and the desponding spirits of some began to revive, for laboring had looked to some to be rather a hard way to procure means to prosecute our journey, though but few complained. Some new cases of sickness, but many of those who were unwell the day before were recovering fast. The men and boys in camp were called together in the evening and instructed by the Council as the Spirit of the Lord manifested unto them concerning cleanliness and decency and the importance of being industrious in laboring with their hands to procure means to go on our way. The covenant **entered into** to put our strength, our properties and monies together for the purpose of going together in the camp to Zion<sup>211</sup>, and of delivering the poor from their poverty

---

203. ESj, 33: omits "road"

204. ESj, 33: "obtained under their counsel and superintendence"

205. ESj, 33: replaces "when" with "and"

206. ESj, 33: replaces "and they were" with "of"

207. ESj, 33: "<in the eyes of God and his saints>"

208. ESj, 33: "<and about the same <distance> from Mad river>"

209. ESj, 33: replaces "Here we" with "and"

210. ESj, 33: replaces "work" with "laboring"

211. ESj, 34: "<to Zion>"

and oppression in the land of Kirtland was adverted to by Elders Pulsipher and Foster, and all exhorted and entreated to give heed to it if they wished to enjoy the blessings of the Lord.

The Council at a meeting held in the afternoon had taken into consideration the propriety of appointing three men to sit as councilors or judges<sup>212</sup> to settle matters and difficulties between brethren, that the Council<sup>213</sup> might be relieved in some measure from the arduous duties of settling controversies and have more time to devote to other things that devolved upon them as Presidents<sup>214</sup> of the camp. Duncan McArthur, Gordon Snow<sup>215</sup> and George Stringham were nominated, and the subject was laid before the meeting in the evening to receive the unanimous approbation of all present<sup>216</sup>. [p. 34] The many blessings conferred on us by our Heavenly Father since He first made known His will unto the Council of Seventies<sup>217</sup>, that it was His will that the Seventies should go to Zion in a camp together, were recapitulated<sup>218</sup> and our hearts were made glad and we rejoiced in the Rock of our salvation whose mercies had been extended unto us, notwithstanding our murmurings against Him and slowness of heart to believe His words, and<sup>219</sup> the many promises which He had made unto us. At the close of the meeting our united prayers ascended to God in the name of His Son, Jesus Christ, for the recovery of Elder Jacob Chapman's family who resided near the city of Dayton, and had sent unto us for some of the Elders to go and lay hands on them in the name of the Lord, as they were sorely afflicted with disease, and for the recovery of the sick in our own camp, and that the destroyer might cease to make inroads among us.

*Saturday, August 4.*—Our circumstances about the same as on the day previous. A heavy shower<sup>220</sup> towards evening cooled the air and greatly revived the<sup>221</sup> vegetation which was suffering for want of rain in the country round about. In the evening the camp was called together again and the names of those who had absented themselves from labor were read over and those who had no excuse for their absence were severely reprimanded, and the overseers of tents instructed by the Council to withhold the usual<sup>222</sup> rations allotted from such individuals as could but would not labor, that the idler should not eat the bread of the laborer, according to the commandments of the Lord.<sup>223</sup> [p. 35]

---

212. DHC 3:121: adds “[known as an Assistant Council, see p. 128]”. This term is used on MS p. 40 (cf. DHC 3:128; chap. 10).

213. ESj, 34: adds “~~of the camp~~”

214. ESj, 34: replaces “Presidents” with “counsellors”

215. Should be “Gardner Snow” (cf. DHC 3:93).

216. ESj, 34: “<present>”

217. ESj, 35: “counsellors of the seventies”

218. ESj, 35: adds “<over>”

219. ESj, 35: “<his words and>”

220. ESj, 35: adds “~~of rain~~”

221. ESj, 35: adds “~~the vegetables~~”

222. ESj, 35: “<usual>”

223. DHC 3:122: adds “Doctrine and Covenants, sec. xlii” (cf. D&C 42:42)

## JOURNEY OF KIRTLAND CAMP (Cont.)

### August–October 1838

#### *Kirtland Camp Journal Kept by Elias Smith*

*Sunday, August 5.*—One month had passed away since the camp was organized and we were all present in the camp with few exceptions. Elder Joseph Young preached from Acts xvi, and 30th verse, on the principles of salvation through the Gospel of Jesus Christ<sup>1</sup>. A respectable congregation of strangers assembled with us and gave the best attention to what was declared unto them. The sacrament of the Lord's supper was administered in the afternoon by Elders Foster and Wilbur and the services of the day were closed by singing and imploring the blessings [p. 35] of God upon us and upon the Saints of the Most High in every land, and for the triumph of Christ's kingdom on the earth. The Council met after the public services of the day were ended, to transact some business of the camp which seemed to be necessary; and after that was disposed of Elder Zera Pulsipher suggested the propriety of ordaining George Stringham to the office of an Elder, and said that the Spirit had borne witness to him for some time that it was the will of the Lord that he should be ordained to that office. The subject was taken into consideration and the Council decided that he should be ordained if it was congenial to his own feelings. On being interrogated he said that he was willing to be ordained and would do anything the Lord required of him for the building up of His kingdom on the earth. Elder James Foster with some others then proceeded to ordain him according to the rules of the Church of Latter-day Saints, an Elder in said Church. The Council then adjourned.

*Monday, August 6.*—Some complaining in the camp and some sick, principally children and aged persons. We progressed finely in our labors on the road, and a greater interest seemed to be<sup>2</sup> manifested for the welfare of the whole body than had been **generally seen** since the camp stopped. John Hammond lost one of his horses in the night, the first one that had died during our journey.

*Tuesday, August 7.*—No occurrence worthy of note during the day. The destroyer continued to afflict us with sickness as a body, and many of the men were unable to labor. In the evening the laborers were called together and some instructions were given to them concerning our labors and the necessity of diligence impressed upon those who manifested an indifference to the general interest of the whole camp.

*Wednesday, August 8.*—This morning found another of our horses dead, one that had been

---

1. ESj, 35: "<the gospel of> Jesus <Christ>"

2. ESj, 36: "<seem[e]d to be>"



bought for the benefit of the camp, and before noon we had to kill another that had his leg broken. It belonged to John Matthews who had left the camp a few days before without the consent of the Council. [p. 36] Sickness still prevailed among us though the laboring men were in better health than usual and the spirit of love and union was manifested by most of the camp and all that were able labored cheerfully without a murmur during the day<sup>3</sup>. In the evening a child of Hiram H. Byington died, which was the second time death had entered our camp on the road from Kirtland to this place.

*Thursday, August 9.*—Brother Byington's child was buried at twelve o'clock. Some sickness in the camp this day, but not quite so much as there has been for a few days past. A little shower about noon cooled the air **a little** though enough did not fall to water the earth which was suffering from want of rain and had been for some time, insomuch that the shower that fell on the 4th instant did not suffice to water it enough to restore vegetation to its natural state, and the crops of corn and other grains were suffering almost beyond description in the region of country round about.

*Friday, August 10.*—The weather continued extremely hot and dry. Elder James Foster took his tent in company with J. S. Holman, S. Shumway of the 3rd<sup>4</sup> division and Joel Harvey of the 4th, with the inmates of their tents and went to work on a job of building a levee for Mr. Hushman about two miles from the camp, where E. B. Gaylord of the 4th division had moved his tent a few days before, and was digging a ditch for the same individual. In the evening <sup>5</sup>a daughter of Thomas Carico, aged one year and five months, died, and was buried the next day.

*Saturday, August 11.*—One or two showers of rain cooled the air and revived the languid and drooping spirits of those in the camp, and symptoms of better health were visible on the countenances of the afflicted. In the fore part of the night Sarah Emily, daughter of Dominicus Carter, aged about two years and three months<sup>6</sup>, died, being the fourth one the destroyer took from our midst.

*Sunday, August 12.*—Elder Pulsipher preached in the forenoon to a large congregation of strangers most of whom gave the best attention. At two p.m. the funeral of Elder Carter's child was [p. 37] attended, and at four Elder John E. Page, who had been invited<sup>7</sup>, preached a sermon on the gathering of Israel and the location of Mount Zion, after which the Council met to regulate and set in order some things that seemed to be necessary in the camp, in order to preserve harmony and union among us. Elder Charles Thompson was called in question for something he had taught concerning the order of moving of the camp. After being shown the impropriety of his conduct<sup>8</sup>, and the fallacy of some of his views and the effect the promulgating of them had and would have in the camp, he made ample retraction before the Council, and before the camp which was called together for that purpose in the evening.

Several brethren from Elder Page's camp and others that resided in this region of country spent the Sabbath with us. Among the number were Elder Nelson and Brother Ide, who resided near the city of Dayton. Several of the brethren who had resided in Kirtland, being now on the way to the land of Zion, had stopped to labor near us and they were also present, and met with us at communion which was administered by Elders John E. Page and Jonathan H. Hale at the close of the meeting in the afternoon.

*Monday, August 13.*—Richard D. Blanchard joined the camp by the consent of the Council.

---

3. ESj, 37: "~~on the road~~ <during the day>"

4. ESj, 37: "2d"

5. ESj, 37: adds blank space for name

6. ESj, 37: "<aged about 2 <years> & 3 months>"

7. ESj, 38: "<who had been invited>"

8. ESj, 38: omits "of his conduct"



Somewhat cooler towards evening than it had been for some time<sup>9</sup>. About twenty sick in the camp, mostly women and children, but none are dangerously ill<sup>10</sup>. The laborers were called together again in the evening and some instructions given them concerning our labors and prospects in relation to means to prosecute our journey, and a spirit of union was manifested which cheered our hearts and made us thankful to the God of Israel for that and the many other blessings we daily received from His liberal hand.

*Tuesday, August 14.*—The day passed away as usual. For some time past most of the laborers<sup>11</sup> were able to perform the work assigned them, and but few comparatively were sick in the camp, and these generally were growing better.

*Wednesday, August 15.*—It rained most of the afternoon which hindered us from our labors a considerable part of the time. [p. 38]

Brother Jonas Putnam and family by the advice of the Council left the camp and moved about twelve miles on to a farm belonging to Brother <sup>12</sup>Ide to take charge of it while he [Brother Ide]<sup>13</sup> went to prepare a place for himself and the small branch of the Church in this vicinity in some of the Stakes of Zion in the west. We were not willing that Brother Putnam should leave the camp upon any other principle than that of mutual consent of all concerned, for he was esteemed by all as a just man, and devout, and one that was worthy of the fellowship of the Saints **if there was one in the camp**. Elder Elijah Cheney who had left Kirtland before the camp with his family came into our encampment in the forenoon having been blessed of the Lord on his journey and was received with a hearty welcome by the brethren of the camp.

*Thursday, August 16.*—Elder B. S. Wilbur took about twenty men with Elder George Stringham and his tent and company and went to the city of Dayton to do a job of work which had been engaged by the advice of the Council.

In the evening G. W. Brooks and wife were called before the Council and inquiry made into some things which had been in circulation for some days respecting them, and in the course of the investigation it was acknowledged that Brother Brooks' wife had used tea most of the time on the road, and had used profane language, and she declared she would still pursue the same course, and it was not in the power of her husband or the Council to stop it. She further said that she was not a member of the Church and did not expect to come under the rules of the camp.

The decision of the Council was that they must leave the camp, and Brother Brooks was severely reprimanded for not keeping his tent in order according to the Constitution of the camp, and not keeping his family in subjection, as a man of God, especially as an Elder of Israel. [p. 39]

*Friday, August 17.*—Elders J. Foster and Henry Harriman, having finished the job of embankment [levee] came back in to the encampment themselves but did not bring back their tents. In the afternoon the Council met and several of the members of the camp were tried for breach of the Constitution, and Nathan K. Knight presented an appeal from a decision of<sup>14</sup> the Assistant Council on a charge preferred against himself and wife by Amos Jackson, overseer of his tent, for some misdemeanor in respect to the order of the camp and unchristian-like<sup>15</sup> conduct on the journey, which decision was that they

---

9. ESj, 38: "Some cooler than [~~illegible~~] <had been for some time> towards evening ~~than usual~~"

10. ESj, 38: omits "ill"

11. ESj, 38: "~~men able to labour~~ <laborers>"

12. ESj, 39: adds blank space

13. Brackets BHR's.

14. ESj, 40: "<a decision of>"

15. ESj, 40: omits "like"

had violated the Constitution of the camp and disregarded their covenant to observe and keep it, and consequently must be left by the wayside. After an inquiry into the affair the decision made [by the Assistant Council]<sup>16</sup> was confirmed by the Council of the camp.<sup>17</sup>

Josiah Miller was advised, in consequence of the conduct of his son-in-law, Aaron Dolph, who was not a member of the Church, and would not conform to the order of the camp, to take his family and go by himself.

Nathan Staker was requested to leave the camp<sup>18</sup> in consequence of the determination of his wife, to all appearances, not to observe the rules and regulations of the camp. There had been contentions in the tent between herself and Andrew Lamereaux, overseer of the tent<sup>19</sup>, and also contentions with his<sup>20</sup> family several times on the road, and after the camp stopped in this place. The Council had become weary of trying to settle these contentions<sup>21</sup> between them. Andrew Lamereaux having gone to Dayton to labor, taking his family with him, was not present at the Council, neither was there any new complaint made, but the impossibility of Brother Staker to keep his family in order was apparent to all, and it was thought to be the best thing for him to take his family and leave the camp. Some other things were brought before the Council and inquiry made into the conduct of several individuals, and the Council had come to the determination to put iniquity from the camp wherever it could be found, that God's anger might be turned away and His blessings rest down upon us. [p. 40]

*Saturday, August 18.*—Josiah Miller, agreeable to the counsel given him, took his family and left the camp with the best of feelings existing between him and the Council of the camp; he left it only in consequence of the disposition of his son-in-law, Aaron Dolph, to set at naught the Constitution by which the camp were bound by agreement<sup>22</sup> to put their strength, properties and monies together in order to move the camp to the land of Zion.

Another child died this day, aged about three years, a daughter of Martha Higby, who was in company with Z. H. Brewster. Sister Higby's husband had left her some time before the camp started. The brethren finished their job at Mr. Harshman's on Friday, and at Dayton on Saturday. The health of the camp was much better than usual since we stopped here.

*Sunday, August 19.*—As usual a large congregation met with us and gave good attention to the services of the day. Elder Joel H. Johnson, by the request of Elders Young and Harriman, who presided, preached on the first principles of the Gospel from Galatians [chapter]<sup>23</sup> i, in the forenoon. In the afternoon the sacrament<sup>24</sup> was administered<sup>25</sup> agreeable to the commandments of the Lord.

*Monday, August 20.*—Nathan K. Knight and George W. Brooks, who had been excluded from the camp as before stated, left the camp. Daniel Bliss went with George W. Brooks by the consent of the Council—at his own request—as he was not well provided for as to a place for his family to ride on the road.

---

16. Brackets BHR's.

17. ESj, 40: "<the decision ... camp.>"

18. ESj, 40: replaces "requested to leave the camp" with "set aside"

19. ESj, 40: "<of the tent>"

20. ESj, 40: omits "also contentions with his"

21. ESj, 40: replaces "these contentions" with "it"

22. ESj, 41: replaces "by agreement" with "together"

23. Brackets this editor's.

24. ESj, 41: replaces "sacrament" with "communion"

25. ESj, 41: replaces "administered" with "attended"

*Tuesday, August 21.*—Two boys born in the<sup>26</sup> camp in the morning. One, the son of Gardner Snow, the other<sup>27</sup> of Frederick M. Vanleuven. The Council held a consultation in the afternoon and concluded to make preparations to start on our journey<sup>28</sup> as soon as possible, if the Lord did not open the way clearly before us to tarry longer in this place. J. A. Clark was excluded from the camp.<sup>29</sup> [p. 41]

*Wednesday, August 22.*—Finished our job of grading in the morning and the remainder of the day most of us rested ourselves, and made some preparation to start again on our way. Extremely hot, and the earth parched with drought to a greater degree than has been known for many years in this region of country.

Andrew J. Squires called on us on his way to Kirtland on Tuesday afternoon, and left again after having some consultation with the Council of the Seventies about his standing in the Church, and went on his way to Kirtland.

*Thursday, August 23.*—The Council met to regulate some things and concluded to start on Monday, the 27th instant, and to labor all the time we could till that time. Several resolutions were passed among which was the following: That those of the camp who were absent should come back to the encampment and that the vacancies in overseers of tents be filled and then all called together and instructed more particularly concerning the duties of their office before the camp shall start again; that the camp shall be reorganized, inasmuch as some have left since its organization.

John Hammond was expelled by the assistant Council from the camp for not standing at the head of his family, his wife making much disturbance in the tent, of which Brother Hammond was the overseer.

*Friday, August 24.*—Most of the brethren who were absent came into the camp during the day to make preparations to go on our journey<sup>30</sup>.

Elder Joseph Young went to Dayton to attend the funeral of William Tenny, late of Kirtland, who died yesterday.

*Saturday, August 25.*—In the afternoon the overseers of the tents were called together by the Council, and inquiry made into the affairs of each tent to see if there were any difficulties existing among them or any other persons in the camp. [p. 42] The inquiry resulted in discovering much that was not as it should be. Several tents were in disorder, and the Council proceeded to make inquiry and to set in order the inmates of<sup>31</sup> those tents that were in a state of confusion. Most of the difficulties<sup>32</sup> were amicably settled, one exception. John Rulison was turned out of the camp by the assistant Council<sup>33</sup>. The same Council<sup>34</sup> were directed to go to Brother Nickerson's tent and set it in order; breaking the Word of Wisdom and disbelief in some of the revelations constituted the difficulties in this tent<sup>35</sup>.

*Sunday, August 26.*—As usual a public meeting was held in the forenoon and a sacrament meet-

---

26. ESj, 41: "~~Two added to the~~ <boys born in the>"

27. ESj, 41: "<other>"

28. ESj, 41: replaces "journey" with "way"

29. ESj, 41: "from <camp for [illegible]>"

30. ESj, 42: replaces "journey" with "way"

31. ESj, 43: "<the inmates of>"

32. ESj, 43: "<difficulties>"

33. ESj, 43: replaces "the assistant Council" with "Elder McArthur and his council"

34. ESj, 43: replaces "The same Council" with "who"

35. ESj, 43: omits "constituted the difficulties in this tent"

ing in the afternoon. The Spirit of the Lord<sup>36</sup> was poured out on the assembly and some were convinced of the truth of what was declared unto them.

*Monday, August 27.*—Having finished our turnpike contract<sup>37</sup>, we made every possible exertion to continue our journey<sup>38</sup> on the morrow, by shoeing horses and fixing wagons. We had<sup>39</sup> a blacksmith shop in operation in the camp for several days, doing the necessary work **for the camp**. In the evening a heavy shower of rain fell which was greatly needed, and it seemed for some time past that it would be almost impossible for us to travel in consequence of the drought, and the dust that flew on the highway; but as the Lord had been merciful to us before, so He was in this instance, for which we felt thankful in very deed.

*Tuesday, August 28.*—Made every exertion in our power to start, but found it impossible about noon, as we had to make provisions for several families who had been deprived of a team by those who were turned out of the camp taking their teams with them.

Charles Wood was expelled from the camp by two of the Council, James Foster and Henry Harriman, on the 27th. Brother Wood was tenting about two miles from our encampment with two or three other families<sup>40</sup>, who for some misdemeanor<sup>41</sup> had been expelled from the camp. Brothers Foster and Harriman, by the consent of all concerned, acted<sup>42</sup> in this matter without a majority of the Council being present, but this was not the practice of the Council, as a majority [p. 43] was considered necessary to have a trial or council concerning any matter relating to<sup>43</sup> the affairs of the camp; but in this instance no exceptions were made by any. In the evening the brethren in the camp were called together and our labors and tribulations were talked over. The Spirit of God rested down upon the camp<sup>44</sup> with power, and after singing the<sup>45</sup> hymn, “The spirit of God like a fire is burning,” we concluded by a song<sup>46</sup>s, “Hosanna to God and the Lamb,” and retired with joyful hearts to our tents.

*Wednesday, August 29.*—Early in the morning we began to leave the ground, having the previous day reorganized as far as possible. Z. H. Brewster and his father-in-law, J. Higby who was with him, were left behind for want of a team to carry them with their families.

We passed through the city of Dayton, situated near the junction of Mad river with the Great Miami, and took the road to Eaton and traveled through the township of Jefferson and put up in the township of Jackson, near the village of Johnsville<sup>47</sup>, twelve miles from Dayton, and pitched our tents in the highway, having traveled eighteen miles. Having been at work one month we all were thankful for the privilege of again marching on our way.

Our labors in Bath and its vicinity amounted to about \_\_\_\_\_.

*Thursday, August 30.*—Traveled through Twin township on the north line<sup>48</sup>, and through

---

36. ESj, 43: omits “of the Lord”

37. ESj, 43: replaces “our turnpike contract” with “work on the job”

38. ESj, 43: replaces “continue our journey” with “go on our way”

39. ESj, 43: “having <had>”

40. ESj, 43: replaces “families” with “tents”

41. ESj, 43: omits remainder of sentence

42. ESj, 43: replaces “acted” with “sitting in council”

43. ESj, 44: “~~concerning~~ <relating to>”

44. ESj, 44: omits “upon the camp”

45. ESj, 44: adds “last”

46. ESj, 44: replaces “song” with “loud”

47. ESj, 44: “<near the village of Johnsville>”

48. ESj, 44: “<on the north line>”

Washington township, in Preble county; passed through the village on of Alexander, in Twin township and then through the village of Eaton, twelve miles from Johnsville, and pitched our tents on the line of Indiana and Ohio, eleven miles from Eaton, having traveled twenty-four miles, and are now two hundred and ninety-three miles from Kirtland<sup>49</sup>.

The land from Dayton to the Ohio line is generally bad, and covered with maple, beach, elm, ash, whitewood and other northern timber; and the soil after leaving the bottoms of the Miami is not so fertile as the lands on that [Miami]<sup>50</sup> and Mad river. The road was generally good, and the weather [p. 44] extremely fine. Our teams stood the journey much better than when we first started from Kirtland.

On Thursday <sup>51</sup>a daughter of Otis Shumway died, at Eaton, on the road, and was buried in the woods near where we camped at night, in the township of Jackson, Preble county, Ohio.

*Friday, August 31.*—Started early, crossed the line of Indiana a few rods from our encampment into the township of Wayne, Wayne county Indiana. We came to the village of Richmond, on the east branch of Whitewater, four miles<sup>52</sup>. Richmond is a flourishing place on the national road, which we came to soon after we passed the line, or between there and Richmond. From Richmond we came to Centerville, the county seat of Wayne county, six miles; and thence we came to the village of Germantown, eight miles, and encamped for the night near that village, about sunset. Crossed during the day several tributary streams of the Whitewater, the principal of which was Nolands Fork, west of Centerville. Traveled fourteen miles.

*September 1.*—The camp started at eight a.m.<sup>53</sup> We came through a small village called Cambridge one mile from Germantown<sup>54</sup>; then through Dublin three miles; through Louisville, nine miles; then to Flatrock, in Franklin township, Henry county; thence to Roysville, on the east side of Blue river, and Knight's Town, on the east<sup>55</sup> side ten miles<sup>56</sup>, and encamped by the side of the way one mile west of Knight's Town, just at dark. The air was cool in the evening and after the fires were built, which was necessary for our comfort and convenience, our encampment looked beautiful, and we attracted the attention of all who passed by\* and of the citizens of the neighborhood who declared that our company exceeded any they had before seen in all their lives. Distance from Kirtland three hundred and thirty-five miles.<sup>57</sup>

*Sunday, September 2.*—Frost seen in the morning. being quite cool, we thought it our duty to go on our way, so we started at eight o'clock, and came through the small villages of Liberty and Portland, and stopped at noon in Center township, Hancock county, at Mr. Caldwell's<sup>58</sup>, about<sup>59</sup> nine miles from our encampment. Here <sup>60</sup>the son of E. P. Merriam died; the body<sup>61</sup> was carried on to our place of encampment at night. In the afternoon we came through Greenfield, the county seat of Hancock county. Crossed Sugar creek, nine miles, and [p. 45] encamped at night on Buck creek on the west line

---

49. ESj, 44: "travelled 24+18=42+251=293"

50. Brackets BHR's.

51. ESj, 45: adds blank space for name

52. ESj, 45: "<4 miles>"

53. ESj, 45: "<[t]arted at 8>"

54. ESj, 45: "<from Germantown>"

55. ESj, 45: "<west>"

56. ESj, 45: "<ten miles>"

57. ESj, 45: "Distance 24+18=42+293=335"

58. ESj, 45: "<about at Mr Caldwell's>"

59. ESj, 45: "<about>"

60. ESj, 45: adds blank space for name

61. ESj, 45: replaces "body" with "corpse"

of Hancock county, and east line of Marion county, having traveled twenty-one miles through a low, level country of clay soil and hard road. The crops of corn were small, and all grain scarce. The weather is cool and the roads good, but from appearances they had been almost impassable. Three hundred and fifty-six miles from Kirtland.<sup>62</sup>

*Monday, September 3.*—Cold and frosty in the morning. We arose at four, as usual, and at half-past five Sister Bathsheba Willey, who was sick when we started from Kirtland, died and was buried together with Brother Merriam's child in the northeast corner of T. Ruther's orchard, Jones township, Hancock county, about one-fourth of a mile east<sup>63</sup> from Buck creek. The stage broke Lucius N. Scovil's wagon down.<sup>64</sup> We came this day to Indianapolis **10½ miles**, on the east side of White river, the metropolis of the state of Indiana, and pitched our tents at night six and one-sixth miles west of the city, in Wayne township, on the farm of Brother Miller<sup>65</sup>. Distance from Kirtland, three hundred and seventy-three miles.<sup>66</sup>

*Tuesday, September 4.*—In the morning B. S. Wilbur, who had been left behind in Dayton, Ohio, to transact some business, came up in the stage about four o'clock. The camp was called together in the morning, and warned by the Council<sup>67</sup> of the displeasure of our heavenly Father with some for their wickedness, and that His judgments would fall upon them with greater weight than they had if there was not a speedy repentance. The Council also entreated all to be humble and pray much, for the destroyer was in our midst and many were afflicted. Ira Thornton, overseer of tent No. eight, third division, by leave of the Council, stayed behind to go up to the land of Zion with his father-in-law, who resided near our encampment, and was going to start in a few days. Brother Thornton during the journey had been a faithful brother, and stopped now merely on his wife's account, and not that he was or had been disaffected with the movements in the camp or with the management of the Council. [p. 46]

Josiah Butterfield stopped to get a wagon wheel made, and the camp started at a late hour. We came through Cumberland village, two miles; thence through Plainfield, in Guilford township, Hendricks county, five miles; and stopped at noon in Liberty township<sup>68</sup>, two miles east of Bellville, five miles from Plainfield, through which we passed in the afternoon; thence through the village of Bellville eight miles, and encamped late in the evening about three miles west of Bellville, having traveled twenty-three miles.<sup>69</sup> David Elliot left the camp this morning<sup>70</sup>. <sup>71</sup>Distance from Kirtland, three hundred and ninety-six miles.

*Wednesday, September 5.*—Thomas Nickerson's child <sup>72</sup>died in the night, and was buried where we stopped at noon on the farm of Noal Fouts, <sup>73</sup>west of the village of Putnamville. Passed this day through Mt. Meridian. Putnamville, and Manhattan. Crossed Walnut and McCray creek and encamped

---

62. ESj, 46: "21+335=356"

63. ESj, 46: "<east>"

64. ESj, 46: "<The stage broke L N S.s wagon>"

65. ESj, 46: "<on the farm of brother Miller>"

66. ESj, 46: "17+356=373"

67. ESj, 46: omits "by the Council"

68. ESj, 47: "<in Liberty Township>"

69. ESj, 47: "23+373=396"

70. ESj, 47: "<this morning>"

71. ESj, 47: omits remainder of paragraph

72. ESj, 47: adds "aged [blank space]"

73. ESj, 47: adds "in [blank space]"



by the side of the way just west of Clay county<sup>74</sup>, having traveled twenty miles. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and sixteen miles.<sup>75</sup>

*Thursday, September 6.*—Traveled thirteen<sup>76</sup> miles through a fine country, good road, and pitched our tents between two and three miles east of Terre Haute, the county seat of Vigo county, situated on the west<sup>77</sup> side of the Wabash, on a swell of land in a beautiful prairie surrounded by a fruitful and fertile country. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and thirty-three miles.<sup>78</sup>

*Friday, September 7.*—Sometime in the night <sup>79</sup>a daughter of Otis Shumway died; and in the morning a child of J. A. Clark died. Both were buried in the graveyard in Terre Haute through which we passed, and crossed the Wabash about twelve o'clock at both ferries, and left the national road and turning to the right, took the North Arm Prairie road to Paris. Traveled nine miles, and encamped in LaFayette township, <sup>80</sup>three-fourths of a mile east of the Illinois line. The distance from Kirtland, the way we came, to Terre Haute is four hundred and thirty-six<sup>81</sup> miles. E. Cherry<sup>82</sup> did not come up, and was left behind; his family was sick.<sup>83</sup>

*Saturday, September 8.*—Crossed the Illinois line in the morning into Edgar county; crossed the North Arm Prairie, so-called; crossed Sugar creek and came through Paris, the county seat of Edgar county, and traveled fourteen [p. 47] miles on a prairie, and put up for the night at a late hour, pitching our tents on the prairie near the house of Mr. Keller<sup>84</sup>, who appeared friendly and obliging. Traveled today twenty-five miles. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and seventy miles.<sup>85</sup>

*Sunday, September 9.*—Started early, and came to Ambro creek, in a grove, two miles, and encamped during the day. The fourth division came up just as we started in the morning; for they were unable to travel as fast as the other divisions owing to the heat of the day on Saturday. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and Seventy-two miles.<sup>86</sup>

The Council met after we encamped, and after much consultation concluded to call the heads of families together and lay before them our situation with respect to means and the prospects before us and the apparent impossibility of our obtaining labor for ourselves and for the support of our families in the city of Far West during the coming winter; and to advise them, especially those that did not belong to the Seventies, to commence looking for places for themselves where they could procure a subsistence during the Winter and procure means sufficient to remove them to Missouri in the Spring. Accordingly in the afternoon the camp were called together and those things laid before them for their consideration, which seemed to meet with the approval of a large majority of the heads of families in the camp. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and seventy-two miles.<sup>87</sup>

*Monday, September 10.*—Considerable anxiety seemed to be manifested by some concerning the

---

74. ESj, 47: "west of the last named creek on the farm of mr [blank space] <Clay county>"

75. ESj, 47: "having travelled 20+396=416"

76. ESj, 47: replaces "thirteen" with "seventeen"

77. ESj, 47: replaces "west" with "east"

78. ESj, 47: replaces previous sentence with "17+416=433"

79. ESj, 47: adds blank space for name

80. ESj, 47: adds "near"

81. ESj, 47: "444 <436>"

82. Probably Elijah Cheney.

83. ESj, 47: "<was left behind his family s[i]ck>"

84. ESj, 48: replaces "Keller" with blank space. Name apparently supplied from SDTj, 55.

85. ESj, 48: "Travelled 25+445=470"

86. ESj, 48: replaces previous sentence with "2+470=472"

87. ESj, 48: replaces previous sentence with "2+470=472"



advice of the Council, and some complained, like ancient Israel, and said that they did not thank the Council for bringing them so far, and had rather been left in Kirtland, and some said one thing and some another. Among the number were Aaron Cheney, Nathan Cheney, William Draper and Thomas Draper and Henry Munroe, who were sent for, to come and [p. 48] settle with the clerks and look out for quarters immediately. Themira Draper, Alfred Draper and Cornelius Vanleuven left the camp with them. Reuben Daniels, whose wife was sick and had a son born in the night, together with Ethan A. Moore and Joel Harvey, also left the camp to stop for a few days and then pursue their journey by themselves. After the camp started Joseph Coon stopped because his wife was sick. We traveled five or six miles west of the little Ambarras, where we encamped. We passed through a small place called Independence, which is in an oak opening, in which we had encamped. It was about six miles through it, and then we crossed through a prairie fifteen miles, and encamped on the west side of the East<sup>88</sup> Ocha or Kaskaskias, some of the teams not coming up to the encampment till twelve o'clock. Traveled twenty-two miles. Distance from Kirtland, four hundred and ninety-four miles.<sup>89</sup>

*Tuesday, September 11.*—Crossed another prairie, fourteen miles, and encamped at four p.m. on the west side of the West Ocha, in Macon county<sup>90</sup>, having traveled sixteen miles. Distance from Kirtland, five hundred and ten miles.<sup>91</sup>

Many in the camp at this time were sick and afflicted. Some with fever and ague, and some with one thing and some with another. The most dangerous were Elder Josiah Willey and John Wright, son of Asa Wright, aged about fourteen years.

*Wednesday, September 12.*—Started at eight o'clock and crossed another prairie twelve miles, then through a piece of timber land on the headwaters of San Juan river, then over a three-mile prairie, and stopped to refresh our teams in the edge of the wood a little after noon, sixteen miles from our encampment of the night before<sup>92</sup>. In the afternoon<sup>93</sup> crossed over a prairie four miles, then through a piece of timbered land, then another prairie two miles, and encamped by the side of a small creek, having traveled this day twenty-two miles. Distance from Kirtland, five hundred and thirty-nine miles.<sup>94</sup>

*Thursday, September 13.*—In the morning it was ascertained [p. 49] that George Stringham and Benjamin Baker, with Joseph C. Clark had stopped behind, or could not come up because of the failure of their teams. Asa Wright did not come up at night<sup>95</sup>, but came up in the morning by himself<sup>96</sup> before we started, to settle his accounts<sup>97</sup>. His son being sick was the reason of his staying behind. Alba Whittle and Joel H. Johnson also settled their accounts<sup>98</sup>, as they expected to stop at Springfield or sooner if they could find a place.

Started at a late hour and traveled fourteen miles though a prairie country down the Sangamon river, which ran on the right of the road in a westerly course to the Illinois. We encamped about three

---

88. ESj, 49: "<East>"

89. ESj, 49: replaces previous sentence with "Travelled 22+472=494"

90. ESj, 49: "<in Macon county>"

91. ESj, 49: "having travelled 16 miles+494=510"

92. ESj, 49: omits "of the night before"

93. ESj, 49: replaces "In the afternoon" with "and then"

94. ESj, 49: "having travelled 29+510=539"

95. ESj, 50: "<at night>"

96. ESj, 50: "<[by] himself>"

97. ESj, 50: moves "and settled his accounts" from end of next sentence to this location

98. ESj, 50: omits "their accounts"

p.m. on a piece of land laid out for a village called Boliva or Bolivar. Here Ira Thornton's child died.<sup>99</sup> Distance from Kirtland, five hundred and fifty-three miles.<sup>100</sup>

*Friday, September 14.*—Before the first division left the ground Elder Stringham and Benjamin Baker came up, but we left them there **with the expectation of their overtaking us again**. We came this day to Springfield, eighteen miles, crossing several small creeks and passing through a small place called Rochester. From Springfield we came four miles, and encamped for the night. We could not procure anything for our teams to eat and were obliged to fasten them to our wagons and give them a little corn or turn them onto dry prairie almost destitute of vegetation. Springfield is destined to be the seat of government of Illinois and the state house is now in course of building. It is situated on a beautiful prairie and looks like a flourishing place though it is yet in its infancy. Elder J. H. Johnson and his mother and their families, together with Alba Whittle, Jonathan and Cyrus B. Fisher, Edwin P. Merriam and Samuel Hale—who was sick—and wife, also stopped at Springfield or near there, and Richard Brasher went to Huron, [p. 50] three miles west from Springfield to stop with his friends for a short season. Traveled twenty-two miles. Distance from Kirtland, five hundred and seventy-five miles.<sup>101</sup>

*Saturday, September 15.*—William Gribble left the camp in the morning to stop at Springfield during the winter, and Ira Thornton left and went on with Allen Wait.

We started before breakfast and traveled fourteen miles. Passed through a small village called Berlin and camped on Spring creek in Island Grove. Here T. P.<sup>102</sup> Pierce's child died, and was buried on Sunday, near Elder Keeler's house. Elder Keeler was late from New Portage, Ohio. Here we tarried till Monday morning. Distance from Kirtland, five hundred and eighty-nine miles.<sup>103</sup>

*Sunday, September 16.*—We held a meeting in the afternoon and attended to communion. We had but few spectators in the camp during the day. A spirit of union rarely manifested was felt at the meeting, and our souls rejoiced in the Holy One of Israel.

*Monday, September 17.*—This morning Elias Pulsipher, Daniel Pulsipher, Steven Starks, Hiram H. Byington and Monro Crosier settled their accounts and stopped behind. Traveled this day through Jacksonville, a fine village, the county seat of Morgan county, which we entered about fourteen miles east of Jacksonville. From thence we came to Geneva a small, dusty place, and encamped near David Orton's on a prairie, having traveled twenty-five miles. Most of the camp was late in arriving on the ground, and some did not come up till morning. Distance from Kirtland, six hundred and fourteen miles.<sup>104</sup>

*Tuesday, September 18.*—Warren Smith, Jonas Putnam, Stephen Shumway and D. C. Demming and Joseph Young stopped at Geneva, Morgan county, and in the course of the day, Asaph Blanchard, Stephen Headlock and B. K. Hall also stopped near Exeter<sup>105</sup>, and James C. Snow, whom we found near Geneva, joined us. We came through Exeter to Philip's ferry on the Illinois river, four miles below Naples, which is on the same river, [p. 51] on the straight road from Jacksonville to Quincy on the Mississippi, which we left and traveled<sup>106</sup> six miles east of the ferry. We arrived at the ferry about four p.m., and some of the teams went over and encamped on the west side of the river in Pike county.

99. ESj, 50: "<Here Ira Thornton lost his child which died at [illegible]>"

100. ESj, 50: replaces previous sentence with "14+539=553"

101. ESj, 51: "Travelled 22+553=575"

102. ESj, 51: "T. Z." However, only Isaac W. Pierce was listed at the beginning.

103. ESj, 51: "14+757=589"

104. ESj, 51: replaces previous sentence with "25+589=614"

105. ESj, 51: "<near Exeter>"

106. ESj, 52: replaces "traveled" with "turned to the Left"

In the night David Elliot, whom we had left in Putnam county, Indiana, came up on horseback, having arrived with his family within fifteen miles of us in the evening and left us again to hasten on his team that he might overtake us at Louisville<sup>107</sup>, Missouri. Distance from Kirtland, six hundred and twenty-nine miles.<sup>108</sup>

*Wednesday, September 19.*—We all got over the Illinois at half-past one p.m. and came to Griggsville, then to Pittsfield, the county seat of Pike county, twelve miles, and encamped on a small hill one mile west of the village. While we were crossing the river two brethren<sup>109</sup> arrived from Far West and brought us the first direct information from that place or from any of the brethren in the West since we started on our journey. The country between the Illinois river and Pittsfield is more rolling than it is on the east of that river, especially east of Springfield. Distance traveled from Kirtland, six hundred and forty-two miles.<sup>110</sup>

*Thursday, September 20.*—Started on our journey and came to Atlas, a small village, the former county seat of Pike county, twelve miles through a rolling prairie country, then to the Snye, a branch of the Mississippi, about six miles from the river where we crossed in the afternoon, all but three wagons, into the town of Louisiana, in the state of Missouri; and encamped about three-fourths of a mile west of the town. Traveled twenty miles. Distance from Kirtland, six hundred and sixty-two miles.<sup>111</sup>

*Friday, September 21.*—Traveled about seventeen<sup>112</sup> miles through a hot country and encamped in a wood near a prairie in a heavy rain which fell all the afternoon, [p. 52] and was the first that had fallen on us since we left Bath, Ohio, and was the most tedious time we had passed through. In the evening it thundered and rained powerfully, most of us went to bed without our supper, and tied our horses to our wagons. We thought it a perilous time, but few complained, nearly all<sup>113</sup> bore it patiently. **17+662=679.** Duncan McArthur broke down his wagon in the forenoon and did not come up at night.

*Saturday, September 22.*—Traveled this day eighteen miles, eight<sup>114</sup> miles of which was the worst road we had on the journey. The other ten miles prairie.<sup>115</sup> Thomas Carico broke down his wagon and stopped and mended it, and did not overtake the camp at night. Eleaser King and sons, who left Kirtland before the camp, came up and encamped with us at night. The air was cool and chilly and towards night uncomfortably cold. We encamped about one-half mile east of Lick creek, in Monroe county. Distance from Kirtland, six hundred and ninety-seven miles.<sup>116</sup>

*Sunday, September 23.*—A heavy frost in the morning, but after the sun arose it was pleasant and warm. We thought it our duty to travel and accordingly started on our way. The road very rough and bad part of the way, especially in the timbered land. Duncan McArthur and Thomas Carico, who had been left behind in consequence of breaking down their wagons, overtook us in the morning before we all started, some<sup>117</sup> having to stay behind to find their horses, which went back across the prairie about nine miles in the night. E. B. Gaylord broke down his wagon and got badly hurt,

---

107. ESj, 52: "Louisiana"

108. ESj, 52: replaces previous sentence with "15+614=629"

109. ESj, 52: adds a blank space for names

110. ESj, 52: replaces previous sentence with "629+13=642"

111. ESj, 52: replaces previous two sentences with "20+642=662"

112. ESj, 52: replaces "seventeen" with blank space. Number supplied from calculation near end of paragraph.

113. ESj, 53: omits "nearly" and reads "<all>"

114. ESj, 53: "[~~illegible~~] <eight>"

115. ESj, 53: "<the other [10 miles?] prairie>"

116. ESj, 53: replaces previous sentence with "16+679=697"

117. ESj, 53: "<some>"

and did not overtake us till Monday night. We traveled to Paris, the county seat of Monroe county, twenty miles, and encamped one mile west of the town late in the evening near a prairie. Crossed south fork of Salt river, five miles east of Paris, and several other [p. 53] tributary streams of the same river, most of which were dry by reason of the extreme drought which had prevailed in this land during the summer. Traveled today twenty-one miles. Distance from Kirtland, seven hundred and eighteen miles.<sup>118</sup>

*Monday, September 24.*—Reorganized the camp which had become rather disorganized by reason of so many stopping by the way<sup>119</sup>. The third division was put into the first and second, as that division had become quite small. The Council called the camp together and laid before them the scanty<sup>120</sup> means in their hands, and wanted the brethren to furnish such things as they had to dispose of to purchase corn, etc., for our cattle and horses, that we might continue our journey. Traveled twenty miles before sunset, most of the way prairie, and encamped on the Elk fork of Salt river. We found the inhabitants in commotion and volunteering, under the order of Governor Boggs, as we were repeatedly told, to go up and fight the “Mormons” in Far West and that region of country. We were very correctly informed that one hundred and ten men had left Huntsville in the morning on that expedition; and that the governor had called on five thousand from the upper counties, and if we went any farther we should meet with difficulty and even death as they would as leave kill us as not.

We had been saluted with such reports every day after we came through Jacksonville, Illinois; but we paid little attention to it, trusting in that God for protection which had called upon us to gather ourselves together to the land of Zion, and who had thus far delivered us out of the hands of all our enemies, on every hand, not only in Kirtland, but on all our journey. Traveled this day twenty miles. Distance from Kirtland, seven hundred and thirty-eight miles.<sup>121</sup> [p. 54]

*Tuesday, September 25.*—Thomas Nickerson lost his horses and could not find them before the camp started, and did not overtake us at night.

We came through Huntsville, the county seat of Randolph county, eleven miles, where we were told before we arrived there, that we should be stopped, but nothing of the kind occurred<sup>122</sup> when we came through the town, and we even<sup>123</sup> heard no threats whatever, but all appeared friendly. A mile and a half west of Huntsville we crossed the east branch of Chariton, and one and a half miles west of the river we found Ira Ames and some other brethren near the place where the city of Manti is to be built, and encamped for the night on Dark creek, six miles from Huntsville. Traveled this day seventeen miles. Distance from Kirtland, seven hundred and fifty-five miles.<sup>124</sup>

*Wednesday, September 26.*—In the morning Elder James Foster at a late hour proposed to disband and break up the camp in consequence of some rumors he had heard from the west which he said he believed. Elder Pulsipher being away<sup>125</sup> only five of the Councilors could be present. The other four objected to this proposal, but so far yielded as to consent to have the camp stop till an embassy could be sent to Far West to see the state of things in that region and ascertain whether it would be wisdom or not for us to go into that or any of the western states this winter.

---

118. ESj, 54: replaces previous sentence with “21+697=718”

119. ESj, 54: omits “by the way”

120. ESj, 54: “<scanty>”

121. ESj, 54: replaces previous two sentences with “20+718=738”

122. ESj, 55: omits “occurred” and reads “saw nothing”

123. ESj, 55: omits “we even”

124. ESj, 55: replaces previous two sentences with “17+738=755”

125. ESj, 55: replaces “being away” with “not being present”

The camp was called together and the subject was partially laid before them by Elder Foster, which produced a sadness of countenance seldom seen in the course of our journey. While we were talking over the subject Elder Pulsipher came up, just as a gentleman by the name of Samuel Bend, of Pike county, Missouri, came along, and without knowing our intentions or destination, told us of the state of affairs [p. 55] in Far West, and Adam-ondi-Ahman, and everything we desired to know concerning some particular things. On being told that our intentions were to stop for a while, he advised us to go right along. He told us about the Daviess county mob and that the volunteers called for by the governor, which had rendezvoused at Keatsville, would be discharged at twelve o'clock, noon.

On reconsidering the subject a motion was made to go on which was carried unanimously. Accordingly we moved on and came to Chariton river in Chariton county, sixteen miles and encamped about four p.m. on the west side of the river<sup>126</sup>. In the afternoon before we started from the place where we stopped to feed on the seven mile prairie, near Brother Kellog's, the militia<sup>127</sup> volunteers began to go by on their return home, and we continued to meet them most of the afternoon. Most of them passed us civilly, but some of them were rather saucy, few replies, however, were made to them. We met some brethren from Far West during<sup>128</sup> the day which confirmed what we had been told in the morning by Mr. Bend. Brother Nickerson overtook us having found his horses, and eight or ten wagons<sup>129</sup> of brethren from Huron county, Ohio, and other places, also Ira O. Thompson,<sup>130</sup> who had formerly been with us as a member<sup>131</sup> of the camp, stayed with us at night<sup>132</sup>. Traveled sixteen miles this day. Distance from Kirtland, seven hundred and seventy-one miles.<sup>133</sup>

*Thursday, September 27.*—Started in the morning in some confusion, owing to some misunderstanding, and came to Keatsville on a branch of the Chariton, two miles, and about half a mile west of the town, which is the county seat of Chariton county. We left the state<sup>134</sup> road and took the road to Chillicothe and went up on the east side of Grand river, crossed a prairie about eighteen miles, beautifully [p. 56] diversified with valleys and rolling swells which give it a truly picturesque appearance. It has been surveyed and allotted for military purposes, and for that reason is still unoccupied. We encamped at night at the confluence of<sup>135</sup> the forks of Yellow creek, having traveled twenty-two miles.

Elder James Foster left us at Keatsville to go by the way of De Witt, to see his son-in-law, Jonathan Thompson. In the evening the Council met to settle some difficulties and set in order some things that seemed to require attention to enable us<sup>136</sup> to move in order and in peace the remainder of the journey<sup>137</sup>. Traveled twenty-two miles today. Distance from Kirtland, seven hundred and ninety-three miles.<sup>138</sup>

---

126. ESj, 56: "<on the west side of the river>"

127. ESj, 56: omits "militia"

128. ESj, 56: replaces "during" with "in the course of"

129. ESj, 56: "<<eight> ten or ~~twelve~~ wagons load>"

130. ESj, 56: apparently reads "I & O. Thompson"

131. ESj, 56: "as members"

132. ESj, 56: "encamped <with us at night>"

133. ESj, 56: replaces previous two sentences with "755+16=771"

134. ESj, 56: "<State>"

135. ESj, 57: "~~two [illegible words]~~ [illegible words]"

136. ESj, 57: replaces "to enable us" with "in order"

137. ESj, 57: "<the journey>"

138. ESj, 57: replaces previous two sentences with "22+771=793"

*Friday, September 28.*—Crossed Turkey creek, seven miles; Locus, four; and pitched our tents on the east side of Parson's creek, in Linn county<sup>139</sup>, six miles from Locus creek<sup>140</sup>, making seventeen miles. Distance from Kirtland, eight hundred and ten miles.<sup>141</sup>

*Saturday, September 29.*—Came to Mr. Gregory's on Madison creek, six miles; thence to Chillicothe, a town lately laid out for the county seat of Livingston county, eight miles; and encamped about a mile west toward Grand river.

Thomas Carico's and J. H. Holmes' wagons were turned over in the course of the day, but no particular injury was done to any person. The road was new, and in some places rough, especially in the timbered land on the creeks. Traveled fifteen miles today. Distance from Kirtland, eight hundred and twenty-five miles.<sup>142</sup>

*Sunday, September 30.*—Came to Grand river, two and one-half miles, crossed over and came to a small collection of houses, called Utica; two and one-half miles, here we found Brother Sliter from Kirtland, and some other brethren. From Utica we came through a rough and rolling country for ten miles to Brother Walker's, on Shoal creek, crossed the creek and camped on the west side near the prairie. [p. 57] Richard Blanchard, who joined the camp at Bath, left the camp and went to join his friends who lived near Chillicothe. Traveled fifteen miles today. Distance from Kirtland, eight hundred and forty miles.<sup>143</sup>

*Monday, October 1.*—Came from Elder Walker's across the prairie, about nineteen miles, and encamped on Brushy creek. Joshua S. Holman, by permission of one or two of the Council, went on Sunday evening to visit Elder Jacob Myers, formerly from Richland county, Ohio, and early in the morning started on his way without waiting for the camp, disregarding the advice of the Council, and in the evening, at a meeting of the camp, his proceedings were condemned<sup>144</sup> by a unanimous vote. Traveled twenty miles and encamped on Brushy fork of Shoal creek, on the prairie. The entire distance from Kirtland, eight hundred and sixty miles.<sup>145</sup>

*Tuesday, October 2.*—Crossed Long, Log, and Goose creeks, and arrived in Far West about five p.m. Here we were received with joyful salutations by the brethren in that city. Five miles from the city we were met by the First Presidency of the Church of Latter-day Saints, Joseph Smith, Jun., Sidney Rigdon and Hyrum Smith, together with Isaac Morley, Patriarch of Far West, and George W. Robinson, and by several other brethren between there and the city, who received us with open arms, and escorted us into the city. We encamped on the public square round the foundation of the Temple. Traveled this day ten miles. Whole distance from Kirtland, eight hundred and seventy miles.<sup>146</sup> [p. 58]

[...]<sup>147</sup>

---

139. ESj, 57: "<in Linn co>"

140. ESj, 57: "<from Locus creek>"

141. ESj, 57: "making 17+793=810"

142. ESj, 57: replaces two previous sentences with "15+810=825"

143. ESj, 58: replaces previous two sentences with "825+15=840"

144. ESj, 58: replaces "condemned" with "disfellow=shipped"

145. ESj, 58: replaces previous two sentences with "840+20=860"

146. ESj, 58: replaces previous two sentences with "Dist[ance] 10+860=870"

147. At this point in DHC 3:147, BHR inserts the following note: "[Here the camp journal's narrative ends. The two following entries which complete the history of this remarkable journey are taken from the Prophet's account of the proceedings relative to the camp on its arrival.]" BHR concludes this chapter with two entries from 3-4 Oct. 1838 (based on SDTj, 74-75; transcription in vol. 8, III.4), which can be found at the beginning of the next chapter.





11.

# EXPULSION OF SAINTS FROM DEWITT

October 1838

[DN 3 (10 July 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Wednesday [October] 3rd. The Camp continued their journey to Ambrosial Creek, where they pitched their tents; I went with them, a mile or two, to a beautiful spring on the prairie accompanied by Elder Rigdon, brother Hyrum, and Brigham Young, with whom I returned from thence<sup>2</sup> to the city, where I spent the remainder of the day.

<sup>3</sup>Sister Alice Hodgins died at Preston on the 2nd of September, 1838. And it was such a wonderful thing for a Latter Day Saint to die in England, that Elder Willard<sup>4</sup> Richards was arraigned before the Mayor's Court at Preston, on the third of October, charged with "killing and slaying," the said Alice with a "black stick," &c., but was discharged without being permitted to make his defense, as soon as it was discovered that the iniquity of his accusers was about to be made manifest.

<sup>5</sup>The mob continued to fire upon the brethren at De Witt.

The following is an extract from General Parks' express to General Atchison:

**<sup>6</sup>Head Quarters, 2d Brig. 3d Div. }  
Richmond, Oct. 3, 1838.**

**Maj. Gen. David R. Atchison.**

Dear Sir:—I received this morning an affidavit from Carroll County. The following is a copy:

"Henry Root, on his oath states, that on the night of the first of October, there was collected in the vicinity of De Witt, an armed force, consisting of from thirty to fifty

1. This paragraph appears at the end of chap. 10 in DHC 3:147. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 74-75 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

2. DHC 3:147: omits "from thence"

3. *Source*: MiEng 1:295.

4. Book B-1, 831 (pencil): "<Willard>" (prob. WR)

5. *Source*: Probably based on Henry Root's statement that on 2 Oct. a mob "came into the town of De Witt and fired on the civil inhabitants of that place" (see below).

6. *Source*: The affidavit of Henry Root, 3 Oct. 1838, was included in H. G. Parks to D. R. Atchison, 3 Oct. 1838, which in turn was included in D. R. Atchison to L. W. Boggs, 5 Oct. 1838, in DCCO, 35. WR copied only Parks to Atchison. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

persons, and on the morning of the second of October, <sup>7</sup>came into the town of De Witt and fired on the civil<sup>8</sup> inhabitants of that place. Thirteen of said individuals were seen by me in that place, and I believe there is actually an insurrection in that place.

(Signed) HENRY ROOT.

Subscribed and sworn to this 3rd day of October 1838.

WILLIAM B. MORTON, J.P.”

In consequence of which information and belief of an attack being made on said place, I have ordered out the two companies raised by your order, to be held in readiness under the commands of Captains Bogart and Houston, to march for De Witt, in Carroll County, by eight o'clock tomorrow morning, armed and equipped as the law directs with six days' provisions and fifty rounds of powder and ball. I will proceed with these troops in person, leaving Colonel Thompson in command on Grand River. As soon as I reach De Witt I will advise you of the state of affairs more fully. I will use all due precaution in the affair, and deeply regret the necessity of this recourse.

H. G. PARKS,  
Brig[adier].-Gen[eral]. 2nd Brig[ade]. 3rd Div[ision].

**P.S. I will thank you to write me by Mr. Wade, and give me any advice you may deem necessary in this affair.**

**Yours, &c.  
H.G.P.**

<sup>9</sup>Thursday [October] 4th, this is a day long to be remembered by that part of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints called the Camp, or<sup>10</sup> Kirtland Camp No. 1, for they arrived at their destination and began to pitch their tents about sunset, when one of the brethren living in the place proclaimed with a loud voice:

Brethren, your long and tedious journey is now ended, you are now on<sup>11</sup> the public square of Adam-ondi-Ahman. This is the place where Adam blessed his posterity, when they rose up and called him Michael, the Prince, the Arch-angel, and he being full of the Holy Ghost predicted what should befall his posterity to the latest generation.—See<sup>12</sup> Doctrine and Covenants [107:53-56].

<sup>13</sup>[Thursday, October 4.] I spent most of this day with my family.

<sup>14</sup>The mob again fired upon the Saints at De Witt, who were compelled to return the fire in self-defense.

To show how firebrands, arrows, and death were scattered through the State, and that too by

---

7. DHC 3:149: adds “they”

8. Book B-2, 755: “<civil>” (US)

9. Following two paragraphs appear at the end of chap. 10 in DHC 3:147-48. *Source*: Based on SDTj, 74-75 (transcription in vol. 8, III.4).

10. Book B-1, 831 (pencil retraced in ink): “called the <the camp, or>” (pos. WR)

11. Book B-1, 831, Book B-2, 755: “in”

12. DHC 3:148: omits “See”

13. *Source*: Based on JSj [1838-39], 5 (JM) (PJS 2:307; JSP 1:330; APR, 229).

14. *Source*: Undetermined.

men high in authority and<sup>15</sup> who were sworn to preserve the public peace, I quote the following from  
<sup>16</sup>General Lucas to the Governor dated

<sup>17</sup>Boonville, Mo., October 4th, 1838.

Dear Sir:—As we passed down the Missouri River, on Monday last, we saw a large force of Mormons at De Witt, in Carroll County, under arms. Their Commander[,] Colonel Hinkle, formerly of Caldwell County, informed me that there were two hundred, and that they were hourly expecting an attack from the citizens of Carroll County, who, he said were then encamped only six miles from there, waiting for a reinforcement from Saline County. Hinkle said they had determined to fight. News had just been received at this place, through Dr. Scott of Fayette, that a fight took place on yesterday, and that several persons were killed. Dr. Scott informed me that he got his information from a gentleman of respectability, who had heard the firing of their guns as he passed down. If a fight has actually taken place, of which I have no doubt, it will create excitement in the whole of<sup>18</sup> upper Missouri, and those base, and degraded beings will be exterminated from the face of the earth. If one of the citizens of Carroll should be killed, before five days I believe that there will be from four to five thousand volunteers in the field against the Mormons, and nothing but their blood will satisfy them. It is an unpleasant state of affairs. The remedy I do not pretend<sup>19</sup> to suggest to your Excellency. My troops of the fourth Division were only dismissed subject to further orders, and can be called into the field at an hour's warning.

**In haste, I have the honor to be,**

**Your most ob't serv't,**

SAMUEL D. LUCAS.

<sup>20</sup>“*Base and degraded beings.*” Whoever heard before of high-minded and honorable men condescending to sacrifice their honor, by stooping to wage war without <sup>21</sup>cause or provocation, against “base and degraded beings.” But General Lucas is ready<sup>22</sup> with his whole Division, at “an hour's warning” to enter the field of battle on such degrading terms if his own statement is true. But <sup>23</sup>Lucas knew better. He knew the Saints were an innocent unoffending people, and would not fight, only, in self-defense, and why write such a letter to the Governor to influence his mind? Why not keep to truth and justice on your side<sup>24</sup>, poor Lucas? The annals of eternity will unfold to you who are the “base beings” and what it will take to “satisfy” for the shedding of “Mormon blood.”

<sup>25</sup>Friday [October] 5th. Report of the Committee of Chariton County.

The undersigned Committee were appointed at a Public Meeting by the citizens of Chariton County, on the third day of October, inst[ant].<sup>26</sup>, for the purpose of repairing to De Witt in Carroll County, to inquire into the nature of the difficulties between the citizens

---

15. Book B-2, 756: “<and>” (prob. TB)

16. DHC 3:150: adds “a communication of”

17. *Source*: DCCO, 34–35. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

18. DCCO, 35, Book B-1, 832, Book B-2, 756: omit “of”

19. Book B-2, 756 (darker ink): “{\pretend/}” (prob. TB)

20. *Source*: Probably composed by WR in RDft 1:22 about 13–21 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

21. Book B-1, 832, Book B-2, 756: add “a”

22. Book B-2, 756 (darker ink): “{\ready/}” (Prob. TB)

23. DHC 3:151: adds “General”

24. DHC 3:151: omits “on your side”

25. *Source*: DCCO, 36.

26. DHC 3:151: omits “inst[ant]”

of Carroll and the Mormons. We arrived at the place of difficulties on the 4th of October inst[ant].<sup>27</sup>, and found a large portion of the citizens of Carroll and the adjoining Counties, assembled near De Witt well armed. We inquired into the nature of the<sup>28</sup> difficulties. They said that there was a large portion of the people called Mormons, embodied in De Witt from different parts of the world. They are<sup>29</sup> unwilling for them to remain there, which is the cause of their waging war against them. To use the gentlemen's language, "they are<sup>30</sup> waging a war of extermination, or to remove them from the said County." We also went into De Witt, to see the situation of the Mormons. We found them in the act of defense, begging for peace, and wishing for the civil authorities to repair there as early as possible, to settle the difficulties between the parties. Hostilities have commenced, and will continue until they are stopped by the civil authorities. This we believe to be a correct statement of both parties. This the 5th day of October 1838.

JOHN W. PRICE,  
WM. H.<sup>31</sup> LOGAN.

Subscribed to and sworn<sup>32</sup> before me, the undersigned, one of the Justices of the Peace, within and for <sup>33</sup>Chariton County, and State of Missouri, this 5th day of October, 1838.

JOHN MORSE, J.P.

<sup>34</sup>This day also [October 5]<sup>35</sup> General Atchison wrote the Governor from Boonville, that in Carroll County, the citizens are<sup>36</sup> in arms for the purpose of driving the Mormons from that County.

<sup>37</sup>The third Quarterly Conference of the Church <sup>38</sup>was held at Far West. President Brigham Young Presiding. As there was not a sufficient number of members present to form a Quorum for business, after singing and prayer, Conference adjourned till 2 p.m., when they met and opened as usual, Presidents Young and Marsh<sup>39</sup> Presiding. There was not a sufficient number of the members of the High Council or any other Quorum to do business as a Quarterly Conference. They voted to ordain a few Elders, appointed a few Missions, and adjourned till tomorrow at ten o'clock a.m.

<sup>40</sup>About this time<sup>41</sup> I took a journey in company with some others to the lower part of the County of Caldwell, for the purpose of selecting a location for a town. While on my journey, I was met by one of the brethren from De Witt, in Carroll County, who stated that our people, who had settled in that place, were, and had been some time, surrounded by a mob, who had threatened their lives, and had shot at them several times; and that he was on his way to Far West, to inform the brethren there of the facts.

I was surprised on receiving this intelligence, although there had previous to this time, been

27. DHC 3:151: omits "inst[ant]"

28. Book B-2, 756 (darker ink): "<the>" (US)

29. DHC 3:151: "were"

30. DHC 3:151: "were"

31. DCCO, 36: "K."

32. DCCO, 36: "Sworn to and subscribed"

33. Book B-2, 757: adds ellipses over erasure

34. *Source*: Based on DCCO, 35.

35. DHC 3:152: adds "[October 5]"

36. DHC 3:152: "were"

37. *Source*: Based on FWR, 160-61 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 208-9).

38. DHC 3:152: adds "in Caldwell County"

39. DHC 3:152: "Marsh and Young"

40. *Source*: Following three paragraphs for this day's entry from "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," T&S 1 (Nov. 1839): 3. Cf. JS's Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839 (DHC 3:369; chap. 24).

41. T&S 1:3: "In the latter part of September, A.D. 1838"

some manifestations of mobs, but I had hoped that the good sense of the majority of the people, and their respect for the Constitution, would have put down any spirit of persecution which might have been manifested in that neighborhood.

Immediately on receiving this intelligence I made preparations to go to that place, and endeavor, if possible, to allay the feelings of the citizens, and save the lives of my brethren who were thus exposed to their wrath.

<sup>42</sup>Saturday [October] 6th, <sup>43</sup> I arrived at De Witt and found that the accounts of the situation of that place were correct, for it was with much difficulty, and by traveling unfrequented roads, that I was able to get there, all the principal roads being strongly guarded by the mob who refused all ingress as well as egress. I found my brethren (who were only a handful in comparison to the mob by which they were surrounded,) in this situation and their provisions nearly exhausted, and no prospect of obtaining any more. We thought it necessary to send immediately to the Governor, to inform him of the circumstances; hoping from the Executive to raise<sup>44</sup> the protection which we needed; and which was guaranteed to us in common with other citizens. Several gentlemen of standing and respectability, who lived in the immediate vicinity, (who were not in any way<sup>45</sup> connected with the Church of Latter Day Saints) who had witnessed the proceedings of our enemies, came forward and made affidavits to the treatment we had received, and concerning our perilous situation; and offered their services to go and present the case to the Governor themselves.

<sup>46</sup>The Quarterly Conference convened at ten o'clock this day according to adjournment at Far West<sup>47</sup>. **Opened by singing, "To him that made the sun and moon and stars" &c. and prayer by President B[ingham]. Young.** Presidents Marsh and Young Presiding. Elder Benjamin L. Clapp said he had just returned from Kentucky where he had been<sup>48</sup> laboring and that many doors were open there, **and calls for preaching continually. He wished some Elders to go to that country.** A call was made for volunteers to go into the vineyard and preach, when Elders James Carroll, James Galliher<sup>49</sup>, Luman A. Shurtliff, James Dana<sup>50</sup>, Ahaz Cook, Isaac Decker, Cornelius P. Lott and Alpheus Gifford offered themselves.

**Also a call for members, who wished to be ordained and go into the vineyard to make it manifest, when Br. Albert Sloan made a request to be ordained to the office of an Elder; after some remarks it was moved, seconded, and carried that he be ordained as aforesaid.**

President Marsh instructed them not to go forth boasting of their faith, or of the judgments of the Lord, but go in the spirit of meekness, and preach repentance.

Elder John Taylor, from Canada, by request, gave a statement of his feelings respecting his having been appointed as one of the Twelve, <sup>51</sup>saying that he was willing to do anything that<sup>52</sup> God would

42. *Source*: This paragraph from "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 3.

43. *T&S* 1:3: "about the first of October"

44. *T&S* 1:3, Book B-1, 833: "receive"; DHC 3:153: omits "to raise"

45. *T&S* 1:3, Book B-1, 833, Book B-2, 757: replace "way" with "wise"

46. *Source*: Following minutes from FWR, 161-63 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 209-11). Light editing. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

47. DHC 3:153: "The Quarterly Conference convened at Far West this day [October 6th] at ten o'clock according to adjournment"

48. Book B-2, 758: omits "been"

49. Book B-1, 833, Book B-2, 758: "Gallihu"

50. FWR, 161: "James Dunn"

51. Book B-1, 833 (pencil): "<note to be supplied by Elder Taylor>"; omitted in Book B-2, 758.

52. Book B-1, 833: replaces "that" with "which"

require of him, **by the assistance of the Lord**; when<sup>53</sup> it was voted that brother John Taylor fill one of the vacancies<sup>54</sup> of<sup>55</sup> the Twelve. Stephen Chase was ordained president of the Elders' Quorum in Far West. Isaac Laney, Horace Alexander, and Albert Sloan were ordained Elders under the hands of the Presidents. Samuel Bent and Isaac Higbee were appointed to fill the places<sup>56</sup> of John Murdock and George M. Hinkle in the High Council, they<sup>57</sup> having removed to De Witt.

**Elder Kimball made a few appropriate remarks to the Elders respecting their duty.**

**Bishop E[dward]. Partridge made a report of the temporal affairs of the Church.**

Conference adjourned to the first Friday and Saturday in January next, at ten a.m.

EBENEZER ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>58</sup>**Sunday 7 Sidney Rigdon preached at Far West, commonly called the Salt Sermon.**

<sup>59</sup>[October 7.]<sup>60</sup> There were seven cut off from the Church in Preston, England, this day.

General Parks wrote General Atchison from Brigade Headquarters, five miles from De Witt, Carroll County:—

<sup>61</sup>**Brigade Head Quarters, 5 Miles from De Witt, }  
Carroll county, October 7, 1838.**

**Gen. David R. Atchison.**

Sir, immediately after my express to you by Mr. Warder, was sent; I proceeded to this place, which I reached yesterday with two Companies of mounted men from Ray<sup>62</sup>. I ordered Col[onel]. Jones to call out three Companies from this County to hold themselves in readiness to join me at Carrolton on the 5th inst[ant]., which order has not been carried into effect. None of Carroll<sup>63</sup> Regiment is with me.

On arriving in the vicinity of De Witt, I found a body of armed men, under the command of Dr. Austin, encamped near De Witt, besieging that place, to the number of two or three hundred, with a piece of Artillery ready to attack the town of De Witt. On the other side, Hinkle has in that place three or four hundred Mormons to defend it, and says he will die before he is<sup>64</sup> driven from thence.

On the 4th inst[ant]., they had a skirmish—fifteen or thirty guns fired on both sides, one man from Saline<sup>65</sup> wounded in the hip.

The Mormons are at this time too strong, and no attack is expected before Wednesday or

53. DHC 3:154: replaces “when” with “whereupon”

54. DHC 3:155: adds “in the quorum”

55. Book B-1, 833, Book B-2, 758: “fill the vacancy of one of”

56. Book B-1, 833: “place”

57. DHC 3:155: replaces “they” with “the two last named”

58. This paragraph did not appear in *DN* or *DHC*. Book B-1, 834, cancels this paragraph, and it was not copied into Book B-2, 758, by WB about 17–20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). B-1 also has partly-erased penciled marginal note “[illegible] date to be [illegible]” (US). Corrected by the apostolic committee on 4 July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.4). The “Salt Sermon” was delivered on 17 June 1838.

59. *Source*: WRj 1:84 reports for this day “9 cut off” (transcription in vol. 8, III.3).

60. Brackets this editor’s. Cancellation and deletion of the above paragraph made it appear that the subsequent material occurred on 6 Oct.

61. *Source*: DCCO, 37–38. Deleted material added in bold type.

62. DHC 3:155: adds “county”

63. DHC 3:155: adds “county”

64. DHC 3:156: replaces “is” with “will be”

65. DHC 3:156: adds “county”

Thursday next, at which time Dr. Austin hopes his forces will amount to five hundred men when he will make a second attempt on the town of De Witt, with small arms and cannon. In this posture of affairs, I can do nothing but negotiate between the parties until further aid is sent me.

I received your friendly letter of the 5th inst[ant]., by Mr. Warder, authorizing me to call on General Doniphan, which call I have made on him for five companies from Platte, Clay, and Clinton<sup>66</sup>, with two companies I ordered from Livingston, of which I doubt whether these last will come, if they do, I think I will have a force sufficient to manage these belligerents. Should these troops arrive here in time, I hope to be able to prevent bloodshed. Nothing seems so much in demand here (to hear the Carroll County men talk) as Mormon scalps; as yet they are scarce. I believe Hinkle, with the<sup>67</sup> present force and position, will beat Austin with five hundred of his troops. The Mormons say they will die, before they will be driven out, &c., as yet they have acted on the defensive as far as I can learn. It is my settled opinion, the Mormons will have no rest until they leave; whether they will or not, time only can tell.

**I assure you I never felt more rejoiced, than when I received your letter to call on Gen. Doniphan's Brigade. For this mark of your confidence and friendly approval of my actions, I do feel under renewed obligations to you, and hope to show the necessity of making the call on Gen. D[oniphan]'s Brigade. I have also sent an express to Gen. Doniphan, to come in person if he can; I want his aid and advice. I will keep you advised from time to time of the state of affairs here. It would relieve me much if you would request the Governor to make his appearance here among the Carroll boys; he need not order out any forces, those already ordered by me I deem sufficient. You know a word from his Excellency would have more power to quell this affair than a regiment. Should he come, which I hope he will, for this is no little affair, he will be able to take such steps as may be deemed by him right and necessary to settle this matter.**

**I have the honor to remain,**

**Your obedient servant,**

H. G. PARKS.

**Brig. Gen. Com.**

<sup>68</sup>Under the same date [October 7th]<sup>69</sup>, from the mob<sup>70</sup> camp near De Witt, eleven blood-thirsty fellows, viz., Congrave Jackson, Larkin H.<sup>71</sup> Woods, Thomas Jackson, Rolla M. Daviess, James Jackson, Junr., Johnson Jackson, John L. Tomlin, Sidney S. Woods, Geo. Crigler, W[illia]m. L. Banks, and Whitfield Dicken, wrote a most inflammatory, lying and murderous communication to the citizens of Howard County, calling upon them as friends, and fellow citizens to come to their immediate rescue as the Mormons were then firing upon them, and they would have to act on the defensive until they could procure more assistance.

<sup>72</sup>A[bram].<sup>73</sup> C. Woods, a citizen of Howard County, made a certificate to the same lies, which he gathered in the mob camp; he did not go into De Witt, or take any trouble to learn the truth of what he certified. While the people will lie, and the authorities will uphold them, what justice can honest men expect?

---

66. DHC 3:156: adds "counties"

67. Book B-1, 834, Book B-2, 759: replace "the" with "his"

68. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 40, which is dated 7 Oct. 1838.

69. Bracket's this editor's. DHC 3:156: incorrectly adds "[October 6th]"

70. Book B-1, 834, Book B-2, 759: omit "mob"

71. *DCCO*, 40, RDft 1:24: "K."

72. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 40-41, which is dated 7 Oct. 1838.

73. Brackets this editor's.



<sup>74</sup>Tuesday [October] 9th. General Clark, wrote the Governor from Boonville that the <sup>75</sup>["names subscribed to the enclosed<sup>76</sup> paper (as before stated; 7th inst[ant].)<sup>77</sup> are worthy, prudent and patriotic citizens of Howard County.["] <sup>78</sup>Men who would leave their families and everything dear, and go to a foreign County to seek the blood of innocent men, women, and children. If this constitute[s]<sup>79</sup> "worth, prudence and patriotism," let me be worthless, imprudent, and unpatriotic.

[DN 3 (30 July 1853): 1]

<sup>80</sup>The messenger, Mr. Caldwell, who had been dispatched to the Governor for assistance, returned, but instead of receiving any aid or even sympathy from his Excellency, we were told that "the quarrel was between the Mormons and the mob," and that "we might fight it out."

<sup>81</sup>About this time a mob commanded by Hyrum Standly<sup>82</sup> took Smith Humphrey's goods out of his house, and said Standly set fire to Humphrey's house and burned it before his eyes, and ordered him to leave the place<sup>83</sup> forthwith, which he did by fleeing from De Witt to Caldwell County. The mob had sent to Jackson County and got a cannon, powder and balls, and bodies of armed men had gathered in, to aid them from Ray, Saline, Howard, Livingston, Clinton, Clay, Platte<sup>84</sup> <sup>85</sup>and other parts of the State and a man by the name of Jackson from Howard County was appointed their leader.

<sup>86</sup>The saints were forbid<sup>87</sup> to go out of the town<sup>88</sup> under pain of death; and were shot at when they attempted to go out to get food, of which they were destitute. As fast as their cattle, <sup>89</sup>horses or other property<sup>90</sup> got where the mob could get hold of it<sup>91</sup>, it was<sup>92</sup> taken as spoil<sup>93</sup>. By these outrages the brethren were obliged, most of them to live in wagons or<sup>94</sup> tents.

<sup>95</sup>Application had been made to the Judge of the Circuit Court for protection, who<sup>96</sup> ordered

---

74. Source: Based on *DCCO*, 39.

75. Book B-1, 834: adds quotation marks

76. DHC 3:157: omits "enclosed"

77. DHC 3:157: replaces words in parentheses with "named above"

78. DHC 3:157: continues previous sentence by adding "yet these"

79. DHC 3:157: "constitutes"

80. Source: This paragraph based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 3, and *AAP*, 29-30, for name of messenger. Cf. JS's Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839 (DHC 3:369; chap. 24).

81. Source: First sentence based on Smith Humphrey, Petition, 16 Mar. 1840, in MC (*MRP*, 241; cf. DHC 4:62 [chap. 5]; see also another copy in JSHD, Bx 1, fd 9). Remainder of paragraph based on *AAP*, 29.

82. Book B-2, 759: "Standley"

83. Book B-1, 835: "<the place>" (TB)

84. Book B-1, 835: "Platt"; Book B-2, 759 (darker ink): "Platt\ e/"

85. DHC 3:157: adds "counties"

86. Source: This paragraph based on *AAP*, 29.

87. DHC 3:157: "forbidden"

88. Book B-1, 835: "City <Town>" (prob. WB)

89. DHC 3:157: adds "or"

90. DHC 3:157: omits "or other property"

91. DHC 3:158: replaces "it" with "them"

92. DHC 3:158: replaces "it was" with "they were"

93. DHC 3:158: adds "as also other kinds of property"

94. Book B-2, 759: "{\ or/}"

95. Source: Except for last sentence, this paragraph based on *AAP*, 29. Cf. *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 3. Last sentence from *FREM*, 20.

96. DHC 3:158: replaces "who" with "and he"

out two companies of Militia, one commanded by Captain [Samuel] Bogart, a Methodist Priest<sup>97</sup>, and mobocrat of the deepest die<sup>98</sup>; the whole <sup>99</sup>under the command of General Parks, another mobber, if his letters speak<sup>100</sup> his feelings, and his actions did not belie him, for he never made the first attempt to disperse the mob, and when asked the reason of his conduct, he always replied that Bogart and his company were mutinous and mobocratic, that he dare not attempt a dispersion of the mob. Two other principal men of the mob were Major [Daniel]<sup>101</sup> Ashly, *Member of the Legislature*, and Cercil<sup>102</sup> (Sashiel) Woods, a *Presbyterian Clergyman*.

<sup>103</sup>General Parks informed us that a greater part of his men under Captain Bogart had mutinied, and that he should<sup>104</sup> be obliged to draw them off from the place, for fear they would join the mob; consequently he could offer us no assistance.

We had now no hopes whatever, of successfully resisting the mob, who kept constantly increasing: our provisions were entirely exhausted and we being wearied out<sup>105</sup>, by continually standing on guard, and watching the movements of our enemies; who during the time I was there, fired at us a great many times. Some of the brethren died for the common necessities of life, and<sup>106</sup> perished from starvation; and for once in my life, I had the pain of beholding some of my fellow creatures fall victims to the spirit of persecution, which did then, and has since prevailed to such an extent in Upper Missouri; <sup>107</sup>men too who were virtuous, and against whom, no legal process, could for one moment be sustained, but who, in consequence of their love of God,—attachment to his cause,—and their determination to keep the faith, were thus brought to an untimely grave.

<sup>108</sup>In the meantime Henry Root, and David Thomas, who had been the sole cause of the settlement being made<sup>109</sup>, solicited the saints to leave the place. Thomas said he had assurances from the mob that if they would leave the place they would not be hurt; and that they would be paid for all losses which they had sustained, and that they had come as mediators to accomplish this object; and that persons should be appointed to set <sup>110</sup>value on the property which they had to leave, and that they should be paid for it. They<sup>111</sup> finally, through necessity, had to comply, and leave the place; accordingly the Committee was appointed—Judge Erickson was one of the Committee, and Major Florey, of Rutsville another—the names of the<sup>112</sup> others <sup>113</sup>not recollected<sup>114</sup>. They appraised the Real Estate, that was all.

---

97. DHC 3:158: replaces “Priest” with “minister”

98. DHC 3:158: replaces “mobocrat of the deepest die” with “one of the worst of the mobocrats”

99. DHC 3:158: adds “force was placed”

100. DHC 3:158: “letter speaks”

101. Brackets this editor’s.

102. Book B-1, 835: “Cerceil”

103. *Source*: Following two paragraphs based on “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 3-4.

104. DHC 3:158: “would”

105. DHC 3:158: “we were worn out”

106. DHC 3:158: omits “died for the common necessities of life, and”

107. DHC 3:158: adds “They were”

108. *Source*: Based on *AAP*, 30.

109. DHC 3:159: replaces “being made” with “of our people in De Witt”

110. DHC 3:159: adds “a”

111. DHC 3:159: replaces “They” with “The Saints”

112. DHC 3:159: omits “the”

113. DHC 3:159: adds “are”

114. DHC 3:159: “remembered”

<sup>115</sup>When the people came to start, <sup>116</sup>their horses, oxen, and cows were gone, many of them,<sup>117</sup> and could not be found: it was known at the time, and the mob boasted of it, that they had killed the oxen and lived on them. <sup>118</sup>**A great number of cows, oxen, and horses have never been seen since, which doubtless the mob took and kept and that was all the brethren ever received of the promised pay for all their losses at De Witt.** Many houses belonging to my brethren were burned, their cattle driven away, and a great quantity of their property destroyed by the mob. <sup>119</sup>**The people of De Witt utterly failed to fulfill their pledge to pay the Saints for the losses they sustained.** Seeing no prospect of relief,<sup>120</sup> the Governor having turned a deaf ear to our entreaties, the Militia having mutinied, and the greater part of them ready to join the mob; the brethren <sup>121</sup>came to the conclusion to leave that place, and seek a shelter elsewhere; and<sup>122</sup> gathering up as many wagons as could be got ready, which<sup>123</sup> was about seventy, with the<sup>124</sup> remnant of the<sup>125</sup> property they had been able to save from their matchless foes, <sup>126</sup>left De Witt, and started for Caldwell [county]<sup>127</sup> on the afternoon of Thursday, October 11th, 1838. They traveled that day about twelve miles, and encamped in a grove of timber near the road.

<sup>128</sup>That evening a woman<sup>129</sup>, who had some short time before given birth to a child (in consequence of the exposure occasioned by the operations of the mob, and having to move her before her strength would admit<sup>130</sup>) died<sup>131</sup>, and<sup>132</sup> was buried in the Grove without a coffin.

<sup>133</sup>During our journey we were continually harassed and threatened by the mob, who shot at us several times; whilst several of our brethren died from<sup>134</sup> the fatigue, and privations<sup>135</sup>, which they had to endure, and we had to inter them by the wayside without a coffin, and under circumstances the most distressing, we arrived in Caldwell on the twelfth [of October]<sup>136</sup>.

---

115. *Source*: Except for middle part, this paragraph based on *AAP*, 30. Middle part of paragraph ("Many houses ... Caldwell [county]") based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 4.

116. DHC 3:159: adds "many of"

117. DHC 3:159: omits "many of them"

118. DHC 3:159: omits next sentence

119. DHC 3:159 adds next sentence, which is not found in Book B-1, 836, Book B-2, 760, and *DN*, nor supported in the source.

120. DHC 3:159: omits first part of sentence

121. DHC 3:159: adds "seeing no prospect of relief"

122. DHC 3:159: omits "and"

123. Book B-2, 760: "<which>" (prob. WB)

124. DHC 3:159: replaces "the" with "a"

125. Book B-2, 760 (darker ink): "<the>" (US)

126. DHC 3:159: adds "they"

127. DHC 3:159: adds "county"

128. *Source*: *AAP*, 30.

129. DHC 3:159: adds "of the name Jensen"

130. DHC 3:160: "would properly admit of it"

131. DHC 3:160: moves "died" to follow "a child"

132. DHC 3:160: replaces "and" with "She" and begins new sentence

133. *Source*: "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 4.

134. Book B-2, 761 (darker ink): "{\from/}" (prob. WB)

135. DHC 3:160: "privation"

136. DHC 3:160: adds "of October"

12.

GOVERNOR BOGGS  
ISSUES EXTERMINATION ORDER  
October 1838

[DN 3 (30 July 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>No sooner had the brethren left De Witt than Sashiel<sup>2</sup> Woods called the mob together and made a speech to them <sup>3</sup>that they must hasten to assist their friends in Davies[s] County. The Land Sales (he said) were coming on, and if they could get the Mormons driven out, they could get all the lands entitled to preemptions, and that they must hasten to Davies[s] <sup>4</sup>in order to accomplish their object; that if they would join and drive them out<sup>5</sup> they<sup>6</sup> could get all the lands back again, as well as all the pay they had received for them. He assured the mob that they had nothing to fear from the <sup>7</sup>authorities in so doing, for they had now full proof that the<sup>8</sup> authorities would not assist the Mormons, and that they <sup>9</sup>might as well take their property from them<sup>10</sup> as not. His request<sup>11</sup> was complied with<sup>12</sup>, and accordingly the whole banditti started, taking with them their cannon for Davies[s] County<sup>13</sup>.

In the meantime Cornelius Gilliam was busily engaged in raising a mob in Platte<sup>14</sup> and Clinton Counties, to aid Woods in his effort to drive peaceable citizens from their homes and take their property.

<sup>15</sup>On my arrival in Caldwell, I was informed by General Doniphan of Clay County, that a com-

- 
1. *Source*: This and next paragraph from *AAP*, 30-31.
  2. *AAP*, 30, RDft 1:26, Book B-1, 836: "Sashel"; Book B-2, 761: "Sash<i>el"
  3. DHC 3:161: adds "to the effect"
  4. DHC 3:161: adds "county"
  5. DHC 3:161: "drive out the Saints"
  6. DHC 3:161: replaces "they" with "the old settlers"
  7. DHC 3:161: adds "state"
  8. DHC 3:161: replaces "the" with "those"
  9. DHC 3:161: adds "[the mob]"
  10. Book B-2, 761 (darker ink): "{\them/}" (US)
  11. DHC 3:161: replaces "request" with "proposition"
  12. DHC 3:161: replaces "complied with" with "agreed to"
  13. DHC 3:161: moves "for Davies[s] county" to follow "started"
  14. *AAP*, 31, Book B-1, 836: "Platt"
  15. *Source*: "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 4.

pany of mobbers, eight hundred strong, were <sup>16</sup>marching toward<sup>17</sup> a settlement of our people<sup>18</sup> in Davies[s] County. He ordered out one of the officers, to raise a force and march immediately to what he called Wight's Town<sup>19</sup>, and defend our people from the attacks of the mob, until he should raise the Militia in his<sup>20</sup>, and the adjoining Counties to put them down. A small company of Militia who were on their route<sup>21</sup> to Davies[s] County, and who had passed through Far West, he ordered back again, stating that they were not to be depended upon, as many of them were disposed to join the mob, and to use his own expression, were "damned rotten hearted."

<sup>22</sup>Sunday [October] 14th, I preached to the brethren at Far West, from the saying of the Savior, [""]greater love hath no man than this, that he lay down his life for the<sup>23</sup> brethren.[""] At the close I called upon all that would stand by me to meet me on the Public Square the next day.

<sup>24</sup>There were seven cut off from the Church in Preston, England, this day. It was a general time of pruning in England. The powers of darkness raged and it seemed as though Satan was fully determined to make an end of the work in that kingdom. Elders [Joseph] Fielding and [Willard] Richards had as much as they could do, for some time, to see to the branches already planted, without planting new <sup>25</sup>ones.

<sup>26</sup>Monday [October] 15th, the brethren assembled on the Public Square<sup>27</sup>, and formed a company of about one hundred, who took up a line of march for Adam-ondi-Ahman; and<sup>28</sup> here let it be distinctly understood, that this company were Militia of the County of Caldwell, acting under Lieutenant-Colonel [George M.] Hinkle, agreeably<sup>29</sup> to the order of General Doniphan, and the brethren were very careful in all their movements to act in strict accordance with the Constitutional laws of the land.

The special object of this march<sup>30</sup> was to protect Adam-ondi-Ahman, and repel the attacks of the mob in Davies[s] County. Having some property in that County, and having a house building there, I went up at the same time. While I was there, a number of houses belonging to our people were burned by the mob, who committed many other depredations, such as driving off horses, sheep, cattle, <sup>31</sup>hogs, &c. A number of whose houses were burned down, as well as those who lived in scattered and lonely situations, fled into the town for safety, and for shelter from the inclemency of the weather as a considerable snowstorm took place on the 17th and 18th. Women and children, some in the most

---

16. Book B-2, 761: adds ellipses over erasure

17. T&S 1:4, Book B-1, 836: "towards"

18. T&S 1:4, Book B-1, 836, Book B-2, 761: "peoples"

19. DHC 3:162: adds "[Adam-ondi-Ahman]"

20. DHC 3:162: adds "[Clay]"

21. DHC 3:162: replaces "route" with "way"

22. *Source*: SH, 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.7).

23. DHC 3:162: replaces "the" with "his"

24. *Source*: WRj 1:84 reports "cut off 7" (transcription in vol. 8, III.3).

25. Book B-1, 836: adds "years"

26. *Source*: Except first sentence, following five paragraphs (covering events of 15-18 Oct.) based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," T&S 1 (Nov. 1839): 4-5. First sentence from SH, 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.7).

27. DHC 3:162: adds "of Far West"

28. DHC 3:162: omits "and"

29. DHC 3:162: "agreeable"

30. Book B-2, 761: "<march>" (prob. TB)

31. Book B-2, 762: adds ellipses over erasure

delicate situations<sup>32</sup>, were thus obliged to leave their homes, and travel several miles in order to effect their escape. My feelings were such as I cannot describe when I saw them flock into the village, almost entirely destitute of clothes, and only escaping with their lives.

During this state of affairs General Parks arrived at<sup>33</sup> Davies[s] County, and was at the house of Colonel Lyman Wight on the 18th, when the intelligence was brought, that the mob were burning houses; and also when women and children were fleeing for safety, <sup>34</sup>among whom was Agnes M. Smith, wife of my brother Don Carlos Smith who was absent on a mission in<sup>35</sup> Tennessee, her house having<sup>36</sup> been plundered and burned by the mob, she having<sup>37</sup> traveled nearly three miles, carrying her two helpless babes, having<sup>38</sup> had to wade Grand River.

Colonel Wight, who held a commission in the 59th Regiment under his (General Parks') command, asked what was to be done. He<sup>39</sup> told him that he must immediately call out his men, and go and put them<sup>40</sup> down; accordingly a force was immediately raised for the purpose of quelling the mob, and in a short time were<sup>41</sup> on their<sup>42</sup> march with a determination to drive<sup>43</sup> the mob, or die in the attempt; as they<sup>44</sup> could bear such treatment <sup>45</sup>no longer.

The mob, having learned the orders of General Parks, and likewise being aware of the determination of the oppressed, <sup>46</sup>broke up their encampment and fled. The mob seeing that they could not succeed by force, now resorted to stratagem; and after removing their property out of their houses, which were nothing but log cabins, they fired them<sup>47</sup>, and then reported to the Authorities of the State, that the Mormons were burning and destroying all before them.

<sup>48</sup>[Friday, October] 19th, elder William Clayton quit<sup>49</sup> his temporal business in England and gave himself wholly to the ministry, and soon commenced preaching and baptizing in Manchester.

As I was driven away from Kirtland without the privilege of settling my business, I had previous to this, employed Colonel Oliver Granger as my Agent to close all my affairs in the Eastern States<sup>50</sup>; and as I have been accused of "running away, cheating my creditors," &c., I will insert a few<sup>51</sup> of the

32. DHC 3:163: replaces "situations" with "condition"

33. DHC 3:163: replaces "at" with "in"

34. Book B-1, 837, adds: "<page 7 addenda X>" (WB). Remainder of paragraph was added in Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note X, by WB about 6-20 Aug. 1845, and incorporated in Book B-2, 762, by WB about 17-20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Added under direction of the apostolic committee on 4 July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.4). *Source*: Probably based on Hyrum Smith, Affidavit, 1 July 1843 (NMCDB, 64; *MRP*, 623; DHC 3:408; *T&S* 4:248; cf. Lyman Wight, Affidavit, 1 July 1843, NMCDB, 126; *MRP*, 658; DHC 3:442-43; *T&S* 4:266).

35. Book B-1, Addenda, 7, Note X: replaces "in" with "at"; Book B-2, 762: "<at <in>"

36. DHC 3:163: "had"

37. DHC 3:163: "had"

38. DHC 3:163: omits "having"

39. DHC 3:163: replaces "He" with "Parks"

40. DHC 3:163: replaces "them" with "the mob"

41. DHC 3:163: "was"

42. DHC 3:163: replaces "their" with "its"

43. DHC 3:163: replaces "drive" with "disperse"

44. DHC 3:163: replaces "they" with "the people"

45. DHC 3:163: adds "as was being inflicted upon them"

46. Book B-1, 837, Book B-2, 762: add "they"

47. Book B-1, 837: "~~actually set fire to their own houses~~ <fired them>" (pos. WB)

48. *Source*: Based on MiEng 1:295.

49. DHC 3:164: "quitted"

50. DHC 3:164: replaces "Eastern States" with "east"

51. DHC 3:164: replaces "a few" with "one"

many cards and letters I have received from gentlemen who have had the best opportunity of knowing my business transactions and whose testimony comes unsolicited.

A Card—

<sup>52</sup>Painesville, October 19th, 1838.

We the undersigned being personal acquaintances of Oliver Granger, firmly believe that the course which he has pursued in settling the claims, accounts, &c., against the former citizens of Kirtland Township, has done much credit to himself, and all others that committed to him the care of adjusting their business with this community, which also furnishes evidence that there was no intention on their part of defrauding their creditors.

[Signed]<sup>53</sup>

THOMAS GRIFFITH,  
JOHN S. SEYMOUR.

<sup>54</sup>About this time William Morgan, Sheriff of Davies[s] County, Samuel Bogart, Colonel William P. Penniston<sup>55</sup>, Doctor Samuel Venable, Jonathan J. Dryden, James Stone and Thomas J. Martin, made communications or affidavits of the most inflammatory kind, charging upon the Mormons those depredations which had been committed by the mob, endeavoring thereby to raise the anger of those in authority, rally<sup>56</sup> a sufficient force around their Standard, and produce<sup>57</sup> a total overthrow, massacre, or banishment of the Mormons from the State. These and their associates were the ones who fired their own houses and then fled the County<sup>58</sup> crying “fire and murder.”

<sup>59</sup>It was reported in Far West today <sup>60</sup>that Orson Hyde had left that place, the night previous, leaving a letter for one of the brethren which would develop the secret.

<sup>61</sup>Monday 22nd, on the retreat of the mob from Davies[s]<sup>62</sup>, I returned to Caldwell with a company of the brethren and arrived at Far West about seven in the evening, where I had hoped to have enjoyed<sup>63</sup> some<sup>64</sup> respite from our enemies, at least for a short time; but upon my arrival there, I was informed that a mob had commenced hostilities on the borders of that<sup>65</sup> County, adjoining to Ray County, and that they had taken some of our brethren prisoners; burned some houses, and had committed depredations on the peaceable inhabitants.

### [DN 3 (1 October 1853): 1]

<sup>66</sup>Tuesday 23rd, news came to Far West this morning that the brethren had found the cannon, which the mob brought from Independence, buried in the earth, and had secured it by order of General

---

52. Source: JSLB 2:40 (JM).

53. DHC 3:165: adds “[Signed]”

54. Source: For these letters and affidavits (dated 21–23 Oct.), see *DCCO*, 42–46, 48.

55. Book B-1, 837, Book B-2, 763: “Peniston”

56. DHC 3:165: “rallying”

57. Book B-1, 838: “producing”; Book B-2, 763: “produc{e/}”

58. DHC 3:165: “country”

59. Source: Based on APRj, 11 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 22; transcription in vol. 8, III.17).

60. DHC 3:165: adds “[October 19th]”. Should be Oct. 20.

61. Source: Based on “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 5.

62. DHC 3:165: adds “county”

63. DHC 3:165: replaces “had enjoyed” with “enjoy”

64. Book B-2, 763: “{some/}” (prob. WB)

65. DHC 3:165–66: replaces “that” with “Caldwell”

66. Source: Based on APRj, 13 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 23; transcription in vol. 8, III.17).



Parks. The word of the Lord has been<sup>67</sup> given several months since, for the Saints to gather into the cities but they have<sup>68</sup> been slow to obey until the judgments were upon them, and now they are gathering by flight and haste, leaving all their effects<sup>69</sup>, and are glad to get off at that—the city of Far West is literally crowded, and the brethren are gathering from all quarters.

<sup>70</sup>Fourteen citizens of Ray <sup>71</sup>wrote, the Governor an inflammatory epistle, one of which<sup>72</sup> was Mr. Hudgins, Postmaster<sup>73</sup>; and<sup>74</sup> Thomas C. Burch of Richmond, wrote a similar communication. Also the citizens of Ray <sup>75</sup>in public meeting, appealed to the Governor of the State, to give the people of Upper Missouri protection from this<sup>76</sup> fearful body of <sup>77</sup>“thieves and robbers” when<sup>78</sup> the Saints were all<sup>79</sup> minding their own business, only as they were driven from it by those who were crying “thieves and robbers.”

<sup>80</sup>The mail came in this evening; but not a single letter to anybody, from which it is evident there is no deposit sacred to those marauders who are infesting the country and trying to destroy the Saints.

<sup>81</sup>Wednesday 24th, Austin A. King, and Adam Black renewed their inflammatory communications to the Governor, as did other citizens of Richmond, viz., C. R. Morehead, W[illia]m. Thornton, and Jacob Gudgel, who manifested no scruples<sup>82</sup> at any<sup>83</sup> falsehood or exaggeration to raise the Governor’s anger against us.

<sup>84</sup>Thomas B. Marsh formerly President of the Twelve, having apostatized, repaired to Richmond, and made affidavit before Henry Jacobs, Justice of the Peace to all the vilest calumnies, aspersions, lies and slanders<sup>85</sup>, towards myself and the Church, that his wicked heart could invent. He had been lifted up in pride, by his exaltations<sup>86</sup> and the Revelations of Heaven concerning him until he was ready to be overthrown by the first adverse wind that should cross his track, and now he has fallen, lied and sworn to it<sup>87</sup>, and is<sup>88</sup> ready to take the lives of his best friends. Let all men take warning by him<sup>89</sup> and

---

67. DHC 3:166: replaces “has been” with “was”

68. Book B-2, 763: “<been>” (prob. WB)

69. Book B-1, 838: omits “their effects”; Book B-2, 763 (darker ink): “<their effects>” (US)

70. *Source*: For Hudgins, see *DCCO*, 49; for Burch, see *DCCO*, 50; for citizens of Ray county, see *DCCO*, 51-52.

71. DHC 3:166: adds “county”

72. DHC 3:166: replaces “which” with “whom”

73. DHC 3:166: moves “one of ... Postmaster” to follow “Ray [county]”

74. DHC 3:166: omits “and”

75. DHC 3:166: adds “county”

76. DHC 3:166: replaces “this” with “the”

77. Book B-1, 838: moves quotation mark to precede “appealed”

78. DHC 3:166: replaces “when” with “while the fact is”

79. DHC 3:166: omits “all”

80. *Source*: Based on APRj, 13 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 23; transcription in vol. 8, III.17).

81. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 52-57: i.e., King (53-54), Black (55-57, undated), and Morehead, Thornton, and Gudgel (52-53).

82. DHC 3:166: replaces “manifested no scruples” with “scrupled at”

83. DHC 3:166: replaces “any” with “no”

84. *Source*: Probably WR’s commentary based on Marsh’s and Hyde’s affidavits in *DCCO*, 57-59.

85. DHC 3:167: “vilest slanders, aspersions, lies and calumnies”

86. DHC 3:167: “exaltation to office”

87. DHC 3:167: replaces “to it” with “falsely”

88. Book B-1, 838: “was”; Book B-2, 763: “is” overwrites “was”

89. Book B-2, 763 (darker ink): “{\him/}” (US)

learn that he who exalteth himself, God will abase. Orson Hyde was also<sup>90</sup> at Richmond and testified to most of Marsh's statements.

The following letter being a fair specimen of the truth and honesty of a multitude of<sup>91</sup> others, which I shall notice, I give it in full:

<sup>92</sup>Carrollton, Mo., October 24th, 1838.

Sir.—We were informed last night by an express from Ray County, that Captain Bogart and all his company amounting to between fifty and sixty men, were massacred by the Mormons at Buncombe, twelve miles north of Richmond, except three. This statement you may rely on as being true, and last night they expected Richmond to be laid in ashes this morning. We could distinctly hear cannon and we know the Mormons had one in their possession. Richmond is about twenty-five miles west of this place on a straight line. We know not the hour or minute we will be laid in ashes—our Country is ruined—for God's sake give us assistance as quick as possible.

Yours, &c.,

SARSHEL<sup>93</sup> WOODS,  
JOSEPH DICKSON.

<sup>94</sup>These mobbers must have had very acute ears to hear cannon (a six pounder) thirty-seven miles: so much for the lies of a Priest of this world. Now for the truth of the case. This day about noon, Captain Bogart, with some thirty or forty men, called on brother Thoret Parsons where he was living<sup>95</sup> at the head of the east branch of Log Creek, and warned him<sup>96</sup> to be gone before next day at ten in the morning, declaring also “that he would give Far West thunder and lightning before next day at noon, [”] if he had good luck in meeting Neil<sup>97</sup> Gillum, <sup>98</sup>who would camp about six miles west of Far West that night, and that he should camp on Crooked Creek, and<sup>99</sup> departed towards Crooked Creek.

<sup>100</sup>Brother Parsons dispatched a messenger with this news to Far West, and followed after Bogart to watch his movements. Brothers<sup>101</sup> Joseph Holbrook, and \_\_\_\_\_ Judith<sup>102</sup> who went out this morn-

---

90. Book B-1, 838: “also was”

91. DHC 3:168: replaces “a multitude of” with “many”

92. *Source*: DCCO, 60.

93. DHC 3:169: “SASHIEL”

94. *Source*: This paragraph based on WR's interview with Thorit Parsons (see SH, 2; transcription in vol. 8, III.7), possibly conducted on 23 Jan. 1845, during which Parsons evidently reiterated information given in his and Arza Judd Jr.'s statements in DCCO, 148–49. In the printed source, however, Parsons reported that Bogart's company consisted of “twenty-three, mostly armed men,” and Judd estimated “about twenty or upwards.” This paragraph was written in RDft 1:29 between 21–24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology), and in Book B-1, 839, by TB probably on 24 Feb. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

95. DHC 3:169: moves “where he was living” to follow “Log creek”

96. Book B-1, 839: “<him>”

97. Book B-1, 839: “Neel”

98. DHC 3:169: adds “(Cornelius Gilliam)”

99. DHC 3:169: replaces “and” with “He then” and begins new sentence

100. *Source*: First sentence possibly based on WR's assumption, or a statement Parsons made during his 1845 interview with WR (see SH, 2; transcription in vol. 8, III.7). Remainder of paragraph probably based on the 20 Feb. 1845 interview of Joseph Holbrook (see JHS [845]). This paragraph was written in RDft 1:29 between 21–24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology), and in Book B-1, 839, by TB probably on 24 Feb. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

101. Book B-1, 839: “Brother”

102. Book B-1, 839 (pencil): “\_\_\_\_\_ <David> Judith” (pos. RLC); includes following marginal note in pen-

ing to watch the movements of the enemy, saw eight armed mobbers call at the house of brother<sup>103</sup> Pinkham, where they took three prisoners (Nathan Pinkham<sup>104</sup>, brothers William<sup>105</sup> Seely<sup>106</sup>, and Addison<sup>107</sup> Green) and four horses, arms, &c., and<sup>108</sup> departed, threatening<sup>109</sup> Father<sup>110</sup> Pinkham if he did not leave the State immediately, they “would have his damned old scalp,” and<sup>111</sup> having learned of Bogart’s movements <sup>112</sup>returned to Far West near midnight, and reported their proceedings, and that<sup>113</sup> of the mob.

<sup>114</sup>On hearing the report, Judge [Elias] Higbee, the first Judge of the County, ordered Lieutenant Colonel Hinkle, the highest officer in command in Far West, to send out<sup>115</sup> a company to disperse the mob and retake their prisoners, who<sup>116</sup>, it was reported, they intended to murder that night. The trumpet sounded, and the brethren were assembled on the Public Square about midnight, when the facts were stated and about seventy-five volunteered to obey the Judge’s order <sup>117</sup>under command of <sup>118</sup>David W. Patten, who immediately commenced their march on horseback, hoping to surprise and scatter the camp, retake the prisoners and prevent the attack threatened upon<sup>119</sup> Far West, without the loss of blood<sup>120</sup>.

<sup>121</sup>Thursday 25th, fifteen of the company were detached from the main body, while sixty continued their march till they arrived near the ford of Crooked River (or Creek) where they dismounted, tied their horses, and leaving four or five men to guard them, proceeded towards the Ford, not knowing the location of the encampment. It was just at the dawning of light in the east, when they were marching quietly along the road, and near the <sup>122</sup>top of the hill which descends to the River, when<sup>123</sup> the report of a gun was heard, and young O. Banion<sup>124</sup> reeled out of the ranks and fell mortally wounded. Thus the work of death commenced, when Captain Patten ordered a charge and rushed down the hill on a fast trot, and when within about fifty yards of the camp formed a line. The mob formed a line

---

cil: “David Judith[.] This christian name furnished by C C Rich[.] Elias Smith says it is D Juda” (pos. RLC). Book B-2, 764: “\_\_\_\_ Judith”; DHC 3:169: “David Juda”

103. Book B-1, 839: “Brother <Mr>”

104. Book B-1, 839: “~~Brother~~ <Nathan> Pinkham’s Son” (WB)

105. Book B-1, 839: “<Wm>” (WB)

106. Book B-1, 839, Book B-2, 764: “Seeley”

107. Book B-1, 839: “<addison>” (WB)

108. DHC 3:169: replaces “and” with “When” and starts new sentence

109. DHC 3:169: “departing they threatened”

110. Book B-1, 839: “<Father>” (WB)

111. DHC 3:169: omits “and” and starts new sentence

112. DHC 3:169: adds “the brethren”

113. DHC 3:169: replaces “that” with “those”

114. *Source*: This paragraph combines *FREM*, 21, and CCR [ca. 1845], 1 (*MRP*, 707).

115. Book B-2, 764: “<out>” (prob. WB)

116. DHC 3:170: “whom”

117. Book B-2, 764: adds ellipses over erasure

118. Book B-1, 839, Book B-2, 764: add “Captain”

119. DHC 3:170: replaces “threatened upon” with “threatening”

120. DHC 3:170: moves “without the loss of blood” to follow “hoping”

121. *Source*: Based on CCR [ca. 1845], 2-3 (*MRP*, 707).

122. Book B-2, 764: adds ellipses over erasure

123. DHC 3:170: replaces “when” with “that”

124. Book B-1, 839: “O’Benion”; includes the following marginal note in pencil: “Young O’Banion’s name was Patrick. this name was furnished by Silas Smith” (pos. RLC). DHC 3:170: “Partick O’Banion”. *AAP*, 33: “Patterson O’Bamian”

under the bank of the River below their tents. It was yet so dark that little could be seen by looking at the west, while the mob looking towards the dawning light could see Patten and his men, when they fired a broadside and three or four of the brethren fell—Captain Patten ordered the fire returned, which was instantly obeyed, to great disadvantage in the darkness which yet continued. The fire was repeated by the mob and returned by Captain Patten's Company, and gave the watchword "God and Liberty," when<sup>125</sup> Captain Patten<sup>126</sup> ordered a charge which was instantly obeyed. The parties immediately came in contact with their swords, and the mob was soon put to flight, crossing the River at the ford and such places as they could get a chance. In the pursuit, one of the mob fled from behind a tree, wheeled, and shot Captain Patten, who instantly fell mortally wounded, having received a large ball in his<sup>127</sup> bowels.

<sup>128</sup>The ground was soon cleared, and the brethren gathered up a wagon or two, and making beds therein of tents, &c., took their wounded and retreated towards Far West. Three brethren were wounded in the bowels, one in the neck, one in the shoulder, one through the hips, one through both thighs, one in the arms<sup>129</sup>, all by musket shot. One had his arm broke<sup>130</sup> by a sword. Brother Gideon Carter was shot in the head, and left dead on the ground, so defaced that the brethren did not know him. Bogart reported that he had lost one man. The three prisoners were released and returned with the brethren to Far West. Captain Patten was carried some of the way in a litter but it caused so much distress he begged to be left<sup>131</sup>, and<sup>132</sup> was carried into brother Winchester's, three miles from the city<sup>133</sup> where he died that night. O. Banion<sup>134</sup>, died soon after, and brother Carter's body was also brought from Crooked River, when it was discovered who he was.

<sup>135</sup>I went with my brother Hyrum and Amasa Lyman<sup>136</sup> to meet the brethren on their return, near Log Creek, where I saw Captain Patten in a most distressing condition. His wound was incurable.

<sup>137</sup>Brother David W.<sup>138</sup> Patten was a very<sup>139</sup> worthy man<sup>140</sup>, beloved by all good men who knew him. He was one of the Twelve Apostles, and died as he had lived, a man of God, and strong in the faith of a glorious Resurrection, in a world where mobs will have no power or<sup>141</sup> place.—One of his last expressions to his wife was "whatever you do else O! do not deny<sup>142</sup> the faith."

---

125. DHC 3:170: omits "when" and begins new sentence

126. DHC 3:170: adds "then"

127. Book B-2, 765: adds ellipses over erasure

128. *Source*: First sentence based on CCR [ca. 1845], 3 (*MRP*, 707-8). Remainder of paragraph probably based on the 20 Feb. 1845 interview of Joseph Holbrook (see JHS [1845]). Similar details were repeated in Holbrook n.d., 43-44.

129. Book B-1, 840: "arm"

130. DHC 3:171: "broken"

131. DHC 3:171: adds "by the way side"

132. DHC 3:171: replaces "and" with "He" and begins new sentence

133. DHC 3:171: adds "of Far West"

134. Book B-1, 840: "O'Banion"; DHC 3:171: "Patrick O'Banion"

135. *Source*: Based on CCR [ca. 1845], 3 (*MRP*, 708).

136. Book B-1, 840 (pencil): adds marginal note "Amasa Lyman <says he> was not with Joseph. C. C. Rich says it was Lyman Wight who was with Joseph" (pos. RLC). DHC 3:171: replaces "Amasa Lyman" with "Lyman Wight"

137. *Source*: Based on *HCKj* [1840], 46-47. Cf. *T&S* 2 (15 June 1841): 443.

138. DHC 3:171: omits "W."

139. Book B-2, 765 (darker ink): "<very>" (prob. TB)

140. Book B-2, 765 (darker ink): "{\man/}" (prob. WB)

141. Book B-2, 765 (darker ink): "or" overwrites "{and}" (prob. WB)

142. Book B-1, 840: "defy <deny>" (prob. WB)

<sup>143</sup>How different his fate from<sup>144</sup> that of the apostate, Thomas B. Marsh, who this day vented all the lying spleen and malice of his heart towards the work of God in a letter to <sup>145</sup>brother and sister Abbot, to which was annexed an addenda by Orson Hyde.

The following letter will show<sup>146</sup> the state of public feeling in the country<sup>147</sup>.

<sup>148</sup>Lexington, 6 o'clock p.m.,  
October 25th, 1838.

To Messrs. Amos Rees and Wiley C. Williams,

Gentlemen. This letter is sent on after you on express, by Mr. Bryant of Ray County, since you left this morning. Mr. C. R. Morehead, came here on express for men to assist in repelling a threatened attack upon Richmond tonight. He brought news that the Mormon armed force had attacked Captain Bogart this morning at daylight, and had cut off his whole company of fifty men. Since Mr. Morehead left Richmond, one of the company (Bogart's) has<sup>149</sup> come in and reported that there were ten of his comrades killed, and the remainder were taken prisoners, after many of them had been severely wounded; he stated further that Richmond would be sacked and burned by the Mormon banditti tonight. Nothing can exceed the consternation which this news gave<sup>150</sup> rise to. The women and children are flying from Richmond in every direction. A number of them have repaired to Lexington, amongst whom is Mrs. Rees; we will have sent from this County since one o'clock this evening about one hundred well-armed and daring men, perhaps the most effective our country<sup>151</sup> can boast of. They will certainly give them (the Mormons) a warm reception at Richmond tonight, you will see the necessity of hurrying on to the City of Jefferson, and also of imparting correct information to the public as you go along. My impression is, that you had better send one of your number to Howard, Cooper, and Boone Counties, in order that volunteers may be getting ready and flocking to the scene of trouble as fast as possible. They must make haste and put a stop to the<sup>152</sup> devastation which is menaced by these infuriated fanatics, and they must go prepared and with the full determination to exterminate or expel them from the State *en masse*, nothing but this can give tranquility to the public mind, and re-establish the supremacy of the laws. There must be no further delaying with this question any where. The Mormons must leave the State, or we will, one and all, and to this complexion it must come at last. We have great reliance upon<sup>153</sup> your ability, discretion and fitness for the task you have undertaken, and we have only time to say, God speed you.

Yours truly,  
E. M. RYLAND<sup>154</sup>.

The brethren had *not thought* of going to Richmond[:] it was a lie out of whole cloth.

---

143. *Source*: Composed by WR in RDft 1:30 between 21–24 Feb. 1844 (see RDft Chronology), possibly with JS's help, based on T. B. Marsh to Brother and Sister Lewis Abbot, 25 Oct. 1838, with P.S. by O. Hyde, in JSLB 2:18–19 (JM).

144. DHC 3:171: replaces “from” with “to”

145. Book B-2, 765: adds erasure

146. Book B-2, 765 (darker ink): “<show>” (US)

147. DHC 3:172: adds “at this time”

148. *Source*: DCCO, 61–62.

149. DCCO, 61, Book B-1, 840: “had”

150. DCCO, 62, Book B-1, 840: “gives”

151. DHC 3:172: “county”

152. Book B-2, 766: “<the>” (US)

153. Book B-2, 766: “\up/on”

154. DHC 3:173: adds “Judge”

<sup>155</sup>Friday 26th<sup>156</sup>, Headquarters of the Militia,  
City of Jefferson Oct. 26th, 1838.

Gen[eral]. John B. Clark, 1st Division Mo. Mi[litia].

Sir.—Application has been made to the Commander-in-Chief by the citizens of Davies[s] County in this state, for protection, and to be restored to their homes and property; with intelligence that the Mormons, with an armed force, have expelled the inhabitants of that County from their homes, have pillaged and burnt their dwellings, driven off their stock, and were destroying their crops. That they (the Mormons) have burnt to ashes the towns of Gallatin and Millport in said County; the former being the County seat of said County and<sup>157</sup> including the Clerk's Office and all the public records of the County<sup>158</sup> and that there is not now a civil officer within said County. The Commander-in-Chief therefore orders, that there be raised from the 1st, 4th, 5th, 6th, and 12th Divisions of the Militia of this State, four hundred men each, to be mounted and armed as Infantry or Riflemen, each man to furnish himself with at least fifty rounds of ammunition and at least fifteen days provisions. The troops from the 1st, 5th, 6th, and 12th, will rendezvous at Fayette, in Howard County, on Saturday, the 3rd day of next month (November) at which point they will receive further instructions as to their line of march. You will therefore cause to be raised the quota of men required of your Division (four hundred men) without delay, either by volunteers<sup>159</sup> or drafts, and rendezvous at Fayette, in Howard County, on Saturday the 3rd day of next month, (November) and there join the troops from the 5th, 6th, and 12th Divisions. The troops from the 4th Division will join you at Richmond, in Ray County. You will cause the troops raised in your Division to be formed into companies according to law, and placed under officers already in commission. If volunteer Companies are raised they shall elect their own officers. The preference should always be given to volunteer Companies already organized and commissioned. You will also detail the necessary field and staff officers. For the convenience of transporting the camp equipage, provisions and hospital stores for the troops under your command, you are authorized to employ two or three baggage wagons.

By order of the Commander-in-Chief,

B. M. LISLE, Adj.-Gen[eral].

<sup>160</sup>To all persons<sup>161</sup> that are or may be interested. I[,] Horace Kingsbury of Pain[e]sville Township, Geauga County and state of Ohio, feeling the importance of recommending to remembrance every worthy citizen who has by their<sup>162</sup> conduct commended themselves<sup>163</sup> to personal acquaintance<sup>164</sup> by their<sup>165</sup> course of strict integrity, and desire for truth and common justice, feel it my duty to state that Oliver Granger's management in the arrangement of the unfinished business of people that have moved to the Far West, in redeeming their pledges and

---

155. *Source*: DCCO, 62-63.

156. DHC 3:173: omits "26th"

157. DCCO, 62, Book B-1, 841, Book B-2, 766: omit "and"

158. Book B-2, 766: "<including the clerk's ... county>" (TB)

159. DHC 3:173: "volunteer"

160. *Source*: JSLB 2:40 (JM).

161. JSLB 2:40, Book B-1, 841, Book B-2, 767: "people"

162. DHC 3:174: replaces "their" with "his"

163. DHC 3:174: replaces "themselves" with "himself"

164. JSLB 2:40, Book B-1, 841, Book B-2, 767: "acquaintances"

165. DHC 3:174: replaces "their" with "his"



thereby sustaining their integrity, has been truly<sup>166</sup> praiseworthy, and has entitled him to my highest esteem, and ever grateful recollection.

HORACE KINGSBURY.

Painesville<sup>167</sup>, October 26th, 1838.

[DN 3 (15 October 1853): 1]

<sup>168</sup>Saturday, 27th.<sup>169</sup>

To whom it may concern. This may certify that during the year of eighteen hundred and thirty-seven, I had dealings with Messrs. Joseph Smith, jr., and Sidney Rigdon, together with other members of the <sup>170</sup>society, to the amount of about three thousand dollars, and during the spring of eighteen hundred and thirty-eight, I have received my pay in full of Col[onel]. Oliver Granger, to my satisfaction. And I would here remark, that it is due Messrs. Smith and Rigdon, and the <sup>171</sup>society generally, to say that they have ever dealt honorable<sup>172</sup> and fair with me: and I have received as good treatment from them as I have received from any other society in this vicinity: and so far as I have been correctly informed, and made known of their business transactions generally, they have, so far as I can judge, been honorable and honest, and have made every exertion to arrange and settle their affairs; and I would further state, that the closing up of my business with said society has been with their agent, Col[onel]. Granger, appointed by them for that purpose; and I consider it highly due Col[onel]. Granger from me, here to state that he has acted truly and honestly with me in all his business <sup>173</sup>with me and has accomplished more than I could have reasonably<sup>174</sup> expected; and I have also been made acquainted with his business in that section, and wherever he has been called upon to act, he has done so, and with good management he has accomplished and effected a<sup>175</sup> close of a <sup>176</sup>large amount of business for said society, and as I believe, to the entire satisfaction of all concerned.

JOHN W. HAWDEN.

Painesville, Geauga county, Ohio, Oct. 27th, 1838.

<sup>177</sup>[Saturday, 27.]<sup>178</sup> Brother Patten was buried this day at Far West; and <sup>179</sup>before the funeral, I called at brother Patten's house, and while meditating on the scene before me in presence of his friends, I could not help pointing to his lifeless body, and testifying, "There lies a man that has done just as he said he would—he has 'laid down his life for his friends.'"

166. JSLB 2:40: "highly <truly>"

167. JSLB 2:40, Book B-1, 841: "P.ville"; Book B-2, 767 (darker ink): "P.<ains>ville"

168. *Source*: JSLB 2:41 (JM).

169. JSLB 2:41, DHC 3:174: omit date

170. DHC 3:174: adds "[Mormon]"

171. DHC 3:174: adds "[Mormon]"

172. DHC 3:174: "honorably"

173. JSLB 2:41: adds "~~transactions~~"

174. DHC 3:174: "reasonably have"

175. DHC 3:174: replaces "a" with "the"

176. JSLB 2:41, Book B-1, 842, Book B-2, 767: add "very"

177. *Source*: Burial of Patten mentioned in APRj, 15 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 24; transcription in vol. 8, III.17).

178. DHC 3:175: adds "Saturday, 27"

179. Book B-1, 842 (pencil): adds "<addenda Note Z. p. 10>" (WB). Remainder of paragraph added by WB in Book B-1, Addenda, 10, Note Z, about 6–20 Aug. 1845, and incorporated in Book B-2, 767, by WB about 17–20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Added under direction of the apostolic committee in July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.4). *Source*: Undetermined.



*Governor Boggs' exterminating Order*, was issued from<sup>180</sup>

<sup>181</sup>Headquarters Militia, City of Jefferson,  
Oct. 27th, 1838.

**Gen. John B. Clark.**<sup>182</sup>

Sir: Since the order of the morning to you, directing you to cause four hundred mounted<sup>183</sup> men to be raised within your division, I have received by Amos Rees, Esq.,<sup>184</sup> and Wiley E.<sup>185</sup> Williams, Esq., one of my aids, information of the most appalling character, which changes the whole face of things, and places the Mormons in the attitude of open and avowed defiance of the laws, and of having made open war upon the people of this State. Your orders are therefore, to hasten your operations and endeavor to reach Richmond, in Ray county,<sup>186</sup> with all possible speed. The Mormons must be treated as enemies, and *must be exterminated* or driven from the State, if necessary, for the public good<sup>187</sup>.—Their outrages are beyond all description. If you can increase your force, you are authorized to do so, to any extent you may think<sup>188</sup> necessary. I have just issued orders to Major-General Wallock, of Marion county, to raise 500 men, and to march them to the northern part of Davies[s], and there to unite with General Doniphan, of Clay, who has been ordered with 500 men to proceed to the same point, for the purpose of intercepting the retreat of the Mormons to the north. They have been<sup>189</sup> directed to communicate with you by express;<sup>190</sup> you can also communicate with them if you find it necessary. Instead therefore, of proceeding, as at first directed, to reinstate the citizens of Davies[s] in their homes, you will proceed immediately to Richmond and there<sup>191</sup> operate against the Mormons. Brig[adier].—Gen[eral]. Parkes, of Ray, has been ordered to have four hundred men of his brigade in readiness to join you at Richmond.—The whole force will be placed under your command.

**I am very respectfully,**

**your ob't serv't,**<sup>192</sup>

L. W. BOGGS,

Gov[ernor]r. and Commander-in-Chief.

To Gen[eral]. Clark.<sup>193</sup>

<sup>194</sup>Great excitement now prevailed, and mobs were heard of in every direction, who seemed determined on our destruction. They burned the houses in the country, and took off all the cattle they could find. They destroyed corn fields, took many prisoners, and threatened death to all the Mormons.

180. DHC 3:175: omits "was issued from"

181. *Source*: RDft 1:30 directs scribe to copy JSLB 2:34 (JM) or DCCO, 61. Probably on 24 Feb. 1845 (CHOj 1:28; see MSHi Chronology), TB chose to copy JSLB. Cf. AAP, 35; FREM, 26; RP, Bx 4, fd 1, 80–81; LRNB, [3]–[5].

182. This line added in DCCO, 61.

183. Book B-2, 767 (heavier ink): "<mounted>" (prob. TB)

184. DCCO, 61: adds "of Ray county"

185. DCCO, 61: "C."

186. DCCO, 61: omits "and endeavor ... county"

187. DCCO, 61: replaces "good" with "peace"

188. DCCO, 61: replaces "think" with "consider"

189. Book B-2, 768: "<been>" (prob. WB)

190. DHC 3:175: adds "and"

191. DCCO, 61: replaces "there" with "then"

192. Bolded words added in DCCO, 61.

193. This line omitted in DCCO, 61.

194. *Source*: "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," T&S 1 (Nov. 1839): 5.

GOVERNOR BOGGS ISSUES EXTERMINATION ORDER

<sup>195</sup>Headquarters of the 3d and 4th Div[ision]., Mo., Mi[litia].,  
Richmond, Oct. 28th, 1838.

To the Commander-in-Chief, Mo., Mi[litia].,

Sir: From late outrages committed by the *Mormons*, *civil war* is inevitable. They have set the laws of the country at defiance, and are in open rebellion. We have about two thousand men under arms to keep them in check. The presence of the Commander-in-Chief is deemed absolutely necessary, and we most respectfully urge that your Excellency be at the seat of *war*, as soon as possible.

Your most ob[edien]t. serv[an]ts.,

DAVID R. ATCHISON, M.G. 3d Div.

SAM[UE]L D. LUCAS, M.G. 4th Div.

---

195. Source: DCCO, 76.



# 13.

## MOBS IN FAR WEST October–November 1838

[DN 3 (15 October 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Lilburn W. Boggs had become so hardened by mobbing the Saints in Jackson county, and his conscience so “seared with a hot iron,” that he was <sup>2</sup>considered a fit subject for the gubernatorial chair; and it was probably<sup>3</sup> his hatred to truth and the “Mormons,” and his blood-thirsty, murderous disposition, that raised him to the station he occupied. His *exterminating order* of the twenty-seventh, aroused every spirit in the State, of the like stamp of his own, and the Missouri mobocrats were flocking to the standard of General Clark from almost every quarter.

Clark, although not the ranking officer, was selected by Governor Boggs as the most fit instrument to carry out his murderous designs; for bad as they were in Missouri, very few commanding officers were yet sufficiently hardened to go all length<sup>4</sup> with Boggs in this contemplated inhuman butchery, and expulsion from one of the should-be free and independent States of the Republic of North America, where the Constitution declares, that “*every man shall have the privilege of worshiping God according to the dictates of his own conscience*”; and this was all the offense the Saints had been guilty of.

<sup>5</sup>And here I would state, that while the evil spirits were raging up and down in the State to raise mobs against the “Mormons,”<sup>6</sup> Satan himself was no less busy in striving to stir up mischief in the camp of the Saints; and among the most conspicuous of his willing devotees was one Doctor Sampson Avard, who had been in the church but a short time, and who, although he had<sup>7</sup> generally behaved with a tolerable degree of external decorum, was secretly aspiring to be the greatest of the great, and become the leader of the people. This was his pride, and his folly, but as he had no hopes

---

1. *Source*: This and next paragraph apparently WR’s composition, which he wrote in RDft 1:30–31 about 21–24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

2. Book B-1, 842: “<probably>” (WB)

3. Book B-1, 842: “<probably>” (WB)

4. DHC 3:178: “lengths”

5. *Source*: This paragraph and beginning of next (“In this ... binding them”) based on MCP, 5. Remainder of second paragraph and following six paragraphs (to paragraph that ends “... his Danite scheme.”) taken directly from MCP, 5–8 (see transcription in vol. 8, III, 8). Emendations made by the apostolic committee in July 1845 (see Apostolic Review of Book B-1 in vol. 7, IV.4).

6. Book B-1, 843: ““{\Mormons/}””.

7. Book B-2, 769: “<had>” (prob. WB)

of accomplishing it by gaining the hearts of the people in open strife<sup>8</sup>, he watched his opportunity with the brethren, at a time when mobs <sup>9</sup>oppressed, robbed, whipped, burned, plundered and slain<sup>10</sup>, till forbearance seemed no longer a virtue; and nothing but the grace of God without measure, could support men under such trials, to form a secret combination by which he might rise a mighty conqueror, at the *expense of the overthrow of the Church*; and this he tried to accomplish by his smooth, flattering, and winning speeches, which he frequently made to his associates, while his <sup>11</sup>room was well guarded by some of his pupils<sup>12</sup>, ready to give him the wink<sup>13</sup> on the approach of anyone who would not approve of his measures.

In this situation<sup>14</sup>, he stated that he had the sanction of the heads of the Church for what he was about to do: and by his smiles and flattery, persuaded them to believe it, and proceeded to administer to the few under his control, an oath, binding them to everlasting secrecy to everything which<sup>15</sup> should be communicated to them, by himself. Thus Avard initiated members into his band<sup>16</sup>, firmly binding them by all that was sacred, in the protecting each other in all things that was<sup>17</sup> lawful; and was careful to picture out a great glory that was then hovering over the Church, and would soon burst upon the Saints as a cloud by day, and a pillar of fire by night, and would soon unveil the slumbering mysteries of heaven, which would gladden the hearts and arouse the stupid spirits of the Saints of the latter-day, and fill their hearts with that love which is unspeakable and full of glory, and arm them with power, that the gates of hell could not prevail against them; and would often affirm to his company that the principal men of the church had put him forward as a spokesman and a leader of this band, which he named *Danites*.

Thus he duped many which gave him the opportunity of figuring largely<sup>18</sup>. He held his meetings daily, and carried on his work of craft in great haste to prevent a<sup>19</sup> mature reflection upon the matter<sup>20</sup>, and<sup>21</sup> had them bound under the penalties of death to keep the secrets and certain signs<sup>22—23</sup> which they had<sup>24</sup> to know each other by<sup>25</sup>, by day and<sup>26</sup> night.

After those performances he held meetings to organize his men into companies of tens and fifties, appointing a captain over each company. After <sup>27</sup>this organization, he went on to teach them<sup>28</sup> their

---

8. DHC 3:179: replaces “in open strife” with “openly”

9. Book B-1, 843, Book B-2, 769: add “had”

10. DHC 3:179: “slew”

11. Book B-1, 843: adds “~~Lodge~~”

12. DHC 3:179: replaces “pupils” with “followers”

13. DHC 3:179: replaces “wink” with “signal”

14. DHC 3:179: replaces “this situation” with “these proceedings”

15. Book B-2, 769 (darker ink): “{ \which/ }” (prob. WB)

16. Book B-1, 843: “~~Lodge~~ <band>” (prob. WB)

17. DHC 3:179: “were”

18. DHC 3:180: replaces “largely” with “a person of importance”

19. DHC 3:180: omits “a”

20. DHC 3:180: adds “by his followers”

21. DHC 3:180: replaces “and” with “until he”

22. DHC 3:180: adds “of the organization”

23. DHC 3:180: adds “by”

24. DHC 3:180: replaces “had” with “were”

25. DHC 3:180: omits “by”

26. DHC 3:180: replaces “and” with “or”

27. DHC 3:180: adds “completing”

28. DHC 3:180: replaces “them” with “the members of it”

duty in compliance to<sup>29</sup> the orders of their captains, he then called his captains together and taught them in a secluded place as follows:

My brethren, as you have been chosen to be our leading men, our Captains to rule over this last kingdom of Jesus Christ, who<sup>30</sup> have been organized after the ancient order; I have called<sup>31</sup> upon you here today to teach you, and instruct you, in the things that pertain to your duty, and to show you what your privileges are, and what they soon will be. Know ye not, brethren, that it soon will be your privileges<sup>32</sup> to take your respective companies and go out on a scout on the borders of the settlements and take to yourselves spoils of the goods of the ungodly gentiles[?] for it is written, the riches of the gentiles shall be consecrated to my people the house of Israel, and thus<sup>33</sup> waste away the gentiles by robbing and plundering them of their property, and in this way we will build up the kingdom of God, and roll forth the little stone that Daniel saw cut out of the mountain without hands,<sup>34</sup> until it shall fill<sup>35</sup> the whole earth.—For this is the very way that God destines to build up his kingdom in the last days. If any of us should be<sup>36</sup> recognized, who can harm us?—for we will stand by each other and defend one another in all things. If our enemies swear against us, we can swear also. [The captains were confounded at this, but Avard continued]. Why do you startle at this, brethren? As the Lord liveth, I would swear<sup>37</sup> a lie to clear any of you; and if this would not do, I would put them or him under the sand as Moses did the Egyptian, and in this way we will consecrate much unto the Lord, and build up his kingdom; and who can stand against us?—And if any of us transgress, we will deal with him amongst ourselves. And if any one of this Danite society reveals any of these things, I will put them<sup>38</sup> where the dogs *cannot bite them*<sup>39</sup>.

At this lecture all of the officers revolted, and said it would not do. They should not go into any such measures, and it would not do to name any such things<sup>40</sup>; [“]such proceedings would be in open violation of the laws of our country, and would be robbing our fellow citizens of their rights, and is<sup>41</sup> not according to the language and doctrine of Christ, or of the Church of Latter Day Saints.[”]<sup>42</sup>

This<sup>43</sup> modern Sampson<sup>44</sup> replied, and said there were no laws that were<sup>45</sup> executed in justice, and he cared not for them, this being a different dispensation, a dispensation of the fullness of times; <sup>46</sup>“in this dispensation I learn<sup>47</sup> from the scriptures that the kingdom of God was to put

---

29. DHC 3:180: replaces “in compliance to” with “under”

30. DHC 3:180: replaces “who” with “and you”

31. Book B-2, 769 (heavier ink): “<called>” (TB)

32. DHC 3:180: “privilege”

33. DHC 3:180: adds “you will”

34. DHC 3:180: adds “and roll forth”

35. DHC 3:180: replaces “shall fill” with “filled”

36. Book B-1, 844: “<be>” (TB)

37. DHC 3:180: adds “to”

38. DHC 3:181: replaces “them” with “him”

39. DHC 3:181: replaces “them” with “him”

40. DHC 3:181: “thing”

41. DHC 3:181: “are”

42. Quotation marks in DHC 3:181.

43. Book B-1, 844, Book B-2, 770: “The”

44. DHC 3:181: replaces “This modern Sampson” with “Avard”

45. Book B-1, 844, Book B-2, 770: “was no laws that was”; DHC 3:181: “was no laws that were”

46. Book B-1, 844, Book B-2, 770, DHC 3:181: omit quotation marks

47. DHC 3:181: replaces “I learn” with “he learned”

down all other kingdoms, and he<sup>48</sup> himself was to reign, and his laws alone was<sup>49</sup> the only<sup>50</sup> laws that would exist.”

Avard’s teachings were still manfully rejected by all. Avard then said that they had better drop the subject: although he had received his authority from Sidney Rigdon the evening before. The meeting then broke up; the eyes of those present were then<sup>51</sup> opened, his<sup>52</sup> craft was no longer in the dark, and but very little confidence was placed in him even by the warmest of the members of his Danite scheme<sup>53</sup>.

<sup>54</sup>When a knowledge of Avard’s rascality came to the Presidency of the Church, he was cut off from the church, and every means proper used to destroy his influence; at which he was highly incensed, and went about whispering his evil insinuations, but finding every effort unavailing, he again turned conspirator, and sought to make friends with the mob.

<sup>55</sup>And here let it be distinctly understood, that these companies of tens and fifties, got up by Avard, were altogether separate and distinct, from those companies of tens and fifties, organized by the brethren for self defense, in case of an attack from the mob, and<sup>56</sup> more particularly that in this time<sup>57</sup> of alarm no family or person might <sup>58</sup>be neglected; therefore, one company would be engaged in drawing wood, another in cutting it, another in gathering <sup>59</sup>corn, another in grinding, another in butchering, another in distributing meat, &c., &c., so that all should be employed in turn, and no one lack the necessities of life. Therefore, let no one hereafter, by mistake or design, confound this organization of the church for good and righteous purposes, with the organization of the Danites, of the apostate Avard, which died almost before it had existence<sup>60</sup>.

<sup>61</sup>The mob began to encamp at Richmond on the twenty-sixth, and by this time amounted to about two thousand five hundred<sup>62</sup>, all ready to fulfill the exterminating order, and join the standard of the Governor. They took up a line of march for Far West; traveling but part way, where they encamped for the night.

<sup>63</sup>Tuesday, [October] 30th. Their<sup>64</sup> advance guard <sup>65</sup>was<sup>66</sup> patrolling the country and taking many

---

48. DHC 3:181: replaces “he” with “the Lord”

49. DHC 3:181: “were”

50. DHC 3:181: omits “only”

51. DHC 3:181: omits “then”

52. DHC 3:181: replaces “his” with “Avard’s”

53. MCP, 8: replaces “scheme” with “lodge”; Book B-1, 844: “~~Lodge~~ <scheme>” (WB)

54. *Source*: This paragraph based on MCP, 10 (see transcription in vol. 8, III, 8). Cf. conference minutes for 17 Mar. 1839 in *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 15, where Avard was excommunicated.

55. *Source*: This paragraph apparently WR’s composition, which he wrote in RDft 1:32 about 21–24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

56. DHC 3:182: omits “and” and begins new sentence by adding “This latter organization was called into existence”

57. Book B-2, 770: “<time>” (prob. WB)

58. Book B-1, 844: adds “~~not~~”; Book B-2, 770: adds “not”

59. Book B-1, 844, Book B-2, 770: add “their”

60. DHC 3:182: “existed”

61. *Source*: Based on S. D. Lucas to L. W. Boggs, 2 Nov. 1838, in *DCCO*, 72, 74 (cf. DHC 3:195, 198).

62. DHC 3:182: omits “five hundred” and adds “and”

63. *Source*: The assault on Carey was reported in *AAP*, 34; *FREM*, 14 (*MRP*, 19); Memorial, 10 Dec. 1838 (DHC 3:222; chap. 15); Hyrum Smith Affidavit, 1 July 1843 (*T&S* 4:249; DHC 3:411). Cf. Nancy Cary, Affidavit, 6 May 1839 (*MRP*, 157).

64. DHC 3:182: replaces “Their” with “The”

65. DHC 3:182: adds “of the mob”

66. DHC 3:182: “were”



prisoners, among whom was<sup>67</sup> brother [Stephen] Winchester and brother Carey, whose skull they laid open by a blow from <sup>68</sup>a rifle barrel. In this mangled condition, the mob laid him in their wagon and went on their way, <sup>69</sup>denying him<sup>70</sup> every comfort, and thus he remained that afternoon<sup>71</sup> and night.

<sup>72</sup>General Clark was in camp at Chariton under a forced march to Richmond, with about a thousand men, and the Governor's *exterminating* order.

[DN 3 (29 October 1853): 1]

For the history of this day at Haun's Mills, on Shoal creek, I quote the following affidavit of Elder Joseph Young, First President of the Seventies:

<sup>73</sup>On the sixth day of July last: I started with my family from Kirtland, Ohio, for the state of Missouri, the county of Caldwell, in the upper part of the State, being the place of my destination.

On the thirteenth day<sup>74</sup> of October I crossed the Mississippi at Louisiana, at which place I heard vague reports of the disturbances in the upper country, but nothing that could be relied upon. I continued my course westward till I crossed Grand river, at a place called Compton's Ferry: at which place I heard, for the first time, that if I proceeded any farther on my journey, I would be in danger of being stopped by a body of armed men. I was not willing, however, while treading my native soil, and breathing republican air, to abandon my object, which was to locate myself and family in a fine, healthy country, where we could enjoy the society of our friends and connections. Consequently, I prosecuted my journey till I came to Whitney's Mills, situated on Shoal creek, in the eastern part of Caldwell county.

After crossing the creek and going about three miles, we met a party of the mob, about forty in number, armed with rifles, and mounted on horses, who informed us that we could go no farther west, threatening us with instant death if we proceeded any farther. I asked them the reason of this prohibition; to which they replied, that we were Mormons: that everyone who adhered to our religious faith, would have to leave the State in ten days, or *renounce* their religion. Accordingly they drove us back to the mills above mentioned.

Here we tarried three days; and, on Friday the twenty-sixth, we re-crossed the creek, and following up its banks, we succeeded in eluding the mob for the time being, and gained the residence of a friend in Myer's settlement.

On Sunday, twenty-eighth October, we arrived about twelve o'clock, at Haun's mills, where we found a number of our friends collected together, who were holding a council and deliberating upon<sup>75</sup> the best course for them to pursue, to defend themselves against the mob, who were collecting in the neighborhood, under the command of Col[onel]. Jennings, of

67. DHC 3:182: "were"

68. At this point in Book B-1, 844, there is a caret with an erased note above which may have been keyed to BY's Memoranda for Book B-1, 2 (vol. 7, III.3), which contemplated the insertion of the following: "with ~~the~~ his own gun after he had surrendered <it <unto> ~~to the my~~> This barbarous act was committed in the presence of Brig Genl Moses Wilson commander of the advance Guard ~~on~~ as testified by himself in the presence of Judge Duncan <Col Smith of Illa [Illinois?]> ~~Geo A Smith~~ and about 20 others ~~on board the~~" (WB).

69. Book B-1, 844: adds "and"; Book B-2, 771: adds erasure

70. Book B-2, 771 (darker ink) "<him>" (US)

71. Book B-1, 844: replaces "afternoon" with "P.M."

72. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 75-76.

73. *Source*: RDft 1:33 directs scribe to copy from *FREM*, 21-24. Cf. *AAP*, 38-41; *MRP*, 720-24.

74. *FREM*, 21, Book B-1, 845, Book B-2, 771: omit "day"

75. DHC 3:183: "on"

Livingston<sup>76</sup>, and threatening them with house burning and killing. The decision of the council was, that our friends there should place themselves in an attitude of self defense. Accordingly about 28 of our men armed themselves, and were in constant readiness for an attack of any small body of men that might come down upon them.

The same evening for some reason, best known to themselves, the mob sent one of their number to enter into a treaty with our friends, which was accepted, on the condition of mutual forbearance on both sides, and that each party, as far as their influence extended, should exert themselves to prevent any further hostilities upon either party.

At this time, however, there was another mob collecting on Grand River at William Mann's, who were threatening us, consequently we remained under arms.

Monday <sup>77</sup>passed away without molestation from any quarter.

On Tuesday, the 30th, that bloody tragedy was acted, the scenes of which I shall never forget, more than three-fourths of the day had passed in tranquility, as smiling as the preceding one. I think there was no individual of our company that was<sup>78</sup> apprized of the sudden and awful fate that hung over our heads like an overwhelming torrent, which was to change the prospects, the feelings, and circumstances of about thirty families. The banks of Shoal Creek on either side teemed with children sporting and playing, while their mothers were engaged in domestic employments, and their fathers employed in guarding the mills, and other property, while others were engaged in gathering in their crops for their winter consumption. The weather was very pleasant;—the sun shone clear—all was tranquil, and no one expressed any apprehension of the awful crisis that was near us—even at our doors.

It was about 4 o'clock, while sitting in my cabin with my babe in my arms, and my wife standing by my side, the door being open, I cast my eyes on the opposite bank of Shoal Creek, and saw a large company of armed men, on horses, directing their course towards the mills with all possible speed; as they advanced through the scattering trees that stood on the edge of the prairie they seemed to form themselves into a three<sup>79</sup> square position, forming a vanguard in front.

At this moment, David Evans, seeing the superiority of their numbers, (there being 240 of them, according to their own account,) swung his hat, and cried for peace. This not being heeded, they continued to advance, and their leader, Mr. Nehemiah<sup>80</sup> Comstock, fired a gun, which was followed by a solemn pause of ten or twelve seconds, when, all at once, they discharged about 100 rifles, aiming at a blacksmith's<sup>81</sup> shop into which our friends had fled for safety; and charging<sup>82</sup> up to the shop, the cracks of which between the logs were sufficiently large to enable them to aim directly at the bodies of those who had there fled for refuge from the fire of their murderers. There were several families tented in the rear of the shop, whose lives were exposed, and amidst a shower of bullets fled to the woods in different directions.

After standing and gazing on this bloody scene for a few minutes, and finding myself in the uttermost danger, the bullets having reached the house where I was living, I committed my family to the protection of heaven, and leaving the house on the opposite side, I took a path which led up the hill, following in the trail of three of my brethren that had fled from the shop. While ascending the hill, we were discovered by the mob, who immediately fired at us, and continued so to do till we reached the summit. In descending the hill, I secreted myself

---

76. DHC 3:183: adds "county"

77. *FREM*, 22, Book B-1, 845: "on Monday, the 29th, which"

78. Book B-2, 772 (darker ink): "<was>" (prob. TB)

79. Book B-2, 772 (darker ink): "<three>" (TB)

80. *FREM*, 22: omits "Nehemiah"; Book B-1, 846: "<[Nehemiah]>" (TB); incorporated in Book B-2, 772, without brackets.

81. *FREM*, 22, Book B-1, 846, Book B-2, 772: "blacksmith"

82. DHC 3:184: "charged"

in a thicket of bushes, where I lay till eight o'clock in the evening, at which time I heard a female voice calling my name in an under tone, telling me that the mob had gone and there was no danger. I immediately left the thicket, and went to the house of Benjamin Lewis, where I found my family (who had fled there) in safety, and two of my friends mortally wounded, one of whom died before morning. Here we passed the painful night in deep and awful reflections on the scenes of the preceding evening.

After daylight appeared, some four or five men, with myself who<sup>83</sup> had escaped with our lives from the horrid massacre, <sup>84</sup>repaired as soon as possible to the mills, to learn the condition of our friends, whose fate we had but too truly anticipated. When we arrived at the house of Mr. Hawn<sup>85</sup>, we found Mr. Merrick's body lying in <sup>86</sup>rear of the house, Mr. McBride's in front literally mangled from head to foot. We were informed by Miss Rebecca Judd, who was an eye witness, that he was shot with his own gun, after he had given it up, and then cut to pieces with a corn cutter by a Mr. Rogers of Daviess county, who keeps a ferry on Grand River, and who has since repeatedly boasted of this act of savage barbarity. Mr. York's body we found in the house, and after viewing these corpses, we immediately went to the blacksmith's shop, where we found nine of our friends, eight of whom were already dead; the other, Mr. Cox, of Indiana, struggling in the agonies of death, who<sup>87</sup> expired. We immediately prepared and carried them to the place of interment. This last office of kindness due to the<sup>88</sup> relics<sup>89</sup> of departed friends, was not attended with the customary ceremonies or<sup>90</sup> decency, for we were in jeopardy, every moment expecting to be fired upon by the mob, who, we supposed, were lying in ambush waiting for the first opportunity to despatch the remaining few who were providentially preserved from the slaughter of the preceding day. However, we accomplished without molestation this painful task. The place of burying was a vault in the ground formerly intended for a well, into which we threw the bodies of our friends promiscuously. Among those slain I will mention Sardius Smith, son of Warren Smith, about nine years old, who, through fear, had crawled under the bellows in the shop, where he remained till the massacre was over, when he was discovered by a Mr. Glaze, of Carroll county, who presented his rifle near the boy's head, and literally blew off the upper part of it. Mr. Stanley, of Carroll, told me afterwards that Glaze boasted of this fiend-like murder, and heroic deed all over the country.

<sup>91</sup>The number killed and mortally wounded in this wanton slaughter was 18 or 19, whose names as far as I recollect were as follows:—Thomas McBride, Levi [N.]<sup>92</sup> Merrick, Elias Benner, Josiah Fuller, Benjamin Lewis, Alexander Campbell, Warren Smith, Sardius Smith [aged 12 years,]<sup>93</sup> George S.<sup>94</sup> Richards, Mr. [William]<sup>95</sup> Napier, Mr. Augustine<sup>96</sup> Harmer, Mr.

---

83. DHC 3:185: omits "who"

84. DHC 3:185: adds "and who"

85. *FREM*, 23: "Honn"; Book B-1, 846, Book B-2, 772, DHC 3:185: "Haun"

86. DHC 3:185: adds "the"

87. DHC 3:185: replaces "who" with "and soon"

88. Book B-2, 773: "<the>"

89. DHC 3:185: replaces "relics" with "remains"

90. *FREM*, 23, Book B-1, 846: "nor"

91. Except where indicated, brackets in the following paragraph appear in Book B-1, 847, Book B-2, 773, *DN*, and DHC 3:186, but not in *FREM*, 23-24.

92. Book B-1, 847: "<[N.]>"; Book B-2 and DHC have "N." without brackets.

93. DHC 3:186: omits brackets and words

94. *FREM*, 23: omits "S."

95. DHC 3:186: "William" without brackets

96. *FREM*, 23: omits "Augustine"; Book B-1, 847 (pencil): "[Augustine] <Augustine>"; bracketed "Augustine" overwrites "Dustin" in pencil

[Simon]<sup>97</sup> Cox, Mr. [Hiram] Abbott, Mr. [John]<sup>98</sup> York, Charles<sup>99</sup> Merrick, (a boy eight or nine years old,) [John Lee, John Byers,] and three or four others, whose names I do not recollect, as they were strangers to me. Among the wounded who recovered were Isaac Laney, Nathan K. Knight, Mr. [William] Yokum, two brothers by the name of [Jacob and George] Myers, Tarlton Lewis, Mr. [Jacob] Hawn<sup>100</sup>, and several others, [Jacob Foutz, Jacob Potts, Charles Jimison, John Walker, Alma Smith, aged about 9 years<sup>101</sup>,] Miss Mary Stedwell, while fleeing, was shot through the hand, and fainting, fell over a log, into which they shot upwards of twenty balls.

To finish their work of destruction, this band of murderers composed of men from Davies[s], Livingston, Ray, Carroll and Chariton counties, led by some of the principal men of that section of the upper country, (among whom I am informed were Mr. Ashby, of Chariton, member of the State Legislature, Col[onel]. Jennings, of Livingston county, Thomas O. Bryon, Clerk of Livingston county, Mr. Whitney, Dr. Randall, and many others,) proceeded to rob the houses, wagons, and tents, of bedding and clothing, drove off horses and wagons, leaving widows and orphans destitute of the necessities of life, and even stripped the clothing from the bodies of the slain! According to their own account, they *fired seven* rounds in this awful butchery, making <sup>102</sup>upwards of sixteen hundred shots at a little company of men, about thirty in number. I hereby certify the above to be a true statement of facts according to the best of my knowledge.

JOSEPH YOUNG.

STATE OF ILLINOIS,        }  
COUNTY OF ADAMS.        } ss.

I hereby certify that Joseph Young this day came before me, and made oath in due form of law, that the statements contained in the foregoing sheets<sup>103</sup> are true according to the best of his<sup>104</sup> knowledge and belief. In testimony whereof I have hereunto set my hand and affixed the seal of the Circuit Court at Quincy, this fourth day of June, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and thirty-nine.

C. M. WOODS,  
Clerk Circuit Court, Adams Co., Ill.

<sup>105</sup>[A younger brother of the boy here killed, aged eight, was shot through the hip. The little fellow himself states, that seeing his father and brother both killed, he thought they would shoot him again if he stirred, and so feigned himself dead, and lay perfectly still, till he heard his mother call him after dark.]

<sup>106</sup>Nathan K. Knight saw a Missourian cut down <sup>107</sup>McBride with a corn-cutter, and also saw

97. DHC 1:186: "Simon" without brackets

98. DHC 1:186: "John" without brackets

99. *FREM*, 24: replaces "Charles" with "Wm"

100. *FREM*, 24: "Honn"; DHC 3:186: "Haun"

101. Book B-1, 847, Book B-2, 773: add "old"

102. Book B-2, 773: "{œ}"

103. DHC 3:186: "sheet"

104. Book B-2, 774 (darker ink): "<his>" (prob. TB)

105. *Source*: *FREM*, 24. Brackets in Book B-1, 847, Book B-2, 774, and *DN*, but not in DHC 3:186-87.

106. *Source*: Based on Nathan K. Knight, Affidavit, 13 Apr. 1839, in MC, fd 17 (*MRP*, 260). In the portion of the MS Affidavit quoted in MSHjS, first person is consistently emended to third person, apparently in preparation for copying. RDft 1:33 does not include Knight's account, but instructs: "(in cor[r]ecting the a<bove> see Nathan K. Knight and other statements)."

107. DHC 3:187: adds "Father"

them stripping the dying, and heard the boys crying for mercy. Brother Knight made his escape across the mill-dam, after receiving his<sup>108</sup> wounds through his lungs and finger. After the massacre was over, he was led to a house by a woman, and whilst lying under his wounds<sup>109</sup>, he heard Mr. Jesse<sup>110</sup> Maupin say that he blew one of the boys' brains out,<sup>111</sup> and one day<sup>112</sup> whilst walking the streets of Far West he<sup>113</sup> was met by three Missourians who threatened to butcher him, and one of them by the name of Rogers drew a butcher knife, and said that he had not got his corn-cutter with him, that he cut down McBride with, ["]but by Jesus<sup>114</sup> I have got something that will do as well["]; but by a great chance he<sup>115</sup> made his escape from the ruffian<sup>116</sup>.

<sup>117</sup>General Atchison withdrew from the army at Richmond as soon as the Governor's extermination order was received; although<sup>118</sup> up to this time we were ignorant at Far West of the movements of the mob at Richmond and the Governor's order of extermination.

<sup>119</sup>On the 30th of October a large company of armed soldiery<sup>120</sup> were seen approaching Far West. They came up near to the town, and then drew back about a mile, and encamped for the night. We were informed that they were militia, ordered out by the Governor for the purpose of stopping our proceedings, it having been represented to his Excellency by wicked and designing men from Davies[s] that we were the aggressors, and had committed outrages in Davies[s]<sup>121</sup>, &c. They had not yet got the Governor's order of *extermination*, which I believe did not arrive till the next day.

<sup>122</sup>Wednesday, [October] 31st. The militia of Far West guarded the city the past night, and threw up<sup>123</sup> a temporary fortification of wagons, timber, &c., on the South. The sisters, many of them, were engaged in gathering up their most valuable effects, fearing a terrible battle in the morning, and that the houses might be fired, and they obliged to flee, the enemy being<sup>124</sup> five to one against us.

<sup>125</sup>About eight o'clock a flag<sup>126</sup> was sent<sup>127</sup> which was met by several of our people, and it was hoped that matters would be satisfactorily arranged after the officers had heard a true statement of all

---

108. DHC 3:187: omits "his"

109. DHC 3:187: replaces "under his wounds" with "there wounded"

110. MS Affidavit: omits "Jesse"; Book B-1, 847: "<Jesse>" (TB)

111. MS Affidavit adds: "After I recovered of my wounds so as to be able to walk out I was way laid and had two ball holes shot through my blanket after which I was carried to Far west."

112. DHC 3:187: replaces "and one day" with "Some time later" and begins new sentence

113. DHC 3:187: replaces "he" with "Brother Knight"

114. DHC 3:187: replaces "Jesus" with a long dash

115. DHC 3:187: replaces "he" with "Brother Knight"

116. MS Affidavit: omits "from the ruffian"

117. *Source*: First sentence based on S. D. Lucas to L. W. Boggs, 2 Nov. 1838, in *DCCO*, 72 (cf. DHC 3:196).

118. DHC 3:187: omits "although"

119. *Source*: "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 5, which dates to 28 Oct. 1838. Cf. JS's Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839 (DHC 3:371; chap. 24).

120. DHC 3:187: "soldiers"

121. DHC 3:187: adds "county"

122. *Source*: APRj, 17-18 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 24-25; transcription in vol. 8, III.17). Cf. *LP*, 79 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

123. DHC 3:188: replaces "threw up" with "arranged"

124. DHC 3:188: replaces "being" with "was"

125. *Source*: First sentence based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 5. Remainder of paragraph from *DCCO*, 73, which is taken from S. D. Lucas to L. W. Boggs, 2 Nov. 1838, quoted at the end of this chapter.

126. DHC 3:188: adds "of truce"

127. DHC 3:188: adds "from the enemy"

the circumstances. Colonel Hinkle went to meet the flag, and secretly made an<sup>128</sup> engagement—1st, To give up their [the Church]<sup>129</sup> leaders to be tried and punished. 2d, To make an appropriation of their<sup>130</sup> property, <sup>131</sup>all who had taken up arms, to<sup>132</sup> the payment of their debts, and indemnify for <sup>133</sup>damage done by them. 3d, That the balance<sup>134</sup> <sup>135</sup>should leave the State, and be protected out<sup>136</sup> by the militia, but <sup>137</sup>to be permitted to remain under protection, until further orders were received from the Commander-in-Chief. 4th, To give up the<sup>138</sup> arms of every description, to<sup>139</sup> be receipted for.

<sup>140</sup>The enemy was reinforced by about one thousand five hundred men today, and news of the destruction of property by the mob reached us from every quarter.

<sup>141</sup>Towards evening I was waited upon<sup>142</sup> by Colonel Hinkle, who stated that the officers of the militia desired to have an interview with me, and some others, hoping that the difficulties might be settled without having occasion to carry into effect the exterminating orders, which they had received from the Governor. I immediately complied with the request, and in company with Elders [Sidney] Rigdon and [Parley P.] Pratt, Colonel Wight and George W. Robinson, went into the camp of the militia. But judge of my surprise, when, instead of being treated with that respect which is due from one citizen to another, we were taken as prisoners of war, and were<sup>143</sup> treated with the utmost contempt. The officers would not converse with us, and the soldiers, almost to a man, insulted us as much as they felt disposed, breathing out threats against me and my companions. <sup>144</sup>I cannot begin to tell the scene which I there witnessed. The loud cries and yells of more than one thousand voices, which rent the air and could be heard for miles, and the horrid and blasphemous threats and curses which were poured upon us in torrents, were enough to appall the stoutest heart; in the evening we had to lie down on the cold ground surrounded by a strong guard, who were only kept back by the power of God from depriving us of life. We petitioned the officers to know why we were thus treated, but they utterly refused to give us any answer, or to converse with us.

<sup>145</sup>After we arrived in the camp, brother Stephen Winchester and eleven other brethren who were prisoners, volunteered, with permission of the officers, to carry brother Carey into the city to his family, <sup>146</sup>having lain exposed to the weather for a show to the inhuman wretches, without

---

128. Book B-2, 774: “an{y}”; DHC 3:188: replaces “an” with “the following”

129. Brackets in Book B-1, 848, Book B-2, 774, and *DN*; DHC 3:188: “[the Church’s]”

130. DHC 3:188: replaces “their” with “the”

131. DHC 3:188: adds “of”

132. DHC 3:188: replaces “to” with “for”

133. DHC 3:188: adds “the”

134. DHC 3:188: replaces “balance” with “remainder”

135. DHC 3:188: adds “of the Saints”

136. DHC 3:188: replaces “out” with “while doing so”

137. DHC 3:188: adds “they were”

138. DHC 3:188: replaces “the” with “their”

139. DHC 3:188: replaces “to” with “which would”

140. *Source*: APRj, 17–18 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 24–25; transcription in vol. 8, III.17). Cf. S. D. Lucas to L. W. Boggs, 2 Nov. 1838, in *DCCO*, 73 (DHC 3:196).

141. *Source*: “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 5.

142. Book B-2, 775: “up\on/”

143. DHC 3:189: omits “were”

144. Book B-2, 775: adds ellipses over erasure of about five words

145. *Source*: Undetermined.

146. DHC 3:190: adds “he”



having his wounds<sup>147</sup> dressed, or nourished in any manner. He died soon after he reached home.

<sup>148</sup>Thursday, November 1st, Brother<sup>149</sup> Hyrum Smith and Amasa Lyman, were brought prisoners into camp. They<sup>150</sup> held a court martial, and sentenced us to be shot, on Friday morning, on the Public Square<sup>151</sup>, as an ensample<sup>152</sup> to the Mormons. However, notwithstanding their sentence and determination, they were not permitted to carry their murderous sentence into execution. Having an opportunity of speaking to General Wilson, I inquired of him the cause<sup>153</sup> why I was thus treated. I told him I was not sensible<sup>154</sup> of having done anything worthy of such treatment; that I had always been a supporter of the Constitution and of Democracy. His answer was, "I know it, and that is the reason why I want to kill you, or have you killed."

The militia then<sup>155</sup> went into the town, and without any restraint whatever, plundered the houses, and abused the innocent and unoffending inhabitants. They went to my house, and drove my family out of doors. They<sup>156</sup> carried away most of my property, and left many destitute<sup>157</sup>. <sup>158</sup>General Doniphan declared he would have nothing to do with such cold-blooded murder, and that he would withdraw his brigade in the morning.

Governor Boggs wrote General Clark from Jefferson City, that he considered full and ample powers were vested in him <sup>159</sup>to carry into effect the former orders; says Boggs,

<sup>160</sup>**Executive Department,  
City of Jefferson,  
Nov. 1st, 1833.**

**Maj. Gen. John B. Clark.**

**Sir:—Your communication, by express, of Oct. 30th, enclosing one from Maj. Gen. Atchison and Lucas, of the 28th Oct. has been received. It is impossible for me to leave here; the near approach of the meeting of the Legislature, renders it necessary that every moment of my time be employed in preparation to meet them. It was considered by me that full and ample powers were vested in you to carry into effect my former orders.** The case is now a very plain one—the Mormons must be subdued, and peace restored to the community; you will therefore proceed without delay to execute the former orders. Full confidence is reposed in your ability to do so; your force will be amply sufficient to accomplish the object. Should you need the aid of artillery, I would suggest that an application be made to the commanding officer of Fort Leavenworth, for such as you may need. You are authorized to

147. DHC 3:190: "wound"

148. *Source*: Following two paragraphs (except first and last sentences) based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 5–6. Lyman Wight mentions Hyrum Smith and Amasa Lyman being brought into the camp (see DHC 3:446; vol. 5, chap. 24).

149. DHC 3:190: "Brothers"

150. DHC 3:190: replaces "They" with "The officers of the militia"

151. DHC 3:190: adds "of Far West"

152. DHC 3:190: replaces "an ensample" with "a warning"

153. DHC 3:191: omits "the cause"

154. DHC 3:191: replaces "sensible" with "aware"

155. DHC 3:191: omits "then"

156. DHC 3:191: omits "They" and continues previous sentence

157. DHC 3:191: moves "and left many destitute" to the end of the first sentence in paragraph

158. *Source*: On Doniphan's refusal to participate in the execution, see JSj [1842–43], 15–16 (WR) (*APR*, 261); *FREM*, 25; *LP*, 82 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9); *HiLP*, 21–22.

159. DHC 3:192: adds "[Clark]"

160. *Source*: *DCCO*, 76–77.



request the loan of it in the name of the State<sup>161</sup> of Missouri. **My presence then could effect nothing. I therefore again repeat that you are authorized, and full power is given you to take whatever steps you deem necessary and such as the circumstances of the case may seem to demand to subdue the insurgents and give peace and quiet to the country.** The ringleaders of this rebellion should be made an example of; and if it should become necessary for the public peace, the Mormons should be exterminated, or expelled from the state. **In order that no difficulty may arise in relation to the command, I must inform you that neither General Atchison or Lucas have been called into service under the late order (except Gen. Lucas was directed to raise four hundred men in his Division, and to place them under the command of a Brigadier General.) The privilege was offered him of commanding the troops from his own Division, though subject to your orders. All the troops now under arms, and those that may arrive at the seat of war are placed under your command.**

**You will report to me by express, and keep me regularly informed of any thing of importance which may occur. The near approach of winter requires that your operations should be hastened. After having restored quiet, you will cause the people of Daviess county, who have been driven from their homes, to be reinstated.**

I am respectfully,

Your ob't serv't,

L. W. BOGGS, Commander-in-Chief.

<sup>162</sup>This morning General Lucas ordered the Caldwell militia to give up their arms. <sup>163</sup>Hinkle, having made a treaty with the mob on his own responsibility, to carry out his treachery, marched the troops out of the city, and the brethren gave up their arms, their own property, which no government on earth had a right to require.

The mob (called Governor's troops) then marched into town, and under pretense of searching for arms, tore up floors, upset haystacks, plundering<sup>164</sup> the most valuable effects they could lay their hands on, and<sup>165</sup> wasted and destroyed a great amount of property which could do themselves no good,<sup>166</sup> compelled the brethren to sign deeds of trust at the point of the bayonet<sup>167</sup>, to pay the expenses of the mob even while the chastity of the place was desecrated<sup>168</sup>; about eighty men were taken prisoners, the remainder were ordered to leave the State, and <sup>169</sup>were forbid to be more than three in a place, and if they were, the mob would shoot at them<sup>170</sup>.

<sup>171</sup>Friday, [November] 2d, About this time Sampson Avard was found by the mob secreted in the hazel brush some miles from Far West, and brought into camp, where <sup>172</sup>they were "hail fellows, well

---

161. Book B-1, 849: "<of the State>" (TB)

162. *Source*: Following two paragraphs (except second sentence) based on *AAP*, 37. Cf. *LP*, 84, or *HiLP*, 22, and *DCCO*, 74-75; *DHC* 3:198.

163. Remainder of paragraph added interlinearly by TB in Book B-1, 849.

164. *DHC* 3:192: "plundered"

165. *DHC* 3:192: replaces "and" with "wantonly"

166. *DHC* 3:192: omits "which could do themselves no good"

167. *DHC* 3:192: moves "at the point of the bayonet" to follow "brethren"

168. *DHC* 3:192: "while the place was desecrated by the chastity of women being violated"

169. Book B-1, 849: adds "the remainder of the citizens"

170. *DHC* 3:192: "were forbidden, under threat of being shot by the mob to assemble more than three in a place"

171. *Source*: Based on *MCP*, 8, 9 (see transcription in vol. 8, III, 8).

172. *DHC* 3:192: adds "he and"

met,” for Avard told them that Daniteism was an order of the Church, and by his lying, tried to make the Church a scape-goat for his sins.

<sup>173</sup>We<sup>174</sup> were taken to the town, into the public square, and before our departure from Far West<sup>175</sup>, we, after much entreaties<sup>176</sup>, were suffered to see our families, being attended all the while with<sup>177</sup> a strong guard; I found my wife and children in tears, who expected<sup>178</sup> we were<sup>179</sup> shot by those who had sworn to take our lives, and that they should<sup>180</sup> see me no more. When I entered my house they clung to my garments, their eyes streaming with tears, while mingled emotions of joy and sorrow were manifest in their countenances. I requested to have a private interview with them a few minutes, but this privilege was denied me<sup>181</sup>. I was then obliged to take my departure, but<sup>182</sup> who can realize my<sup>183</sup> feelings which I experienced at that time, to be<sup>184</sup> torn from my companion, and leaving<sup>185</sup> her surrounded with monsters in the shape of men, and my children, too, not knowing how their wants would be supplied; <sup>186</sup>to be taken far from them in order that my enemies might destroy me when they thought proper to do so. <sup>187</sup>My partner wept, my children clung to me, and<sup>188</sup> were only<sup>189</sup> thrust from me by the swords of the guards who guarded me<sup>190</sup>. I felt overwhelmed while I witnessed the scene, and could only recommend them to the care of that God whose kindness had followed<sup>191</sup> me to the present time, and who alone could protect them, and deliver me<sup>192</sup> from the hands of my enemies, and restore me to my family.

<sup>193</sup>I was then<sup>194</sup> taken back to the camp and then I<sup>195</sup> with the rest of my brethren, namely, Sidney Rigdon, Hyrum Smith, Parley P. Pratt, Lyman Wight, Amasa Lyman, and George W. Robinson, were<sup>196</sup> started off for Independence, Jackson county, and encamped at night on Crooked River, under a strong guard commanded by Generals Lucas and Wilson.<sup>197</sup>

---

173. Source: Following two paragraphs from “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 6.

174. DHC 3:193: replaces “We” with “Myself and fellow prisoners”

175. DHC 3:193: omits “from Far West”

176. DHC 3:193: “entreaty”

177. DHC 3:193: replaces “with” with “by”

178. DHC 3:193: replaces “expected” with “feared”

179. DHC 3:193: replaces “were” with “had been”

180. DHC 3:193: “would”

181. DHC 3:193: adds “by the guard”

182. DHC 3:193: omits “but” and starts new sentence

183. DHC 3:193: replaces “my” with “the”

184. DHC 3:193: adds “thus”

185. DHC 3:193: “leave”

186. DHC 3:193: adds “while I was”

187. Cf. next sentence with JSj [1842–43], 15 (WR) (*APR*, 261).

188. DHC 3:193: replaces “and” with “until they”

189. DHC 3:193: omits “only”

190. DHC 3:193: omits “who guarded me”

191. Book B-2, 776 (darker ink): “<had followed>” (TB)

192. Book B-2, 776 (darker ink): “{\me/}” (TB)

193. DHC 3:194: adds “After this painful scene”

194. DHC 3:194: omits “then”

195. DHC 3:194: omits “then I”

196. DHC 3:194: omits “were”

197. Book B-2, 776 (pencil): adds note at bottom of page: “See P. P. Pratt’s article of Nov. 7, 1853, *D. News*, Vol. 3, No. 21[.] Historical item belonging to about this date” (WB). PPP’s letter, dated 7 Nov. 1853, in *DN* (12 Nov. 1853):

## [DN 3 (12 November 1853): 1]

<sup>198/199</sup>November 2d.<sup>200</sup>—The following letter gives the particulars relating to the movements of the Governor's troops in conjunction with the<sup>201</sup> mob:

<sup>202</sup>Headquarters, Camp near Far West,  
November 2d 1838.

To his Excellency L. W. Boggs, Commander-in-Chief, Mo. Mi[litia].—

Sir: On Monday, October 29th, the troops ordered out by Major-General Atchison and myself, (as per our report to you of said date,) took up their line of march from camp near Richmond, for Far West. We encamped the night of the 29th at Linville's Creek, (a short distance from the road) about sixteen miles from Far West, at which point we received an express from Brig[adier].-Gen[eral]. Doniphan, informing us that he was then encamped on Log Creek with a force of five hundred men, and that he would join us at the crossing of said creek, on the road from Richmond to Far West by 10 o'clock <sup>203</sup>the next morning.

On the 30th of October, the troops got together at the last named point, when we mustered about eighteen hundred men. Whilst at this place we received your orders of the 26th ult[imo]., and I received an order of the 27th ult[imo]., and a letter from you of the same date. At this point Major-General Atchison left me for Liberty, when I was left in sole command. **Before leaving Long Creek, I received information that a body of Mormons, two hundred in number, called Danites, had been seen about two hours previous near the route that we had passed. Upon receiving this intelligence, I ordered a detachment of two companies from the respective commands of Brig. Wilson, Doniphan, Parks and Graham, General Wilson, with instructions to intercept, and if possible to cut off their retreat to Far West.** I then took up my line of march for Goose Creek, one mile south of Far West, which point we reached about one hour by sun in the evening. Just as the troops were encamping, I received intelligence from General Doniphan, from his position on the right, that he had discovered a party of mounted Mormons approaching Far West from the East, and requested permission to intercept them, if possible. Leave was granted, and his brigade started off at nearly full speed to accomplish the order, but the Mormons succeeded in reaching the fort. Gen[eral]. Doniphan approached within two hundred yards of their fortress, when they displayed a force of about eight hundred [150]<sup>204</sup> men. At this juncture, I ordered General Graham's brigade (holding Gen[eral]. Parks' and part of Gen[eral]. Wilson's mounted in reserve) to march full speed to the relief of the First Brigade, Third Division, but from the inequality of the force of the first detachment, (being only two hundred and fifty strong at that time, and the Mormons 800) [150]<sup>205</sup> it was considered prudent to withdraw the troops, and march against them in the morning, which was accordingly done, and they all returned, as dark set in, to camp. At this place I established

---

[3], recounts JS's prediction that none of the prisoners would die in captivity and his dramatic rebuke of the verbally abusive guards, which BHR quoted from the nearly-identical version in Pratt's Autobiography (Pratt 1876, 210, 228–30; cf. DHC 3:200n, 208n).

198. Book C-2, 1: adds "1838"

199. Handwriting of WB ends in Book B-2, 776; FDR's begins in Book C-2, 1, and continues to p. 156 (vol. 4, chap. 4).

200. DHC 3:195: omits date

201. Book C-1, 850: "<troops in conjunction with the>" (WR)

202. *Source*: DCCO, 72–75. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

203. DCCO, 72, Book C-1, 850: add "a.m."; Book C-2, 1: adds ellipses over erasure

204. Brackets in Book C-1, Book C-2, DN, and DHC, but not in DCCO, 73; Book C-1, 851: "<[150]>" (TB)

205. Brackets in Book C-1, 851, Book C-2, 2, DN, and DHC, but not in DCCO, 73.

my headquarters, and continued there during the expedition against the Mormons. The detachment under General Wilson returned about 9 o'clock p.m.

The next morning, 31st of October, I received a message from Col[onel]. Hinkle, the commander of the Mormon forces, [Caldwell militia]<sup>206</sup>, requesting an interview with me, on an eminence near Far West, which he would designate by hoisting a white flag. I sent him word I would meet him at 2 o'clock p.m., being so much engaged in receiving and encamping fresh troops, who were hourly coming in, that I could not attend before. Accordingly at that time, I started with my staff officers and Brig[adier].-Gen[eral]s. Wilson, Doniphan and<sup>207</sup> Graham, Gen[eral]. Parks being left in command. We met him and some other Mormons at the point before mentioned. He stated that his object in asking me to meet him there, was to know if there could not be some compromise or settlement of the difficulty without a resort to arms.

After giving him to understand the nature of your orders, I made him the following propositions, which I furnished him a copy of, also a copy of your order, viz.:

1st, To give up their [the Church]<sup>208</sup> leaders to be tried and punished.

2d, To make an appropriation of their property, all who have taken up arms, to the payment of their debts, and indemnify for damage<sup>209</sup> done by them.

3d, That the balance should leave the State, and be protected out by the militia, but to be permitted to remain under protection until further orders were received<sup>210</sup> from the Commander-in-Chief.

4th, To give up the arms of every description, to be receipted for.

Col[onel]. Hinkle agreed to the proposition readily, but wished to postpone the matter until morning. I then told him that I would require Jos[eph]. Smith, Jr., Sidney Rigdon, Lyman Wight, Parley P.<sup>211</sup> Pratt, and George W. Robinson, as hostages<sup>212</sup> for his faithful compliance with the terms, and would pledge myself and each one of the officers present, that in case he, after reflecting and consulting upon the proposition during the night, declined acceding to them, that the hostages should be returned to him in the morning, at the same point they were received, but it was understood in case they did comply, they were to be held for trial as part of the leaders called for by the first stipulation; I then gave him until one hour by sun in the evening to produce and deliver them. We then returned to camp, and I directed the troops to make preparations to march to Far West by an hour and a half by <sup>213</sup>sun, with a determination in case the hostages were not produced, to make an attack upon the town forthwith.

I directed Gen[eral]. Parks' Brigade to be mounted, and to form on the right of the Division, to act as flankers if necessary, and if required to pass entirely around the town, and form on the north side, with instructions to make the attack at the report of the cannon, which was to be the signal for the general attack. General Graham's Brigade was mounted, and formed on the extreme left to act as flankers, and if required to form the line on the west side, with similar instructions as to the commencement of the attack.

Gen[eral]. Doniphan's Brigade was ordered to parade on foot, and to form on the left of Gen[eral]. Parks, with instructions to form **on the east side, with similar orders relative to attack. Gen. Wilson's Brigade was ordered to parade on foot, and to form on the left**

206. Brackets in Book C-1, 851, Book C-2, 2, *DN*, and *DHC*, but not in *DCCO*, 73.

207. Book C-2, 2: "<and>" (*FDR*)

208. Brackets in Book C-1, 851, Book C-2, 2, *DN*, and *DHC*, but not in *DCCO*, 73; *DHC* 3:196: "[the Church's]"

209. *DHC* 3:196: "damages"

210. Book C-2, 2 (darker ink): "<received>" (*TB*)

211. *DCCO*, 73: omits "P."; Book C-1, 851: "<P>"

212. *DHC* 3:197: "hostage"

213. *DHC* 3:197: adds "the"

**of Gen. Doniphan, with instructions to form**<sup>214</sup> the line of battle on the south side, with<sup>215</sup> same instructions as to commencement of attack.

The artillery company, with one piece of ordnance, was placed at the head of Gen[eral]. Doniphan's and Gen[eral]. Wilson's Brigade, with instructions to occupy an eminence within three hundred yards of the town.

The army being disposed of in this manner, at the appointed time I took up the line of march in direction of Far West. When the troops got within about six hundred yards, I discovered the flag and the hostages advancing. I immediately halted the army, and rode out and met them, received the hostages, and placed a guard over them for their safety and protection, and ordered the forces back to our encampment. I cannot forbear, at this point, expressing my gratification and approbation of the good conduct and gallant<sup>216</sup> bravery evinced by all the officers and men under my command. They marched up with as much determination and deliberation as old veterans—not knowing but that the charge would be sounded every moment for surrounding the town. There was no noise or confusion, nothing but an eager anxiety upon the countenance of every man to get at the work.

When the hostages were received, the troops, with some slight exceptions, marched back in profound†<sup>217</sup> silence.<sup>218</sup> [“The wicked flee when no man pursueth.” This saying was truly verified in the first retreat of this army—they fled precipitately through fear, and a great proportion of the men were anxious to get back to the creek, where they could dispense with some of their clothing and wash themselves in the water.

\*“Gallant bravery” that some thousands of men should be so anxious to wash their hands in the blood of 500 poor Saints. I claim not the honor of commanding such a brave army.

†“Profound silence.” It might have been silence to the General for aught I know; for the shoutings, bellowings and yells of this army of mobocrats was sufficient to deafen any one, not guarded by some higher Spirit, and could only be equaled in the savage war whoop, and the yells of the damned.]<sup>219</sup>

November 1st.—I ordered the whole forces, amounting to 2500 men, to parade at 9 o'clock a.m., and to take up the line of march for Far West, at half-past 9 o'clock, to receive the prisoners and their arms.

The troops marched out and formed in the prairie about 200 yards southeast of the town. Gen[eral]. Wilson's Brigade formed the west line, Gen[eral]. Doniphan's the east line, Gen[eral]. Graham's and Gen[eral]. Parks' the south line, with the artillery company and the cannon in the center of the two latter, leaving one side of the square open.

The Mormon army reduced to about 600 men by desertion and otherwise, under their commander, Col[onel]. Hinkle, marched out of their town, through the space into our square, formed a hollow square, and grounded their arms. Col[onel]. Hinkle then rode forward and delivered up to me his sword and pistols.

I then directed a company from the respective Brigades to form a front, rear, right and left, flank guards, and to march the prisoners back to Far West, and protect and take charge of them until the next morning. I then detailed a company from Gen[eral]. Doniphan's command,

214. Bolded text apparently omitted through haplography.

215. DHC 3:197: adds “the”

216. Asterisk keyed to a note located two paragraphs below.

217. Cross keyed to a note located two paragraphs below.

218. Bracketed material in Book C-1, 852, Book C-2, 3, and DN, but not in DCCO, 74; DHC 3:198: moves the remainder of this and following two editorial paragraphs to footnotes.

219. At this point, Book C-1, 852: adds ellipses apparently over an erasure of about half a line at *coln*. The revisers made a note for this emendation on 29 July 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

to take charge of the arms. Then, in order to gratify the army, and to let the Mormons see our forces, marched around the town, and through the principal streets, and back to headquarters.

Considering the war at an end in this place, I issued orders for Gen[eral]. Doniphan's Brigade, with the exception of one company, and Gen[eral]. Graham's Brigade, to take up their line of march for their respective headquarters, and dismiss their men, and directed Gen[eral]. Wilson to take charge of the prisoners (demanded for trial) and arms, and to march them to my headquarters at Independence, to await further orders, and to dismiss all except a guard for the prisoners and arms.

November 2nd. I relieved the guard placed over the prisoners at Far West by four companies of Gen[eral]. Parks' Brigade, and placed them under the command of Col[onel]. Thompson, 2d Brig[ade]., 3d Div[ision]., with instructions to report to General Clark. The balance of Gen[eral]. Parks' Brigade, with Capt[ain]. Gilliam's<sup>220</sup> company of Gen[eral]. Doniphan's Brigade, under the command of General Parks, I ordered to Adam-ondi-Ahman, a Mormon town in Davies[s] county, with instructions to disarm the Mormon forces at that place, and to leave a guard of fifty men for the protection of prisoners, and to report to Gen[eral]. Clark.

In order to carry the treaty and stipulation into effect, I have required your aid-de-camp, Col[onel]. Williams, together with Col[onel]. Burch and Major A. Rees, of Ray, to attend to drawing up<sup>221</sup> the papers legally, and directed Col[onel]. Thompson to wait on them with a portion of his command, and to cause all their orders and requirements consistent with the stipulations to be carried into effect.

This day about 12 o'clock there was a battalion of one hundred men from Platte arrived at Far West, which I ordered back, having understood that Maj[or].-Gen[eral]. Clark would be on in a day or two, with sufficient force to operate in Davies[s] and Livingston, and for any service that may be required.

**I have the honor to be**

**Most respectfully,**

SAMUEL D. LUCAS,

Major-General, Commanding.

---

220. DHC 3:199: "Gilliam's"

221. DCCO, 74: adds "all"





14.

## JOSEPH SMITH ARRESTED

November–December 1838

[DN 3 (12 November 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Saturday, 3d.—We continued our march and arrived at the Missouri river, which separated us from Jackson county, where we were hurried across the ferry when but few troops had passed. The truth was, General Clark had sent an express from Richmond to General Lucas, to have the prisoners sent to him, and thus prevent our going to Jackson county, both armies being competitors for the honor of possessing “the royal prisoners.” Clark wanted the privilege of putting us to death himself, and Lucas and his troops were desirous of exhibiting us in the streets of Independence.

<sup>2</sup>Sunday, 4.—We were visited by some ladies and gentlemen. One of the women came up and very candidly inquired of the troops<sup>3</sup> which of the prisoners was the Lord whom the Mormons worshiped? One of the guard pointed to me with a significant smile, and said, “this is he.” The woman then turning to me, inquired whether I professed to be the<sup>4</sup> Lord and Savior? I replied, that I professed to be nothing but a man, and a minister of salvation sent by Jesus Christ to preach the Gospel.

This answer so surprised the woman, that she began to inquire into our doctrine, and I preached a discourse, both to her and her companions, and to the wondering soldiers, who listened with almost breathless attention while I set forth the doctrine of Faith in Jesus Christ and repentance, and baptism for remission of sins, with the promise of the Holy Ghost, as recorded in the second chapter of the Acts of the Apostles.

The woman was satisfied, and praised God in the hearing of the soldiers, and went away, praying that God would protect and deliver us. Thus was fulfilled a prophecy which had been spoken publicly by me, a few months previous; that a sermon should be preached in Jackson county by one of our Elders, before the close of 1838.

<sup>5</sup>The troops having crossed the river about 10 o’clock, we proceeded on and arrived at Independence, past noon, in the midst of great rain, and a multitude of spectators who had assembled to see us, and hear

---

1. *Source*: Based on *LP*, 88–89 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

2. *Source*: Following three paragraphs from *LP*, 89–91 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9). Changed to first person.

3. Book C-2, 4: “<of the troops>” (FDR)

4. *LP*, 90, Book C-1, 853, Book C-2, 4: omit “the”

5. *Source*: This paragraph summarizes *LP*, 91–92 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

the bugles sound a blast of triumphant joy, which echoed through the camp as<sup>6</sup> we were ushered into a vacant house prepared for our reception, with a floor for our beds, and blocks of wood for our pillows.

<sup>7</sup>General Clark arrived at Far West with one thousand six hundred men, and five hundred more were within eight miles of the city.

Thus, Far West has been visited by six thousand men in one week, when the militia of the city (before any were taken prisoners,) amounted only to about five hundred, whose arms having been secured<sup>8</sup>, the mob continued to hunt the brethren like wild beasts, and shoot<sup>9</sup> several, ravished the women, and killed one near the city; no Saint is<sup>10</sup> permitted to go in or out of the city, and <sup>11</sup>they<sup>12</sup> lived on parched corn.

<sup>13</sup>Gen[eral]. Clark ordered General Lucas<sup>14</sup>, who had previously gone to Adam-on-di-Ahman with his troops “to take the whole of the men of the Mormons prisoners; and place such a guard around them and the town as will protect the prisoners and secure them until they can be dealt with properly,” and secure all their property, till the best means could be adopted for paying the damages the citizens had sustained.

<sup>15</sup>Monday, 5th. We were kept under a small guard, and were treated with some degree of hospitality and politeness, while many flocked to see us. We spent most of our time in preaching and conversation, explanatory of our doctrines and practice, which removed mountains of prejudice, and enlisted the populace in our favor, notwithstanding their old hatred and wickedness towards our society.

<sup>16</sup>The brethren at Far West were ordered by General Clark to form a line, when the names of fifty-six<sup>17</sup> present were called, and made prisoners to await their trial for something they knew not<sup>18</sup>. They were kept under a close guard.

Tuesday, 6th. General Clark paraded the brethren at Far West, and <sup>19</sup>addressed them as follows:—

<sup>20</sup>Gentlemen, you whose names are not attached to this list of names, will now have the privilege of going to your fields and providing corn, wood, &c., for your families. Those who are now taken will go from this to prison, be tried, and receive the due demerit of their crimes. But you (except such as charges may hereafter be preferred against) are now<sup>21</sup> at liberty, as soon

---

6. DHC 3:201: omits “as” and begins new sentence

7. *Source*: Undetermined for this and next paragraph. Composed by WR in RDft 1:35 between 21–24 Feb. 1844 (see RDft Chronology).

8. DHC 3:202: replaces “whose arms having been secured” with “After depriving these of their arms” and begins new sentence

9. DHC 3:202: “shot”

10. DHC 3:202: replaces “is” with “was”

11. DHC 3:202: adds “meantime”

12. DHC 3:202: replaces “they” with “the Saints”

13. *Source*: Based on DCCO, 85–86.

14. RDft 1:35: replaces “Lucas” with “Parks”

15. *Source*: This paragraph from LP, 92 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

16. *Source*: APRj, 20 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 27; transcription in vol. 8, III.17). Cf. *FREM*, 14. J. B. Clark to L. W. Boggs, 10 Nov. 1838, in DCCO, 66, reports forty-six prisoners were taken.

17. RDft 1:35: “51”

18. Book C-1, 854, DHC 3:202: add “what”

19. DHC 3:202: adds “then”

20. *Source*: RDft 1:35 directs scribe to copy from JSLB 2:0–1 (JM). However, wording differences indicate that TB copied from JSLB, or a nearly identical version in *T&S* 4 (15 July 1843): 262 (cf. DHC 3:435), and one of the following: *FREM*, 26–27; *LP*, 202–5; *AAP*, 58–59. Cf. LRNB, [6]–[10].

21. JSLB 2:0: omits “now”

as the troops are removed that now guard the place, which I shall cause to be done immediately. It now devolves upon you to fulfill the treaty that you have entered into, the leading items of which I shall now lay before you:

The first requires that your leading men be given up to be tried according to law; this you have already<sup>22</sup> complied with.

The second is, that you deliver up your arms; this has been attended to.

The third stipulation is, that you sign over your properties to defray the expenses of the war<sup>23</sup>; this you have also done.

Another article<sup>24</sup> yet remains for you to comply with, and that is, that you leave the State forthwith, and whatever may be your feelings concerning this, or whatever your innocence, it is nothing to me. General Lucas, who is equal in authority with me,<sup>25</sup> has made this treaty with you—I approve of it—I should have done the same, had I been here—I<sup>26</sup> am therefore determined to see it fulfilled<sup>27</sup>.<sup>28</sup>The character of this State has suffered almost beyond redemption—from the character, conduct and influence that you have exerted, and we deem it an act of justice to restore her character to its former standing among the States<sup>29</sup> by every proper means.

The orders of the Governor to me were, that you should be exterminated, and not allowed to remain in the State, and had your leaders not have been given up, and the terms of the treaty complied with before this, you and<sup>30</sup> your families would<sup>31</sup> have been destroyed and your houses in ashes.

There is a discretionary power vested in my hands which<sup>32</sup> I shall<sup>33</sup> exercise in your favor<sup>34</sup> for a season; for *this* lenity you are indebted to *my* clemency.<sup>35</sup> I do not say that you shall go now, but you must not think of staying here another season, or of putting in crops, for the moment you do this<sup>36</sup> the citizens will be upon you. <sup>37</sup>If I am called here again in case of a<sup>38</sup> non-compliance of the treaty made, do not think that I shall act any more as I have done<sup>39</sup>—you need not expect any mercy, but extermination, for I am determined the Governor’s order shall be executed. As for your leaders, do not once think—do not imagine for a moment—do not let it enter your mind that they will be delivered, or that you will see their faces again<sup>40</sup>, for their *fate is fixed*—THEIR DIE IS CAST—THEIR DOOM IS SEALED.

I am sorry, gentlemen, to see so great a number of<sup>41</sup> apparently intelligent men found

---

22. JSLB 2:0: omits “already”

23. JSLB 2:0: replaces “of the war” with “that have been incurred on your account”

24. Book C-2, 6 (darker ink): “{ \article/ }” (TB)

25. JSLB 2:0: “whose military rank is equal with mine”

26. JSLB 2:0: replaces “I” with “and”

27. JSLB 2:0: replaces “fulfilled” with “executed”

28. Remainder of paragraph appears only in JSLB 2:0 and T&S 4:262.

29. JSLB 2:0, T&S 4:262: omit “to its former ... States”

30. JSLB 2:0: omits “before this, you and”

31. JSLB 2:0: adds “before this time”

32. JSLB 2:0: adds “considering your circum=stances”

33. AAP, 59, LP, 203, FREM, 27: add “try to”

34. JSLB 2:0: omits “in your favor”

35. Preceding sentence appears only in JSLB 2:0 and T&S 4:262 as: “You are indebted to me for this clemency”

36. JSLB 2:1: replaces “this” with “so”; AAP, 59, LP, 203, FREM, 27: omit “this”

37. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262: add “and”

38. Book C-2, 6: “<a>” (FDR)

39. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262: add “now”; AAP, 59, LP, 203, FREM, 27: move “any more” to this position

40. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262: replace “or that you ... again” with “and restored to you again”

41. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262: replace “so great a number” with “many”

in the situation that you are; and oh! that I could invoke that *Great Spirit*, THE UNKNOWN GOD, to rest upon you and make you sufficiently intelligent to break that <sup>42</sup>chain of superstition, and liberate you from those fetters of fanaticism with which you are bound—that you no longer worship<sup>43</sup> a man.<sup>44</sup>

I would advise you to scatter abroad, and never again organize yourselves with Bishops, Presidents, &c., lest you excite the jealousies of the people, and subject yourselves to the same calamities that have now come upon you.

You have always been the aggressors—you have brought upon yourselves these difficulties by being disaffected and not being subject to rule—and my advice is, that you become as other citizens, lest by a recurrence of these events you bring upon yourselves irretrievable ruin.

The governor wrote General Clark as follows:

<sup>45</sup>Executive Department,  
City of Jefferson,  
Nov. 6, 1838.

To Maj. Gen. John B. Clark, Commanding the forces against the Mormons.

Sir:—I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your communication, under the date of the 3d inst., dated at Richmond, by the express, Mr. G. D. Maupin. I regret very much to hear that Gen. Lucas has been guilty of disobedience of orders. On this subject, however, I shall cause, in due time, an inquiry to be made. I thought I had been so very explicit in my orders, that it was not possible to misunderstand them. You have placed the proper construction upon them, which was that the whole force, to be employed in this service, was to be placed under your command. Gen. Lucas was not ordered out at all, except in the way I mentioned to you in my last communication; he was directed to cause four hundred men of his Division to be raised, and place them under the command of a Brig. General, with the privilege, if he thought proper, to wave his rank as a Major General, and take Brig. General's command.

Gen. Atchison was not ordered out in this last affair, for two reasons: one was, that I was aware as a member of the Legislature he would have other duties to attend to; and another was, that there was much dissatisfaction manifested towards him by the people opposed to the Mormons; he, though, under the Militia law, has a right within the limits of his command to order out his troops to quell insurrection, or repel invasion, Gen. Lucas, though, could not exercise any command within Gen. Atchison's division, only so far as he may have been directed by the Commander-in-Chief, and that only extended to the command of a Brigadier, in pursuance of the orders which I forwarded by Mr. Black, the express from Daviess county, whose companion, Mr. Dryden, bore my first order to you. I therefore approve of the course you have taken in demanding the prisoners of Gen. Lucas, as well as the arms, and shall send to him instructions to deliver them over to your order in the way you have directed him. You will see that they are securely confined within the limits of some prison, and strongly guarded. The course you have proposed taking in relation to the other prisoners—that is, to hold an examining court, and cause all those deemed guilty to be confined and guarded, is the correct one.

42. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262, AAP, 59, LP, 204, FREM, 27: replace “and make ... that” with “and deliver you from that awful”

43. JSLB 2:1, T&S 4:262: replace “worship” with “do homage to”

44. AAP, 59, LP, 204, FREM, 27: omit “that you no longer ... man”

45. Source: DCCO, 69–70. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

You will proceed to “Diahmon,” and there disperse all the persons you may find embodied and under arms without authority of law; in the mean time a detachment from your command can, if it is deemed necessary, be employed to reinstate the people of Daviess in their homes. It will also be necessary that you hold a Military Court of inquiry in Daviess county, and arrest the Mormons who have been guilty of the late outrages, committed towards the inhabitants of said county. My instructions to you are to settle this whole matter completely, if possible, before you disband your forces; if the Mormons are disposed voluntarily to leave the State, of course<sup>46</sup> it would be advisable in you to promote that object, in any way deemed proper. *The ringleaders of their*<sup>47</sup> *rebellion, though, ought by no means to*<sup>48</sup> *be permitted to escape the punishment they merit.* **The troops from Cole, Gasconade, and Franklin are directed to report to you. You had better retain them in service, and discharge them, who, from fatigue or otherwise, may be disposed to return. I should be pleased to hear from you of the final result of this matter, previous to the meeting of the Legislature. I shall forward to Gen. Lucas, by express, the necessary orders and instructions to obey the order you have directed to him under date of the 3d inst., in relation to the arms and prisoners.**

I have to request of you to embody all the facts you can collect, in relation to the commencement, progress, and termination of the recent difficulties with the Mormons, in order that I may communicate the same to the Legislature.

I am respectfully,

Your obedient servant,

L. W. BOGGS,

Commander-in-Chief.

P.S. The prisoners will of course be delivered over to the civil authority, when you may deem it prudent to do so.

L.W.B.

<sup>49</sup>The prisoners at Far West were started off for Richmond under a strong guard. Wednesday, 7th. The following order was issued at Far West by General Clark:

<sup>50</sup>Head Quarters, Far West  
Nov. 7, 1838.

Brig[adier].-Gen[eral]. Robert Wilson will take up the line of march with his Brigade on this morning for Adam-ondi-Ahman, in Daviess county, and take possession of the prisoners at that place, and proceed to ascertain those who committed crimes, and when done, to put them under close guard, and when he moves, take them to Keytesville, after having them recognized by the proper authority. **He will then endeavor to restore the citizens of Daviess to their homes. After things have been restored as far as may be, he will march for home and discharge his force, and report to me. I send a copy of the order of the Governor to me, in which are transferred all things for that particular service; you will therefore do all things which you may deem necessary under said order.**

JOHN B. CLARK,  
Maj. Gen. Com'd.

46. Book C-2, 6 (darker ink): “<course>” (TB)

47. DCCO, 70, Book C-1, 855, Book C-2, 6, DHC 3:204: replace “their” with “this”

48. DCCO, 70: omits “to”; Book C-1, 855: “<to>” (US)

49. Source: APRj, 20 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 27; transcription in vol. 8, III.17).

50. Source: DCCO, 86. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

<sup>51</sup>Thursday, 8th. There was a severe snowstorm yesterday and today. General Wilson arrived at Adam-ondi-Ahman; he placed guards around the town, so that no person<sup>52</sup> might pass out or in without permission. All the men in town were then taken and put under guard, and a Court of Inquiry was instituted, with Adam Black on the bench; the said Adam Black belonged to the mob; and was one of the leaders of it from the time mobbing first commenced in Daviess county. The attorney belonged to Gen[eral]. Clark's army.

Shortly after our arrival in Jackson county, Colonel Sterling Price, from the army of Gen[eral]. Clark, came with orders from Gen[eral]. Clark, who was Commander-in-Chief of the expedition, to have us forwarded forthwith<sup>53</sup> to Richmond. Accordingly, on Thursday morning, we started with three guards only, and they had been obtained with great difficulty, after laboring all the previous day to get them. Between Independence and Roy's Ferry, on the Missouri river, they all got drunk, and we got possession of their arms and horses.

It was late in the afternoon, near the setting of the sun. We traveled about half a mile after we crossed the river, and put up for the night.

[DN 3 (24 November 1853): 1]

<sup>54</sup>Friday, 9th. This morning there came a number of men, some of them armed; their threatenings and savage appearance were such as to make us afraid to proceed without more guards. A messenger was therefore dispatched to Richmond to obtain them. We started before their arrival, but had not gone far before we met Col[onel].<sup>55</sup> Price, with a guard of about seventy-four men, and were conducted by them to Richmond and put into an old vacant house, and a guard set.

Sometime through the course of that day, General Clark came in, and we were introduced to him. We inquired of him the reason why we had been thus carried from our homes, and what were the charges against us. He said that he was not then able to determine, but would be in a short time; and with very little more conversation, withdrew.

Some short time after he had withdrawn, Col[onel]. Price came in with two chains in his hands, and a number of padlocks. The two chains he fastened together. He had with him ten men, armed, who stood at the time of these operations, with a thumb upon the cock of their guns.—They first nailed down the windows, then came and ordered a man by the name of John Fulkerson, whom he had with him, to chain us together with chains and padlocks, being seven in number. After that he searched us, examining our pockets to see if we had any arms.—Finding<sup>56</sup> nothing but pocket knives, <sup>57</sup>he took them and conveyed them off.

Saturday, [November] 10th.

<sup>58</sup>I permit David Holman to remove from Daviess to Caldwell county, there to remain during the winter, or to pass out of the State.

---

51. *Source*: This day's entry based on *AAP*, 46–47. Weather from *APRj*, 22 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 28; transcription in vol. 8, III.17), under 11 Nov. 1838.

52. DHC 3:204: "persons"

53. Book C-1, 856: "<forth>with" (TB)

54. *Source*: This day's entry from *AAP*, 47.

55. Book C-2, 7 (darker ink): "{\Col./}" (FDR)

56. DHC 3:206: "He found"

57. DHC 3:206: replaces remainder of paragraph with "but these he took away with him."

58. *Source*: RDft 1:36 directs scribe to copy LRNB, 18. For similar permits, see LRNB, 2, and *MRP*, 749–50.



R. Wilson, Brig[adier].-Gen[eral].  
By F. G. Cocknu, Aid.

Nov[ember]. 10th, 1838.

<sup>59</sup>The foregoing is a true specimen of Missouri liberty.—

<sup>60</sup>Gen[eral]. Clark had spent his time since our arrival at Richmond in searching the laws to find authority for trying us by court martial. Had he not been a lawyer of eminence, I should have supposed it no very difficult task to decide, that quiet, peaceful unoffending, and private citizens too, except as ministers of the gospel, were not amenable to a *military tribunal*, in a country governed by *civil laws*. But be this as it may, General Clark wrote the Governor that he had—

<sup>61</sup>**Head Quarters of the Militia employed against the Mormons, }  
Richmond, November 10, 1838.**

*To His Excellency, L. W. Boggs.*

Sir:—A day or two before I received your first order, I had, upon information from a letter from Mr. Rees and Col. Williams on their way to you, issued an order to have raised in my Division one thousand men, ready to march on Monday, the 29th day of October last— [...]

I took up the line of march with the prisoners, and got here on yesterday. On my arrival here I discharged the whole of the 1st Brigade. I will here state, that on my way to Far West, while at Richmond, I wrote to Gen. Grant, and ordered him to countermarch, and discharge his forces. The same order I sent to Gen. Willock from Far West, also Gen. Crowther's Division was discharged at Richmond, on their way, except the Boonville Guards, who were taken on to Far West, and discharged here this morning. Gen. White, learning of the state of affairs, left his men at the river near Lexington, and came on to meet me with his staff at Far West. I then ordered him to countermarch his Brigade, except the cavalry commanded by Capt. Parsons, which company is now here guarding the prisoners. All the forces in this quarter are now discharged, except two companies commanded by Captains Parsons and Bogart. I detained Lieut. Col. Price to superintend the guard of the prisoners, and I also detained Gen[eral]. White and his field offices here a day or two, for the purpose of holding a court martial, if necessary. I this day made out charges against the prisoners, and called on Judge King to<sup>62</sup> try them as a committing court; and I am now busily engaged in procuring witnesses and submitting facts. There being no civil officers in Caldwell, I have to use the military to get witnesses from there, which I do without reserve.

**Gen. Wilson's Brigade is still in service, in Daviess county, under the instructions above stated. They will be discharged as fast as possible.** The most of the prisoners here, I consider guilty of *treason*; and I believe will be convicted; and the only difficulty in law is, can they be tried in any county but Caldwell? If not, they cannot be there indicted, until a change of population. In the event the latter view is taken by the civil courts, I suggest the propriety of trying Jo Smith and those leaders taken by Gen[eral]. Lucas, by a court martial, for mutiny. This I am in favor of only as a dernier resort. I would have taken this course with Smith at any rate; but it being

59. DHC 3:206: replaces "The foregoing" with "The following" and moves this sentence to follow "Saturday, [November] 10th". Source: Probably WR's composition, which he wrote in RDft 1:36 about 21-24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

60. Source: First sentence from *AAP*, 47. The remainder is probably WR's composition, which he wrote in RDft 1:36 about 21-24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

61. Source: *DCCO*, 65-68. Deleted material indicated with "[...]" or supplied in bold type.

62. Book C-2, 8 (darker ink): "\to/"



doubtful whether a court martial has jurisdiction or not in the present case—that is, whether these people are to be treated as in time of war, and the mutineers as having mutinied in time of war—and I would here ask you to forward to me the Attorney-General’s opinion on this point. **My whole object is to obey your orders, and settle this matter so as to have the best effect upon the people, and at the same time not compromit the character of the State.** But it will not do to allow these leaders to return to their treasonable work again, on account of their not being indicted in Caldwell. **I find by inquiry, that with all the enormities we have heard charged against these people, many of which charges we looked upon as the offspring of prejudice on the part of our citizens, the half has not yet been told.** There is no crime, from treason down to the most petty larceny, but these people or a majority of them have been guilty of, all too under the counsel of Joseph Smith, Jr., the prophet. They have committed *treason, murder, arson, burglary, robbery, larceny, and perjury*. They have societies formed under the most binding covenants in form, and the most horrid oaths to circumvent the laws, and put them at defiance, and to plunder and burn and murder, and divide the spoils for the use of the church. This is what they call the Danite Club or Society. These facts I gather from some persons I have seen who have disclosed them. Under this horrid system many of the citizens of Daviess county, who went to that frontier poor, and who by their industry and economy had acquired a good living, have been robbed of every article of property they have—their houses burnt before their eyes, and them and their wives and children driven out of the county, without any kind of shelter. In one instance I have been informed that a family was ordered off, and their houses burnt in their sight, and a woman driven out while it was snowing, with a child only four days old; in another case, I was informed the family was driven away, and the woman was compelled to ask protection in a few miles, where she was delivered of a child a short time after she was thus treated. These, sir, are some of the offences of these people. I do not wonder at the prejudices against them in their vicinity. I send you enclosed a copy of the constitution of one of their societies, from which you can gather some information. I design to continue my head quarters here until the investigation of the cases of the prisoners are closed. You shall be informed, from time to time, of the progress, as also of the movement in Daviess. These facts I now communicate to you, supposing they would be useful to you before the meeting of the Legislature. Your communication of the 6th was received to-day by Mr. Maupin—its contents were duly noted and shall be attended to. I have, this evening, informed the prisoners of what is charged against them, and ordered the leaders to be bound, so as to be sure to save them.

I am, sir,

Your obedient servant,

JOHN B. Clark,

Maj. Gen. Commanding.

<sup>63</sup>The three days’ investigation having closed at Adam-ondi-Ahman, every man was honorably acquitted. Adam Black being judge, General Wilson then ordered every family to be out of Diahman in ten days, with permission to go to Caldwell, and there tarry until spring, and then leave the State under pain of extermination. The weather was very cold, more so than usual, for that<sup>64</sup> season of the year; and<sup>65</sup> in keeping this order of General Wilson<sup>66</sup>, they<sup>67</sup> had to leave their crops, and houses, and

63. Source: This and next paragraph from *AAP*, 46.

64. DHC 3:207: replaces “that” with “this”

65. DHC 3:207: omits “and”

66. Book C-1, 857, Book C-2, 8: “Wilson’s”

67. DHC 3:207: replaces “they” with “the Saints”

to live in tents and wagons, in this inclement season of the year. As for their<sup>68</sup> flocks and herds, the mob had delivered<sup>69</sup> them from the trouble of taking care of them, or from the pain of seeing them starve to death,—by stealing them.

An arrangement was made in which it was stipulated that a committee of twelve<sup>70</sup>, which had been previously appointed, should have the privilege of going from Far West to Daviess county, for the term of four weeks, for the purpose of conveying their crops from Daviess to Caldwell. The committee were to wear white badges on their hats for protection.

<sup>71</sup>About thirty of the brethren have been killed; a multitude<sup>72</sup> wounded; about a hundred are missing, and about sixty at Richmond awaiting their trial,—for what they know not.

<sup>73</sup>Sunday, 11th. While in Richmond, we were under the charge of Colonel Price from Chariton county, who suffered<sup>74</sup> all manner of abuses to be heaped upon us. During this time my afflictions were great, and our situation was truly painful.

<sup>75</sup>General Clark informed us that he would turn us over to the civil authorities for trial.—Joseph Smith, jr., Hyrum Smith, Sidney Rigdon, Parley P. Pratt, Lyman Wight, Amasa Lyman, George W. Robinson, Caleb Baldwin, Alanson Ripley, Washington Voorhees, Sidney Turner, John Buchanan, Jacob Gates, Chandler Holbrook, George W. Harris, Jesse D. Hunter, Andrew Whitlock, Martin C. Al[l]red, William Al[l]red, George D.<sup>76</sup> Grant, Darwin Chase, Elijah Newman, Alvin G. Tippets, Zedekiah Owens, Isaac Morley, Thomas Beck, Moses Clawson, John T.<sup>77</sup> Tanner<sup>78</sup>, Daniel Shearer, Daniel S. Thomas, Alexander McRae, Elisha Edwards, John S. Higby<sup>79</sup>, Ebenezer Page, Benjamin Covey, Ebenezer Robinson, Lyman<sup>80</sup> Gibbs, <sup>81</sup>James M. Henderson, David Pettegrew<sup>82</sup>, Edward Partridge, Francis Higby<sup>83</sup>, David Frampton, George Kimball, Joseph W. Younger, Henry Zobriski[e], Allen J.<sup>84</sup> Stout, Sheffield Daniels, Silas Maynard<sup>85</sup>, Anthony Head, Benjamin Jones, Daniel Carn<sup>86</sup>, John T. Earl, and Norman Shearer, were brought before Austin A. King, at Richmond, for trial, charged with the several crimes of high treason against the State,—murder, burglary, arson, robbery, and larceny.

<sup>87</sup>Monday, 12th. The first act of the court was to send out a body of armed men, without a civil process to obtain witnesses.

---

68. Book C-2, 8: “the\ir/”

69. DHC 3:207: replaces “delivered” with “relieved”

70. Book C-2, 8 (darker ink): “<of twelve>” (TB)

71. *Source*: APRj, 22 (Jessee and Whittaker 1988, 28; transcription in vol. 8, III.17), under 11 Nov. 1838.

72. DHC 3:208: replaces “a multitude” with “many”

73. *Source*: “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 6.

74. DHC 3:208: replaces “suffered” with “allowed”

75. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 97.

76. *DCCO*, 97, Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9: omit “D.”

77. *DCCO*, 97, Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9, DHC 3:209: “J.”

78. *DCCO*, 97, Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9: “Turner”

79. DHC 3:209: “Higbee”

80. DHC 3:209: “Luman”

81. Book C-2, 9: adds ellipses over erasure of a person’s name

82. Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9: “Pettigrew”

83. DHC 3:209: “Higbee”

84. Book C-2, 9: “T.”

85. *DCCO*, 97: “Manard”; Book C-1, 858: “Ma<y>nard”

86. DHC 3:209: “Garn”

87. *Source*: *AAP*, 47.

<sup>88</sup>Tuesday, 13th. We were placed at the bar; Austin A. King presiding, and Thomas C. Burch[,] State's Attorney. Witnesses were called and sworn at the point of the bayonet.

Dr. Sampson Avarad was the first brought before the court. He had previously told Mr. Oliver Olney that if he [Olney]<sup>89</sup> wished to save himself, he must swear hard against the heads of the church, as they were the ones the court wanted to criminate; and if he could swear hard against them, they would not (that is, neither court or mob) disturb him. ["I intend to do it,[]"] said he, ["in order to escape; for if I do not, they will take my life.[]"]

<sup>90</sup>This introduction is sufficient to show the character of his testimony; and he swore just according to the statement he had made, doubtless thinking it a wise course to ingratiate himself into the good graces of the mob.

<sup>91</sup>The following witnesses were examined in behalf of the State—many of<sup>92</sup> whom, if we may judge <sup>93</sup>from their testimony, swore upon the same principle as Avarad, namely<sup>94</sup>: Wyatt Cravens, Nehemiah Sale<sup>95</sup>, Captain Samuel Bogart, Morris Phelps, John Corril[]<sup>96</sup>, Robert Snodgrass, George Walton, George M. Hinkle, James C. Owens, Nathaniel Carr, Abner Scovell<sup>97</sup>, John Cleminson, Reed Peck, James C. Owens re-examined, William Splawn, Thomas M. Odle, John Raglin, Allen Rathbun, Jeremiah Myers, Andrew F.<sup>98</sup> Job, Freeburn H. Gardner, Burr Riggs, Elisha Camron, Charles Bleckley, James Cobb, Jesse Kelly, Addison Price, Samuel Kimball, William W. Phelps, John Whitmer, James B. Turner, George W. Worthington, Joseph H. McGee, John Lockhart, Porter Yale, Benjamin Slade, Ezra Williams, Addison <sup>99</sup>Green, John Faylor<sup>100</sup>, Timothy Lewis, and Patrich Lynch.

Sunday, 18th. While our suit was going forward Gen[eral]. Wilson gave the following permit, in Daviess county:—

<sup>101</sup>I permit the following persons, as a committee on the part of the Mormons, to pass and re-pass in and through the county of Daviess during the winter, to wit.: William Huntington, John Read<sup>102</sup>, Benjamin S. Wilber<sup>103</sup>, Mayhue<sup>104</sup> Hillman, Ze\_\_\_\_\_<sup>105</sup> Wilson, E. E.<sup>106</sup> Gaylord, Henry Herriman, Daniel Stanton, Oliver Snow, William Earl, J[onathan]. H. Hale, Henry Humphrey<sup>107</sup>,—upon all lawful business.

---

88. *Source*: This and next paragraph from *AAP*, 47–48.

89. Brackets or parentheses appear in Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9, *DN*, and *DHC*.

90. *Source*: Probably WR's composition, which he wrote in RDft 1:36 about 21–24 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

91. *Source*: *DCCO*, 151.

92. Book C-1, 858 (different ink): "<many of>" (pos. RLC)

93. Book C-2, 9: adds ellipses over erasure

94. *DHC* 3:210: replaces "namely" with "they were"

95. *DCCO*, 151, Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9, *DHC* 3:210: replace "Sale" with "Odle"

96. Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9, *DHC* 3:210: "Corrill"

97. *DHC* 3:210: "Scovil"

98. *DCCO*, 151, Book C-1, 858, *DHC* 3:210: "J."

99. *DCCO*, 151: adds "F"

100. *DCCO*, 151, Book C-1, 858, *DHC* 3:210: "Taylor"

101. *Source*: RDft 1:37 directs scribe to copy LRNB, 18.

102. *DHC* 3:210: "Reed"

103. *DHC* 3:210: "Wilbur"

104. Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9: "Mahue"; *DHC* 3:210: "Mayhew"

105. LRNB, 18, Book C-1, 858, *DHC* 3:210: "Z."

106. LRNB, 18, Book C-1, 858, Book C-2, 9, *DHC* 3:210: "B."

107. Book C-2, 9: "Humphry"

R. Wilson, Brig.-Gen. Commanding.  
By F. G. Cochnu<sup>108</sup>, Aid.

Nov[ember]. 18th, 1838.

<sup>109</sup>We were called upon for our witnesses, and we gave the names of some forty or fifty.— Captain Bogart was despatched with a company of militia to procure them. <sup>110</sup>Arrested all he could find, thrust them into prison, and we were <sup>111</sup>not allowed to see them.

<sup>112</sup>We were again called upon most tauntingly for witnesses; we gave the names of some others, and they were also <sup>113</sup>thrust into prison, so many as were to be found.

<sup>114</sup>In the meantime, Malinda Porter, Delia F. Pine, Nancy Rigdon, Jonathan W. Barlow, Thoret Parsons, Ezra Chipman, and Arza Judd, jr., volunteered, and were sworn, on the defense, but were prevented by threats from telling the truth as much as possible <sup>115</sup>. We saw a man at the window by the name of Allen, and beckoned him to come in, and had him sworn, but when he did not testify to please the court, several rushed upon him with their bayonets, and he fled the place, and three men took after him with loaded guns; and he barely escaped with his life. It was of no use to get any more witnesses, <sup>116</sup>if we could have done it <sup>117</sup>.

Thus this mock investigation continued from day to day, till Saturday, when several of the brethren were discharged by Judge King, as follows:

<sup>118</sup>Defendants against whom nothing is proven, viz.: Amasa Lyman, John Buchanan, Andrew Whitlock, Alvah L. Tippetts<sup>119</sup>, Jedediah Owens, Isaac Morley, John T. <sup>120</sup>Tanner, Daniel S. Thomas, Elisha <sup>121</sup>Edwards, Benjamin Covey, David Frampton, Henry Zobriski<sup>122</sup>, Allen J. Stout, Sheffield Daniels, Silas Maynard, Anthony Head, John T. Earl, Ebenezer Brown, James Newberry, Sylvester Hulett, Chandler Holbrook<sup>123</sup>, Martin C. <sup>124</sup>Al[l]red, William Al[l]red. The above defendants have been discharged by me, there being no evidence against them.

Austin A. King, Judge, &c.

Nov[ember]. 24th, 1838.

<sup>125</sup>Our Church organization was converted, by the testimony of the apostates, into a temporal kingdom, which was to fill the whole earth, and subdue all other kingdoms.

108. DHC 3:211: "COCKNU"

109. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on *AAP*, 48. See also JSj [1842-43], 16 (WR) (*APR*, 261).

110. DHC 3:211: adds "He"

111. Book C-2, 10 (darker ink): "<were>" (TB)

112. DHC 3:211: adds "During the week"

113. DHC 3:211: omits "thus"

114. *Source*: Names of witnesses from *DCCO*, 151. The story about Allen apparently based on *AAP*, 48, and Hyrum Smith's testimony before Nauvoo Municipal Court in July 1843 (NMCD, 74; *T&S* 4:253; DHC 3:419).

115. DHC 3:211: moves "as much as possible" to follow "prevented"

116. DHC 3:211: adds "even"

117. DHC 3:211: replaces "it" with "so"

118. *Source*: JScSup, fd 6, 5-6.

119. Book C-1, 859: "Tippitts"

120. Book C-1, 859, Book C-2, 10, DHC 3:211: "J."

121. Book C-2, 10: middle initial replaced with erasure

122. Book C-1, 859: "Zabriskiy"; Book C-2, 10: "Z{o}brisk{y}"; DHC 3:211: "Zobriskie"

123. Book C-1, 859: "Hobbrook"

124. MS: omits "C."

125. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on *LP*, 104-5 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9). The remark about the

Much was inquired by<sup>126</sup> the Judge (who by the by was a Methodist)<sup>127</sup> concerning the prophecy of Daniel: “In the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall break in pieces all other kingdoms, and stand forever,” &c.<sup>128</sup>; “and the kingdom and the greatness of the kingdom,<sup>129</sup> under the whole heaven, shall be given to the Saints of the Most High,” &c.<sup>130</sup>, just<sup>131</sup> as though it was<sup>132</sup> treason to believe the Bible.

<sup>133</sup>Wednesday, 28th. Daniel Ashby, a member of the State Senate, wrote General Clark, that he was in the battle [mob]<sup>134</sup> at Haun’s Mills, that thirty-one Mormons were killed, and seven of his party wounded.

<sup>135</sup>[November 29.]<sup>136</sup> The remaining prisoners were all released or admitted to bail, except Lyman Wight, Caleb Baldwin, Hyrum Smith, Alexander McRae, Sidney Rigdon, and myself, who were sent to Liberty, Clay county, to jail, to stand our trial for treason and murder. The<sup>137</sup> treason, for<sup>138</sup> having whipped the mob out of Daviess county, and taking their cannon from them; and<sup>139</sup> the murder for<sup>140</sup> the man killed<sup>141</sup> in the Bogart Battle; also Parley P. Pratt, Morris Phelps, Luman Gibbs, Darwin Chase, and Norman Shearer, who were put into Richmond jail to stand their trial for the same crimes.

<sup>142</sup>During the investigation, we were mostly confined in chains, and received much abuse. The matter of driving away witnesses, or casting them into prison, or chasing them out of the country<sup>143</sup>, was carried to such length that our lawyers, General Doniphan and Amos Rees, told us not to bring our<sup>144</sup> witnesses there at all; for if we did, there would not be one of them left for final trial; for no sooner would Bogart and his men know who they were, than they would put them out of the country<sup>145</sup>.

As to making any impression on King, if a cohort of angels were to come down, and declare we were clear<sup>146</sup>, Doniphan said<sup>147</sup> it would all be the same; for he (King) had determined from the

---

Bible being treasonable probably taken from P. P. Pratt’s testimony before the Nauvoo Municipal Court in July 1843 (NMCDB, 86; *T&S* 4:259; DHC 3:430; *MRP*, 645).

126. DHC 3:212: omits “Much was inquired by”

127. DHC 3:212: adds “asked much”

128. DHC 3:212: replaces “&c.” with four asterisks

129. Book C-2, 10: “<of the kingdom,>” (FDR)

130. DHC 3:212: omits “&c.”

131. DHC 3:212: omits “just” and begins new sentence

132. DHC 3:212: begins new sentence with “As if it were ...”

133. *Source*: Based on D. Ashby to J. B. Clark, 28 Nov. 1838, in *DCCO*, 82–83.

134. Brackets appear in Book C-1, 859, Book C-2, 10, and *DN*; DHC 3:212: “[massacre]”

135. *Source*: *AAP*, 49, which dates to 29 Nov. 1838. Changed to first person.

136. Brackets this editor’s. This date supported in both *AAP*, 49, and *RDft* 1:37.

137. DHC 3:212: replaces “The” with “Our”

138. DHC 3:212: replaces “for” with “consisted of”

139. DHC 3:212: omits “and”

140. DHC 3:212: replaces “for” with “of killing”

141. DHC 3:212: omits “killed”

142. *Source*: Except for first sentence, this and next paragraph from *AAP*, 48.

143. Book C-1, 859, Book C-2, 10, DHC 3:212: “county”

144. Book C-2, 10 (darker ink): “{our/}” (pos. TB)

145. Book C-1, 859, Book C-2, 10: “county”

146. DHC 3:213: replaces “clear” with “innocent”

147. DHC 3:213: moves “Doniphan said” to follow “King”

beginning to cast us into prison. We never got the privilege of introducing our witnesses at all; if we had, we could have disproved all they swore<sup>148</sup>.

<sup>149</sup>*M. Arthur, Esq., to the Representatives from Clay county.*

Liberty, Nov[ember]. 29th, 1838.

Respected Friends: Humanity to an injured people prompts me at present to address you thus. You were aware of the treatment (to some extent before you left home) received by that unfortunate race of beings called the Mormons, from Daviess, in the form of human beings inhabiting Daviess, Livingston, and a<sup>150</sup> part of Ray county<sup>151</sup>; not being satisfied with the relinquishments<sup>152</sup> of all their rights as citizens and human beings, in the treaty forced upon them by General Lucas, by giving up their arms, and throwing themselves upon the mercy of the State, and their fellow citizens generally, hoping thereby protection of their lives and property,<sup>153</sup> are now receiving treatment from those demons, that makes humanity shudder, and the cold chills run over any man, not entirely destitute of any<sup>154</sup> feeling<sup>155</sup> of humanity.--These demons are now constantly strolling up and down Caldwell county, in small companies armed, insulting the women in any<sup>156</sup> and every way<sup>157</sup>, and plundering the poor devils of all the means of subsistence (scanty as it was) left them, and driving off their horses, cattle, hogs, &c., and rifling their houses and farms of everything therein, taking beds, bedding, wardrobe<sup>158</sup>, and all<sup>159</sup> such things as they see they want, leaving the poor Mormons in a starving and naked condition.

These are facts I have from authority that cannot be questioned, and can be maintained and substantiated at any time. There is now a petition afloat in our town, signed by the citizens of all parties and grades, which will be sent you in a few days, praying the Legislature to make some speedy enactment applicable to their case. They are entirely willing to leave our State, so soon as this inclement season is over; and a number have already left, and are leaving daily, scattering themselves to the four winds of the earth.

Now, sirs, I do not want by any means to dictate to you the course to be pursued, but one fact I will merely suggest. I this day was conversing with Mr. George M. Pryer, who is just from Far West, relating the outrages there committed daily. I suggested to him the propriety of the Legislature's placing a guard to patrol on the lines of Caldwell county, say, of about twenty-five men, and give them, say, about one dollar or one and a half per day, each man, and find their provisions, &c., until, say, the first day of June next. These men rendering that protection necessary to the Mormons, and allowing them to follow, and bring to justice any individuals who have<sup>160</sup> heretofore or will hereafter be<sup>161</sup> guilty of plundering or any violation of the laws. I would suggest that George M. Pryer be appointed captain of said guard, and that he will<sup>162</sup> be

---

148. DHC 3:213: replaces "they swore" with "the evidence of our enemies"

149. *Source: DCCO*, 94-95.

150. DHC 3:213: omits "a"

151. DHC 3:213: "counties"

152. DHC 3:213: "relinquishment"

153. DHC 3:213: adds "they"

154. DHC 3:213: omits "any"

155. DHC 3:213: "feelings"

156. DHC 3:213: adds "way"

157. Book C-2, 11: "<way>" (FDR)

158. DHC 3:213: "wardrobes"

159. DHC 3:213: omits "all"

160. *DCCO*, 94, Book C-1, 860: "individual who has"; Book C-2, 11: "individuals who ha{\s/}"

161. Book C-2, 11: "{be} hereafter <be>" (FDR)

162. DHC 3:214: omits "will"



allowed to raise his own men, if<sup>163</sup> he is willing thus to act. He is a man of correct habits, and will do justice to all sides, and render due satisfaction.

Should this course not be approved of, I would recommend the restoration of their<sup>164</sup> arms for their own protection. One or the other of these suggestions is certainly due the Mormons from the State. She has now their leaders prisoners, to the number of fifty or sixty, and I apprehend no danger from the remainder in any way until they will leave the State.<sup>165</sup>

M. ARTHUR.

Mr. Arthur is not a Mormon, but a friend of man.

<sup>166</sup> *Attested copy of the mittimus accompanying<sup>167</sup> Joseph Smith, jr., and others,<sup>168</sup> from Judge King to the jailer of Liberty jail<sup>169</sup> in Clay county, Mo.*

State of Missouri, }  
Ray County. }

To the keeper of the jail of Clay county,

GREETING:—Whereas, Joseph Smith, jr., Hyrum<sup>170</sup> Smith, Lyman Wight, Alexander McRae, and Caleb Baldwin, as also Sidney Rigdon, have been brought before me, Austin A. King, Judge of the fifth Judicial Circuit in the State of Missouri, and charged with the offense of Treason against the State of Missouri, and the said defendants, on their examination before me being held to answer further to said charge, the said Joseph Smith, jr., Hyrum<sup>171</sup> Smith, Lyman Wight, Alexander McRae, and Caleb Baldwin, to answer in the county of Daviess, and the said Sidney Rigdon to answer further in the county of Caldwell for said charge of Treason, and there being no jail in said counties: These are therefore to command that you receive the said Joseph Smith, jr., Hyrum<sup>172</sup> Smith, Lyman Wight, Alexander McRae, Caleb Baldwin, and Sidney Rigdon, into your custody in the jail of the said county of Clay, there to remain until they be delivered therefrom<sup>173</sup> by due course of law.

Given under my hand and seal the 29th day of November, 1838.

Austin A. King.

State of Missouri, County of Clay.<sup>174</sup>

I, Samuel Hadley, Sheriff of Clay county, do hereby certify that the above is a true copy of the mittimus to me directed in the cases therein named.

Samuel Hadley, Jailer.

By Samuel Tillery, Deputy Jailer.

Clay county, Mo.

163. DCCO, 94: omits “if”; Book C-1, 860: “<if>” (US)

164. DHC 3:214: adds “[the Mormons]”

165. Book C-2, 11 (darker ink): “<she has now ... state>” (TB)

166. Book C-1, 861: adds “<(see addenda page 3.)>” (TB). The following mittimus was copied into Book C-1, Addenda, 3, by TB about 1-2 Sept. 1845, and incorporated in Book C-2, 12, by FDR about 4-20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Source: JSLB 2:20 (JM). Cf. JScSup, fd 6, 3-4; *FREM*, 27.

167. DHC 3:214: replaces “accompanying” with “under which”

168. DHC 3:214: adds “were sent”

169. DHC 3:214: replaces “jail” with “Prison”

170. Book C-1, Addenda, 3 (different ink): “H\y/ram”; “y” *w.o.* “i”

171. Book C-1, Addenda, 3 (different ink): “H\y/ram”; “y” *w.o.* “i”

172. Book C-1, Addenda, 3 (different ink): “H\y/ram”; “y” *w.o.* “i”

173. Book C-2, 12 (darker ink): “<therefrom>” (TB)

174. JSLB 2:20, Book C-1, Addenda, 3, Book C-2, 12:

State of Missouri }  
County of Clay } Sct



## [DN 3 (1 December 1853): 1]

<sup>175</sup>Friday, 30th. About this time, those of us who had been sentenced thereto, were conveyed to Liberty jail, put in close confinement, and all communication with our friends cut off.

<sup>176</sup>During our trial, William E. McLellin, accompanied by Burr Riggs and others at times were busy in plundering and robbing the houses of Sidney Rigdon, George Morey, and the widow Phebe Ann Patten, and others, under pretense or color of law on an order from General Clark, as testified to by the members of the different families robbed.

<sup>177</sup>Saturday, December 1st, 1838. "At a meeting of the<sup>178</sup> committee on the part of the Mormons, and a like committee on the part of the citizens of Daviess county, met at Adam-ondi-Ahman, on the<sup>179</sup> first of<sup>180</sup> December, 1838, the following propositions by the Mormon committee were made and agreed to by the Daviess county committee["]:

1st. That the Mormon committee be allowed to employ, say 20 teamsters for the purpose of hauling off their property.

2d. That the Mormon committee collect whatever stock they may have in Daviess county at some point, and some 2 or 3 of the Daviess county committee be notified to attend for the purpose of examining said stock and convey or attend the Mormon committee out of the limits of the county; and it is further understood, that the Mormon committee is not to drive or take from this county any stock of any description at any other time, nor under any other circumstances than these mentioned.

As witness our hands,

William P. Peniston,  
Dr. K. Kerr,  
Adam Black,  
Committee.

The above propositions were made and agreed to by the undersigned, committee on the part of the Mormons.

William Huntington,  
B. S. Wilber<sup>181</sup>,  
J. H. Hale,  
Henry Herriman,  
Z. Wilson.

---

175. *Source*: Based on "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," T&S 1 (Nov. 1839): 6.

176. *Source*: McLellin's stealing from JS is likely based on the affidavit of Caroline Clark and others, ca. Mar. 1839, included in chap. 20 (cf. DHC 3:286-87).

177. *Source*: LRNB, 16-17.

178. DHC 3:215: replaces "At a meeting of the" with "A"

179. Book C-1, 861: "this"

180. Book C-1, 861, Book C-2, 12: omit "of"

181. DHC 3:216: "Wilbur"



15.

## JOSEPH SMITH'S LETTER FROM LIBERTY JAIL

December 1838

[DN 3 (1 December 1853): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Wednesday, [December] 5th. The Missouri Legislature having assembled, Governor Boggs laid before the House of Representatives all the information in his possession relative to the difficulties between the mob and Mormons.

Monday, [December] 10th.

<sup>2</sup>*To the Honorable Legislature of the State of Missouri, in Senate and House of Representatives convened:*

We the undersigned petitioners and inhabitants of Caldwell county, Missouri, in consequence of the late calamity that has come upon us, taken in connection with former afflictions, feel it a duty we owe to ourselves and our country to lay our case before your Hon[orable] body for consideration. It is a well known fact, that a society of our people commenced settling in Jackson county, Missouri, in the summer of 1831, where they according to their ability, purchased lands and settled upon them with the intention and expectation of becoming permanent citizens in common with others.

Soon after the settlement began,<sup>3</sup> and as the society increased, persecution also increased, until the society at last was compelled to leave the county; and although an account of these persecutions has been published to the world, yet we feel that it will not be improper to notice a few of the most prominent items in this memorial.

On the 20th <sup>4</sup>July, 1833, a mob convened at Independence—a committee of which called upon a few of the men of our church there, and stated to them that the store, printing office, and indeed all other mechanic shops must be closed forthwith, and the society leave the county immediately.

These propositions were so unexpected, that a certain time was asked for to consider on the subject, before an answer should be returned, which was refused, and our men being indi-

---

1. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 13–14.

2. *Source*: RDft 1:38 instructs scribe to copy from *FREM*, 10–16, or *FWR*, 163–73 (*FWR* [1983], 211–20). Cf. JSLB 2:27–33; *AAP*, 53–58.

3. DHC 3:217: replaces “began” with “commenced”

4. Book C-1, 861, DHC 3:217: add “of”

vidually interrogated, each one answered that he could not consent to comply with their propositions. One of the mob replied, that he was sorry, for the work of destruction would commence immediately.

In a short time the printing-office, which was a two story brick building, was assailed by the mob and soon thrown down, and with it much valuable property destroyed. Next they went to the store for the same purpose; but Mr. Gilbert, one of the owners, agreeing to close it, they abandoned their design. Their next move was their<sup>5</sup> dragging of Bishop Partridge from his house and family to the public square, where, surrounded by hundreds, they partially stripped him of his clothes, and tarred and feathered him from head to foot. A man by the name of <sup>6</sup>Allen was also tarred at the same time. This was Saturday, and the mob agreed to meet the following Tuesday, to accomplish their purpose of driving or massacring the society.

Tuesday came, and the mob came also, bearing with them a red flag in token of blood.—Some two or three of the principal men of the society offered their lives, if that would appease the wrath of the mob, so that the rest of the society might dwell in peace upon their lands. The answer was, that unless<sup>7</sup> the society would leave “en masse,” every man should die for himself. Being in a defenseless situation, to save a general massacre, it was agreed that one half of the society should leave the county by the first of the next January, and the remainder by the first of the following April. A treaty was entered into and ratified, and all things went on smoothly for *awhile*. But sometime in October, the wrath of the mob began again to be kindled, inso-much that they shot at some of our people, whipped others, and threw down their houses, and committed many other depredations; indeed the society of saints were harassed for some time both day and night; their houses were brick-batted and broken open—women and children insulted, &c.<sup>8</sup> The store-house of A. S. Gilbert & Co. was broken open, ransacked, and some of the goods strewed in the streets.

These abuses, with many others of a very aggravated nature, so stirred up the indignant feelings of our people, that when<sup>9</sup> a party of them, say about thirty<sup>10</sup>, met a company of the mob of about double their number, a skirmish<sup>11</sup> took place in which some two or three of the mob, and one of our people were killed. This raised as it were the whole country<sup>12</sup> in arms:—and nothing would satisfy them<sup>13</sup>, but an immediate surrender of the arms of our people, and they<sup>14</sup> forthwith <sup>15</sup>to leave the county. Fifty-one guns were given up, which have never been returned or paid for to this day. The next day, parties of the mob from 50<sup>16</sup> to 70, headed by priests, went from house to house, threatening women and children with death if they were not off<sup>17</sup> before they returned. This so alarmed them<sup>18</sup>, that they fled in different directions;—some took shelter in the woods, while others wandered in the prairies

---

5. DHC 3:218: replaces “their” with “the”

6. Book C-1, 862 (pencil): adds “<Charles>” (pos. RLC)

7. Book C-2, 13: “<unless>” (FDR)

8. DHC 3:218: omits “&c.”

9. *FREM*, 11: omits “when”; Book C-1, 862 (different ink): “<when>” (US)

10. Book C-2, 14 (darker ink): “{\thirty/}” (pos. TB)

11. *FREM*, 11: replaces “a skirmish” with “when a battle”

12. *FREM*, 11, Book C-1, 862, Book C-2, 14, DHC 3:218: “county”

13. DHC 3:218: replaces “them” with “the mob”

14. DHC 3:219: replaces “and they” with “who”

15. DHC 3:219: adds “were”

16. *FREM*, 11, Book C-1, 862, Book C-2, 14: “30”

17. DHC 3:219: replaces “off” with “gone”

18. DHC 3:219: replaces “them” with “our people”

till their feet bled. In the meantime<sup>19</sup>, the weather being very cold, their sufferings in other respects were very<sup>20</sup> great.

The society made their escape to Clay county as fast as they possibly could, where the people received them kindly; and administered to their wants. After the society had left Jackson Co[unty]., their buildings amounting to about two hundred, were either burned or otherwise destroyed; and much of their crops, as well as furniture, stock, &c.<sup>21</sup>, which if properly estimated, would make a large sum, for <sup>22</sup>which they have not as yet received any remuneration.

The society remained in Clay county nearly three years; when, at the suggestion of the people there, they removed to that section of the<sup>23</sup> country<sup>24</sup> known now as Caldwell county. Here the people purchased<sup>25</sup> out most of the former inhabitants, and also entered much of the wild land. Many soon owned a number of eighties<sup>26</sup>, while there was scarcely a man that<sup>27</sup> did not secure to himself at least a forty<sup>28</sup>. Here we were permitted to enjoy peace for a season; but as our society increased in numbers, and settlements were made in Daviess and Carroll counties, the mob spirit spread itself again. For months previous to our giving up our arms to General Lucas' army, we heard little else than rumors of mobs collecting in different places and threatening our people. It is well known that the *people of our church* who had located themselves at De Witt, had to give up to a mob and leave the place, notwithstanding the militia were called out for their protection.

From De Witt the mob went towards Daviess county, and while on their way there they took two of *our men* prisoners, and made them ride upon the cannon, and told them that they would drive the Mormons from Daviess to Caldwell, and from Caldwell to hell; and that they would give them no quarter, only at the cannon's mouth. The threats of the mob induced some of our people to go to Daviess to help to<sup>29</sup> protect their brethren who had settled at Diahman<sup>30</sup> on Grand river. The mob soon fled from Daviess county; and after they were dispersed and the cannon taken, during which time no blood was shed, the people of Caldwell returned to their homes, in hopes of enjoying peace and quiet; but in this they were disappointed; for a large mob was soon found to be collecting on the Grindstone, (fork of Grand river)<sup>31</sup> from ten to fifteen miles off, under the command of Cornelius<sup>32</sup> Gillium, a scouting party of which came within four miles of Far West, and drove off stock belonging to our people, in open daylight<sup>33</sup>.

About this time, word came to Far West, that a party of the mob had come into Caldwell county<sup>34</sup> to the south of Far West; that they were taking horses and cattle, burning houses, and ordering the inhabitants to leave their homes immediately, and that they had then actually in their possession three men prisoners. This report reached Far West in the evening, and was con-

---

19. DHC 3:219: replaces "In the meantime" with "and"

20. DHC 3:219: omits "very"

21. DHC 3:219: omits "&c."

22. DHC 3:219: adds "the loss of"

23. Book C-1, 863: omits "the"

24. DHC 3:219: replaces "country" with "state"

25. DHC 3:219: replaces "purchased" with "bought"

26. DHC 3:219: adds "[eighty acres]"

27. DHC 3:219: replaces "that" with "who"

28. DHC 3:219: adds "[forty acres]"

29. Book C-2, 14: "<to>"

30. DHC 3:219: "Adam-on-di-Ahman"

31. Book C-1, 863 (different ink): "<[fork of Grand River]>" (WR)

32. *FREM*, 12: "C."; Book C-1, 863 (different ink): "C<ornelius.>" (prob. WR)

33. DHC 3:220: moves "in open daylight" to follow "Far West"

34. Book C-2, 15: "<county>" (FDR)

firmed about midnight. A company of about sixty men went forth under the command of David W. Patten, to disperse the mob, as they supposed. A battle was the result,—in which captain Patten and two<sup>35</sup> of his men were killed, and others wounded. Bogart, it appears, had but one killed, and others wounded. Notwithstanding the unlawful acts committed by Captain Bogart's men previous to the battle, it is now asserted and claimed that he was regularly ordered out as a militia captain, to preserve the peace along the line of Ray and Caldwell counties. That battle was fought four or five days previous to the arrival of General Lucas and his army. About the time of the battle with Captain Bogart, a number of our people who were living near Haun's mills<sup>36</sup>, on Shoal creek, about twenty miles below Far West, together with a number of emigrants who had been stopped there in consequence of the excitement, made an agreement with the mob which was about there<sup>37</sup>, that neither party should molest the other, but dwell in peace. Shortly after this agreement was made, a mob party of from two to three hundred, many of whom are supposed to be from Chariton county, some from Daviess, and also those who had agreed to dwell in peace, came upon our people there,—whose number in men was about forty, at a time they little expected any such thing, and without any ceremony, notwithstanding they begged for quarter<sup>38</sup>, shot them down as they would tigers or panthers. Some few made their escape by fleeing. Eighteen were killed, and a number more were severely wounded.

This tragedy was conducted in the most brutal and savage manner. An old man<sup>39</sup>, after the massacre was partially over, threw himself into their hands and begged for quarter<sup>40</sup>, when he was instantly shot down; that not killing him, they took an old corn cutter and literally mangled him to pieces. A lad of ten years of age, after being shot down, also begged to be spared, when one of them<sup>41</sup> placed the muzzle of his gun to his<sup>42</sup> head and blew out his brains.

The slaughter of these<sup>43</sup> not satisfying the mob, they then proceeded to rob<sup>44</sup> and plunder. The scene that presented itself after the massacre, to the widows and orphans of the killed, is beyond description. It was truly a time of weeping, of<sup>45</sup> mourning, and of lamentation.

As yet we have not heard of any<sup>46</sup> being arrested for these murders, notwithstanding there are men<sup>47</sup> boasting about the country, that they did kill on that occasion more than one Mormon; whereas all our people who were in the battle with Captain Patten against Bogart, that can be found, have been arrested, and are now confined in jail to await their trial for murder.

When General Lucas arrived near Far West, and presented the Governor's order, we were greatly surprised; yet we felt willing to submit to the authorities of the State. We gave up our arms without reluctance. We were then made prisoners, and confined to the limits of the town for about a week, during which time the men from the country were not permitted to go<sup>48</sup> to their families, many of whom were in a suffering condition for the want of food and firewood,—the weather being very cold and stormy.

---

35. DHC 3:220: replaces "two" with "three"

36. *FREM*, 12: "Hoan's mill"; DHC 3:220: "mill"

37. DHC 3:220: replaces "which was about there" with "in that vicinity"

38. Book C-1, 864, Book C-2, 15: "quarters"

39. DHC 3:220: adds "[Father Thomas McBride]"

40. *FREM*, 13, Book C-1, 864, Book C-2, 15: "quarters"

41. DHC 3:220: replaces "them" with "the mob"

42. DHC 3:220: replaces "his" with "the boy's"

43. *FREM*, 13: adds "people"; Book C-1, 864, Book C-2, 15: add ellipses over erasure

44. *FREM*, 13: replaces "rob" with "mob"; Book C-1, 864: "{\r/}ob"

45. DHC 3:221: omits this and next "of"

46. DHC 3:221: adds "one"

47. Book C-2, 15: "many" emended to read "men"

48. Book C-2, 16 (darker ink): "{\go/} [eoe]" (US)

Much property was destroyed by the troops in town during their stay there, such as burning house logs, rails, corn-cribs, boards, &c.<sup>49</sup>; the using of corn and hay, the plundering of houses, the killing of cattle, sheep and hogs, and also the taking of horses not their own;—and all this without regard to owners, or asking leave of any one. In the meantime, men were abused, women insulted, and abused by the troops; and all this, while we were kept prisoners.

Whilst the town was guarded, we were called together by the order of General Lucas, and a guard placed close around us, and in that situation <sup>50</sup>were compelled to sign a deed of trust for the purpose of making our individual property, all holden as they said, to pay all the debts of every individual belonging to the church, and also to pay for all damages the old inhabitants of Daviess may have sustained in consequence of the late difficulties in that county.

General Clark was now arrived, and the first important move made by him, was the collecting of our men together on the square, and selected out<sup>51</sup> about fifty of them, whom he immediately marched into a house and confined close<sup>52</sup>. This was done without the aid of the Sheriff or any legal process. The next day 46 of those taken, were driven like a parcel of menial slaves—off to Richmond<sup>53</sup>, not knowing why they were taken, or what they were<sup>54</sup> taken for. After being confined in Richmond more than two weeks, about one half were liberated; the rest, after another week's confinement, were most of them<sup>55</sup> required to appear at court, and have since been let to bail. Since General Clark withdrew his troops from Far West, parties of armed men have gone through the county<sup>56</sup> driving off horses, sheep, and cattle, and also plundering houses; the barbarity of General Lucas' troops ought not to be passed over in silence. They shot our cattle and hogs, merely for the sake of destroying them, leaving them for the ravens to eat. They took prisoner an aged man by the name of [John] Tanner, and without any reason for it, he was struck over the head with a gun, which laid his skull bare. Another man by the name of Carey was also taken prisoner by them, and without any provocation had his brains dashed out by a gun. He<sup>57</sup> was laid in a wagon, and there permitted to remain for the space of 24 hours; during which time no one was permitted to administer to him comfort or consolation; and after he was removed from that situation, he lived but a few hours.

The destruction of property at and about Far West, is very great. Many are stripped bare as it were, and others partially so; indeed, take us as a body, at this time, we are a poor and afflicted people; and if we are compelled to leave the State in the spring, many, yes, a large portion of our society will have to be removed at the expense of the State; as those who <sup>58</sup>might have helped them, are now debarred that privilege in consequence of the deed of trust we were compelled to sign; which deed so operated<sup>59</sup> upon our real estate, that it will sell for but<sup>60</sup> little or nothing at this time.

We have now made a brief statement of some of the most prominent features of the troubles that have befallen our people since our<sup>61</sup> first settlement in this State; and we believe that

---

49. DHC 3:221: omits "&c."

50. DHC 3:221: adds "we"

51. DHC 3:221: omits "out"

52. DHC 3:221: replaces "confined close" with "placed in close confinement"

53. DHC 3:222: moves "off to Richmond" to follow "driven"

54. Book C-1, 864: "<were>" (TB)

55. DHC 3:222: omits "most of them"

56. DHC 3:222: "country"

57. Book C-2, 16 (darker ink): "{\He/}" (FDR)

58. *FREM*, 14: adds "otherwise"

59. *FREM*, 14, Book C-1, 865: "operates"

60. Book C-2, 16: "<but>" (FDR)

61. *FREM*, 14, Book C-1, 865: replace "our" with "their"



these persecutions have come in consequence of our religious faith, and not for any immorality on our part. That instances have been of late, where individuals have trespassed upon the rights of others, and thereby broken the laws of the land, we will not pretend to deny; but yet we do believe, that no crime can be substantiated against any of the people who have a standing in our church of an earlier date than the difficulties in Daviess county. And when it is considered that the rights of this people have been trampled upon from time to time, with impunity, and abuses heaped upon them, almost innumerable<sup>62</sup>, it ought in some degree to palliate for any infraction of the law, which may have been made, on the part of our people.

The late order of Governor Boggs to drive us from this<sup>63</sup> State, or exterminate us, is a thing so novel, unlawful, tyrannical, and oppressive, that we have been induced to draw up this memorial and present this statement of our case to your honorable body, praying that a law may be passed, rescinding the order of the Governor to drive us from the State, and also giving us the sanction of the Legislature to inherit<sup>64</sup> our lands in peace. We ask an expression of the Legislature, disapproving the conduct of those who compelled us to sign a deed of trust, and also disapproving of any man or set of men taking our property in consequence of that deed of trust, and appropriating it to the payment of debts not contracted by us, or for the payment of damages sustained in consequence of trespasses committed by others.

We have no common stock; our property is individual property, and we feel willing to pay our debts as other individuals do; but we are not willing to be bound for other people's debts also. The arms which were taken from us here, which we understand to be about 630, besides swords and pistols, we care not so much about, as we do the pay for them; only we are bound to do military duty, which we are willing to do, and which we think was sufficiently manifested by the raising of a volunteer company last fall at Far West, when called upon by General Parks to raise troops for the frontier.

The arms given up by us, we consider were worth between twelve and fifteen thousand dollars; but we understand they have been greatly damaged since taken, and at this time probably would not bring near their former value. And as they were both here and in Jackson county, taken by the militia, and consequently by the authority of the State; we therefore ask your honorable body to cause an appropriation to be made by law, whereby we may be paid for them, or otherwise have them returned to us and the damages made good.

The losses sustained by our people in leaving Jackson county are so situated<sup>65</sup> that it is impossible to obtain any compensation for them by law, because those who have sustained them are unable to prove those trespasses upon individuals. That the facts do exist, that the buildings, crops, stock, furniture, rails, timber, &c., of the society have been destroyed in Jackson county, is not doubted by those who are acquainted in this upper country; <sup>66</sup>and since these trespasses cannot be proven<sup>67</sup> upon individuals, we ask your honorable body to consider this case, and if in your liberality, and wisdom, you can conceive it to be proper to make an appropriation by law to these sufferers,—many of whom are still pressed down with poverty in consequence of their losses, <sup>68</sup>would be able to pay their debts, and also in some degree be relieved from poverty and woe; whilst the widow's heart would be made to rejoice, and the orphan's tear measurably

---

62. DHC 3:222: moves "almost innumerable" to follow "abuses"

63. DHC 3:222: replaces "this" with "the"

64. DHC 3:223: replaces "inherit" with "possess"

65. DHC 3:223: replaces "so situated" with "such"

66. DHC 3:223: adds "[the part of the state north of the Missouri river was so called]"

67. *FREM*, 15, Book C-1, 866: "proved"

68. DHC 3:223: adds "they"

dried up, and the prayers of a grateful people ascend on high, with thanksgiving and praise to the Author of our existence, for that<sup>69</sup> beneficent act.

In laying our case before your honorable body, we say that we are willing, and ever have been, to conform to the Constitution and laws of the United States, and of this State. We ask in common with others the protection of the laws. We ask for the privilege guaranteed to all free citizens of the United States and of this State to be extended to us, that we may be permitted to settle and live where we please, and worship God according to the dictates of our conscience without molestation. And while we ask for ourselves this privilege, we are willing all others should enjoy the same.

We now lay our case at the feet of your Legislature<sup>70</sup>, and ask your honorable body to consider it, and do for us, after mature deliberation, that which your wisdom, patriotism, and philanthropy, may dictate. And we, as in duty bound will ever pray, &c.<sup>71</sup>

Edward Partridge,  
Heber C. Kimball,  
John Taylor,  
Theodore Turley,  
Brigham Young,  
Isaac Morley,  
George W. Harris,  
John Murdock,  
John M. Burk.

A committee appointed by the citizens of Caldwell county,  
to draft this<sup>72</sup> Memorial and sign it in their behalf.

Far West, Caldwell county, Mo., Dec[ember]. 10, 1838.

[DN 3 (8 December 1853): 1]

Thursday, [December] 13th [1838], Far West.<sup>73</sup>

<sup>74</sup>Agreeable to appointment, the standing High Council<sup>75</sup> met, when it was found that several were absent, who (some of them) have had to flee for their lives: therefore it being necessary that those vacancies be filled, the meeting was called for that purpose, and also to express each other's feelings respecting the word of the Lord. Pres[iden]t. Brigham Young presiding.

The council was opened by prayer by Elder Kimball. After prayer. President Young made a few remarks, saying he thought it all important to have the council reorganized, and prepared to do business. He advised the councilors to be wise and judicious in all their movements, and not hasty in their transactions. As for his faith it was the same as ever; and he fellowshiped all such as loved the gospel of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ in act as well as word.

Elder Kimball arose and said he felt as formerly, for he had endeavored to keep a straight-

---

69. DHC 3:224: replaces "that" with "such"

70. DHC 3:224: "you legislators"

71. DHC 3:224: omits "&c."

72. Book C-2, 18: "{a} <this>" (FDR)

73. DHC 3:224: replaces this line with "*Minutes of a High Council Held at Far West, Thursday, December 13, 1838.*"

74. Source: FWR, 173-75 (HSt) (FWR [1983], 221-23).

75. FWR, 173: replaces "Council" with "Councillors"

forward course; but wherein he had been out of the way in any manner he meant to mend in that thing; and he was determined to do as much as possible,<sup>76</sup> as he would be done by; and his faith was as good as ever; he was in fellowship with all who wanted to do right.

Simeon Carter said, as to his faith in the work it was the same<sup>77</sup> as ever; he did not think that Joseph was a fallen prophet, but he believed in every revelation that had come through him: still he thought that perhaps Joseph had not acted in all things according to the best wisdom; yet how far he had been unwise he could not say. He did not think that Joseph would be removed and another planted in his stead; but he believed he would still perform his work. He was still determined to persevere and act in righteousness in all things, so that he might at last gain a crown of glory, and reign in the kingdom of God.

Jared Carter responded with President Brigham Young's feelings, and wished still<sup>78</sup> to walk with the brethren.

Thomas Grover said he was firm in the faith, and he believed the time would come when Joseph would stand before kings, and speak marvelous words.

David Dort expressed his feelings in a similar manner.

Levi Jackman says his faith is the same as ever, and he has confidence in brother Joseph as ever.

Solomon Hancock says he is a firm believer in the Book of Mormon and Doctrine and Covenants, and that brother Joseph is not a fallen prophet, but will yet be exalted and become very high.

John Badger says his confidence in the work is the same as ever, and his faith, if possible, is stronger than ever. He believes that it was necessary that these scourges should come.

George W. Harris says that as it respects the scourges which have come upon us, that the hand of God was in it, &c.<sup>79</sup>

Samuel Bent says that his faith is as ever<sup>80</sup>, and that he feels to praise God in prisons and in dungeons, and in all circumstances.<sup>81</sup>

After some consultation it was thought expedient to nominate High Priests to fill the vacancies.

The Council was organized as follows:—Simeon Carter No. 1; Jared Carter 2; Thomas Grover 3; David Dort 4; Levi Jackman 5; Solomon Hancock 6; John Badger 7; John Murdock 8; John E. Page 9; George W. Harris 10; John Taylor 11; Samuel Bent 12.

Voted that John Murdock fill the vacancy of John P. Green[e] No. 4, and David Dort the place of Elias Higbee No. 11, and John Badger the place of George Morey No. 7, and Lyman Sherman the place of Newel Knight until he returns.

Council adjourned until Friday evening, <sup>82</sup>6 o'clock. Closed in prayer by President [Brigham] Young.

E. ROBINSON, Clerk.

<sup>83</sup>Isaac Russell, who had become connected with a small camp of the Saints of about thirty fam-

76. DHC 3:225: adds "to do"

77. Book C-2, 18: "{\same/}" (FDR)

78. DHC 3:225: replaces "still" with "all"

79. DHC 3:225: omits "&c."

80. DHC 3:225: "as it ever was"

81. FWR, 175: adds "whatever he may be found"; Book C-1, 867: adds ellipses over erasure of about four words

82. FWR, 175: adds "at"; Book C-2, 19: "{at}"

83. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on CR (transcription in vol. 8, III.10). See also Jesse N. Smith's account in Jenson 1971, 1:316-17.

ilies, going west, turned from his course at Louisiana [Pike County, Missouri], and<sup>84</sup> led them north ten miles on the Spanish claims, where they built huts, or lived in tents through the winter in great suffering. Russell turned prophet, (apostate) <sup>85</sup>said Joseph had fallen and he was appointed to lead the people.

Chandler Rogers, who was moving west, was met by a mob at Huntsville [Randolph County, Missouri], and compelled to turn back, and fell in with Russell's camp. Russell said he was "the chosen of the Lord"; and when they left that<sup>86</sup> place, they would have to go on foot, and take nothing with them, and they must sell their teams, &c.<sup>87</sup>—Some would not sell and he cursed them.

Sunday, [December] 16. I wrote the following letter:

<sup>88</sup>Liberty Jail, Missouri,  
Dec[ember]. 16th, 1838.

To the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints in Caldwell county, and all the Saints<sup>89</sup> who are scattered abroad, who are persecuted, and made desolate, and who are afflicted in divers manners for Christ's sake and the gospel's, by the hands of a cruel mob and the tyrannical disposition of the authorities of this State<sup>90</sup>: and whose<sup>91</sup> perils are greatly augmented by the wickedness and corruption of false brethren<sup>92</sup>:—

May grace, <sup>93</sup>mercy, and the peace of God<sup>94</sup> be and abide with you; and notwithstanding all your sufferings, we assure you that you have our prayers and fervent desires for your welfare, <sup>95</sup>day and night. We believe that that God who seeth us in this solitary place, will hear our prayers and reward you openly.

Know assuredly, dear brethren, that it is for the testimony of Jesus that we are in bonds and in prison. But we say unto you that we consider that our condition is better<sup>96</sup> (notwithstanding our sufferings) than <sup>97</sup>those who have persecuted us, and smitten us, and borne false witness against us; and we most assuredly believe that those who do bear false witness against us, do seem to have a great triumph over us for the present.<sup>98</sup> But we want you to remember Haman and Mordecai: you know that Haman could not be satisfied so long as he saw Mordecai

---

84. Book C-1, 868, Book C-2, 19: omit "and"

85. DHC 3:226: adds "He" and starts new sentence

86. DHC 3:226: replaces "that" with "the"

87. DHC 3:226: omits "&c."

88. *Source*: RDft 1:38 directs scribe to copy from *T&S* 1 (Apr. 1840): 82–86, and to also see JSj [1838], 101–8 (JM) (*PJS*, 287–300; *APR*, 215–24), and the "original" MS Letter in JSLS, Bx 2, fd 3, 38–45 (US) (*PWJS*, 415–22). The version that appears in MSHiJS is a composite and was composed sometime before it was copied into Book C-1, 868–73, by TB about 25 Feb.–1 Mar. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology), and closely follows the MS Letter and JSj, with some additions from *T&S*. The inferior quality of the *T&S* version suggests that it pre-dates the so-called "original", which is really a heavily edited and expanded copy. The version JM copied into JSj prior to his death on 3 Nov. 1839 is very similar to MS Letter. Another partial copy "found among W. Woodruff's papers and filed in the Historians office May 27[,] 1857," according to the filing notation of RLC, is also located in JSLS, Bx 2, fd 3, 46–53 (US).

89. *T&S* 1:82: replaces "all the Saints" with "to those"

90. MS Letter, 1, JSj [1838], 101: omit "by the hands ... State". Added from *T&S* 1:82.

91. *T&S* 1:82: replaces "and whose" with "We are sensible also, that your"

92. DHC 3:226: adds "greeting"

93. Book C-2, 19: adds ellipses over erasure

94. MS Letter, 1, *T&S* 1:82: omit "the" and "of God". Added from JSj [1838], 101.

95. JSj [1838], 101: adds "and salvation"

96. *T&S* 1:83: "consider our condition better"

97. DHC 3:226: adds "that of"

98. *T&S* 1:83: replaces "we most assuredly ... present" with "although our enemies seem to have a great triumph over us for the present, we most assuredly believe and know, that their triumph will be but short, and that God will deliver us out of their hands, notwithstanding their bearing false witness and otherwise."

at the king's gate, and he sought the life of Mordecai and <sup>99</sup>the people of the Jews<sup>100</sup>. But the Lord<sup>101</sup> so ordered it<sup>102</sup>, that Haman was hanged upon his own gallows. [Esther 2-8]

So shall it come to pass with poor Haman in the last days.<sup>103</sup> Those who have sought by <sup>104</sup>unbelief and wickedness, and by the principle of mobocracy to destroy us and the people of God, by killing and scattering them abroad, and wilfully and maliciously delivering us into the hands of murderers, desiring us to be put to death, thereby<sup>105</sup> having us dragged about in chains and cast into prison, and for what cause? It is because we were honest men, and were determined to defend the lives of the Saints at the expense of our own. I say unto you, that those who have thus vilely treated us <sup>106</sup>like Haman, shall be hanged upon their own gallows: or in other words shall fall into their own gin and snare<sup>107</sup>, and ditch and trap<sup>108</sup> which they have prepared for us, and shall go backwards and stumble and fall, and their name shall be blotted out<sup>109</sup>, and God shall reward them according to all their abominations.

Dear brethren, do not think that our hearts faint, as though some strange thing had happened unto us; for we have seen and been assured of all<sup>110</sup> these things beforehand; and have an assurance of a better hope than that of our persecutors. Therefore God hath made broad our shoulders for the burden<sup>111</sup>.—We glory in our tribulation because we know that God is with us; that he is our friend, and that he will save our souls<sup>112</sup>. We do not care for them that can kill the body; <sup>113</sup>they cannot harm our souls. We ask no favors at the hands of mobs, nor of the world, nor of the devil, nor <sup>114</sup>of his emissaries the Dissenters, and those who love, and make, and swear falsehoods, to take away our lives<sup>115</sup>.—We have never dissembled, nor will we for the sake of our lives.

Forasmuch, then, as we know that we have been endeavoring with all our minds<sup>116</sup>, might<sup>117</sup>, and strength, to do the will of God, and<sup>118</sup> all things whatsoever he has commanded us<sup>119</sup>;—and as to our light speeches, which may have escaped our lips<sup>120</sup> from time to time, they have nothing to do with the fixed purposes of our hearts<sup>121</sup>; therefore it sufficeth us to say, that

---

99. DHC 3:227: adds “the destruction of”

100. T&S 1:83: “the whole Jewish people”

101. JSj [1838], 101: replaces “the Lord” with “God”

102. MS Letter, 1, JSj [1838], 101: omit “it”

103. DHC 3:227: adds “and” and continues previous sentence

104. MS Letter, 1, JSj [1838], 101, T&S 1:83: add “their”

105. T&S 1:83: replaces “thereby” with “and”

106. T&S 1:83: adds “shall”

107. MS Letter, 1, T&S 1:83: omit “and snare”. Follows wording of JSj [1838], 101.

108. T&S 1:83: omits “and trap”

109. T&S 1:83: replaces “be blotted out” with “perish”

110. T&S 1:83: omits “and been assured of all”

111. T&S 1:83: “made our shoulders broad, so that we can bear them”; MS Letter, 1: “made our shoulders broad that we can bear it”. Follows wording of JSj [1838], 102.

112. T&S 1:83: replaces “our souls” with “us”

113. T&S 1:83: adds “knowing that”

114. T&S 1:83: adds “yet of any”

115. MS Letter, 1, T&S 1:83: omit “and those who love ... lives”

116. Book C-2, 20 (darker ink): “m{\inds/}”

117. MS Letter, 1, T&S 1:83: “might, mind”; DHC 3:227: “mind, might”. Follows wording in JSj [1838], 102.

118. T&S 1:83: replaces “and” with “in”

119. T&S 1:83: adds “we feel a satisfaction which we would not part with for any wor[l]dly advantage whatever”

120. JSj [1838], 102: replaces “speeches ... lips” with “observations”

121. T&S 1:83: adds “and those who have taken offence at any thing which may inadvertantly have escaped our lips.”

our souls were vexed from day to day<sup>122</sup>. We refer you to Isaiah, who considers<sup>123</sup> those who make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate [Isaiah 29:21]. We believe that the old prophet verily told the truth; and<sup>124</sup> we have no retraction to make. We have reproveth in the gate, and men have laid snares for us. We have spoken words, and men have made us offenders. And notwithstanding all this, our minds are not yet darkened but feel strong in the Lord. But behold the words of the Savior: "If the light which is in you become darkness, behold how great is that darkness." Look at the Dissenters. Again, "if you were of the world, the world would love its own." Look at Mr. Hinkle—a wolf in sheep's clothing. Look at his brother John Corril. Look at the beloved brother Reed Peck, who aided him in leading us,<sup>125</sup> as the Savior was led, into the camp<sup>126</sup> as a lamb prepared for the slaughter; as a sheep dumb before his shearers, so we opened not our mouths.

But these men like Balaam, being greedy for reward<sup>127</sup>, sold us into the hands of those who loved them, for the world loves his own. I would remember William E. McLellan<sup>128</sup>, who comes up to us as one of Job's comforters<sup>129</sup>. God suffered such kind of beings to afflict Job—but it never entered into their hearts that Job would get out of it all. This poor man who professes to be much of a prophet, has no other dumb ass to ride, but David Whitmer, to forbid his madness when he goes up to curse Israel, and this ass not being of the same kind as Balaam's, therefore the angel notwithstanding appeared unto him, yet he could not penetrate his understanding sufficiently so<sup>130</sup>, but what he brays out cursings instead of blessings. Poor ass!—whoever lives to see it<sup>131</sup>, will see him and his rider perish like those who perished in the gain-saying of Korah<sup>132</sup> [Numbers 16:1-3, 31-35; Jude 11], or after the same condemnation<sup>133</sup>. Now as for these and the rest of their company, we will not presume to<sup>134</sup> say that the world loves them; but we presume to say they love the world, and we classify them in the error of Balaam [Numbers 22; 31:8], and in the gain-sayings of Korah<sup>135</sup>, and with the company of Korah<sup>136</sup>, Dathan, and Abiram. [Numbers 16:1-3]

Perhaps<sup>137</sup> our brethren may say<sup>138</sup>, because we thus write<sup>139</sup>, that we are offended at these characters! If we are, it is not for a word, neither because they reproveth in the gate—but because they have been the means of shedding innocent blood. Are they not murderers then at heart? Are not their consciences seared as with a hot iron? We confess that we are offended; but the Savior said, "it must needs be<sup>140</sup> that offenses come, but woe unto them by whom they come"; and

---

122. *T&S* 1:83: omits "therefore it sufficeth ... day"

123. *T&S* 1:83: "refer them to Isaiah's description of"

124. *T&S* 1:83: omits "We believe ... and"; JSj [1838], 102, MS Letter, 2, Book C-1, 869, Book C-2, 20: omit "and"

125. *T&S* 1:83: replaces "Look at Mr. Hinkle ... us" with "Look at those men, viz: Hinckle, Corril and Peck, by whom we were led"

126. DHC 3:228: adds "of His enemies"

127. *T&S* 1:83: replaces "for reward" with "of gain"

128. JSj [1838], 102, MS Letter, 2, *T&S* 1:83: replace "William E. McLellan" with "W. W. Phelps"

129. JSj [1838], 102: replaces "comforters" with "destroyers"

130. DHC 3:228: omits "so"

131. *T&S* 1:83: omits "to see it"

132. JSj [1838], 103, MS Letter, 2, *T&S* 1:84, Book C-1, 869, Book C-2, 21: "Core"

133. *T&S* 1:84: adds "unless they repent"

134. *T&S* 1:84: omits "presume to"

135. JSj [1838], 103, MS Letter, 2, *T&S* 1:84, Book C-1, 869, Book C-2, 21: "Core"

136. JSj [1838], 103, MS Letter, 2, *T&S* 1:84, Book C-1, 869, Book C-2, 21: "Cora"

137. *T&S* 1:84: replaces "Perhaps" with "In speaking thus some of"

138. *T&S* 1:84: replaces "say" with "think"

139. *T&S* 1:84: omits "because we thus write"

140. MS Letter, 3, *T&S* 1:84: omit "it must needs be" and insert "must" before "come"



again, “blessed are ye when men shall revile you, and persecute you,<sup>141</sup> and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake; rejoice and be exceeding glad, for great is your reward in heaven, for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.” [Matthew 18:7; 5:11]

Now dear brethren, if any men ever had reason to claim this promise, we are the men; for we know that the world not only<sup>142</sup> hates us, but they speak all manner of evil of us falsely, for no other reason than that we have been endeavoring to teach the fullness of the gospel<sup>143</sup> of Jesus Christ.

<sup>144</sup>After we were bartered away by Hinkle, and were taken into the militia camp, we had all the evidence we<sup>145</sup> could have asked for that the world hated us. If there were priests among them of all the different sects, they hated us, and that most cordially too<sup>146</sup>. If there were generals, they hated us; if there were colonels, they hated us; and the soldiers, and officers of every kind<sup>147</sup>, hated us; and the most profane, blasphemous<sup>148</sup>, and drunkards, and whoremongers, hated us;—they all hated us most cordially. And now what did they hate us for? Purely because of the testimony of Jesus Christ. Was it because we were liars? We know that it has been reported by some, but it has been reported falsely. Was it because we have committed treason against the government<sup>149</sup>, in Daviess county<sup>150</sup>, or of<sup>151</sup> burglary, or of larceny, or of arson, or any other unlawful act in Daviess county<sup>152</sup>? We know that <sup>153</sup>priests, and certain lawyers, and certain judges, who are the instigators, aiders, and abettors of a certain gang of murderers and robbers, who have been carrying on a scheme of mobocracy to uphold their priestcraft, against the saints of the last days,<sup>154</sup> for a number of years<sup>155</sup>—and<sup>156</sup> have tried<sup>157</sup> by a well contemplated and premeditated scheme, to put down by physical power a system of religion, that all the world; by their mutual attainments<sup>158</sup>, and by any fair means whatever <sup>159</sup>were not able to resist.

Hence mobbers were encouraged by priests and Levites, by the Pharisees, <sup>160</sup>Sadducees, and Essenes, and <sup>161</sup>Herodians, and <sup>162</sup>the most worthless<sup>163</sup>, abandoned, and debauched, lawless, and inhuman, and the most<sup>164</sup> beastly set of men that the earth can boast of<sup>165</sup>; and indeed a

---

141. *T&S* 1:84: omits “and persecute you”

142. Book C-2, 21: “<only>” (FDR)

143. Book C-1, 870: “<of the gospel>” (TB)

144. This paragraph received some heavy editing and rewriting without significant change in meaning (cf. *T&S* 1:84).

145. Book C-2, 21: “{we/}” (FDR)

146. MS Letter, 3: omits “and that most cordially too”

147. JSj [1838], 103: replaces “every kind” with “all classes”

148. JSj [1838], 103, MS Letter, 3: “blasphemers”

149. JSj [1838], 104: replaces “government” with “state”

150. *T&S* 1:84: omits “in Daviess county”

151. DHC 3:229: omits this and following two occurrences of “of”

152. *T&S* 1:84: omits “in Daviess county”

153. DHC 3:229: adds “we have been so reported by”

154. DHC 3:229: adds “and”

155. *T&S* 1:84: omits “for a number of years”

156. DHC 3:229: omits “and”

157. JSj [1838], 104: omits “tried”

158. *T&S* 1:84: omits “by their mutual attainments”

159. *T&S* 1:84: adds “and all their intelligence”

160. DHC 3:229: adds “by the”

161. Book C-1, 870, Book C-2, 22: add “the”

162. JSj [1838], 104: adds “every other ‘E’ and ‘ite’ agging [egging] on”

163. MS Letter, 3, JSj [1838], 104: replace “worthless” with “ruthless”

164. JSj [1838], 104: omits “the most”

165. *T&S* 1:84: replaces “debauched ... boast of” with “wicked characters that are suffered to live upon the earth”



parallel cannot be found anywhere else, to gather together <sup>166</sup>to steal, to plunder, to starve, and to exterminate<sup>167</sup>, and burn the houses of the Mormons<sup>168</sup>.

These are characters that by their treasonable and overt<sup>169</sup> acts, have desolated and laid waste Daviess county. These are the characters that would fain make all the world believe that we are guilty of the above named acts. But they represent us falsely; we stood in our own defense, and we believe that no man of us acted only in a just, a lawful, and a righteous retaliation against such marauders.<sup>170</sup>

We say unto you, that we have not committed treason, nor any other unlawful act in Daviess county. Was it for murder in Ray county, <sup>171</sup>against mob-militia; who was a wolf in the first instance, hide, and hair, teeth, legs and tail, who afterwards put on a militia sheep skin <sup>172</sup>with the wool on, who can<sup>173</sup> sally forth, in the day time, into the flock, and snarl, and show his teeth, and scatter and devour the flock and satiate himself upon his prey, and then sneak back into the bramble in order that he might conceal himself in his well tried skin with the wool on?

We are well aware that there is a certain set of priests, and satellites, and mobbers, that would fain make all the world believe that we are the dogs that barked at<sup>174</sup> this howling wolf that made such havoc among the sheep, who when he retreated, howled and<sup>175</sup> bleated<sup>176</sup> at such a desperate rate, that if one could have been there, he would have thought that all the wolves, whether wrapped up in sheep skins or in goat skins, or in any<sup>177</sup> other skins, and in fine all the beasts of the forest, were awfully alarmed, and catching the scent of innocent blood, they sallied forth with one tremendous howl and crying of all sorts; and such a howling, and such a tremendous havoc never was known<sup>178</sup>; such a piece of<sup>179</sup> inhumanity, and relentless cruelty, and barbarity, <sup>180</sup>cannot<sup>181</sup> be found in all the annals of history.

These are the characters that<sup>182</sup> would make the world believe that we had committed murder, by making an attack upon this howling wolf, while <sup>183</sup>we were at home, and in our bed, and asleep, and knew nothing of that transaction, any more than we know what is going

166. JSj [1838], 104: adds "to drive"

167. T&S 1:84: adds "the saints"

168. T&S 1:84: omits "and burn ... Mormons"

169. T&S 1:84: omits "and overt"

170. MS Letter, 3, T&S 1:84: omit "we stood ... marauders"

171. The remainder of this and next two paragraphs written for MSHjS to replace the following from T&S 1:84: "Was it for murder in Ray county, that we were thus treated? We answer no. We were not present when the mobs came forth in that direction, who after dragging our brethren from their homes, and burning their habitations and killing several of our beloved friends, but not without the expense of, some of their own lives; retreated and after getting clothed with the authority of militia, raised the cry of murder! treason! &c. and appeared as innocent as a sheep. This suited their purpose, but if their borrowed garb had been torn off; instead of the peaceable sheep we should have found all the characteristics of the prowling wolf guilty of the murder of innocent and harmless men; therefore, on the heads of that mob with Bogard at their head be the crime and upon them rests the curse."

172. JSj [1838], 104: adds "well tanned"

173. DHC 3:229: "could"

174. DHC 3:230: replaces "are the dogs that barked at" with "were guilty of the doings of"

175. Book C-2, 22 (darker ink): "{\and/} [eoe]" (TB)

176. Book C-1, 871: "blated"

177. DHC 3:230: replaces "any" with "some"

178. DHC 3:230: adds "before"

179. DHC 3:230: omits "a piece of"

180. DHC 3:230: adds "as were practiced against the Saints in Missouri"

181. DHC 3:230: replaces "cannot" with "can scarcely"

182. DHC 3:230: replaces "These ... that" with "Now those characters if allowed to"

183. DHC 3:230: adds "the fact is"

on in China while we are within these walls. Therefore we say again unto you, we are innocent of these things, and<sup>184</sup> they have represented us falsely.

<sup>185</sup>Was it for committing adultery<sup>186</sup>? We are aware that <sup>187</sup>false slander has gone abroad, for it has been reiterated in our ears. These are falsehoods also.—Renegade Mormon Dissenters are running through the world and spreading various foul<sup>188</sup> and libelous reports against us thinking thereby to gain the friendship of the world, because they know that we are not of the world, and that the world hates us; therefore they <sup>189</sup>make a<sup>190</sup> tool of these fellows<sup>191</sup>; by them try to<sup>192</sup> do all the injury they can, and after that they hate them worse than they do us, because they find them to be base traitors and sycophants.

<sup>193</sup>Such characters God hates: we cannot love them. The world hates them, and we sometimes think that the devil<sup>194</sup> ought to be ashamed of them.

We have heard that it is reported by some, that some of us should have said, that we not only dedicated our property, but our families also to the Lord, and Satan taking advantage of this, has transfigured<sup>195</sup> it into licentiousness<sup>196</sup>, such as a community of wives, which is an abomination in the sight of God.

When we consecrate our property to the Lord, it is to administer to the wants of<sup>197</sup> the poor and needy, for this is the law of God; it is not for the purpose of the rich, those who have no need<sup>198</sup>; and when a man consecrates or dedicates his wife and children, he does not give them to his brother, or to his neighbor, for there is no such law: for the law of God is, thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife. He that looketh upon a woman to lust after her, has committed adultery already in his heart. Now for a man to consecrate his property<sup>199</sup>, wife and children to the Lord, is nothing more nor less than to feed the hungry, clothe the naked, visit the widow and the<sup>200</sup> fatherless, the sick and the afflicted, and do all he can to administer to their relief in their afflictions, and for him and his house to serve the Lord. In order to do this, he and all his house must be virtuous, and must shun the very appearance of evil.

Now if any person has represented anything otherwise than what we now write, <sup>201</sup>he or she is a liar, and has represented us falsely—and this is another manner of evil which is spoken against us falsely.

<sup>202</sup>We have learned also since we have been prisoners<sup>203</sup>, that many false and pernicious things which were calculated to lead the Saints far astray and to do great injury, have been

---

184. JSj [1838], 105: omits “and” and replaces “we are innocent of” with “in”

185. This paragraph heavily edited without significant change in meaning (cf. *T&S* 1:84).

186. DHC 3:230: adds “that we are assailed”

187. DHC 3:230: adds “that”

188. JSj [1838], 105: “false”

189. DHC 3:230: adds “[the world]”

190. Book C-2, 22: “make” overwrites illegible; “a” in darker ink

191. DHC 3:230: adds “[the dissenters]; and”

192. MS Letter, 4: omits “try to”

193. This paragraph omitted in *T&S* 1:84.

194. JSj [1838], 105: replaces “the devil” with “Satan”

195. DHC 3:230: replaces “transfigured” with “perverted”

196. MS Letter, 4, *T&S* 1:85: “lasciviousness”

197. JSj [1838], 105: omits “the wants of”

198. *T&S* 1:85: omits “it is not ... need”

199. Book C-1, 871: “<property>” (TB)

200. DHC 3:231: omits “the”

201. *T&S* 1:85: replaces remainder of paragraph with “they have willfully misrepresented us.”

202. This paragraph heavily edited (cf. *T&S* 1:85).

203. MS Letter, 5, *T&S* 1:85: replace “prisoners” with “in prison”

taught by Dr. Avar<sup>204</sup> as coming from the Presidency<sup>205</sup>, and we have reason to fear that many other<sup>206</sup> designing and corrupt characters like unto himself, have been teaching many things<sup>207</sup> which the Presidency never knew of<sup>208</sup>, being taught in the church by anybody<sup>209</sup> until after they were made prisoners, which if they<sup>210</sup> had known of<sup>211</sup>, they would have spurned them and their authors from them, as they would the gates of hell<sup>212</sup>. Thus we find that there have been frauds and secret abominations and evil works of darkness<sup>213</sup> going on, leading the minds of the weak and unwary into confusion and distraction, and palming it <sup>214</sup>all the time<sup>215</sup> upon the Presidency, while meantime<sup>216</sup> the Presidency were ignorant as well as innocent<sup>217</sup> of those things which <sup>218</sup>were practicing in the church in their name, <sup>219</sup>and<sup>220</sup> were attending to their own secular and<sup>221</sup> family concerns, weighed down with sorrow, in debt, in poverty, in hunger, essaying to be fed, yet finding <sup>222</sup>themselves, receiving<sup>223</sup> deeds of charity, <sup>224</sup>but <sup>225</sup>inadequate to their subsistence, and because they received those deeds, they were envied and hated by those who professed to be their friends.

<sup>226</sup>But notwithstanding we thus speak, we honor the church, when we speak of the church as a church, for their liberality, kindness, patience, <sup>227</sup>long suffering, and their continual kindness towards us.

<sup>228</sup>And now brethren, we say unto you, what more can we enumerate? Is not all manner of evil of every description spoken of<sup>229</sup> us falsely, yea, we say unto you falsely? We have been misrepresented, and misunderstood, and belied, and the purity and integrity, and uprightness<sup>230</sup> of our hearts have not been known—and it is through ignorance—yea, the very depth<sup>231</sup> of

---

204. *T&S* 1:85: adds “who has represented them”

205. JSj [1838], 106: “as coming from the Presidency, taught by Dr Avar<sup>d</sup>”; MS Letter, 5: “<have been taught by Dr. Avar<sup>d</sup>> as coming from the Presidency ~~taught by Dr Avar<sup>d</sup>~~”

206. MS Letter, 5: “<that> many <other ~~things~~>”

207. JSj [1838], 106: omits “have been teaching many things”; MS Letter, 5: “<have been teaching many things>”

208. DHC 3:231: replaces “of” with “were”

209. *T&S* 1:85: omits “being taught ... anybody”

210. DHC 3:231: omits “which if they” and begins new sentence

211. DHC 3:231: adds “such things”

212. *T&S* 1:85: replaces “the gates of hell” with “a serpent”

213. JSj [1838], 106: omits “of darkness”

214. DHC 3:231: adds “off”

215. DHC 3:231: moves “all the time” to precede “palming”

216. DHC 3:231: omits “meantime”

217. *T&S* 1:85: omits “as well as innocent”

218. DHC 3:231: adds “those persons”

219. Remainder of this and next paragraph omitted in *T&S* 1:85.

220. DHC 3:231: omits “and” and begins new sentence with “Meantime the Presidency”

221. MS Letter, 5: omits “secular and”

222. DHC 3:231: adds “[i.e. supporting]”

223. DHC 3:231: begins new sentence with “They occasionally received”

224. DHC 3:231: adds “it is true”

225. DHC 3:231: adds “these were”

226. This paragraph omitted in *T&S* 1:85.

227. MS Letter, 5, JSj [1838], 106, Book C-1, 872, Book C-2, 23, DHC 3:231: add “and”

228. This paragraph heavily edited and expanded (cf. *T&S* 1:85).

229. MS Letter, 5: replaces “of” with “against”

230. MS Letter, 6: omits “and integrity, and uprightness”; *T&S* 1:85: omits “and integrity”. Wording from JSj [1838], 106.

231. DHC 3:232: “depths”

ignorance, is the cause of it; and not only ignorance, but on the part of some, gross wickedness and hypocrisy also—who<sup>232</sup> by a long face and sanctimonious<sup>233</sup> prayers, and very pious sermons, had power to lead the minds of the ignorant and unwary, and thereby obtain such influence, that when we approached their iniquities, the devil gained great advantage,—would bring great trouble and sorrow upon<sup>234</sup> our heads; and in fine we have waded through an ocean of tribulation and mean abuse,—practiced upon us by the ill bred, and the ignorant,<sup>235</sup> such as Hinkle, Corrill, Phelps, Avar, Reed Peck, [John]<sup>236</sup> Cleminson, and various others, who are so very ignorant, that they cannot appear respectable in any decent and civilized society, and whose eyes are full of adultery, and cannot cease from sin. Such characters as McLellin, John Whitmer, D[avid]. Whitmer, O[liver]. Cowdery, and Martin Harris,<sup>237</sup> are too mean to mention; and we had like<sup>238</sup> to have forgotten them. Marsh and “another,”<sup>239</sup> whose hearts are full of corruption, whose cloak of hypocrisy was not sufficient to shield them or to hold<sup>240</sup> them up in the hour of trouble, who after having escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of their Lord and Savior Jesus Christ<sup>241</sup>, and<sup>242</sup> became again entangled and overcome—their latter end is worse than the first<sup>243</sup>. But it has happened unto them according to the word of the Savior<sup>244</sup>: “The dog has returned to his vomit, and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.” [2 Peter 2:22]

<sup>245</sup>Again, if we sin willfully after we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sin, but a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation to come, which shall devour these<sup>246</sup> adversaries. For he who despiseth<sup>247</sup> Moses’ law died without mercy under two or three witnesses. Of how much more severe punishment, suppose ye shall he be thought worthy, who hath sold his brother, and denied the new and everlasting covenant by which he was sanctified, calling it an unholy thing, and doing despite to the Spirit of grace.

And again we say unto you, that inasmuch as there be<sup>248</sup> virtue in us, and the Holy Priesthood hath been conferred upon<sup>249</sup> us, and the keys of the kingdom hath<sup>250</sup> not been taken from us, for verily thus saith the Lord, “be of good cheer, for the keys that I gave unto you are

---

232. DHC 3:232: replaces “who” with “for some”

233. MS Letter, 6: “sanctified”

234. Book C-1, 872: “on”

235. From this point to the words “tangled and overcome” expands the following from *T&S* 1:85: “We could enumerate the names of many who have acted in a mean and dastardly manner, some of whom we once considered our friends men whom we once thought would never condescend to such unhallowed proceedings, but their love of the world and the praise of men has overcome every feeling of virtue, and they have yielded obedience once more to their old master, consequently ...”

236. Brackets this editor’s.

237. MS Letter, 6, Book C-1, 872, Book C-2, 24: add “who”

238. MS Letter, 6, DHC 3:232: “liked”

239. JSj [1838], 107, MS Letter, 6: replace “another” with “Hyde”

240. JSj [1838], 107: replaces “hold” with “bear”

241. MS Letter, 6: replaces “their Lord ... Christ” with “God”

242. DHC 3:232: omits “and”

243. JSj [1838], 107: replaces “first” with “beginning”

244. DHC 3:232: replaces “Savior” with “Scripture”

245. First sentence omitted in *T&S* 1:85.

246. Book C-2, 24: “the<se>”

247. DHC 3:232: “despised”

248. DHC 3:232: replaces “be” with “is”

249. Book C-2, 24 (darker ink): “{\upon/}” (FDR)

250. DHC 3:232: “have”

yet with you”: Therefore we say unto you, dear brethren, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, we deliver these characters unto the buffetings of Satan until the day of redemption, that they may be dealt with according to their works; and from henceforth their works shall be made manifest.

And now dear and well beloved brethren,—and when we say brethren, we mean those<sup>251</sup> who have continued faithful in Christ<sup>252</sup>, men, women and children,—we feel to<sup>253</sup> exhort you in the name of the Lord Jesus, to be strong in the faith in the new and everlasting covenant, and nothing frightened at your enemies. For what has happened unto<sup>254</sup> us, is an evident token to them of damnation; but unto<sup>255</sup> us, of salvation, and that of God. Therefore hold on even unto death; for “he that seeks to save his life shall lose it; but he that loseth<sup>256</sup> his life for my sake, and the gospel’s, shall find it,” [Matthew 16:25] saith Jesus Christ<sup>257</sup>.

Brethren, from henceforth, let truth and righteousness prevail and abound in you; and in all things be temperate; abstain from<sup>258</sup> drunkenness, and from swearing, and from all<sup>259</sup> profane language, and from everything which is unrighteous or unholy; also from enmity, and hatred, and covetousness, and from every unholy desire<sup>260</sup>. Be honest one with another, for it seemeth<sup>261</sup> that some have come short of these things, and some have been uncharitable, and have manifested greediness because of their debts<sup>262</sup> towards those who have been persecuted and<sup>263</sup> dragged about with chains without cause, and imprisoned. Such characters God hates<sup>264</sup>—and they shall have their turn of sorrow in the rolling of the great wheel, for it rolleth and none can hinder.<sup>265</sup> Zion shall yet live, though she seemeth<sup>266</sup> to be dead.

Remember that whatsoever measure you mete out to others, it shall be measured to you again. We say unto you, brethren, be not afraid of your adversaries; contend earnestly against mobs, and the unlawful works of dissenters and of darkness.

And the very God of peace shall be with you, and make a way for your escape from the adversary of your souls<sup>267</sup>. We commend you to God and the work<sup>268</sup> of his grace, which is able to make us wise unto salvation: Amen.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.

---

251. *T&S* 1:85: replaces “and when ... those” with “to you”

252. *T&S* 1:85: omits “in Christ”

253. *T&S* 1:85: omits “feel to”

254. Book C-2, 24: “<un>to”

255. *T&S* 1:86: adds “you and”

256. DHC 3:233: “loses”

257. *T&S* 1:86: replaces “Jesus Christ” with “the Saviour”

258. MS Letter, 7: adds “every appearance of evil”

259. MS Letter, 7, *T&S* 1:86: omit “and from ... all”

260. *T&S* 1:86: replaces “everything which is unrighteous ... desire” with “the very appearance of evil”

261. DHC 3:233: “seems”

262. JSj [1838], 108: “~~aets~~ <debts>”

263. *T&S* 1:86: replaces “and have manifested ... persecuted and” with “towards their brethren who were indebted to them: while they have been”

264. *T&S* 1:86: omits “God hates”

265. *T&S* 1:86: reverses this and next sentence

266. DHC 3:233: “seem”

267. *T&S* 1:86: omits “of your souls”

268. MS Letter, 7, JSj [1838], 108, *T&S* 1:86, Book C-1, 873, Book C-2, 25, DHC 3:233: replace “work” with “word”



16.

## MISSOURI LEGISLATURE

December 1838

[DN 3 (15 December 1853): 1]

<sup>1</sup>This day [16th December]<sup>2</sup> Elder David H.<sup>3</sup> Redfield arrived at Jefferson City, and on Monday, 17th, presented the petition of the brethren to General<sup>4</sup> D[avid]. R. Atchison and others, who were very anxious to hear from Caldwell, as there were many reports in circulation, such as, “the Mormons kept up the Danite system,” “were going to build the Lord’s house,” and “more blood would be spilled before they left the State,” &c.<sup>5</sup>; which created a hardness in the minds of the people.

In the afternoon<sup>6</sup>, brother<sup>7</sup> Redfield had an interview with Governor Boggs, who inquired about our people and property with as much apparent interest as though his whole soul was engaged for our welfare; and said that<sup>8</sup> he had heard that “the citizens were committing depredations on the Mormons, and driving off their stock,” &c.<sup>9</sup>

Brother<sup>10</sup> Redfield informed him that armed forces came in the place and abused men, women and children, stole horses, drove off cattle, and plundered houses of everything that pleased their fancy.

Governor Boggs said that he would write Judge King, and Colonel Price, to go to Far West, and put down every hostile appearance. He also stated that “the stipulations entered into by the Mormons to leave the State, and sign the deed of trust, were unconstitutional, and not valid.”

Brother<sup>11</sup> Redfield replied, “we want the Legislature to pass a law to that effect, showing that the stipulations and deeds of trust are not valid and are unconstitutional; and unless you do pass such a law, we shall not consider ourselves safe in the State. You say there has been a stain upon the character

---

1. *Source*: Following five paragraphs based on DHR, 1–4 (transcription in vol. 8, III.11).

2. DHC 3:234: adds “[16th December]”

3. Book C-1, 873 (lighter ink): “[*erasure*] <David H>” (FDR)

4. Book C-1, 873 (lighter ink): “<General>” (FDR)

5. DHC 3:234: omits “&c.”

6. Book C-1, 874: replaces “afternoon” with “P.M.”; Book C-2, 25 (darker ink): “{\afternoon/}” (TB)

7. Book C-1, 874: “Mr.”; Book C-2, 25 (darker ink): “{\brother/}” (TB)

8. Book C-1, 874, Book C-2, 25: omit “that”

9. DHC 3:234: omits “&c.”

10. Book C-1, 874: “Mr.”; Book C-2, 25 (darker ink): “{\brother/}” (TB)

11. Book C-1, 874: “Mr.”; Book C-2, 25 (darker ink): “{\brother/}” (TB)



of the State, and now is the time to pass some law to that effect; and unless you do, farewell to the virtue of the State; farewell to her honor and good name; farewell to her Christian virtue, until she shall be peopled by a different race of men; farewell to every name that binds man to man; farewell to a fine soil and a glorious home; they are gone; they are rent from us by a lawless banditti.”

Tuesday, [December] 18th. Mr. Turner, from the joint committee on the Mormon investigation, submitted a report, preamble and resolutions; the essential part is<sup>12</sup> as follows:

<sup>13</sup>In Senate, Tuesday, December 18, 1838.

Mr. Turner, from the joint committee on the Mormon investigation, submitted the following report, preamble and resolutions:

The joint committee to whom was referred so much of the governor’s message as relates to the recent difficulties between the people called Mormons, and a part of the people of this state, with instructions to inquire into the causes of said disturbances, and the conduct of the military operations in suppressing them, have taken the same under consideration, and would respectfully submit the following report and resolutions:

They have thought it unwise and injudicious under all the existing circumstances of this case, to predicate a report upon the papers, documents, etc., purporting to be copies of the evidence taken before an examining court, held in Richmond, in Ray county, for the purpose of inquiring into the charges alleged against the people called Mormons, growing out of the late difficulties between that people and other citizens of this state.

They consider the evidence adduced in the examination<sup>14</sup> held at Richmond<sup>15</sup>, in a great degree *ex parte*, and not of the character which should be desired for the basis of a fair and candid investigation: **Moreover, the papers, documents, etc., have not been certified in such manner as to satisfy the committee of their authenticity.**

It has been represented to them that the examining court has sent on for further trial, many of that class of citizens called Mormons, charged with various crimes and offenses; under the charge of treason, six; for murder and as accessories thereto, before and after the fact, eight; and for other felonies, twenty-seven. Special terms of the circuit court are expected to be held in the several counties, in which the above mentioned crimes are represented to have been committed. Grand juries will then have these charges against said people before them, and must act upon the same documentary evidence which the committee would necessarily be compelled to examine, by which circumstance two co-ordinate branches of this government may be brought into collision—a contingency that should be studiously avoided and cautiously guarded against.

Another insuperable objection that has presented itself to the mind of the committee, and which would induce them to suspend an investigation, under present and existing circumstances, would be the consequences likely to result from a publication of their report. Those persons who have been sent on for further trial, have guaranteed to them the sacred and constitutional right of “a speedy trial by an impartial jury of the vicinage,” and if the guilt of the accused should be confirmed by the report of the committee, it

12. DHC 3:235: omits “the essential part is”

13. *Source*: DCCO, 1–4. While DN (following Book C-1 and C-2) published only a portion of this document, DHC 3:235–38 restored the silently deleted material. Bold type indicates material added in DHC.

14. DCCO, 2, DHC 3:235: add “there”

15. DCCO, 2, DHC 3:235: omit “at Richmond”

would so prejudice public sentiment against them, as to deprive them of that right, which should not be taken away by any consideration involved in this inquiry.

If the committee were to find it necessary in the prosecution of their object, to have access to the papers, documents, etc., connected with this difficulty, the probable interference of the several courts being in session, might seriously interrupt their views. It might reasonably be expected that all the evidence of every description, would be in the possession of the courts, to be used on the final trial, and by that means the investigation would be protracted to a much greater length than would be necessary under different circumstances. They would therefore recommend, in order to avoid all the difficulties that have been presented, that a committee, after the adjournment of the general assembly, go into the vicinity of the scene of difficulties, and make their investigation, and report at such time, and in such manner, as the legislature may direct. If this course should be adopted, the committee believe that the session would be much shortened, and heavy expenses saved to the state, which otherwise would necessarily be incurred in sending for witnesses, and bringing them from so great a distance. By a resolution of both houses, the special message of the governor in relation to the subject of inquiry, with the accompanying documents, was referred to the committee, with instructions to select such documents as in their opinion ought to be published with the message, and report to their respective houses. The committee after a full consideration of the subject, with due regard to its importance, are of opinion that it is inexpedient at this time, to publish any of the documents, under the authority of the general assembly, and submit to the two houses the leading reasons for that opinion.

The documents may be divided into several classes:

First—The affidavits and correspondence preceding each series of authorized military operations.

Second—The orders issued upon such evidence.

Third—The military operations and correspondence consequent thereon; and

Fourth—The evidence taken before a court of inquiry, held for the investigation of criminal charges against individuals.

It was found by the joint committee, at an early period after their organization, that, in order to a full and satisfactory investigation of the subjects referred to them, a mass of additional testimony, oral and written, would be required. This becomes apparent to the committee, from the contents of the documents referred to them. These documents, although they are serviceable in giving direction to the courts<sup>16</sup> of inquiry, are none of them, except the official orders and correspondence, such as ought to be received as conclusive evidence of the facts stated; nor are their contents such as would, without the aid of further evidence, enable the committee to form a satisfactory opinion in relation to the material points of the inquiry.

The copy of the examination taken before the criminal court of inquiry, is manifestly not such evidence as ought to be received by the committee.

1st. Because it is not authenticated; and

2d. It is confined chiefly to the object of that inquiry; namely: the investigation of criminal charges against individuals under arrest. For these reasons, and<sup>17</sup> above all, for the reason that it would be a direct interference with the administration of justice, this Document ought not to be published with the sanction of the Legislature.

**The committee concludes, that it would not be proper to publish the official**

---

16. DCCO, 3: "course"

17. DCCO, 3, Book C-1, 874, Book C-2, 26: replace "and" with "but"

orders and correspondence between the officers in command, and the executive, without the evidence on which they were founded; and that evidence is not sufficiently full and satisfactory to authorize its publication. To publish the whole together might tend to give a direction to the public mind, prejudicial to an impartial administration of justice in pending cases, while it will not afford the means of forming any satisfactory conclusion as to the cause of the late disturbances, or the conduct of the military operations, in suppressing them.

**The committee therefore recommend to each house to adopt the following resolutions:**

Resolved, That it is inexpedient at this time, to prosecute further the inquiry into the causes of the late disturbances and the conduct of the military operations<sup>18</sup> in suppressing them.

Resolved, That it is inexpedient to publish at this time, any of the Documents accompanying the Governor's Message in relation to the late disturbances.

Resolved, That it is expedient to appoint a joint committee, composed of —— Senators, and —— Representatives to investigate the cause of said disturbances, and the conduct of the military operations in suppressing them, to meet at such time and to be invested with such powers as may be prescribed by law.

<sup>19</sup>Wednesday, [December] 19th. Mr. John Carroll<sup>20</sup> presented the petition to the House. While<sup>21</sup> it was reading, the members were silent as the house of death: after which the debate commenced, and excitement increased till the House was in an uproar: their faces turned red; their eyes flashed fire, and their countenances spoke volumes.

Mr. Childs, of Jackson county said, <sup>22</sup>“there was not one word of truth in it, so far as he had heard, and that it ought never to have been presented to that body. Not long ago we appropriated two thousand dollars to their relief, and now they have petitioned for the pay for their lands, which we took away from them. We got rid of a great evil when we drove them from Jackson county, and we have had peace there ever since; and the State will always be in difficulty so long as they suffer them to live in the State; and the quicker they get that petition from before that<sup>23</sup> body, the better.”

Mr. Ashley, from Livingston, said, <sup>24</sup>“the petition was false, from beginning to end, and that himself and the Mormons could not live together, for he would always be found fighting against them, and one or the other must leave the State.” He gave a history of the Haun's Mill massacre, and saw Jack Rogers cut up McBride with a corn-cutter.

Mr. Carroll<sup>25</sup> corrected Mr. Childs, and stated facts in the petition which he was knowing to<sup>26</sup>, and that Mr. Childs ought to know that there could not be the first crime established against the Mormons while in Jackson county.

---

18. Book C-2, 26: “<operations>” (FDR)

19. *Source*: Following ten paragraphs based on DHR, 5-15 (transcription in vol. 8, III.11).

20. Book C-1, 874: “Carr{\i/}ll”; “i” *w.o.* “{ø}” (see vol. 7, IV.7, Thomas Bullock's Notes for Book C-1); DHC 3:238: “Corrill”

21. Book C-1, 874: replaces “While” with “When”; Book C-2, 26: “While” overwrites “When”

22. DHC 3:238-39: omits quotation marks

23. DHC 3:239: replaces “that” with “this”

24. DHC 3:239: omits quotation marks

25. Book C-1, 875: “C{\o/}rr{\i/}ll”; “o” *w.o.* “{a}” and “i” *w.o.* “{ø}”; DHC 3:239: “Corrill”

26. DHC 3:239: replaces “knowing to” with “acquainted with”

One member hoped the matter would not be looked over in silence, for his constituents required of him to know the cause of the late disturbances<sup>27</sup>.

Mr. Young, of Lafayette, spoke very bitter<sup>28</sup> against the petition and the Mormons.

An aged member from St. Charles moved a reference of the bill to a select committee; and continued he, "as the gentleman that just spoke, and other gentlemen, want the petition ruled out of the House, for fear their evil doings will be brought to light: and this goes to prove to me, and others, that the petition is true."

Mr. Redman, of Howard<sup>29</sup>, made a long speech in favor of a speedy investigation of the whole matter; said he, "the Governor's order has gone forth, and the Mormons are leaving; hundreds are waiting to cross the Mississippi river, and by and by they are gone, and our State is blasted; her character is gone; we gave them no chance for a fair investigation. The State demands of us, that we give them a speedy investigation."

Mr. Gyer, from St. Louis, agreed with the gentleman from Howard<sup>30</sup>, <sup>31</sup>"that the committee should have power to call witnesses from any part of the State; and defend them; and unless the Governor's order was rescinded, he for one would leave the State." Other gentlemen made similar remarks.

The testimony presented the committee of investigation, before referred to, was the Governor's orders, General Clark's report, the report of the ex parte trial at Richmond and a lot of papers signed by nobody, given to nobody, and directed to nobody, containing anything our enemies were disposed to write.

<sup>32</sup>The High council of Zion met in Far West, Wednesday, Dec[ember]. 19th, 1838.

The Council was organized as follows:—Ebenezer Robinson No. 1, Jared Carter No. 2, Thomas Grover 3, Reynolds Cahoon 4, Theodore Turley 5, Solomon Hancock 6, John Badger 7, John Murdock 8, Harlow Redfield 9, George W. Harris 10, David Dort 11, Samuel Bent 12. The council was opened by prayer by President Brigham<sup>33</sup> Young, who presided.

Harlow Redfield gave a statement of his feelings. He said his faith was as good as it ever was, notwithstanding he did not feel to fellowship all the proceedings of the brethren in Daviess county; he thought they did not act as wisely as they might have done, &c.<sup>34</sup>

Voted by the council that John E. Page and John Taylor be ordained to the apostleship, to fill vacancies in the Quorum of the Twelve; when<sup>35</sup> they came forward and received their ordination under the hands of Brigham Young and Heber C. Kimball.

Voted that we send a petition to the Gen[era]l. Government and send it by mail.

Voted that Edward Partridge and John Taylor be a committee to draft the above mentioned petition: also it is their privilege to choose another person to assist them.

Council adjourned until next Wednesday at 1 o'clock, at same<sup>36</sup> place.

E. ROBINSON, Clerk.

---

27. Book C-1, 875: "disturbance"

28. DHC 3:239: "bitterly"

29. DHC 3:239: adds "county"

30. DHC 3:239: adds "county"

31. DHC 3:240: omits quotation marks

32. *Source*: FWR, 175-76 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 223-24).

33. Book C-1, 875 (different ink): "<Brigham>" (FDR)

34. DHC 3:240: omits "&c."

35. DHC 3:241: omits "when"

36. Book C-1, 876, Book C-2, 27: replace "same" with "this"; Book C-2, 27 (light pencil): "<same>" (US)

<sup>37</sup>The following is a brief synopsis of the Journal of Elder John E. Page, as given by himself:—<sup>38</sup>

The subscriber was born of Ebenezer and Rachael Page, their first child, Feb[ruary]. 25th, A.D. 1799. My father was of pure English extraction; my mother of English, Irish, and Welsh extraction. My place of birth was Trenton township, Oneida county, State of New York.

I embraced the faith of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, and was baptized August the 18th, 1833, by the hands of Elder Emer Harris, (own brother to Martin Harris, one of the three first witnesses to the divinity of the Book of Mormon.) I was ordained an elder under the hands of Elders Nelson Higgins, Ebenezer Page, jr., and others. My baptism took place in Brownhelm, Lorain county, Ohio; my ordination in Florence, <sup>39</sup>Huron county, of the same State, on the 12th of Sept[ember]. 1833.

I moved to Kirtland, Geauga county, Ohio, in the fall of 1835.

On the 31st day of May 1836, I started on a mission to Canada West, Leeds county. I was gone from my family seven months and twenty days.

On the 16th day of Feb[ruary]. 1837, I again left Kirtland with my family of<sup>40</sup> wife and two small children, taking with me all the earthly goods I possessed, <sup>41</sup>which consisted of one bed and our wearing apparel of the plainest kind, to continue my mission in the same region of country as before.

In July following, the commandment came forth for me to occupy a place in the Quorum of the Twelve.

On the 14th day of May 1838, I started with a company of saints made up of men, women, and their children, for the State of Missouri, where we landed with a company occupying thirty wagons, in the first week of October, at a place there called DeWitt, some six miles above the outlet of Grand river, on the north side of the Missouri river, where we were attacked by an armed mob, and by them barbarously treated for near two weeks.

We then went to Far West, Caldwell Co[unty]., where we united with the general body of the Church, and with them participated in all<sup>42</sup> the grievous persecutions practiced on the Church by means of a furious mob, by which means I buried one wife and two children as martyrs to our holy religion, who<sup>43</sup> died through extreme suffering for the want of the common comforts of life—which I was not allowed to provide even with my money.

On the 19th of Dec[ember]. 1838, at Far West, Elder John Taylor and myself were ordained as Apostles under the hands of Elders B[righam]. Young and H[eber]. C. Kimball,<sup>44</sup> in the Quorum of the Twelve, to fill some vacancies in the Quorum; which had happened by apostasies—having baptized in two year's time<sup>45</sup>, upwards of six hundred persons, and traveled more than five thousand miles, principally on foot and under the most extreme poverty, relative

---

37. Book C-1, 876: adds “\addenda page 15./ \and 19.”; first insertion in lighter ink by FDR, second in different ink by TB. The following biographical sketch of John E. Page was added to Book C-1, Addenda, 15-16, by FDR probably on 9 Sept. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology); and the entry for 25 Dec. 1838 that follows was added to Book C-1, Addenda, 19, by TB between 14 Nov. 1845-7 Jan. 1846 (see MSHi Chronology and note below). Both were incorporated in Book C-2, 27-28 by FDR about 4-20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). DHC 3:240-41 moves this material to a footnote. *Source*: JEP.

38. Book C-1, Addenda, 15: “<The following ... himself.>” (FDR)

39. Book C-1, Addenda, 15, Book C-2, 27: add “of”

40. DHC 3:240: replaces “of” with “a”

41. JEP, 1: adds “~~on Earth~~”

42. JEP, 2: “<all>”

43. DHC 3:241: replaces “who” with “since they”

44. JEP, 2: “<under the hands ... Kimball>”

45. DHC 3:241: “In two year's time I had baptized”

to earthly means, being alone<sup>46</sup> sustained by the power of God, and not of man, or the wisdom of the world.

JOHN E. PAGE.

<sup>47</sup>Tuesday, [December] 25th.<sup>48</sup> My brother Don Carlos, and cousin<sup>49</sup> George A. Smith returned<sup>50</sup>, having traveled fifteen hundred miles—nine hundred<sup>51</sup> on foot and the remainder by steamboat and otherwise. They visited several branches, and would have accomplished the object of their mission had it not been for the troubles at Far West.

When nearly home they were known and pursued by the mob, which compelled them to travel 100 miles in two days and nights. The ground at the time was very<sup>52</sup> slippery, and a severe northwest wind was blowing in their faces; they had but little to eat, and narrowly escaped freezing both nights.

<sup>53</sup>Wednesday, [December] 26th. David<sup>54</sup> H. Redfield having returned to Far West, made <sup>55</sup>report; <sup>56</sup>when<sup>57</sup> the High Council voted that they were satisfied with his proceedings.

<sup>58</sup>Thursday, [December] 27th. Anson Call went to Ray county, near Elk Horn, to sell some property, and was taken by ten of the mob and one old Negro. The names of<sup>59</sup> some of the mob, were two of Judge Dickey's sons, a Mr. Adams, and a constable. They then<sup>60</sup> ordered him to disarm himself. He told them he had no arms about his person. They ordered him to turn his pockets wrong side outwards<sup>61</sup>. They then said they would peel off his naked back before morning, with a hickory gad. They beat him with their naked hands times without number; they struck him in his<sup>62</sup> face with a Bowie knife, and hurt him much<sup>63</sup>, a number of times.

After tantalizing<sup>64</sup> him about four hours, saying he was a damned<sup>65</sup> Mormon, and they would serve him as they had others, tie him with a hickory withe and gad him, and keep him till morning. They then started <sup>66</sup>and came to a hazel grove; while consulting together what course to pursue<sup>67</sup> with

---

46. DHC 3:241: moves "alone" to follow "sustained"

47. This day's entry added to Book C-1, Addenda, 19, by TB after it was incorporated in Book C-2, 28, by FDR about 4-20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). This note had already been composed on a separate sheet (see vol. 7, III.5), and mentioned by the revision committee on 8 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6), but as of 28 Nov. 1845 had not been copied into C-1 (see vol. 7, IV.7). *Source*: Probably added under direction of GAS (cf. GASM, 116-21).

48. Book C-1, Addenda, 19: "December 25, 1838" in margin

49. Book C-1, Addenda, 19: omits "cousin"

50. DHC 3:241: adds "[from missions through Kentucky and Tennessee]"

51. Book C-2, 28: "[*erasure of about three words*] <fifteen hundred miles, nine hundred>" (FDR)

52. DHC 3:241: omits "very"

53. *Source*: Based on FWR, 176-77 (HSt) (*FWR* [1983], 224-25).

54. Book C-1, 876 (lighter ink): "<David>" (FDR)

55. DHC 3:242: adds "his"

56. Book C-1, 876: adds ellipses over erasure of about three words

57. DHC 3:242: replaces "when" with "and"

58. *Source*: This and next paragraph taken from AC, 2-3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.12).

59. DHC 3:242: omits "The names of"

60. DHC 3:242: omits "then"

61. DHC 3:242: replaces "outwards" with "out"

62. DHC 3:242: replaces "his" with "the"

63. DHC 3:242: "and severely hurt him"

64. DHC 3:242: replaces "tantalizing" with "abusing"

65. DHC 3:242: replaces "damned" with long dash

66. DHC 3:242: adds "off"

67. Book C-1, 876, Book C-2, 29: replace "pursue" with "take"



him, he leaped into the bush—when they pursued him, but he made his escape and returned to Far West.

<sup>68</sup>After much legislation, disputation, <sup>69</sup>controversy, and angry speechifying<sup>70</sup>, as the papers of Missouri, published at the time, abundantly testify, the<sup>71</sup> Petition and Memorial were<sup>72</sup> laid on the table until the [4th of]<sup>73</sup> July following; thus utterly refusing to grant the memorialists their request<sup>74</sup>, thereby refusing<sup>75</sup> to investigate the subject.

After we were cast into prison, we heard nothing but threatenings, that if any Judge or Jury, or Court of any kind, should clear any of us, that<sup>76</sup> we should never get out of the State alive.

<sup>77</sup>The State appropriated two thousand dollars to be distributed among the people of Daviess and Caldwell<sup>78</sup>, the<sup>79</sup> Mormons of Caldwell not excepted<sup>80</sup>. The people of Daviess thought they could live on Mormon property and did not want their thousand, consequently it was pretended to be given to those of Caldwell.<sup>81</sup> Judge Cameron, Mr.<sup>82</sup> McHenry, and others attended to the distribution.—Judge Cameron would drive in the brethren's hogs (many of which were identified) and shoot them down in the streets; and without further bleeding, and <sup>83</sup>half dressing, they were cut up and distributed by McHenry to the poor, at a charge of four and five cents per pound; <sup>84</sup>**the cash price of pork being a cent or a cent and a quarter per pound;** which together with a few pieces of refuse goods, such as calicoes at double and treble prices<sup>85</sup>, soon consumed the two thousand dollars; doing the brethren very little good, or in reality none, as the property destroyed by them<sup>86</sup>, was equal to what they gave the saints.

<sup>87</sup>The proceedings of the Legislature were warmly opposed by a minority of the House—among whom were D[avid]. R. Atchison, of Clay county, and all the members from St. Louis, and Messrs. Rollins and Gordon, from Boon[e]<sup>88</sup>, and by various other members from other counties; but the mob majority carried the day, for the guilty wretches feared an investigation—knowing<sup>89</sup> that it would endanger their lives and liberties. Some time during this session the Legislature appropriated two hundred thousand dollars to pay the troops for driving the saints out of the State.

---

68. *Source*: This and next paragraph from *AAP*, 49-50.

69. Book C-1, 876: adds erasure; Book C-2, 29: adds ellipses over erasure

70. DHC 3:242: "After much controversy and angry disputation"

71. DHC 3:242: replaces "the" with "our"

72. DHC 3:242: "was"

73. DHC 3:242: adds "4th of"

74. DHC 3:242: "grant the request of the memorialists"

75. DHC 3:242: omits "thereby refusing"

76. DHC 3:243: omits "that"

77. *Source*: Based on TT, 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

78. Book C-1, 876: "<people of Davies & Caldwell.>" (WR); DHC 3:243: adds "counties". This and following three emendations were made under the direction of the apostolic review committee of 8 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

79. Book C-1, 876: "the" overwrites "poor"

80. Book C-1, 876: "<of caldwell not excepted>" (WR)

81. Book C-1, 876: "<The people ... Caldwell>" (WR)

82. Book C-1, 876, Book C-2, 29: omit "Mr."

83. Book C-1, 876, Book C-2, 29: add "a"

84. The following sentence does not appear in Book C-2, 29, *DN*, or DHC 3:243, but was inserted interlinearly in Book C-1, 876, by TB on 28 Nov. 1845 (see TB's notes for Book C-1 in vol. 7, IV.7).

85. Book C-1, 876, Book C-2, 29: "price"

86. DHC 3:243: adds "[i. e. the distributing commission]"

87. *Source*: This and next paragraph from *LP*, 110-11 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

88. DHC 3:243: adds "county"

89. Book C-2, 29: "Know\ing/"



Many of the State journals tried to hide the iniquity of the State, by throwing a covering<sup>90</sup> of lies over her atrocious deeds. But can they hide the Governor's cruel order for banishment or extermination? Can they conceal the facts of the disgraceful treaty of the Generals, with their own officers and men at the city of Far West? Can they conceal the fact that twelve or fifteen thousand men, women and children, have been banished from the State without trial or condemnation?—And this at an expense of two hundred thousand dollars—and this sum appropriated by the State Legislature,—in order to pay the troops for this act of lawless outrage? Can they conceal the fact that we have been imprisoned for many months, while our families, friends, and witnesses, have been driven away? Can they conceal the blood of the murdered husbands, and fathers, or stifle the cries of the widow and the fatherless? Nay! The rocks and mountains may cover them in unknown depths,—the awful abyss of the fathomless deep may swallow them up—and still their horrid deeds will stand forth in the broad light of day, for the wondering gaze of angels and of men! They cannot be hid!

<sup>91</sup>Some time in December, Heber C. Kimball and Alanson Ripley were appointed by the brethren in Far West, to visit us at Liberty jail as often as circumstances would permit, or occasion required, which <sup>92</sup>they faithfully performed. We were sometimes visited by our friends, whose kindness, and attention, I shall ever remember with feelings of lively gratitude; but frequently we were not suffered to have that privilege.—Our victuals were<sup>93</sup> of the coarsest kind, and served up in a<sup>94</sup> manner which was disgusting.

<sup>95</sup>Thus in a land of liberty, in the town of Liberty, Clay county, Missouri, I and my fellow prisoners<sup>96</sup>—in Chains, <sup>97</sup>Dungeons, and Jail<sup>98</sup>—saw the close of 1838.

---

90. Book C-2, 29: “cover\ing/”

91. *Source*: First sentence based on AR, 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.14). Remainder of paragraph from “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 6-7.

92. DHC 3:244: adds “duty”

93. DHC 3:244: replaces “victuals were” with “food was”

94. Book C-1, 877: “<a>” (TB)

95. *Source*: Probably composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:41 about 24-28 Feb. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

96. DHC 3:244: “my fellow prisoners and I”

97. DHC 3:244: adds “and”

98. DHC 3:244: omits “and Jail”



17.

# SAINTS LEAVE MISSOURI

January–February 1839

[DN 3 (22 December 1853): 1]

<sup>1</sup>Tuesday, January 1st, 1839, <sup>2</sup>dawned upon us as prisoners of hope, but not as sons of liberty. O Columbia! Columbia!! How thou art<sup>3</sup> fallen! “The land of the free, the home of the brave.” “The asylum of the oppressed”—oppressing thy noblest sons, in a loathsome dungeon, without any provocation, only that they have claimed to worship the God of their fathers, according to his own word and the dictates of their own consciences. Elder P[arley]. P. Pratt and his companions in tribulation were still held in bondage in their doleful prison in Richmond.

<sup>4</sup>Monday, [January] 7th. Anson Call returned to his farm on the three forks of Grand river to see if he could secure any of the property he had left in his flight to Adam-ondi-Ahman, and was there met by the mob and beat with a hoop pole about his limbs, body, and head; the man that used the pole about his person, was George W. O’Neal. With much difficulty he<sup>5</sup> returned to Far West, with his person much bruised, and from that time gave up all hopes of securing any of his property.

<sup>6</sup>Tuesday, [January] 8th. About this time, England and Ireland were visited by a tremendous storm of wind from the northwest, which unroofed and blew down many houses, in the cities, and in the country, doing much damage to the shipping; many hundreds of persons were turned out of doors, and many lives lost on the land and the<sup>7</sup> sea, and an immense amount of property destroyed. Such a wind had not been witnessed by any one living; and some began to think that the judgments were about to follow the elders’ preaching.

Thursday, [January] 10.

<sup>8</sup>Resolved by the Senate, the House of Representatives concurring therein, That the

---

1. *Source*: Probably composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:43 about 28 Feb.–8 Mar. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

2. DHC 3:245: adds “The day”

3. Book C-1, 877, Book C-2, 30: “art thou”

4. *Source*: AC, 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.12).

5. DHC 3:245: replaces “he” with “Brother Call”

6. *Source*: JFj [1838–39], 34–37, in section following 28 Jan. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.19).

7. DHC 3:245: omits “the”

8. *Source*: DCCO, 4.

three resolutions of the 18th of December<sup>9</sup> be referred to a joint committee of the two Houses, heretofore raised, on the subject of the Mormon difficulties, with <sup>10</sup>instructions to report a bill in conformity thereto, as soon as they can conveniently prepare the same; which was agreed to.

<sup>11</sup>Wednesday<sup>12</sup>, [January] 16th. Mr. Turner, from the joint select committee, introduced to the Senate “a bill to provide for the investigation of the late disturbances in this State.” This bill consists of twenty-three sections<sup>13</sup>:

<sup>14</sup>1st. A joint committee shall be appointed to investigate the causes of the late disturbances between the people called Mormons, and other inhabitants of this State, and the conduct of the military operations in repressing them: which committee shall consist of two senators, to be elected by the Senate, and three representatives, to be elected by the House of Representatives.

<sup>15</sup>The bill further provided that the committee should meet at Richmond, Ray county, on the first Monday in May, and thereafter at such times and places as they should appoint: that they should choose a<sup>16</sup> chairman, clerk, sergeant-at-arms, and assistants; issue subpoenas and other processes; administer oaths; keep a record; furnish rooms; pay witnesses one dollar and fifty cents per day out of the Treasury; receive their pay as members of the Legislature; clerk four dollars per day, and one dollar and fifty cents for each arrest. In short[,] all parties concerned were to be paid the highest price—and this committee were to be clothed with all the powers of the highest courts of record. This bill did not concern the Mormons, as the exterminating order of Governor Boggs, and the action of General Clark thereon, would compel all the Saints to be out of the State before the court would sit, so that they would have no testimony but from mobbers and worse[,] apostates; and this was evidently their object in postponing the time so long.

<sup>17</sup>About this time, Pres[iden]t. Brigham Young proposed to Bishop Partridge to help the poor out of the State. The Bishop replied, “The poor may take care of themselves, and I will take care of myself.” Pres[iden]t. [Brigham] Young replied, “If you will not help them out, I will.”

Thursday, [January] 24th. I wrote as follows from Liberty jail:

<sup>18</sup>To the Honorable the<sup>19</sup> Legislature of Missouri:—

Your memorialists having a few days since solicited your attention to the same subject, would now respectfully submit to your honorable body a few additional facts in support of their prayer.

They are now imprisoned under a charge of Treason against the State of Missouri, and

---

9. *DCCO*, 4: omits “of the 18th of December”

10. *DHC* 3:246: adds “the”

11. *Source*: Based on *DCCO*, 4–7.

12. *Book C*-1, 878: omits “Wednesday”

13. *DHC* 3:246: adds “of which the following is the first”

14. *Source*: *DCCO*, 4–5.

15. *Source*: Summarizes *DCCO*, 5–7.

16. *Book C*-2, 31: “<a>” (*FDR*)

17. *Source*: *BY* repeated this story in 1862 (*JD* 10:34). This date was perhaps chosen because it was the day the high council met in Far West (*FWR*, 177 [*HSt*]; *FWR* [1983], 226).

18. *Source*: *JSLB* 2:66–67 (*JM*).

19. *DHC* 3:247: omits “the”

their lives, and fortunes, and characters, being<sup>20</sup> suspended upon the result of the <sup>21</sup>criminal charges preferred against them. <sup>22</sup>Your honorable body will excuse them for manifesting the deep concern they feel in relation to their trials for a crime so enormous as that of Treason.

It is not our object to complain—to asperse any one. All we ask is a fair and impartial trial. We ask the sympathies of no one. We ask sheer justice; 'tis all we expect, and all we merit, but we merit that.—We know the people of no county in this State to which we would ask our final trials<sup>23</sup> to be sent, <sup>24</sup>are prejudiced in our favor. But we believe, that the state of excitement existing in most of the upper counties is such that a jury would be improperly influenced by it. But that excitement and the prejudice against us in the counties comprising the fifth Judicial Circuit are not the only obstacles we are compelled to meet. We know that much of that prejudice against us is not so much to be attributed to a want of honest motive among the citizens, as it is to wrong information<sup>25</sup>.

But<sup>26</sup> it is a difficult task to change opinions once formed. The other obstacle, which we candidly consider one of the most weighty, is the feeling which we believe is entertained by the<sup>27</sup> Hon. A[ustin]. A. King against us, and the<sup>28</sup> consequent incapacity<sup>29</sup> to do us impartial justice. It is from no disposition to speak disrespectfully of that high<sup>30</sup> officer, that we lay before your honorable body the facts we do; but simply, that the Legislature may be apprized of our real condition. We look upon Judge King as like all other mere men, liable to be influenced by his feelings, his prejudices, and his previously formed opinions. We consider his reputation<sup>31</sup> as being partially if not entirely committed against us. He has written much upon the subject of our late difficulties, in which he has placed us in the wrong. These letters have been published to the world. He has also presided at an excited public meeting as chairman, and no doubt sanctioned all the proceedings. We do not complain of the citizens who held that meeting, they were entitled to that privilege. But for the Judge before whom the very men were to be tried for a capital offense, to participate in an expression of condemnation of these same individuals, is to us at least apparently wrong; and we cannot think that we should, after such a course on the part of the Judge, have the same chance of a fair and impartial trial as all admit we ought to have.

We believe that the foundation of the feeling against us, which we have reason to think Judge King entertains, may be traced to the unfortunate troubles which occurred in Jackson county some few years ago; in a battle between the Mormons and a portion of the citizens of that county, Mr. Brassell<sup>32</sup>, the brother-in-law of Judge King, was killed. It is natural that the Judge should have some feeling<sup>33</sup> against us, whether we were right or wrong in that controversy.

We mention these facts, not to disparage Judge King; we believe that from the relation

---

20. DHC 3:247: replaces “being” with “are”

21. DHC 3:247: adds “trial on the”

22. DHC 3:247: adds “Therefore”

23. DHC 3:247: “trial”

24. DHC 3:247: adds “who”

25. DHC 3:248: replaces “wrong information” with “misrepresentation”

26. DHC 3:248: omits “But”

27. DHC 3:248: omits “the”

28. JSLB 2:67, DHC 3:248: replace “the” with “his”

29. DHC 3:248: replaces “incapacity” with “inability”

30. Book C-1, 879: “<high>” (TB)

31. DHC 3:248: “From his reputation we consider him”

32. DHC 3:248: “Brazeale”

33. DHC 3:248: “feelings”

<sup>34</sup>he bears to us, he would himself prefer that our trials should be had in a different circuit, and before a different court. Many other reasons and facts we might mention, but we forbear.

This letter was directed to Ja[me]s. M. Hughes, Esq., member of the House of Representatives, Jefferson City, with the following request:

Will you be so kind<sup>35</sup> as to present this to the House? The community here would[,] I believe, have no objection<sup>36</sup> for the trial of these men being transferred to St. Louis.

P.H.B.<sup>37</sup>

Saturday, 26th.

<sup>38</sup>A meeting of a respectable number of the citizens of Caldwell county, members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints<sup>39</sup>, was held in Far West <sup>40</sup>according to previous notice, to devise and take into consideration such measures as might be thought necessary in order to their complying<sup>41</sup> with the orders of the Executive to remove from the State of Missouri immediately, as made known by General Clark to the citizens of said county, in the month of November last.

The meeting was called to order by Don C. Smith; and on motion, John Smith was unanimously called to the chair, and Elias Smith appointed secretary.

The object of the meeting was then stated by the chairman, who briefly adverted to the causes which had brought about the present state of affairs, and called for an expression of sentiment on the best course to be pursued in the present emergency.

Several gentlemen addressed the meeting on the subject of our removal from the State, and the seeming impossibility of complying with the orders of the Governor of Missouri, in consequence of the extreme poverty of many, which had come upon them by being driven from place to place, deprived of their constitutional rights and privileges, as citizens of this, and <sup>42</sup>the United States, and were of the opinion that an appeal to the citizens of Upper Missouri ought to be made, setting forth our condition and claiming their assistance towards furnishing means for the removal of the poor of this county out of the State, as being our right and our due in the present case.

On motion, Resolved, that a committee of seven be appointed to make a draft of a preamble and resolutions in accordance with the foregoing sentiments, to be presented to a future meeting for their consideration.

The following were then appointed, namely<sup>43</sup>:—John Taylor, Alanson Ripley, Brigham Young, Theodore Turley, Heber C. Kimball, John Smith, and Don C. Smith.

Resolved, That the committee be further instructed to ascertain the number of families who are actually destitute of means for their removal, and report at the next meeting.

---

34. Book C-2, 32: adds ellipses over erasure of about two words

35. JSLB 2:67, Book C-1, 880, Book C-2, 32: replace “kind” with “good”

36. JSLB 2:67, Book C-1, 880, Book C-2, 32: “objections”

37. JSLB 2:67: “P.H.(B.)”

38. *Source*: MCR, P. 1, 26 Jan. 1839.

39. MCR, P. 1, 1: “<members of ... Saints>”

40. MCR, P. 1: adds “on Saturday the 26th of January 1839”

41. DHC 3:249: “to comply”

42. MCR, P. 1, 1: adds “of”

43. DHC 3:249: “viz.”

Resolved, That it is the opinion of this meeting that an exertion should be made to ascertain how much can be obtained from individuals of the society<sup>44</sup>, and that it is the duty of those who have, to assist those who have not, that thereby we may as far as possible, within and of ourselves, comply with the demands of the Executive.

Adjourned to meet again on Tuesday, the 29th instant, at twelve o'clock, M.

JOHN SMITH, Ch[airman]n.<sup>45</sup>

E[LIAS]. SMITH, Sec[retary].

Tuesday, 29.

<sup>46</sup>The brethren<sup>47</sup> met again<sup>48</sup> according to adjournment. John Smith was again called to the chair, and Elias Smith appointed secretary.

The committee appointed to draw up a preamble and resolutions to be presented to the meeting for consideration, presented by their chairman<sup>49</sup> John Taylor, a memorial of the transactions of the people of Missouri towards us since our first settlement in this State; in which was contained some of our sentiments and feelings on the subject of our persecutions by the authority of the State, and our deprivation of the rights of citizenship guaranteed to us by the Constitution, which<sup>50</sup> was yet in an unfinished state, owing to causes which were stated by the committee; and they further apologized for not drawing it up in the form of resolutions, agreeable to the vote of the former meeting.

The report was accepted as far as completed, and by a vote of the meeting, the same committee were directed to finish it, and prepare it for, and send it to the Press for publication, and <sup>51</sup>were instructed to dwell minutely on the subject relating to our arms and the fiend-like conduct of the officers of the militia in sequestering all the best of them after their surrender, on condition of being returned to us again, or suffering them to be exchanged for others not worth half their value, in violation of their bond<sup>52</sup>, and of the honor of the commander of the forces sent against us by the State.

On motion of President Brigham Young<sup>53</sup>, it was Resolved, that we this day enter into a covenant to stand by and assist each other to the utmost of our abilities in removing from this State, and that we will never desert the poor who are worthy, till they shall be out of the reach of the exterminating order of General Clark, acting for and in the name of the State.

After an expression of sentiments by several who addressed the meeting on the propriety of taking efficient means<sup>54</sup> to remove the poor from the State, it was resolved, that a committee of seven be appointed to superintend the business of our removal, and to provide for those who have not the means of moving till the work shall be completed.

The following were then appointed, viz.—William Huntington, Charles Bird, Alanson Ripley, Theodore Turley, Daniel Shearer, Shadrach Roundy, and Jonathan H. Hale.

---

44. DHC 3:250: adds “[the Church]”

45. Book C-1, 880: “Chair”

46. *Source*: MCR, P. 2, 29 Jan. 1839.

47. MCR, P. 2, 1: omits “The brethren”

48. Book C-2, 33: “<met again>” (FDR)

49. MCR, P. 2, 1: “<their chairman>”

50. DHC 3:250: omits “which” and begins new sentence with “The document under preparation by the committee ...”

51. DHC 3:250: adds “they”

52. MCR, P. 2, 1: “~~treaty~~ <bond>”

53. MCR, P. 2, 1: “<of Prest. Brigham Young>”

54. DHC 3:250: replaces “means” with “measures”



Resolved, That the secretary draft an instrument expressive of the sense of the covenant entered into this day, by those present, and that those who were willing to subscribe to the covenant should do it, that their names might be known, which would enable the committee more judiciously<sup>55</sup> to carry their business into effect.

The instrument was accordingly drawn, and by vote of the meeting, the secretary attached the names of those who were willing to subscribe to<sup>56</sup> it.

Adjourned to meet again on Friday, the 1st February next, at twelve o'clock, M.

JOHN SMITH, Ch[airman].

**ELIAS SMITH, Secretary.**<sup>57</sup>

The following is the subscription<sup>58</sup>, referred to in the preceding minutes, with the names which were then and afterwards attached to it so far as they have been preserved:

<sup>59</sup>We[,] whose names are hereunder written, do each<sup>60</sup> for ourselves individually hereby covenant to stand by and assist each other<sup>61</sup> to the utmost of our abilities in removing from this State in compliance with the authority of the State; and we do hereby acknowledge ourselves firmly bound to the extent of all our available property, to be disposed of by a committee who shall be appointed for that<sup>62</sup> purpose, **consisting of the following persons viz William Huntington, Charles Bird, Alansin [Alanson] G. Ripley, Theodore Turley, Daniel Shearer, Shadrack Roundy, Jonathan H. Hale, Elias Smith, Erastus Brigham, Stephen Markham, James Newbury** for<sup>63</sup> providing means for the removing<sup>64</sup> of the poor and destitute who shall be considered worthy, from this country<sup>65</sup>, till there shall not be one left who desires to remove from the State: with this proviso, that no individual shall be deprived of the right of the disposal of his own property for the above purpose, or of having the control of it, or so<sup>66</sup> much of it as shall be necessary for the removing of his own family, and to be entitled to the over-plus, after the work is effected; and furthermore, said committee shall give receipts for all property, and an account of the expenditure of the same.

Far West, Mo., Jan[uary]. 29th, 1839.

John Smith,  
Wm. Huntington,  
Charles Bird,  
Alanson Ripley,  
Theodore Turley,  
Daniel Shearer,  
Shadrach Roundy,

James McMillan  
Chandler Holbrook,  
Alexander Wright,  
W[illiam]m. Taylor,  
John Taylor,  
Reuben P. Hartwell,  
John Lowry,

55. Book C-1, 881, Book C-2, 34, DHC 3:251: replace “judiciously” with “expeditiously”

56. MCR, P. 2, 2: “<in>to”

57. DHC 3:251: adds “ELIAS SMITH, Secretary”

58. DHC 3:251: replaces “subscription” with “covenant”

59. *Source*: MCR has five copies of the subscription, each with different names. The following is a composite. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

60. DHC 3:251: omits “each”

61. DHC 3:251: replaces “each other” with “one another”

62. DHC 3:251: replaces “that” with “the”

63. DHC 3:251: replaces “for” with “of”

64. DHC 3:251: adds “from this state”

65. Book C-1, 882: “county”; DHC 3:251: omits “from this country”

66. Book C-2, 34 (darker ink): “{\so/}” (US)

Jonathan H. Hale,  
 Elias Smith,  
 Brigham Young,  
 James Burnham,  
 Leicester Gaylord,  
 Samuel Williams,  
 John Miller,  
 Aaron M. York,  
 George A. Smith,  
 Daniel Howe,  
 James Bradin,  
 Jona[tha]n. Beckelshimer,  
 David Jones,  
 Wm. M. Fossett,  
 Charles N. Baldwin,  
 Jesse N. Reed,  
 Benj[amin]. Johnson,  
 Jonathan Hampton,  
 Anson Call,  
 Peter Dopp,  
 Samuel Rolph,  
 Abel Lamb,  
 Daniel McArthur,  
 W[illia]m. Gregory,  
 Zenas Curtis,  
 John Reed,  
 W[illia]m. R. Orton,  
 Samuel D. Tyler,  
 John H. Goff,  
 Thomas Butterfield,  
 Dwight Hardin,  
 Norvil M. Head,  
 Stephen V. Foot,  
 Jacob G. Bigler,  
 Eli Bagley,  
 W[illia]m. Milam,  
 Lorenzo Clark,  
 W[illia]m. Allred,<sup>67</sup>  
 Wm. Van Ausdall,  
 Nathan K. Knight,  
 John Thorp,  
 Andrew Rose,  
 John S. Martin,  
 Albert Sloan,

Welcome Chapman,  
 Solomon Hancock,  
 Arza Adams,  
 Henry Jacobs,  
 James Carroll,  
 David Lyons,  
 John Taylor,  
 Don Carlos Smith,  
 W[illia]m. J. Stuart,  
 Isaac B. Chapman,  
 Roswell Stevens,<sup>67</sup>  
 Reuben Headlock,<sup>68</sup>  
 David Holman,  
 Joel Goddard,  
 Phineas R. Bird,  
 Duncan McArthur,  
 Allen Talley,  
 James Hampton,  
 Sherman A. Gilbert,  
 James S. Holman,  
 Andrew Lytle,  
 Aaron Johnson,  
 Heber C. Kimball,  
 George W. Harris,  
 George W. Davidson,  
 Harvey Strong,  
 Elizabeth Mackley,  
 Sarah Mackley,  
 Andrew Moore,<sup>69</sup>  
 Harvey Downey,  
 John Maba,  
 Lucy Wheeler,  
 John Turpin,  
 W[illia]m. Earl,  
 Zenos H. Gurley,  
 Joseph W. Coolidge,  
 Anthony Head,  
 S. A. P. Kelsey,  
 Moses Evord,  
 Ophelia Harris,  
 Zuba McDonald,  
 Mary Goff,  
 Harvey J. Moore,  
 Francis Chase,

---

67. DHC 3:252:“Stephens”

68. Book C-1, 882, Book C-2, 34: “Hedlock”

69. DHC 3:252:“More”

70. Book C-1, 882, Book C-2, 35: “Allread”

John D. Lee,	Stephen Markham,
Eliphas Marsh,	John Outhouse,
Joseph Wright,	Wm. F. Leavens,
John Badger,	Daniel Tyler,
Levi Richards,	Noah Rogers,
Erastus Bingham,	Stephen N. St. John,
Elisha Everett,	Francis Lee,
John Lytle,	Eli Lee,
Levi Jackman,	Benjamin Covey,
Thomas Guyman,	Michel Borkdull,
Nahum Curtis,	Miles Randall,
Lyman Curtis,	Horace Evans,
Philip Ballard,	David Dort,
W[illia]m. Gould,	Levi Hancock,
Reuben Middleton,	Edwin Whiting,
W[illia]m. Harper,	W[illia]m. Barton,
Seba Joes,	Elisha Smith,
Charles Butler,	James Gallaher,
Richard Walton,	Robert Jackson,
Isaac Kerron,	Lemuel Merrick,
Joseph Rose,	James Dunn,
David Foot,	Orin Hartshorn,
L. S. Nickerson,	Nathan Hawke,
Moses Daley, <sup>71</sup>	Pierce Hawley,
David Sessions,	Thomas F. <sup>72</sup> Fisher,
Perry Green <sup>73</sup> Sessions,	James Leithead,
Alford P. Childs,	Alfred Lee,
James Daley, <sup>74</sup>	Stephen Jones,
Noah T. Guyman,	Eleazer Harris,
David Winters,	Elijah B. Gaylord,
John Pack,	Thomas Grover,
Sylvenus Hicks,	Alexander Badlam,
Horatio N. Kent,	Phebe Kellog,
Joseph W. Pierce,	Albert Miner,
Thomas Gates,	W[illia]m. Woodland,
Squire Bozarth,	Martin C. Allred,
Nathan Lewis,	Jedediah Owen,
Philander Avery,	Orren <sup>75</sup> P. <sup>76</sup> Rockwell,
Benj[amin]. F. Bird,	Nathan B. Baldwin,
Charles Squire,	Truman Brace,
Jacob Curtis,	Sarah Wixom,

---

71. Book C-1, 882: "Dadley"

72. Book C-1, 883, Book C-2, 35, DHC 3:253: "J."

73. DHC 3:253: "Perrigrine"

74. Book C-1, 882: "Dadley"

75. DHC 3:254: "Orin"

76. Book C-1, 883: "<P>" (FDR)

Rachel Medford, <sup>77</sup>	Lewis Zobriski,
Lyman Stevens,	Henry Zobriski,
Roswell Evans,	Morris Harris,
Leonard Clark,	Absolom Tidwell,
Nehemiah Harmon,	Alvin Winegar,
Daniel Cathcart,	Samuel [T.] <sup>78</sup> Winegar,
Gershom Stokes,	John E. Page,
Rachel Page,	Levi Gifford,
Barnet Cole,	Edmund Durfee,
W[illia]m. Thompson,	Josiah Butterfield,
Nathan Cheney,	John Killion,
James Sherry,	John Patten,
David Frampton,	John Wilkins,
Elizabeth Pettigrew,	Abram Allen,
Charles Thompson,	W[illia]m. Felshaw.

<sup>79</sup>The committee who had been appointed for removing the poor from the State of Missouri, namely<sup>80</sup>: William Huntington, Charles Bird, Alanson Ripley, Theodore Turley, Daniel Shearer, Shadrach Roundy, and Jonathan H. Hale, met in the evening of that day [January 29, 1839]<sup>81</sup> at the house of Theodore Turley, and organized by appointing William Huntington Chairman, Daniel Shearer Treasurer<sup>82</sup>, and Alanson Ripley Clerk, and made some arrangements for carrying the business of removing the poor, into operation<sup>83</sup>. President Brigham<sup>84</sup> Young, got eighty subscribers to the covenant the first day, and three hundred the second day.

<sup>85</sup>Thursday, 31st. Mr. Turner's bill of the 16th instant, passed the Senate. I sent the poor brethren a hundred dollar bill, from jail to assist them in their distressed situation.

Friday, February 1st.

<sup>86</sup>The committee "met"<sup>87</sup> according to adjournment at the house of Theodore Turley; John Smith was present and acted as Chairman, and Elias<sup>88</sup> Smith as Secretary. The meeting was called to order by the chairman.[""]

On motion, Resolved, that the covenant entered into at the last meeting, be read by the secretary; which was done accordingly<sup>89</sup>.

The chairman then called for the expression of sentiments on the subject of the covenant.

Resolved, That the committee be increased to eleven.

---

77. DHC 3:254: "Medfo"

78. Book C-1, 883, Book C-2, 36, DHC 3:254: add "T"

79. *Source*: Except last sentence, this paragraph from MCR, B. 1, 29 Jan. 1839.

80. DHC 3:254: "viz."

81. DHC 3:254: adds "[January 29, 1839]"

82. MCR, B. 1, 1: "<Daniel Shearer treasurer>"

83. MCR, B. 1, 1: adds "and adjourned"; DHC 3:254: moves "into operation" to follow "carrying"

84. Book C-1, 883 (different ink): "<Brigham>" (FDR)

85. *Source*: On Turner's bill, see *DCCO*, 7.

86. *Source*: MCR, P. 3, 1 Feb. 1839.

87. Book C-2, 36: "<met>" (pos. TB)

88. MCR, P. 3, 1, Book C-1, 883: "E."

89. MCR, P. 3, 1: "<which was done accordingly>"

The following were then appointed: Elias Smith, Erastus Bingham, Stephen Markham, and James Newberry.

Several of the committee addressed the meeting on the arduous task before them, and exhorting all to exert themselves to relieve and assist them in the discharge of the duties of their office, to the utmost of their abilities.

Elders Taylor and Young in the most forcible manner addressed the assembly on the propriety of union in order to carry our resolutions into effect, and exhorted<sup>90</sup> the brethren to use wisdom in the sale of their property.

JOHN SMITH, Pres[iden]t.<sup>91</sup>

ELIAS SMITH, Sec[retar]y.

[DN 4 (5 January 1854): 1]

<sup>92</sup>They<sup>93</sup> met again “in the evening at T[heodore]. Turley’s. Alanson Ripley declined acting as clerk, and Elias Smith was appointed in<sup>94</sup> his stead.[”]

Resolved, To make exertions<sup>95</sup> to remove the families of the Presidency and the other prisoners first.

Several of the committee made report of what had been done by them towards carrying the<sup>96</sup> business of the committee into operation. Elder John Taylor had also been appointed to visit the branches of the church on Log and Upper Goose creeks, and made report of his proceedings.

Resolved, That Charles Bird be appointed to go down towards the Mississippi river, and establish deposits of corn for the brethren on the road, and make contracts for ferriage, &c.

<sup>97</sup>Monday, [February] 4th. Mr. Turner’s bill of 16th January came up for the first reading, “when Mr. Wright moved that the bill be laid on the table<sup>98</sup> until the 4th day of July next; and upon this question Mr. Primm desired the ayes<sup>99</sup> and nays, which were ordered, and decided<sup>100</sup> in the affirmative” by eleven majority, which by many was considered an approval of all the wrongs the Saints had sustained in the State<sup>101</sup>.

<sup>102</sup>6th and 7th. The committee <sup>103</sup>were in session. Stephen Markham started for Illinois with my wife and children, and Jonathan Holmes and wife.

90. Book C-1, 883, Book C-2, 36: “exhorting”

91. DHC 3:255: “Chairman”

92. *Source*: MCR, B. 1, 1 Feb. 1839.

93. DHC 3:255: replaces “They” with “The committee”

94. Book C-2, 36 (darker ink): “{\in/}” (US)

95. DHC 3:255: “That exertions be made”

96. Book C-2, 36 (pencil): “<the>” (US)

97. *Source*: Based on DCCO, 7-8.

98. Book C-2, 36: “<on the table>” (FDR)

99. DHC 3:255: “yeas”

100. DHC 3:255: replaces “decided” with “the decision was”

101. Book C-1, 884: adds “~~but on this point I will give no opinion at present~~”

102. *Source*: For minutes, see MCR, B. 1, 6-7 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15). Markham’s departure possibly from SM [1845].

103. DHC 3:256: adds “on the removal of the Saints from Missouri”

18.

## SAINTS GATHER AT QUINCY, ILLINOIS

February 1839

[DN 4 (5 January 1854): 1 (cont.)]

Some time this month there was a Conference of the Church at Quincy,<sup>1</sup> of which the following are the minutes:

<sup>2</sup>At a meeting of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, held in the town of Quincy, February\_\_\_\_, 1839<sup>3</sup>, to take into consideration the expediency of locating the church in some place: when br[other]. [William] Marks was chosen President and Rob[er]t. B. Thompson Clerk.

Elder [John P.] Green[e] by request then stated the object of the meeting, and stated that a liberal offer had been made by a gentleman of about twenty thousand acres, lying between the Mississippi and <sup>4</sup>Des Moines rivers at two dollars per acre to be paid in twenty annual installments without interest. That a committee had examined the land and reported very favorably respecting it, and think<sup>5</sup> it every way suited for a location for the Church.

Br[other]. Rogers then made some statements, and gave information respecting the land, being one of the committee appointed to examine it.

President [William] Marks then<sup>6</sup> observed that he was altogether<sup>7</sup> in favor of making the purchase, providing that it was <sup>8</sup>the will of the Lord that we should again<sup>9</sup> gather together; but from the circumstances of being driven from the other places, he almost was led to the conclusion that it was not wisdom that we should do so, but hoped that the brethren would speak their minds;—the Lord would undoubtedly manifest <sup>10</sup>by his Spirit.

---

1. DHC 3:260: replaces remainder of sentence with “a report of which is as follows.”

2. *Source*: MCR, A., [7] Feb. 1839. Although MCR leaves the day blank, it concludes with: “Conference in Quincy Feb 7, 1839”, and includes the following file notation: “Feb 7 1839 conference minutes”.

3. MCR, A., 1: “Jany Feby [*blank space*] 1839”

4. Book C-2, 37: adds ellipses over erasure

5. DHC 3:260: “thought”

6. DHC 3:260: omits “then”

7. Book C-2, 37: “<altogether>” (TB)

8. Book C-2, 37: adds ellipses over erasure about three words

9. Book C-2, 37: “<again>” (TB)

10. DHC 3:260: adds “His will”

Br[other]. [Israel] Barlow thought that it might be in consequence of not building according to the pattern, that we had thus been scattered.

Br[other]. Mace spoke in favor of an immediate gathering.

Bishop Partridge then spoke on the subject, and thought it was not expedient under present circumstances, to collect together, but thought it was better to scatter into different parts and provide for the poor, which will<sup>11</sup> be acceptable to God.

Judge Higbee said that he had been very favorable to the proposition,<sup>12</sup> but since the Bishop had expressed his opinion, he was willing to give up the idea.

Several of the brethren then spoke on the subject, after which it was motioned<sup>13</sup> and seconded and unanimously agreed upon, that<sup>14</sup> it would not be deemed advisable to locate on the lands for the present.

A committee was appointed to draft<sup>15</sup> a petition to the General Government stating our grievances, and one likewise<sup>16</sup> presented to the citizens<sup>17</sup> for the same object.

<sup>18</sup>Tuesday, [February] 12th. The committee<sup>19</sup> sent a delegation to sister Murie<sup>20</sup>, to ascertain her necessities. Daniel Shearer and Erastus Bingham went. Applications for assistance were made from sister Morgan L. Gardner, Jeremiah<sup>21</sup> Mackley's family, br[other]. Forbush, Echoed Cheney, T. D. Tyler, D. McArthur, &c.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>23</sup>Wednesday, [February] 13th. <sup>24</sup>"Voted that T[hodore]. Turley be appointed to superintend the management of the teams, provided for removing the poor, and see that they are fixed<sup>25</sup> for the journey."

<sup>26</sup>Thursday, [February] 14th. The persecution was so bitter against Elder Brigham Young, (on whom devolved the Presidency of the Twelve by age, Thomas B. Marsh having apostatized) and his life was so diligently sought for, that he was compelled to flee; and he left Far West on this day for Illinois.

<sup>27</sup>My brother Don Carlos Smith had carried a petition to the mob, to get assistance to help our father's family out of Missouri. I know not how much he obtained, but my father and mother started this day for Quincy, with an ox team.

<sup>28</sup>The committee<sup>29</sup> discussed the propriety of paying the debts in Clay county. Alanson Ripley was requested to call on lawyer Barnet, who was in town, and make arrangements concerning the mat-

---

11. MCR, A., 2, DHC 3:260: "would"

12. DHC 3:261: adds "of purchasing the land and gathering upon it"

13. DHC 3:261: replaces "motioned" with "moved"

14. Book C-1, 884: adds erasure of about four words; Book C-2, 37: adds ellipses over erasure of about four words

15. Book C-1, 884, Book C-2, 37: "draft{ing}"

16. DHC 3:261: adds "to be"

17. DHC 3:261: adds "[of the United States]"

18. *Source*: Based on MCR, B. 2, 12 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

19. DHC 3:261: adds "[on removal]"

20. Book C-1, 885, Book C-2, 37: "Music"

21. Book C-2, 37: "Jeremiahs"

22. DHC 3:261: replaces "&c." with "and others"

23. *Source*: MCR, B. 2, 13 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

24. DHC 3:261: omits quotation marks

25. DHC 3:261: replaces "fixed" with "furnished"

26. *Source*: Possibly based on information supplied by BY (cf. *MSHiBY* [1968], 33).

27. *Source*: AR, 2, mentions Joseph Smith Sr. and family leaving Far West on 14 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.14).

28. *Source*: MCR, B. 2-B. 3, 14 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

29. DHC 3:261: adds "on removal"



ter. A letter of attorney was drawn up for the brethren who felt willing to dispose of their real estate to discharge their debts,<sup>30</sup> to sign<sup>31</sup>, appointing Alanson Ripley their attorney for that purpose. This was not exactly according to the minds of the committee, for they only directed br[other]. Ripley to confer with the person above named, for the purpose of obtaining information without reference to his being appointed an attorney for that purpose, independent of any other person or persons.

<sup>32</sup>Friday, [February] 15th. My family arrived at the Mississippi, opposite Quincy, after a journey of almost insupportable hardships, and Elder Markham returned immediately to Far West.

Monday, 18th.

<sup>33</sup>Executive Department City of Jefferson,  
Feb[uary]. 18th, 1839.

To Col[onel]. Wiley C. Williams, aid to the Commander-in-Chief—

Sir: You will take the measures as soon as practicable, to cause the arms, surrendered by the Mormons, to be delivered to the proper owners, upon their producing satisfactory evidence of their claims. If in any case you think an improper use would be made of them, you can retain such, using a sound discretion in the matter. You will call upon Captain Pollard or any other person who may have arms in possession, and take charge of them; and this will be your authority for so doing.

I am respectfully,  
your obedient servant,  
LILBURN W. BOGGS.

<sup>34</sup>Little benefit would<sup>35</sup> have resulted from this order, even if it had been promptly executed, as many of the brethren who owned the arms, had left the State, and it would be very difficult to decide, what would be “*satisfactory evidence*” of claims.

<sup>36</sup>Tuesday, [February] 19th. The committee <sup>37</sup>appointed Charles Bird <sup>38</sup>“to visit the several parts of the<sup>39</sup> county, and W[illia]m. Huntington the town of Far West, to ascertain the number of families, that would have to be assisted in removing, and solicit means from those who are able to give<sup>40</sup>, for the assistance of the needy, and make report as soon as possible.”

<sup>41</sup>Thursday, [February] 21st. Elder Markham arrived at Far West, and in the evening the committee <sup>42</sup>were in council. Elders Bingham, Turley, and Shearer, were appointed to sell Joseph Smith, sen.’s house<sup>43</sup> to a gentleman from Clay county.

---

30. Book C-2, 38 (darker ink): “<to dispose ... debts,>” (TB)

31. DHC 3:262: omits “to sign”

32. *Source*: Possibly SM [1845].

33. *Source*: DCCO, 96.

34. *Source*: Probably composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:45 about 28 Feb.–8 Mar. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

35. Book C-1, 885, Book C-2, 38: replace “would” with “could”

36. *Source*: MCR, B. 3, 19 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

37. DHC 3:262: adds “on removal”

38. DHC 3:262-63: omits quotation marks

39. DHC 3:262: replaces “the” with “Caldwell”

40. Book C-1, 885, Book C-2, 38: replace “give” with “do so”

41. *Source*: This day’s entry from MCR, B. 3-B. 4, 21 Feb. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

42. DHC 3:263: adds “on removal”

43. DHC 3:263: “the house of Joseph Smith, Sen.”

Charles Bird was sent to Liberty, relative to a power of attorney.

Resolved, To send Stephen Markham to Illinois to visit the brethren there and obtain a power of attorney, from such as had left their lands without selling them. A report of the committee appointed to visit the different parts of the county<sup>44</sup> to ascertain the number of families who were destitute of teams for their removal, was made. William Huntington reported 32 families, and Charles Bird 7, as far as they had prosecuted their labors.

Resolved, To send Erastus Bingham to visit the north-west part of the<sup>45</sup> county <sup>46</sup>for the same purpose, and then adjourned till Monday next.

<sup>47</sup>Saturday, [February] 23d<sup>48</sup>. At a meeting of the Democratic Association held this evening at Quincy, Adams county, Illinois, Mr. Lindsay introduced a resolution setting forth that the people called "Latter Day Saints" were many of them in a situation requiring the aid of the citizens of Quincy, and recommending that measures be adopted for their relief; which resolution was adopted, and a committee consisting of eight persons appointed by the chair; of which committee J. W. Whitney was chairman. The Association then adjourned to meet on Wednesday evening then<sup>49</sup> next, after instructing the committee to procure the Congregational meeting house<sup>50</sup> as a place of meeting, and to invite as many of the<sup>51</sup> people to attend the meeting<sup>52</sup> as should choose to do so, <sup>53</sup>in whose<sup>54</sup> behalf <sup>55</sup>the meeting was to be held, and<sup>56</sup> also all others<sup>57</sup>, citizens of the town<sup>58</sup>. The committee not being able to obtain the meeting house, procured the Court House for that purpose.

<sup>59</sup>After we were cast into prison, we heard nothing but threatenings, that if any judge, or jury, or court of any kind, should clear any of us, that<sup>60</sup> we should never get out of the State alive.

This soon determined our course, and that was to escape out of their hands as soon as we could, and by any means we could.—After we had been some length of time in prison, we demanded a habeas corpus of Judge Turnham, one of the county judges, which with some considerable reluctance, was granted. Great threatenings were made at this time by the mob, that if any of us were liberated, we should never get out of the county alive.

After the investigation, Sidney Rigdon<sup>61</sup> was released from prison by the decision of the Judge; the remainder were committed to jail; he also returned with us until a favorable opportunity offered.

---

44. DHC 3:263: "country"

45. DHC 3:263: replaces "the" with "Caldwell"

46. MCR, B. 4: adds "~~to visit the brethren~~"

47. Source: *FREM*, 6.

48. DHC 3:263: "25"

49. DHC 3:263: omits "then"

50. DHC 3:263: replaces "meeting house" with "church"

51. DHC 3:264: replaces "the" with "our"

52. DHC 3:264: omits "the meeting"

53. DHC 3:264: adds "for it was"

54. DHC 3:264: replaces "whose" with "their"

55. DHC 3:264: adds "that"

56. DHC 3:264: omits "and" and starts new sentence

57. DHC 3:264: "other" and deletes comma

58. DHC 3:264: adds "who felt to do so were invited to attend"

59. Source: Following three paragraphs from *AAP*, 50.

60. DHC 3:264: omits "that"

61. *AAP*, 50: replaces "Sidney Rigdon" with "one of our number"

<sup>62</sup>Through the friendship of the sheriff, Mr. Samuel Hadley and the jailor, Mr. Samuel Tillery, he was let out of the jail secretly in the night; <sup>63</sup>after having declared in prison, that the sufferings of Jesus Christ were a fool to his; and being solemnly warned by them to be out of the State with as little delay as possible, he made his escape. Being pursued by a body of armed men, it was through the direction of a kind Providence, that he escaped out of their hands, and safely arrived in Quincy, Illinois.

<sup>64</sup>About this time, Elders [Heber C.] Kimball and [Alanson] Ripley were at Liberty, where they had been almost weekly importuning at the feet of the Judges; and while performing this duty on a certain occasion, Judge Hughes stared them full in the face and observed to one of his associates, that ["by the look of these men's eyes they are whipped but not conquered; and let us beware how we treat these men; for their looks bespeak innocence"]; and at that time he entreated his associates to admit of bail for all the prisoners; but the hardness of their hearts would not admit of so charitable a deed. But they<sup>65</sup> continued to importune at the feet of the Judges, and also to visit the prisoners; and<sup>66</sup> no one of the ruling part of the community disputed the innocence of the prisoners, but said, in consequence of the fury of the mob, that even-handed justice could not be administered; they<sup>67</sup> were therefore compelled to abandon the idea of importuning at the feet of the Judges, and leave the prisoners in the hands of God.

[...]<sup>68</sup>

<sup>69</sup>Commerce, Ill[inois]., Feb[ruary]. 26th, 1839.

Mr. D. W. Rogers—

Dear Sir: Yours of the 11th inst[ant]. was received yesterday. I perceive that it had been written before your brethren visited my house. I had also wrote<sup>70</sup> to Mr. Barlow before I received yours, and which is herewith also sent. I wish here to remark that about 10 or 15 houses or cabins can be had in this neighborhood, and several farms may be rented here, on the half breed lands. I think that more than 50 families can be accommodated with places to dwell in, but not a great quantity of cultivated land, as the improvements on that tract are generally new; there are however several farms which can also be rented.

Since writing to Mr. Barlow, I have conversed with a friend of mine, who has also conversed with Governor Lucas of Iowa Territory, in relation to your church and people. Governor Lucas says, that the people called Mormons were good citizens in<sup>71</sup> the State of Ohio, and that he respects them now as good and virtuous citizens and feels disposed to treat them as such.

I wish also to say, through you, to your people, that Isaac Van Allen Esq., the Attorney-General of Iowa Territory, is a personal and tried friend of mine; and I feel fully authorized from a conversation which I have had with him on the subject, to say, that I can assure you of his utmost endeavors to protect you from insult or violence.

I will here repeat what I have wrote<sup>72</sup> to Mr. Barlow, that I do believe that under a ter-

62. *AAP*, 50: adds "which"; Book C-1, 886: adds erasure; Book C-2, 39: adds ellipses over erasure

63. Next sentence not in *AAP*, 50, but added interlinearly in different ink by WB in Book C-1, 886, and by TB in Book C-2, 39.

64. *Source*: AR, 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.14).

65. DHC 3:265: replaces "they" with "the brethren"

66. DHC 3:265: omits "and"

67. DHC 3:265: replaces "they" with "Elders Kimball and Ripley"

68. DHC moves paragraph that appears below after letter to this location (from p. 267 to p. 265).

69. *Source*: JSLB 2:1-3 (JM).

70. DHC 3:265: "written"

71. JSLB 2:1, Book C-1, 887: replace "in" with "of"

72. DHC 3:266: "written"

ritorial form of government which is directly connected with the General Government of the United States, your church will be better secured against the capriciousness of public opinion, than under a State government, where murder, rapine<sup>73</sup> and robbery are admirable traits in the character of a demagogue; and where the greatest villains often reach the highest offices. I have wrote<sup>74</sup> to Governor Lucas on the subject; and when I receive his answer, I will communicate it to your church.

I desire very much to know how your captive brethren in Missouri are faring. I should like to know if Joseph Smith, jr., is at liberty or not, and what his prospects are. I shall be at Carthage our county seat, during the fore part of next week, and soon after that (perhaps the next week following) I expect to go to Burlington, I[owa]. T[erritory]., when I expect to see the Governor and converse with him on the subject; I will probably be at home from the 6th until the 12th of March. I shall be pleased to see you or any of your people at my house at any time, when you can make it convenient. It is now necessary that something definite should be done in relation to renting farms, as the season for commencing such operations is fast approaching us. A Mr. Whitney, a merchant in Quincy, is owner or<sup>75</sup> proprietor of several farms in this vicinity, and it might be well to see him on the subject.

I wish to serve your cause in any matter which Providence may afford me the opportunity of doing, and I therefore request that you feel no hesitancy, or reluctance in communicating to me your wishes, at all times and on any subject. I should be much gratified if it could be convenient for Mr. Rigdon or some one or more of the leading members of your church to spend some time with me in traveling through the tract, and in hearing and learning the state of the<sup>76</sup> public mind, and feelings of the community in relation to the location of the church.

I feel that I am assuming a very great responsibility in this undertaking, and I wish to be governed by the dictates of wisdom and discretion, while at the same time I am aware that we are often disposed to view things as we would wish to have them, rather than as they really are, and our great anxiety to accomplish an object may sometimes diminish the obstacles below their real measure.

The little knowledge which I have as yet<sup>77</sup> of the doctrines<sup>78</sup>, order or practice of the church, leaves me under the necessity of acting in all this matter as a stranger, though as I sincerely hope, as a friend; for such I assure you I feel myself to be both towards you collectively as a people, and individually as sufferers. If it should not be convenient for any one to come up about the 7th or 8th March, please write me by the mail.—Say to Mr. Rigdon that I regret that I was absent when he was at my house. I cannot visit Quincy until after my return from Burlington, when, I think, if it is thought<sup>79</sup> necessary, I can.

Accept, dear sir, for yourself and in behalf of your<sup>80</sup> church and people, assurance of my sincere sympathy in your sufferings and wrongs, and deep solicitude for your immediate relief from present distress and future triumphant conquest over every enemy.

Yours truly,

ISAAC GALLAND.

---

73. JSLB 2:2: “ravin”

74. DHC 3:266: “written”

75. DHC 3:266: replaces “or” with “and”

76. JSLB 2:2: at *boln* “\state of/ <the>”

77. Book C-2, 40: adds ellipses over erasure

78. DHC 3:267: “doctrine”

79. Book C-2, 40: “<thought>” (FDR)

80. DHC 3:267: replaces “your” with “the”

<sup>81</sup>When Elder Israel Barlow left Missouri in the fall of 1838, either by missing his way, or some other cause, he struck the Des Moines river some distance above its mouth <sup>82</sup>in a destitute situation; and making his wants known, found friends who assisted him, and gave him introductions to several gentlemen, among whom was Doctor [Isaac] Galland, to whom he communicated the situation of the Saints; the relation of which enlisted his<sup>83</sup> sympathies, or interest, or both united, and hence a providential introduction of the church to Commerce <sup>84</sup>and its vicinity; for brother<sup>85</sup> Barlow went direct to Quincy, the place of his destination, and made known his interview with Doctor Galland to the church.

<sup>86</sup>Wednesday, Feb[ruary]. 27th, 1839, 6 o'clock p.m.

The members of the Democratic Association, and the citizens of Quincy generally, assembled in the Court House to take into consideration the state and condition of the people called "the Latter Day Saints," and organized the meeting by appointing General Leach, Chairman, and James D. Morgan, Secretary. Mr. Whitney, from the committee appointed at a former meeting, submitted the following report:

The select committee, to whom the subject was referred of inquiring into and reporting the situation of the persons who have recently arrived here from Missouri, and whether their circumstances are such, as that they would need the aid of the citizens of Quincy and its vicinity, to be guided by what they might deem the principles of an expanded benevolence, have attended to the duties assigned them, and have concluded on the following

#### REPORT:

"The first idea that occurred to your committee was, to obtain correctly the facts of the case, for without them the committee could come to no conclusion<sup>87</sup> as to what it might be proper for us to do. Without them<sup>88</sup>, they could form no basis upon which the committee might recommend to this Association what would be proper for us to do, or what measures to adopt. The committee, soon after their appointment, sent invitations to Mr. Rigdon and several others to meet the committee and give them a statement of the facts, and to disclose their situation. Those individuals accordingly met the committee and entered into a free conversation and disclosure of the facts of their situation; and after some time spent therein, the committee concluded to adjourn and report to this meeting, but not without first requesting those individuals to draw up and <sup>89</sup>send us in writing, a condensed statement of the facts relative to the subject<sup>90</sup> in charge of your committee, which those individuals engaged to do, and which the committee request may be taken as part of their report.

That statement is herewith lettered A.<sup>91</sup>

---

81. DHC moves this paragraph above to precede letter (from p. 267 to p. 265). *Source*: Undetermined. Probably composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:46 about 28 Feb.–8 Mar. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

82. DHC 3:265: adds "He was" and begins new sentence

83. DHC 3:265: replaces "his" with "Mr. Galland's"

84. DHC 3:265: adds "[the place of residence of Mr. Galland]"

85. Book C-1, 888 (lighter ink): "[*erasure*] <brother>" (FDR)

86. *Source*: Following minutes, report, and "Document A" are from *FREM*, 6-8. Cf. newspaper clipping from unidentified Quincy newspaper in JSHD, Bx 1, fd 16, which contains all but the last three paragraphs.

87. Book C-1, 889: "conclusions"

88. DHC 3:268: replaces "them" with "the facts"

89. Book C-2, 41: adds ellipses over erasure

90. *FREM*, 7, Book C-1, 889: "subjects"

91. At this point, the unidentified Quincy newspaper adds: "and also other documents furnished to the committee, lettered B, C, and D."

“The committee believe that our duties at this time, and on this occasion, are all included within the limits of an expanded benevolence and humanity, and which are guided and directed by that charity which never faileth.

From the facts already disclosed, independent of the statement furnished to the committee, we feel it our duty to recommend to this Association that they adopt the following resolutions:

Resolved, That the strangers recently arrived here from the State of Missouri, known by the name of the ‘Latter Day Saints,’ are entitled to our sympathy and kindest regard, and that we recommend to the citizens of Quincy to extend to them<sup>92</sup> all the kindness in their power to bestow, as<sup>93</sup> persons who are in affliction.

Resolved, That a numerous committee be raised, composed of some individuals in every quarter of the town and its vicinity, whose duty it shall be to explain to our misguided fellow citizens, if any such there be, who are disposed to excite prejudices and circulate unfounded rumors; and particularly to explain to them that these people have no design to lower the wages of the laboring class, but to procure something to save them from starving.

Resolved, That a standing committee be raised and be composed of individuals who shall immediately inform Mr. Rigdon and others, as many as they may think proper, of their appointment, and who shall be authorized to obtain information from time to time, and should they<sup>94</sup> be of opinion that any individuals, either from destitution, or sickness; or if they find them houseless, that they appeal directly and promptly to the citizens of Quincy to furnish them with the means to relieve all such cases.

Resolved, That the committee last aforesaid be instructed to use their utmost endeavors to obtain employment for all these people, who are able and willing to labor—and also to afford them all needful, suitable and proper encouragement.

Resolved, That we recommend to all the citizens of Quincy, that in all their intercourse with the strangers, that they use and observe a becoming decorum and delicacy, and be particularly careful not to indulge in any conversation or expressions calculated to wound their feelings, or in any way to reflect upon those, who by every law of humanity, are entitled to our sympathy and commiseration.

All which is submitted,

J. W. WHITNEY, Ch[airman].

Quincy, February 27th, 1839.”

#### [DN 4 (12 January 1854): 1-2]

##### [Document] A.

“This, gentlemen, is a brief outline of the difficulties that we have labored under, in consequence of the repeated persecutions that have been heaped upon us; and as the Governor’s exterminating order has not been rescinded, we as a people were obliged to leave the State<sup>95</sup>, and with it our lands,—corn, wheat, pork, &c., that we had provided for ourselves and families, together with our fodder, which we have<sup>96</sup> collected for our cattle, horses, &c., those of them that we have been able to preserve from the wreck of that desolation which has spread itself over Daviess and Caldwell counties<sup>97</sup>. In consequence of our brethren’s<sup>98</sup> being obliged to leave the State, and as a sympathy and friendly spirit has been

92. DHC 3:268: omits “to them”

93. DHC 3:268: replaces “as” with “on the”

94. DHC 3:268: adds “[the committee]”

95. DHC 3:269: adds “of Missouri”

96. *FREM*, 8, Book C-1, 890: “had”

97. Book C-2, 42 (darker ink): “\counties/”

98. DHC 3:269: “brethren”

manifested by the citizens of Quincy, numbers of our brethren, glad to obtain an asylum from the hand of persecution, have come to this place.

“We cannot but express our feelings of gratitude to the inhabitants of this place, for the friendly feelings which have been manifested, and the benevolent hand which has been stretched out to a poor, oppressed, injured, and<sup>99</sup> persecuted people. And as you, gentlemen of the Democratic Association, have felt interested in our welfare, and have desired to be put in possession of a knowledge of our situation, our present wants, and what would be most conducive to our present good, together with what led to those difficulties, we thought that those documents [Memorial, Order of Extermination, and Gen[eral]. Clark’s Address]<sup>100</sup> would furnish you with as correct information of our difficulties, and what led to them, as anything<sup>101</sup> we are in possession of.

If we should say what our present wants are, it would be beyond all calculations; as we have been robbed of our corn, wheat, horses, cattle, cows,<sup>102</sup> hogs, wearing apparel, houses and homes—and indeed, of all that renders life tolerable. We do not, we cannot expect to be placed in the situation that we once were<sup>103</sup>; nor are we capable of ourselves of supplying the many wants of those of our poor<sup>104</sup> brethren, who are daily crowding here and looking to us for relief, in consequence of our property as well as theirs, being in the hands of a ruthless, and desolating mob.

It is impossible to give an exact account of the widows, and those that are entirely destitute, as there are so many coming here daily; but from inquiry, the probable amount will be something near twenty; besides numbers of others who are able bodied men, both able and willing to work, to obtain a subsistence; yet owing to their peculiar situation; are destitute of means to supply the immediate wants, that the necessities of their families call for.

We would not propose, gentlemen, what you shall do; but after making these statements, shall leave it to your own judgment and generosity. As to what we think would be the best means to promote our permanent good, we think that to give us employment, rent us farms, and allow us the protection and privileges of other citizens, would raise us from a state of dependence, liberate us from the iron grasp of poverty, put us in possession of a competency, and deliver us from the ruinous effects of Persecution, Despotism, and Tyranny.

Written in behalf of a committee of ‘the Latter Day Saints.’

E[LIAS]. HIGBEE, Pres[iden]t.

J[OHN]. P. GREENE, Clerk.

To the Quincy Democratic Association. [”]<sup>105</sup>

Mr. Rigdon then made a statement of the wrongs received by the Mormons, from a portion of the people of Missouri, and of their present suffering condition.

On motion of Mr. Bushnell, the report and resolutions were laid upon the table until<sup>106</sup> tomorrow evening.

99. Book C-2, 42: “<and>” (FDR)

100. Brackets appear in Book C-1, 890, Book C-2, 42, DN, and DHC. In *FREM*, 8, this information is given in a footnote.

101. *FREM*, 8, Book C-1, 890: replace “anything” with “any that”

102. Book C-2, 42: “<cows,>” (FDR)

103. DHC 3:269: adds “in”

104. Book C-2, 43: “<poor>” (FDR)

105. At this point, the clipping of the unidentified Quincy paper has a penciled note: “Next after this go on to the history of farther proceedings at the meeting at bottom of 6 column marked with an asterisk \*Mr Rigdon then made a statement &c.” This refers to the three paragraphs that follow, which are not included in the file with this newspaper clipping.

106. Book C-1, 891: “till”



On motion of Mr. Bushnell, the meeting adjourned to meet at this place <sup>107</sup>tomorrow evening at seven o'clock.

<sup>108</sup>Stephen Markham left Far West [on the 27th of February]<sup>109</sup> for Illinois to fulfill his appointment of the 21st instant.

<sup>110</sup>Thursday evening, Feb[ruary]. 28th. Met pursuant to adjournment. The meeting was called to order by the chairman.

On motion of Mr. Morris, a committee of three was appointed to take up a collection; Messrs. J. T. Holmes, Whitney, and Morris were appointed. The committee subsequently reported that \$48.25 had been collected. On motion the amount was paid over to the committee on behalf of the "Mormons." On motion of Mr. Holmes, a committee of three, consisting of S. Holmes, Bushnell, and Morris, were<sup>111</sup> appointed to draw up subscription papers and circulate them among the citizens, for the purpose of receiving contributions in clothing and provisions. On motion six were added to that committee.

On motion of J. T. Holmes, J. D. Morgan was appointed a committee to wait upon the Quincy Grays<sup>112</sup>, for the purpose of receiving subscriptions. Mr. Morgan subsequently reported that twenty dollars had been subscribed by that company.

The following resolutions were then offered by Mr. J. T. Holmes:

Resolved, that we regard the rights of conscience as natural, and inalienable, and the most sacred, guaranteed by the Constitution of our free government.

Resolved, That we regard the acts of all mobs as flagrant violations of law; and those who compose them, individually responsible, both to the laws of God and man for every depredation committed upon the property, rights, or life of any citizen.

Resolved, That the inhabitants upon the western frontier of the State of Missouri, in their late persecutions of the class of people denominated Mormons, have violated the sacred rights of conscience, and every law of justice and humanity.

Resolved, That the Governor of Missouri, in refusing protection to this class of people, when pressed upon by a heartless mob, and turning upon them a band of unprincipled militia, with orders encouraging their extermination, has brought a lasting disgrace upon the State over which he presides.

The resolutions were supported in a spirited manner by Messrs. Holmes, Morris, and Whitney.

On motion, the resolutions were adopted.

On motion the meeting then adjourned.

SAM[UE]L. LEACH, Ch[airma]n.  
J. D. MORGAN, Sec[retar]y.

---

107. *FREM*, 9, Book C-1, 891: add "on"

108. *Source*: Possibly SM [1845].

109. DHC 3:270: adds "[on the 27th of February]"

110. *Source*: *FREM*, 9-10.

111. DHC 3:271: "was"

112. DHC 3:271: adds "[militia company]"

19.

JOSEPH SMITH PETITIONS  
FOR RELEASE  
March 1839

[DN 4 (12 January 1854): 1-2 (cont.)]

Tuesday, 5th March,

<sup>1</sup>Quincy, Ill[inois].  
**March 5th 1839.**

Beloved Brother:—Having an opportunity to send direct to you by Br. Rogers, I feel to write a few lines to you.

Pres[iden]t. Rigdon, Judge Higbee, Israel<sup>2</sup> Barlow, and myself, went to see Dr. [Isaac] Galland, week before last. Br[other]s. Rigdon, Higbee and myself, are of <sup>3</sup>opinion that it is not wisdom to make a trade with the Doctor at present; possibly it may be wisdom to effect a trade hereafter.

The people here<sup>4</sup> receive us kindly; they have contributed near \$100 cash, besides other property, for the relief of the suffering among our people. Brother Joseph's wife lives at Judge Cleveland's; I have not seen her, but I sent her word of this opportunity to send to you. Br[other]. Hyrum's wife<sup>5</sup> lives not far from me. I have been to see her a number of times; her health was very poor when she arrived, but she has been getting better; she knows of this opportunity to send. I saw sister Wright<sup>6</sup> soon after her arrival here; all were well; I understand that<sup>7</sup> she has moved out<sup>8</sup> about two miles with father and John Higbee, who are fishing this spring. Sister McRae is here, living with br[other]. Henderson, and is well; I believe she knows of this opportunity to send. Br[other]. Baldwin's family I have not seen, and do not know that she has got here as yet. She however may be upon the other side of the river; the ice has run these three

---

1. *Source*: JSLB 2:3-4 (JM). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

2. JSLB 2:3: "I."; Book C-1, 892 (lighter ink): "Israel" (TB)

3. DHC 3:272: adds "the"

4. JSLB 2:3: omits "here"; Book C-1, 892: "<here>" (FDR)

5. Book C-2, 44: "<wife>" (TB)

6. JSLB 2:3, DHC 3:272: "Wight"

7. DHC 3:272: omits "that"

8. DHC 3:272: omits "out"

days past so that there has been no crossing; the weather is now moderating, and the crossing will soon commence again.

This place is full of our people,—yet they are scattering off nearly all the while. I expect to start tomorrow for Pittsfield, Pike county, Illinois, about 45 miles S[outh]. E[ast]. from this place. Br[other]. Geo[rge]. W. Robinson told me this morning that he expected that his father-in-law, Judge Higbee, and himself would go on a farm about 20 miles N[orth]. E[ast]. from this place. Some of the leading men have given us [that is our people]<sup>9</sup> an invitation to settle in and about this place. Many <sup>10</sup>no doubt will stay here.

Brethren, I hope that you will bear patiently the privations that you are called to endure; the Lord will deliver you in his own due time.

Your letter respecting the trade with Galland was not received here until after our return from his residence, at the head of the shoals or rapids. If br[other]. Rigdon were not here, we might (after receiving your letter) come to a different conclusion respecting that trade. There are some here that are sanguine that we ought to <sup>11</sup>trade with the D[octo]r. Bishops<sup>12</sup> Whitney and Knights<sup>13</sup> are not here, and have not been<sup>14</sup>, as I know of. Br[other]s. Morley and Billings have settled some 20 or 25 miles north of this place, for the present. A br[other]. Lee, who lived near Haun's mill, died on the opposite side of the river a few days since. Br[other]. Rigdon preached his funeral sermon in the Court House. It is a general time of health here.

We greatly desire to see you, and to have you enjoy your freedom. The citizens here are willing that we should enjoy the privileges guaranteed to all civil people without molestation.

I remain your brother in the Lord,

E[DWARD]. PARTRIDGE.

<sup>15</sup>[Directed]<sup>16</sup> To Joseph Smith, Jr., and others,  
confined in Liberty Jail, Mo.

<sup>17</sup>Quincy, Ill[inois]., March 6th, 1839.

Brethren<sup>18</sup> Hyrum and Joseph:—Having an opportunity to send a line to you, I do not feel disposed to let it slip unnoticed. Father's family have all arrived in this State except you two; and could I but see your faces this side of the Mississippi, and know and realize that you had been delivered from your enemies, it would certainly light up a new gleam of hope in our bosoms; nothing could be more satisfactory, nothing could give us more joy.

Emma and <sup>19</sup>children are well; they live three miles from here, and have a tolerable<sup>20</sup> good place. Hyrum's children and mother Grinold's are living at present with father; they are all well. Mary <sup>21</sup>has not got her health yet, but I think it increases slowly.—She lives in the house with old father Dixon; likewise br[other]. [Robert T.]<sup>22</sup> Thompson and family; they are prob-

9. Brackets or parentheses in JSLB 2:4, Book C-1, 892, Book C-2, 44, and DN; DHC 3:273: "[that is the Saints]"

10. Book C-2, 44: adds ellipses over erasure

11. JSLB 2:4: adds "~~accept~~"

12. Book C-1, 892, Book C-2, 44: "Bishop"

13. DHC 3:273: "Knight"

14. JSLB 2:4: adds "here"

15. DHC 3:273: moves this information to beginning as a heading to the letter

16. Brackets appear in Book C-1, 892, Book C-2, 45, and DN.

17. *Source*: JSLB 2:38 (JM). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

18. DHC 3:273: "Brothers"

19. DHC 3:273: adds "the"

20. DHC 3:273: "tolerably"

21. DHC 3:273: adds "[wife of Hyrum Smith]"

22. DHC 3:273: "T." probably should be "B."

ably a half mile from father's. We are trying to get a house, and to get the family together; we shall do the best we can for them, and that which we consider to be most in accordance with Hyrum's feelings.

**One thing I would say (not however to the disrespect of Sister Thompson) which is that the family would do better without her than with her; which I am confident you will regulate when you come. One reason for so saying, is that I do not think that she is a suitable person to govern the family.**

Father and mother stood their journey remarkably<sup>23</sup>. They are in tolerable health.—Samuel's wife has been sick ever since they arrived. William has removed forty miles from here, but is here now, and says he is anxious to have you liberated, and see you enjoy liberty once more. My family is well; my health has not been good, for about two weeks; and for two or three days the toothache has been my tormentor. It all originated with a severe cold.

Dear brethren, we just heard that the Governor says, that he is going to set you all at liberty; I hope it's<sup>24</sup> true; other letters that you will probably receive, will give you information concerning the warm feeling of the people here, toward<sup>25</sup> us.

After writing these hurried lines in misery, I close by leaving the blessings of God with you, and praying for your health, prosperity, and restitution to liberty.

This from a true friend and brother:

DON C. SMITH.

**J. Smith Jr. H. Smith.**

<sup>26</sup>Br[others]. Hyrum and Joseph:—I should have called down to Liberty to have seen you, had it not have<sup>27</sup> been for<sup>28</sup> the multiplicity of business that was on my hands; and again, I thought that perhaps<sup>29</sup> the people might think that the Mormons would rise up to liberate you; consequently too many going to see you might make it worse for you; but we all long to see you, and have you come out of that lonesome place.

I hope you will be permitted to come to your families before long. Do not worry about them, for they will be taken care of. All we can do will be done; further than this, we can only wish, hope, desire and pray, for your deliverance.

W[ILLIAM]M. SMITH.

To J[oseph]. Smith, jr., and H[yrum]. Smith.<sup>30</sup>

Friday, [March] 8th.

<sup>31</sup>The committee met at T[hodore]. Turley's, W[illiam]. Huntington in the chair.—

Alanson Ripley made a report of his journey to Liberty, and said that President Joseph Smith, jr., counseled to sell all the land in Jackson<sup>32</sup>, and all other lands in the State whatsoever.

Resolved<sup>33</sup>, That the names of those of the brethren who have subscribed to our cove-

23. DHC 3:273: adds "well"

24. DHC 3:274: "it is"

25. JSLB 2:38, Book C-1, 893, DHC 3:274: "towards"

26. Source: JSLB 2:38-39 (JM), which in the non-extant original was apparently appended to the preceding letter.

27. DHC 3:274: omits "have"

28. Book C-2, 45 (darker ink): "{\or/}"

29. JSLB 2:38, Book C-1, 893, Book C-2, 45: "thought perhaps that"

30. JSLB 2:39: "Joseph Smith Jr, Liberty Mo."

31. Source: MCR, P. 4, 8 Mar. 1839.

32. DHC 3:274: adds "county"

33. MCR, P. 4, 1: "~~Motioned~~ <Resolved>"

nant and have done nothing, be sought for and a record made of them, that they may be had in remembrance.

Resolved, That an extra exertion be made to procure money for removing the poor, by visiting those who have money, and laying the necessities of the committee, in their business of removing the poor out of the state, before them, and solicit their assistance.

Voted that the clerk write a letter to Bishop Partridge, laying before him<sup>34</sup> the advice of President Joseph Smith, jr., concerning selling the Jackson<sup>35</sup> lands and requesting a power of attorney to sell them.

Saturday, 9th.

<sup>36</sup>At a meeting held at the committee room in the city of Quincy, Illinois, at 2 o'clock, p.m., on the 9th March, 1839, pursuant to previous appointment, it was moved by President Rigdon, and seconded, that Judge [Elias] Higbee be called to the chair, and he was unanimously appointed.—James Sloan was then appointed clerk by vote.

President Rigdon<sup>37</sup> spoke as to the members of the committee being absent who had called the meeting, and proposed that other business be proceeded in<sup>38</sup>, in the meantime, and left it to the chair to decide on the propriety thereof, to which<sup>39</sup> the chair assented<sup>40</sup>.

President Rigdon then applied for a paper which had been prepared, and signed by several of the citizens of Quincy<sup>41</sup>, describing our situation as a people, and calling upon the humane in St. Louis and elsewhere to assist them in affording us relief. The paper being presented by br[other]. Ephraim Owen,<sup>42</sup> was then read, and President Rigdon spoke at length upon the subject and proposed that a committee of two of the brethren be appointed by the voice of the meeting to go to St. Louis, &c.<sup>43</sup>, on such business. The motion was then put and carried, and brother Mace<sup>44</sup> appointed as one of said committee, and br[other]. Ephraim Owen the other. It was proposed that br[other]. Orson Pratt (who is now in St. Louis) be appointed as<sup>45</sup> assistant.

After the motion was put<sup>46</sup> and before it was seconded, President Rigdon spoke of its inconsistency, and stated as a better mode, that all the Saints in St. Louis, or such of them as the committee may think proper, be called upon by them<sup>47</sup> to assist them. The motion was withdrawn, and this business closed.

Some of the committee who called this meeting, being now present, President Rigdon spoke of two letters which had been received here by the brethren, from Iowa Territory respecting lands in said<sup>48</sup> place, and containing sentiments of sympathy on account of our grievances,

---

34. MCR, P. 4, 1: "<before him>"

35. MCR, P. 4, 1, DHC 3:275: add "county"

36. *Source*: JSLB 2:48-50 (JM). Deleted material supplied in bold type.

37. JSLB 2:48: adds "~~then applied for~~"

38. DHC 3:275: replaces "in" with "with"

39. DHC 3:275: omits "to which" and begins new sentence

40. DHC 3:275: adds "to the suggestion of President Rigdon"

41. Book C-2, 46: "<of Quincy>" (FDR)

42. Book C-2, 46: "<Owen,>" (pos. TB)

43. DHC 3:275: omits "&c."

44. DHC 3:275: adds "was"

45. DHC 3:275: replaces "as" with "an"

46. DHC 3:275: replaces "put" with "made"

47. DHC 3:275: omits "by them"

48. JSLB 2:49: replaces "said" with "that"

and distressed situation, &c., &c.<sup>49</sup> One of these letters have<sup>50</sup> been mislaid, and the other, from Isaac Galland to br[other]. Rogers, was read. It was then proposed that a committee be appointed to visit the lands and confer with the gentlemen who had so written, and declared themselves interested for our welfare.

Elder [John P.] Greene moved that a committee be appointed for that purpose; which was seconded and adopted unanimously. President Rigdon moved that the committee shall select the land, if it can be safely located<sup>51</sup>.—Seconded by Elder Greene, and carried, that<sup>52</sup> the committee be composed of five, viz:—President Rigdon, Elder Greene, Judge Higbee, br[other]. Benson, and br[other]. Israel Barlow.

It was moved, seconded and adopted, that if any one or more of the committee be unable to go, the remainder of the committee are to appoint others in their stead.

The chairman now produced a power of attorney sent here from the committee at Far West, to be executed by such of the brethren here who had lands in Caldwell county and were willing to have them sold to enable the families who are in distress at that place to get here, say about one hundred families.

Power of attorney was read. Moved, seconded and adopted, that the clerk of this meeting do make out a copy of the minutes of this meeting, to be sent to the committee at Far West.  
**Meeting closed.**

James Sloan, Clerk.

<sup>53</sup>While the persecutions were progressing against us in Missouri, the enemy of all righteousness was no less busy with the Saints in England, according to the length of time the gospel had been preached in that kingdom. Temptation followed temptation, and being young in the cause, the Saints suffered themselves to be buffeted by their adversary. From the time that Elder Willard Richards was called to the apostleship in July 1838, the devil seemed to take a great dislike to him, and strove to stir up the minds of many against him. Elder Richards was afflicted with sickness, and several times was brought to the borders of the grave, and many were tempted to believe that he was under transgression or he would not be thus afflicted. Some were tried and tempted because Elder Richards took to himself a wife; they thought he should have given himself wholly to the ministry, and followed Paul's advice to the letter. Some were tried because his wife wore a veil, and others because she carried a muff to keep herself warm, when she walked out in cold weather; and even the President of the church<sup>54</sup>there thought "she had better done without it"; she had nothing ever purchased by the church; and to gratify their feelings, wore the poorest clothes she had, and they were too good, so hard was it to buffet the storm of feeling, that arose from such foolish causes. Sister Richards was very sick for some time, and some were dissatisfied because he<sup>55</sup> did not neglect her entirely and go out preaching; and others that she did not go to meeting, when she was not able to go so far.

<sup>56</sup>From such little things arose a spirit of jealousy, tattling, evil speaking, surmising, covetous-

---

49. DHC 3:275: omits "&c., &c."

50. DHC 3:275: "has"

51. DHC 3:276: replaces "located" with "occupied"

52. JSLB 2:49, Book C-1, 894, Book C-2, 46: replace "that" with "and"

53. *Source*: This paragraph likely composed by WR as an introduction to the paragraphs that immediately follow, which are expansions of his own journal entries. The last part of this paragraph and part of the next draw on JFj [1838-40], 40-48, 53-55, under 12-23 Mar. and 11 Apr. 1839 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.19).

54. DHC 3:276: adds "[Joseph Fielding]"

55. DHC 3:277: replaces "he" with "her husband"

56. *Source*: Based on WRj 1:92 (transcription in vol. 8, III.3), and JFj [1838-40], 40-48 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.19).

ness, and rebellion, until the church but too generally harbored more or less of those unpleasant feelings; and this evening [March 9th]<sup>57</sup> Elder Halsal came out openly in council against Elder Richards, and preferred some heavy charges, none of which he was able to substantiate. Most of the elders in Preston were against Elder Richards for a season, except James Whitehead, who proved himself true in the hour of trial.

<sup>58</sup>Sunday, 10th. When Elder Richards made proclamation from the pulpit, that if anyone had aught against him, or his wife Jennetta, he wished they would come to him and state their grievances, and if he had erred in anything, he would acknowledge his fault—one only of the brethren came to him, and that to acknowledge his own fault to Elder Richards in harboring unpleasant feelings without a cause.

<sup>59</sup>Elder Richards' wife<sup>60</sup> bore all these trials and persecutions with patience; for he<sup>61</sup> knew the cause<sup>62</sup>, his calling<sup>63</sup> having been made known to him by revelation; but he told no one of it. The work continued to spread in Manchester and vicinity, among the Staffordshire Potteries, and other places in England.<sup>64</sup>

Friday, 15th. I made the following petition:

<sup>65</sup>To the Honorable Judge Tompkins, or either of the Judges of the Supreme Court for the State of Missouri:—

Your petitioners, Alanson Ripley, Heber C. Kimball, Joseph B. Noble, William Huntington, and Joseph Smith, jr., beg leave respectfully to represent to your honor, that Joseph Smith, jr., is now unlawfully confined, and restrained of his liberty,<sup>66</sup> in Liberty Jail, Clay county, Missouri; that he has been restrained of his liberty near<sup>67</sup> five months.—Your petitioners claim that the whole transaction, which has been the cause of his confinement, is unlawful from the first to the last. He was taken from his house<sup>68</sup> by a fraud being practiced upon him by a man<sup>69</sup> by the name of George M. Hinkle, and one or two others; thereby your petitioners respectfully show, that he was forced, contrary to his wishes, and without knowing the cause, into the camp, which was commanded by General Lucas of Jackson county, and from<sup>70</sup> thence to Ray county, sleeping on the ground, and suffering many insults and injuries, and deprivations which were calculated in their nature to break down the spirits<sup>71</sup> and constitution of the most robust and hardy of mankind.

57. DHC 3:277: adds “[March 9th]”

58. *Source*: Based on WRj 1:92 (transcription in vol. 8, III.3).

59. *Source*: Probably composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:46–47 about 28 Feb.–8 Mar. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

60. DHC 3:277: “Sister Richards”

61. DHC 3:277: omits “for” and replaces “he” with “Elder Richards”

62. DHC 3:277: adds “of these unpleasantries”

63. DHC 3:277: adds “[to the apostolate]”

64. Preceding sentence has an erased and illegible interlinear insertion near the beginning. This aborted emendation was mentioned by the revisers on 14 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

65. *Source*: RDft 1:48 directs scribe to copy *FREM*, 31–34, and also to see JSLB 2:21–24 (JM). Cf. JSLP, Bx 4, 1–6, and 7–14, for an earlier draft, and *LP*, 205–15. Deleted material supplied here from *FREM* in bold type.

66. JSLB 2:21: omits “unlawfully confined and restrained of his liberty”

67. DHC 3:278: “nearly”

68. *FREM*, 31, JSLB 2:21, Book C-1, 895: “home”

69. JSLB 2:21: adds “**named**”

70. DHC 3:278: omits “from”

71. DHC 3:278: “spirit”



He was put in chains immediately on his being landed at Richmond, and there underwent a long and tedious *ex parte* examination.

**Not only was it *ex parte*, but your petitioners solemnly declare that it was a mock examination; that there was not the least shadow of honor, or justice, or law, administered towards him,<sup>72</sup> but sheer prejudice, and the spirit of persecution and malice, and prepossession against him on account of his religion; that the whole examination was an inquisitory examination.**

Your petitioners<sup>73</sup> show that the said Joseph Smith, jr., was deprived of the privileges of being examined before the court as the law directs; that the witnesses on the part of the State were taken by force of arms, threatened with extermination or immediate death, and were brought without subpoena or warrant, under the awful and glaring anticipation of being exterminated if they did not swear something against him to please the mob or his persecutors; and those witnesses were compelled to swear at the muzzle of the gun, and that<sup>74</sup> some of them have acknowledged since, which your petitioners do testify, and are able to prove, that they did swear false<sup>75</sup>, and that they did it in order to save their lives.

And your petitioners testify, that all the testimony that had any tendency or bearing of criminality against said Joseph Smith, jr., is false. We are personally acquainted with the circumstances, and being with him most of the time, and being present at the times<sup>76</sup> spoken of by them: therefore we know that their testimony was false; and if he could have had a fair<sup>77</sup>, and impartial, and lawful examination before the court, and could have been allowed the privilege of introducing his witnesses, he could have disproved everything that was against him; but the court suffered them to be intimidated, some of them in the presence of the court, and they were driven also and hunted, and some of them driven entirely out of the State.

#### [DN 4 (19 January 1854): 1]

And thus he was not able to have a fair trial; that the spirit of the court was tyrannical and overbearing, and the whole transaction of his treatment during the examination was calculated to convince<sup>78</sup> your petitioners that it was a religious persecution, proscribing him in the liberty of conscience which is guaranteed to him by the Constitution of the United States, and the State of Missouri; that a long catalogue of garbled testimony was permitted by the court, purporting to be the religious sentiment of the said Joseph Smith, jr., which testimony was false, and your petitioners know that it is<sup>79</sup> false, and can prove that it was false; because the witnesses testified that those sentiments were promulgated on certain days, and in the presence of large congregations; and your petitioners can prove by those congregations, that the said Joseph Smith, jr., did not promulgate such ridiculous and absurd sentiments for his religion as was testified of and admitted before the Honorable Austin A. King; and at the same time, those things had no bearing in the case<sup>80</sup>, that the said Joseph Smith, jr., was pretended to be<sup>81</sup> charged with; and after the examination the said prisoner was committed to the jail for treason against the State

---

72. JSLB 2:21: adds "~~on account of his religion~~"

73. JSLB 2:21: omits "was an inquisitory examination. Your petitioners"

74. DHC 3:278: omits "that"

75. DHC 3:278: "falsely"

76. DHC 3:278: "time"

77. DHC 3:278: adds "trial"

78. JSLB 2:21: "convinced" and deletes "during the examination was calculated to"

79. Book C-2, 48 (darker ink): "{\is/}" (US); *FREM*, 31, JSLB 2:22, DHC 3:279: "was"

80. DHC 3:279: replaces "in the case" with "on the offenses"

81. DHC 3:279: omits "pretended to be"

of Missouri:—whereas the said Joseph Smith, jr., did not levy war against the State of Missouri; neither did he commit any covert<sup>82</sup> acts; neither did he aid or abet any<sup>83</sup> enemy against the State of Missouri during the time he is charged with having done so.

And further, your petitioners have yet to learn that the State has an enemy; neither is the proof evident, nor the presumption great in its most indignant<sup>84</sup> form upon <sup>85</sup>the testimony on the part of the State, *ex parte* as it is in its nature, that the prisoner has committed the slightest degree of treason, or any other act of transgression against the laws of the State of Missouri; and yet said prisoner has been committed to Liberty jail, Clay county, Mo., for treason. He has continually offered bail to any amount that could be required, notwithstanding your petitioners allege that he ought to have been acquitted.

Your petitioners also allege, that the commitment was an<sup>86</sup> illegal commitment, for the law requires: that a copy of the testimony should be put in the hands of the jailer, which was not done.

Your petitioners allege, that the prisoner has been denied the privilege of the law in a writ of habeas corpus, by the Judges<sup>87</sup> of this County. Whether they have prejudged the case of the prisoner, or whether they are not willing to administer law and justice to the prisoner, or that they are intimidated by the high office of Judge King, who only acted in the case of the prisoners<sup>88</sup> as a committing magistrate, a conservator of the peace, or by the threats of a lawless mob, your petitioners are not able to say; but <sup>89</sup>it is a fact, that they do not come forward boldly and administer the law to the relief of the prisoner.

And further<sup>90</sup> your petitioners allege, that immediately after the prisoner was taken, his family were frightened and driven out of their house; and that too, by the witnesses on the part of the State, and plundered of their goods; that the prisoner was robbed of a very fine horse, saddle and bridle, and other property of considerable amount; that they (the witnesses) in connection with the mob, have finally succeeded, by vile threatening and foul abuse, in driving the family of the prisoner out of the State with little or no means, and without a protector, and their very subsistence depends upon the liberty of the prisoner. And your petitioners allege, that he is not guilty of any crime, whereby he should be restrained of his liberty, from a personal knowledge, having been with him, and being personally acquainted with the whole of the difficulties between the Mormons and their persecutors; and that he has never acted at any time, only in his own defense, and that too on his own ground, property, and possessions. That the prisoner has never commanded any military company, nor held any military authority, neither any other office, real or pretended in the State of Missouri, except that of a religious instructor<sup>91</sup>; that he never has borne<sup>92</sup> arms in the military rank, and in all such cases has acted as a private character and as an individual.

How then, your petitioners would ask, can it be possible that the prisoner has commit-

---

82. Book C-1, 896 (different ink): “\c/overt”. This emendation was done by the reviewers on 14 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6). *FREM*, 32: “covert”; JSLB 2:22, DHC 3:278: “overt”

83. JSLB 2:22, Book C-1, 896, DHC 3:279: replace “any” with “an”

84. DHC 3:279: replaces “indignant” with “malignant”

85. *FREM*, 32, JSLB 2:22, Book C-1, 896, Book C-2, 49: add “the face of”

86. Book C-1, 897: “<an>” (TB)

87. DHC 3:279: “judge”

88. DHC 3:279: “prisoner”

89. Book C-1, 897, Book C-2, 49: add “that”

90. Book C-1, 897: “farther”

91. *FREM*, 32, JSLB 2:23: replace “instructor” with “teacher”

92. *FREM*, 32, Book C-1, 897: “bore”; Book C-2, 49: “bor\n/”; “n” *u.o.* “e”

ted Treason? The prisoner has had nothing to do in Daviess county only on his own business as an individual.

The testimony of Dr. Avarð concerning a council held at James Sloan's, was false.— Your petitioners do solemnly declare, that there was no such council; that your petitioners were with the prisoner, and there was no such vote nor<sup>93</sup> conversation as Doctor Avarð swore to. That Doctor Avarð also swore falsely<sup>94</sup> concerning a Constitution, as he said, was<sup>95</sup> introduced among the Danites<sup>96</sup>; that the prisoner had nothing to do with burning in Daviess county; that the prisoner made public proclamation against such things; that the prisoner did oppose Doctor Avarð and George M. Hinkle, against vile measures with the Mob, but was threatened by them if he did not let them alone. That the prisoner did not have anything to do with what is called Bogart's battle, for he knew nothing of it until it was over; that he was at home, in the bosom of his own family, during the time of that whole transaction.

And in fine, your petitioners allege, that he is held in confinement without cause, and under an unlawful and tyrannical oppression, and that his health, and constitution, and life, depend<sup>97</sup> on<sup>98</sup> being liberated from his confinement.

Your petitioners aver, that they can disprove every item of testimony that has any tendency of criminality against the prisoner; for they know it<sup>99</sup> themselves, and can bring many others also to prove the same.

Therefore your petitioners pray your honor to grant to him the State's writ of habeas corpus, directed to the jailer of Clay county, Mo., commanding him forthwith, to bring before you the body of the prisoner so that his case may be heard before your honor, and the situation of the prisoner be considered and adjusted according to law and justice, as it shall be presented before your honor. And as in duty bound, your petitioners will ever pray.

And farther<sup>100</sup>, your petitioners testify that the said Joseph Smith, jr., did make a public proclamation in Far West, in favor of the militia of the State of Missouri, and of its laws, and also of the Constitution of the United States; that he has ever been a warm friend to his country, and did use all his influence for peace<sup>101</sup>; that he is a peaceable and quiet citizen, and is not worthy of death, of stripes, bond or imprisonment.

The above mentioned speech was delivered on the day before the surrender of Far West.

Alanson Ripley,  
Heber C. Kimball,  
William Huntington,  
Joseph B. Noble,  
Joseph Smith, jr.

State of Missouri,    }  
county of Clay,       }   ss.

This day personally appeared before me, Abraham Shafer, a Justice of the Peace within and for the aforesaid county, Alanson Ripley, Heber C. Kimball, W[illia]m. Huntington, Joseph

93. DHC 3:280: "or"

94. *FREM*, 33, JSLB 2:23, Book C-1, 897, Book C-2, 49: "false"

95. Book C-2, 49: "<was>" (pos. TB)

96. JSLB 2:23: replaces "Danites" with "Saints"

97. Book C-1, 897, Book C-2, 50: "depends"

98. Book C-2, 50: adds ellipses over erasure

99. DHC 3:280: replaces "it" with "the facts"

100. DHC 3:281: "further"

101. Book C-2, 50: "<peace>" (TB)

B. Noble, and Joseph Smith, jr., who being duly sworn, do depose and say that the matters and things set forth in the foregoing petition, upon their own knowledge, are true in substance and in fact, and so far as set forth upon the information of others, they believe to be true.

Alanson Ripley,  
Heber C. Kimball,  
William Huntington,  
Joseph B. Noble,  
Joseph Smith, jr.

Sworn and subscribed to before me, this 15th day of March, 1839<sup>102</sup>.

Abraham Shafer, J.P.

We the undersigned, being many of us personally acquainted with the said Joseph Smith, jr., and the circumstances connected with his imprisonment, do concur in the petition and testimony of the above-named individuals, as most of the transactions therein mentioned we know from personal knowledge to be correctly set forth; and from information of others, believe the remainder to be true.

Amasa Lyman,  
H. G. Sherwood,  
James Newberry,  
Cyrus Daniels,  
Erastus Snow,  
Elias Smith.

<sup>103</sup>The same day, Caleb Baldwin, Lyman Wight, Alexander McRae, and Hyrum Smith, my fellow prisoners, made each a similar petition.

---

<sup>102</sup>. JSLB 2:24: adds “before me”

<sup>103</sup>. *Source*: These petitions are located in *FREM*, 28–36, and JSLB 2:25–27 (JM).

20.

## JOSEPH SMITH'S LETTERS FROM JAIL

March 1839

[DN 4 (19 January 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Sunday, 17th. <sup>2</sup>Extract from the minutes of a Conference of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, held <sup>3</sup>in Quincy, on the 17th of March, 1839<sup>4</sup>, Brigham Young was unanimously<sup>5</sup> called to the chair, and Robert B. Thompson chosen clerk.

<sup>6</sup>Elder Young then arose and gave a statement of the circumstances of the church at Far West and his feelings in regard to the scattering of the brethren, believing it to be wisdom to unite together as much as possible in extending the hand of charity for the relief of the poor, who were suffering <sup>7</sup>under the hand of persecution in Missouri; and to pursue that course that would prove for the general good of the whole church, <sup>8</sup>who were<sup>9</sup> suffering for the gospel's sake; and<sup>10</sup> would advise the saints to settle (if possible) in companies, or in a situation so as to be organized into churches<sup>11</sup>, that they might be nourished, and fed by the shepherds; for without, the sheep would be scattered; and he also impressed it upon the minds of the saints to give heed to the revelations of God; especially the elders<sup>12</sup> should be careful to depart from all iniquity, and to remember the counsel given by those whom God hath placed as counselors in his church; that they may become as wise stewards in the vineyard of the Lord, that every man may know and act in his own place; for there is order in the Kingdom of God, and we must regard that order if we expect to be blessed.

---

1. *Source*: Based on *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 15.

2. DHC 3:283: adds "I here give an"

3. DHC 3:283: adds "this day"

4. DHC 3:283: omits date.

5. DHC 3:283: "by a unanimous vote was"

6. *Source*: *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 15.

7. DHC 3:283: adds "for the Gospel's sake"

8. DHC 3:283: deletes remainder of sentence

9. *T&S* 1:15, Book C-1, 899, Book C-2, 51: "was"

10. DHC 3:283: replaces "and" with "He"

11. DHC 3:283: replaces "churches" with "branches of the Church"

12. DHC 3:283: "the Elder especially"

Elder Young also stated that Elder Jonathan Dunham had received previous instructions not to call any conferences in this State, or elsewhere; but to go forth and preach repentance, which<sup>13</sup> was his calling; but contrary to those instructions, he called a conference in Springfield, Ill[inois]., and presided there, and brought forth the business which he had to transact; and his proceeding in many respects during the conference was contrary to the feelings of Elder W[ilford]. Woodruff and other official members who were present. They considered his proceedings contrary to the will and order of God.

The conference then voted that Elder J.<sup>14</sup> Dunham be reprov[er]ed for his improper course—and that he be advised to adhere to the counsel given him.

And after transacting<sup>15</sup> various other business, Elder George W. Harris made some remarks relative to those who had left us in the times<sup>16</sup> of our perils, persecutions, and dangers, and were acting against the <sup>17</sup>interest<sup>18</sup> of the church, and <sup>19</sup>that the church could no longer hold them in fellowship unless they repented of their sins, and turned unto God.

After the conference <sup>20</sup>fully expressed their feelings upon the subject, it was unanimously voted that the following persons be excommunicated from the church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, viz.: George M. Hinkle, Sampson Avar, John Corrill, Reed Peck, W[illia]m. W. Phelps, Frederick G. Williams, Thomas B. Marsh, Burr Riggs, and several others. After which, the conference closed by prayer.

BRIGHAM YOUNG, Pres[ident].

ROBERT B. THOMPSON, Clerk.

<sup>21</sup>Parley P. Pratt's wife left the prison house, where she had voluntarily been with her husband most of the winter, and returned <sup>22</sup>to Far West to get passage with some of the brethren for Illinois.

<sup>23</sup>This morning<sup>24</sup> "the committee met at the house of Daniel Shearer, Far West: William Huntington in the chair.["]

Present—Br[other]. D[aniel]. W. Rogers from Quincy, Ill[inois]. Br[other]. **The object of the committee was called for by the chairman and briefly stated by some of the committee.** Rogers made known the proceedings of the brethren in Quincy in relation to locating in the Iowa Territory, and read a private<sup>25</sup> letter from Doctor [Isaac] Galland to him on the same subject, and presented a power of attorney from Bishop Partridge to dispose of the lands of the church in Jackson county, and also <sup>26</sup>some lots<sup>27</sup> in Far West.—He then presented a copy of the<sup>28</sup> proceedings of a council held in Quincy on the 9th inst[ant]., which

---

13. DHC 3:283: replaces "which" with "this"

14. DHC 3:284: omits "J."

15. DHC 3:284: "After the conference had transacted"

16. DHC 3:284: "time"

17. Book C-2, 51: adds ellipses over erasure

18. DHC 3:284: "interests"

19. DHC 3:284: adds "said"

20. DHC 3:284: adds "had"

21. *Source*: LP, 113 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9). DHC 3:284: adds "This day, 17th of March"

22. Book C-2, 51: adds ellipses over erasure

23. *Source*: MCR, D. 5, 17 Mar. 1839. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

24. DHC 3:284: omits "This morning"

25. MCR, D. 5, 1: "<private>"

26. MCR, D. 5, 1: adds "in Caldwell"

27. Book C-2, 51: "<lots>" (FDR)

28. MCR, D. 5, 1: "the <a copy of the>"

was read; after which br[other]. Rogers explained some things relative to said meeting and the proceedings thereof.

A bill of articles wanted by the prisoners in Liberty jail, was presented by Elder [Heber C.] Kimball, and accepted. Charles Bird was appointed to accompany br[other]. Rogers to Jackson county to assist him in the sale of the Jackson <sup>29</sup>lands, &c.<sup>30</sup>

On motion, resolved, That we will not patronize br[other]. Lamb in his market shaving<sup>31</sup>  
<sup>32</sup>shop, or any other of the kind in this place.

A petition of A[lanson]. Ripley and others to the Honorable Judge Thompkins, of the Supreme Court of the State of Missouri, praying for a writ of habeas corpus for Joseph, Smith, jr., was read by A.<sup>33</sup> Ripley.

<sup>34</sup>Monday, 18th. The committee met in the course of the day, and appointed Theodore Turley to go to Jefferson <sup>35</sup>with Elder [Heber C.] Kimball to carry the petitions of the prisoners in Clay<sup>36</sup> and Richmond jails.

<sup>37</sup>Liberty Jail, March 15, 1839.

Dear Sister:

My heart rejoices at the friendship you manifest in requesting to have a<sup>38</sup> conversation with us, but the jailer is a very jealous man, fearing<sup>39</sup> some one will leave tools for us to get out with. He is under the eye of the mob continually, and his life is at stake if he grants us any privileges. He will not let us converse with any one alone. Oh, what <sup>40</sup>joy it would be to us to see our friends! It would have gladdened my heart to have had<sup>41</sup> the privilege of conversing with you, but the hand of tyranny is upon us; <sup>42</sup>thanks be to God, it cannot last always; and He that sitteth in the heaven will laugh at their calamity, and mock when their fear cometh. We feel, dear sister, that our bondage is not of long duration. I trust that I shall have the chance to give such instructions as are communicated to us before long. I suppose you want<sup>43</sup> some instruction for yourself, and also to<sup>44</sup> give us some information and administer consolation to us, and to find out what is best for you to do. I think that many of the brethren, if they will be pretty still, can stay in this country until the indignation is over and past; but I think

---

29. DHC 3:284: adds "county"

30. DHC 3:284: omits "&c."

31. Book C-1, 900: "showing"

32. DHC 3:285: adds "[extortion]"

33. DHC 3:285: replaces "A." with "Elder"

34. *Source*: MCR, D. 5, 18 Mar. 1839.

35. DHC 3:285: adds "City"

36. DHC 3:285: replaces "Clay" with "Liberty"

37. *Source*: The following letter does not appear in *DN*. TB copied it on 16 Dec. 1854 from original still in possession of Presendia Huntington Buell and inserted it between pages 897 and 898 in Book C-1 (see CHOj 17:252; *PWJS*, 426-28). The letter was not copied into Book C-2, 52, but it was included in DHC 3:285-86, from which the following text was taken.

38. MS Letter, 1: omits "a"

39. MS Letter, 1: replaces "fearing" with "for fear"

40. MS Letter, 1: adds "a"

41. MS Letter, 1: omits "had"

42. MS Letter, 1: adds "but"

43. MS Letter, 1: "wanted"

44. MS Letter, 1: omits "to"



it would be better for Brother Bull<sup>45</sup> to leave and go with the rest of the brethren, if he keep the faith, and at any rate, <sup>46</sup>thus speaketh the Spirit concerning him. I want him and you to know that I am your true friend. I was glad to see you. No tongue can tell what inexpressible joy it gives a man, after having been enclosed in the walls of a prison for five months, to see the face of one who has been a friend<sup>47</sup>. It seems to me that my heart will always be more tender after this than ever it was before. My heart bleeds continually when I contemplate the distress of the Church. O, that I could be with them! I would not shrink at toil and hardship to render them comfort and consolation. I want the blessing once more of lifting<sup>48</sup> my voice in the midst of the Saints. I would pour out my soul to God for their instruction. It has been the plan of the devil to hamper me and distress me from the beginning, to keep me from explaining myself to them; and I never have had opportunity to give them the plan that God has revealed to me; for many have run without being sent, crying “Tidings, my Lord,” and have done much injury to the Church, giving the devil more power over those that walk by sight and not by faith. But trials<sup>49</sup> will only give us the knowledge necessary<sup>50</sup> to understand the minds of the ancients. For my part, I think I never could have felt as I now do if I had not suffered the wrongs that I have suffered. All things shall work together for good to them that love God. Beloved sister, we see that perilous times have truly come, and the things which we have so long expected have at last began to usher in; but when you see the fig tree begin to put forth its leaves, you may know that the summer is nigh at hand. There will be a short work on the earth. It has now commenced. I suppose there will soon be perplexity all over the earth. Do not let our hearts faint when these things come upon us, for they must come, or the word cannot be fulfilled. I know that something will soon take place to stir up this generation to see what they have been doing, and that their fathers have inherited lies and they have been led captive by the devil, to no profit; but they know not what they do. Do not have any feelings of enmity towards any son or daughter of Adam. I believe I shall be let out of their hands some way or another, and shall see good days. We cannot do anything only stand still and see the salvation of God. He must do His own work, or it must fall to the ground. We must not take it in our hands to avenge our wrongs. Vengeance is mine, saith the Lord, and I will repay. I have no fears. I shall stand unto death, God being my helper. I wanted to communicate something, and I wrote this.<sup>51</sup>

Write to us if you can.

(Signed)<sup>52</sup> JOSEPH<sup>53</sup> SMITH, JUN.

To Mrs. Norman Bull<sup>54</sup>, Clay Co., Mo.

---

45. MS Letter, 1: “Buel”

46. MS Letter, 1: adds “for”

47. MS Letter, 1: moves “to see the face ... friend” to follow “man”

48. MS Letter, 1: replaces “of lifting” with “to lift”

49. MS Letter, 1: omits “But trials”

50. MS Letter, 1: omits “necessary”

51. MS Letter, 2: adds “&c.”

52. MS Letter, 2: omits “(Signed)”

53. MS Letter, 2: “J.”

54. MS Letter, 2: “Buel”

## [DN 4 (26 January 1854): 1]

<sup>55</sup>Liberty Jail, Clay county, Mo.,  
March 20,<sup>56</sup> 1839.

To the Church of Latter Day Saints at Quincy, Illinois, and scattered abroad, and to Bishop Partridge in Particular:

Your humble servant Joseph Smith, jr., prisoner for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the saints, taken and held by the power of mobocracy under the exterminating reign of His Excellency, the Governor Lilburn W. Boggs, in company with his fellow prisoners and beloved brethren, Caleb Baldwin, Lyman Wight, Hyrum Smith, and Alexander McRae, send unto you all greeting: May the grace of God the Father and of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, rest upon you all, and abide with you forever.—May knowledge be multiplied unto you by the mercy of God. And may faith, and virtue, and knowledge, and temperance, and patience, and godliness, and brotherly kindness, and charity, be in you and abound,—that you may not be barren in anything, nor unfruitful.

Forasmuch<sup>57</sup> as we know that the most of you are well acquainted with the wrongs and the high toned<sup>58</sup> injustice and cruelty that is<sup>59</sup> practiced upon us: whereas we have been taken prisoners, charged falsely with every kind of evil, and thrown into prison, enclosed with strong walls, surrounded with a strong guard, who continually watch day and night as indefatigable as the devil is<sup>60</sup> in tempting and laying snares for the people of God:—

Therefore, dearly <sup>61</sup>beloved brethren, we are the more ready and willing to lay claim to your fellowship and love. For our circumstances are calculated to awaken our spirits to a sacred remembrance of everything, and we think that yours are also, and that nothing therefore can separate us from the love of God and fellowship one with another; and that every species of wickedness and cruelty practiced upon us will only tend to bind our hearts together and seal them together in love. We have no need to say to you, that we are held in bonds without cause, neither is it needful that you say unto us, We are driven from our homes and smitten without cause. We mutually understand that if the inhabitants of the State of Missouri had let the saints alone, and had been as desirable of peace as they were, there would have been nothing but peace and quietude in this State unto this day; we should not have been in this hell surrounded with demons; if not those who are damned, they are those who shall be damned; and where we are compelled to hear nothing but blasphemous oaths, and witness a scene of blasphemy, and drunkenness, and hypocrisy, and debaucheries of every description.

And again, the cries of orphans and widows would not have ascended up to God **[and] the blood of innocent women and children yea and of men also would not have cried to God** against them. It would not<sup>62</sup> have stained the soil of Missouri. But oh! the unrelenting

---

55. The following epistle, which appears in two parts in this chapter, was pulled together in DHC 3:289-98 (Part 1), and 298-305 (Part 2). The first part was moved from this location (p. 286). Although both parts came from the same MS letter, they were composed and signed separately. *Source*: RDft 1:48 directs scribe to copy from original letter in RC, Bx 1, fd 71, 1-18 (handwriting of Alexander McRae and Caleb Baldwin, with some corrections by JS) (*PWJS*, 429-39). Deleted material supplied from MS Letter in bold type. Cf. heavily edited version in *T&S* 1 (May 1840): 99-104. Parts of the letter were later canonized in D&C [1876].

56. DHC 3:289: "25"

57. DHC 3:290: "For inasmuch"

58. DHC 3:290: "high-handed"

59. DHC 3:290: "are"

60. DHC 3:290: replaces "is" with "does"

61. Book C-1, 900, Book C-2, 52: add "and"

62. MS Letter, 2: "<it> would <not>"; DHC 3:290: replaces "It would not" with "Nor would innocent blood"

hand! The inhumanity and murderous disposition of this people! It shocks all nature; it beggars and defies all description; it is a tale of woe; a lamentable tale; yea a sorrowful tale; too much to tell; too much for contemplation; <sup>63</sup>too much to think of for a moment; too much for human beings; it cannot be found among the heathens; it cannot be found among the nations where kings and tyrants are enthroned; it cannot be found among the savages of the wilderness; yea, and I think it cannot be found among the wild and ferocious beasts of the forest,—that a man should be mangled for sport!—women be robbed<sup>64</sup> of all that they have—their last morsel for subsistence—and then be violated to gratify the hellish desires of the mob, and finally left to perish, with their helpless offspring clinging around their necks.

But this is not all. After a man is dead, he must be dug up from his grave, and mangled to pieces—for no other purpose than to gratify their spleen against the religion of God.

They practice these things upon the saints, who have done them no wrong; who are innocent and virtuous; who loved the Lord their God, and were willing to forsake all things for Christ's<sup>65</sup> sake. These things are awful to relate, but they are verily true. It must needs be that offenses come, but woe unto<sup>66</sup> them by whom they come.

<sup>67</sup>Oh God! where art thou? And where is the pavilion that covereth thy hiding place?—How long shall thy hand be stayed, and thine eye, yea thy pure eye, behold from the eternal heavens, the wrongs of thy people, and of thy servants, and thine<sup>68</sup> ear be penetrated with their cries? Yea, O Lord, how long shall they suffer these wrongs and unlawful oppressions, before thine heart shall be softened towards them, and thy bowels be moved with compassion towards them?

O Lord God Almighty, Maker of Heaven, Earth, and Seas, and of all things that in them is<sup>69</sup>, and who controlleth and subjecteth<sup>70</sup> the devil, and the dark and benighted dominion of Sheol<sup>71</sup>! Stretch forth thy hand; let thine eye pierce; let thy pavilion be taken up; let thy hiding place no longer be covered; let thine ear be inclined; let thine heart be softened, and thy bowels moved with compassion towards us; let thine anger be kindled against our enemies; and in the fury of thine heart, with thy sword, avenge us of our wrongs; remember thy suffering saints, O our God! and thy servants will rejoice in thy name forever.

Dearly and beloved brethren, we see that perilous times have come, as was testified of. We may look then, with most perfect assurance for the rolling in<sup>72</sup> of all those things that have been written, and with more confidence than ever before, lift up our eyes to the luminary of day, and say in our hearts, soon thou wilt veil thy blushing face. He that said, [""]let there be light,[""] and there was light, hath spoken this word.—And again, thou moon, thou dimmer light; thou luminary of night, shall<sup>73</sup> turn to blood.

We see that everything is fulfilling<sup>74</sup>; and <sup>75</sup>the time shall soon come, when the Son of Man shall descend in the clouds of heaven.<sup>76</sup> Our hearts do not shrink, neither are our spirits

---

63. DHC 3:290: omits next sentence

64. MS Letter, 3: "~~violated~~ <robed>"

65. MS Letter, 3: "~~his~~ <Christ's>"

66. MS Letter, 3, Book C-1, 901, Book C-2, 53: "to"

67. This and following paragraph were canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 121:1-6).

68. DHC 3:291: "thy"

69. DHC 3:291: "are"

70. DHC 3:291: "controllest and subjectest"

71. Book C-1, 901, Book C-2, 53: "Shayole"

72. DHC 3:291: replaces "rolling in" with "fulfillment"

73. DHC 3:291: "shalt"

74. DHC 3:291: replaces "fulfilling" with "being fulfilled"

75. DHC 3:291: adds "that"

76. MS Letter, 5: "<heaven.>"

altogether broken, at<sup>77</sup> the grievous yoke which is put upon us. We know that God will have our oppressors in derision; that he will laugh<sup>78</sup> at their calamity, and mock when their fear cometh.

O that we could be with you, brethren, and unbosom our feelings to you! We would tell, that we should have been liberated<sup>79</sup> at the time Elder Rigdon was, on the writ of habeas corpus, had not our own lawyers interpreted the law, contrary to what it reads, against us<sup>80</sup>: which prevented us from introducing our evidence before the mock court.

They have done us much harm from<sup>81</sup> the beginning. They have of late acknowledged that the law was misconstrued, and tantalized our feelings with it, and have entirely forsaken us, and have forfeited their oaths, and their bonds; and we have a come-back on them, for they are co-workers with the mob.

As nigh as we can learn, the public mind has been for a long time turning in our favor, and the majority is now friendly; and the lawyers can no longer browbeat us by saying that this or that, is a matter of public opinion, for public opinion is not willing to brook it; for it is beginning to look with feelings of indignation against our oppressors, and to say that the Mormons were not in the fault in the least. We think that Truth, Honor, and<sup>82</sup> Virtue, and Innocence, will eventually come out triumphant. We should have taken a habeas corpus before the High Judge and escaped the mob in a summary way<sup>83</sup>; but unfortunately for us, the timber of the wall being very hard, our auger handles gave out, and hindered us longer than we expected; we applied to a friend, and a very slight incautious act gave rise to some suspicions, and before we could fully succeed, our plan was discovered; we had everything in readiness, but the last stone, and we could have made our escape in one minute, and should have succeeded admirably, had it not been for a little imprudence, or over-anxiety on the part of our friend.

The sheriff and jailer did not blame us for our attempt; it was a fine breach, and cost the county a round sum; but public opinion says, that we ought to have been permitted to have made our escape; that then the disgrace would have been on us, but now it must come on the State; that there cannot be any charge sustained against us, and that the conduct of the mob; the murders committed at Haun's mills, and the exterminating order of the Governor, and the one-sided, rascally proceedings of the Legislature, has<sup>84</sup> damned the State of Missouri to all eternity. I would just name also that General [David]<sup>85</sup> Atchison has proved himself as contemptible as any of them.

We have tried for a long time to get our lawyers to draw us some petitions to the Supreme Judges of this State, but they utterly refused. We have examined the law, and drawn the petitions ourselves, and have obtained abundance of proof to counteract all the testimony that was against us,—so that if the Supreme Judge does not grant<sup>86</sup> us our liberty, he has got<sup>87</sup> to act without cause, contrary to honor, evidence, law or justice, sheerly to please the devil, but we hope better things, and trust before many days, God will so order our case, that we shall be set at liberty and take up our habitation with the saints.

We received some letters last evening;—one from Emma, one from Don C. Smith, and one from Bishop Partridge—all breathing a kind and consoling spirit. We were much gratified

---

77. DHC 3:291: replaces “at” with “by”

78. MS Letter, 5: “~~laf~~ <will laugh>”

79. MS Letter, 5: “<liberated>”

80. MS Letter, 5: “<us>”

81. MS Letter, 5: “<from>”

82. DHC 3:292: omits “and”

83. Book C-2, 54: “<way>” (FDR)

84. DHC 3:292: “have”

85. Brackets this editor's.

86. MS Letter, 5: “<not grant>”

87. DHC 3:293: omits “got”

with their contents. We had been a long time without information; and when we read those letters, they were to our souls<sup>88</sup> as the gentle air is<sup>89</sup> refreshing; but our joy was mingled with grief, because of the sufferings of the poor, and much injured Saints. And we need not say to you that the floodgates of our hearts were hoisted, and our eyes were a fountain of tears, but those who have not been enclosed in the walls of <sup>90</sup>prison, without cause or provocation, can have but little idea how sweet the voice of a friend is; one token of friendship from any source whatever awakens and calls into action every sympathetic feeling; it brings up in an instant everything that is passed; it seizes the present with the<sup>91</sup> avidity<sup>92</sup> of lightning; it grasps after the future with the fierceness of a tiger; it retrogrades<sup>93</sup> from one thing to another until finally all enmity, malice, and hatred, and past differences, misunderstandings, and mismanagements, are slain victorious<sup>94</sup> at the feet of Hope; and when the heart is sufficiently contrite, then<sup>95</sup> the voice of inspiration steals along, and whispers, <sup>96</sup>My son, peace be unto thy soul; thine adversity and thine afflictions shall be but a small moment; and then if thou endure it well, God shall exalt thee on high: thou shalt triumph over all thy foes; thy friends do stand by thee, and they shall hail thee again, with warm hearts and friendly hands: thou art not yet as Job; thy friends do not contend against thee, neither charge thee with transgression as they did Job; and they who<sup>97</sup> do charge thee with transgression, their hope shall be blasted, and their prospects shall melt away as the hoar frost melteth before the burning rays of the rising sun; and also that God hath set to<sup>98</sup> his hand and seal, to change the times and seasons, and to blind their minds that they may not understand His marvelous workings, that he may prove them also, and take them in their own craftiness; also because their hearts are corrupted, and the things which they are willing to bring upon others, and love to have others suffer, may come upon themselves, to the very uttermost; that they may be disappointed also, and their hopes may be cut off; and not many years hence, that they and their posterity shall be swept from under heaven, saith God, that not one of them is left to stand by the wall:—Cursed are all those that shall lift up the heel against mine anointed, saith the Lord, and cry they have sinned when they have not sinned before me, saith the Lord, but have done that which was meet<sup>99</sup> in mine eyes, and which I commanded them; but those who cry transgression, do it; because they are the servants of sin, and are the children of disobedience themselves; and those who swear falsely<sup>100</sup> against my servants, that they might bring them into bondage, and death: Wo unto them; because they have offended my little ones, they shall be severed from the ordinances of mine house; their basket shall not be full; their houses and their barns shall perish, and they themselves shall be despised by those that flattered them; they shall not have right to the priesthood, nor their posterity after them, from generation to generation; it had been better for them that a millstone had been hanged about their necks, and they drowned in the depth of the sea.

---

88. MS Letter, 7: “~~soles~~ <souls>” (JS)

89. MS Letter, 7: “<is>”

90. MS Letter, 7, Book C-1, 903, Book C-2, 54: add “a”

91. Book C-2, 54: “<the>” (prob. FDR)

92. MS Letter, 7: “a vivacity”

93. DHC 3:293: replaces “it retrogrades” with “it moves the mind backward and forward”. On 14 Aug. 1845, the revisers contemplated a change or at least raised a concern about the wording (see vol. 7, IV.6).

94. MS Letter, 8: “be slain victims”

95. MS Letter, 8: “~~and~~ <then>”

96. Remainder of this and next paragraph were canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 121:7-25).

97. MS Letter, 8: “<who>”

98. DHC 3:293: omits “to”

99. Book C-1, 903, Book C-2, 55: “mete”

100. Book C-1, 903, Book C-2, 55: “false”

Wo unto all those that discomfort my people, and drive and murder, and testify against them, saith the Lord of Hosts<sup>101</sup>; a generation of vipers shall not escape the damnation of hell. Behold mine eyes seeth and knoweth<sup>102</sup> all their works, and I have in reserve a swift judgment in the season thereof, for them all; for there is a time appointed for<sup>103</sup> every man, according as his<sup>104</sup> work shall be.

And now beloved brethren, we say unto you, that inasmuch as God<sup>105</sup> hath said that he would have a tried people, that he would purge them as gold, now we think that this time he has chosen his own crucible, wherein we have been tried, and we think if we get through with any degree of safety, and shall have kept the faith, that it will be a sign to this generation, altogether sufficient to bear<sup>106</sup> them without excuse; and we think also, it will be a trial of our faith equal to that of Abraham, and that the ancients will not have whereof to boast over us in the day of judgment, as being called to pass through heavier afflictions; that we may hold an even weight in the balances with them: but now after having suffered so great sacrifice, and having passed through so great a season<sup>107</sup> of sorrow, we trust that a ram may be caught in the thicket speedily, to relieve the sons and daughters of Abraham<sup>108</sup> from their great<sup>109</sup> anxiety, and to light up the lamp of salvation upon their countenances, that they may hold on<sup>110</sup> now, after having gone so far unto everlasting life.

Now brethren, concerning the places for the location of the Saints, we cannot counsel you as we would<sup>111</sup> if we were present with you; and as to the things that were written heretofore, we did not consider them anything very binding, therefore we now say once for all, that we think it most proper, that the general affairs of the church, which are necessary to be considered, while your humble servant remains in bondage, should be transacted by a general conference of the most faithful, and the most respectable of the authorities of the church, and a minute of those transactions may be kept, and forwarded, from time to time, to your humble servant; and if there should be any corrections by the word of the Lord, they shall be freely transmitted, and your humble servant will approve all things whatsoever is acceptable unto God. If anything should have been suggested by us, or any names mentioned, except by commandment, or thus saith the Lord, we do not consider it binding: therefore our hearts shall not be grieved if different arrangements should be entered into. Nevertheless we would suggest the propriety of being aware of an aspiring spirit, which spirit has often times urged men forwards, to make foul speeches, and influence the church to reject milder counsels, and has eventually been<sup>112</sup> the means of bringing much death, and sorrow upon the church.

We would say, be aware<sup>113</sup> of pride also; for well and truly hath the wise man said, that pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall. /<sup>114</sup>And again, outward appear-

---

101. Book C-1, 904, Book C-2, 55: "Host"

102. DHC 3:294: "see and know"

103. MS Letter, 9: "~~for~~ <to>"; Book C-1, 904: replaces "for" with "to"

104. MS Letter, 10: "~~their~~ <as his>"

105. MS Letter, 10: "~~good~~ <God>"

106. MS Letter, 10, DHC 3:294: replace "bear" with "leave"

107. MS Letter, 10: "seane"

108. Book C-1, 904 (lighter ink): "<speedily ... Abraham>" (FDR)

109. MS Letter, 10: "~~grate~~ <great>" (JS)

110. MS Letter, 10: "~~up~~ <on>"

111. MS Letter, 10, Book C-1, 904: "could"

112. MS Letter, 11: "~~by~~ <been>"

113. DHC 3:295: "beware"

114. From this point in MS Letter, 11, to end of p. 13, handwriting changes from Alexander McRae to Caleb Baldwin.



ance is not always a criterion for us<sup>115</sup> to judge our fellow man; but the lips betray the haughty and overbearing imaginations of the heart; by his words and<sup>116</sup> his deeds, let him be scanned<sup>117</sup>. Flattery also is a deadly poison. A frank and<sup>118</sup> an<sup>119</sup> open rebuke, provoketh a good man to emulation; and in the hour of trouble he will be your best friend: but on the other hand, it will draw out all the corruptions<sup>120</sup> of a corrupt heart<sup>121</sup>, and lying and the poison of asps shall be<sup>122</sup> under their tongues;—and they do cause the pure in heart to be cast into prison, because they want them out of their way.

A fanciful and flowery, and heated imagination be aware<sup>123</sup> of; because the things of God are of deep import; and time, and experience, and careful and ponderous, and solemn thoughts, can only find them out.—Thy mind, O man! if thou wilt lead a soul unto<sup>124</sup> salvation, must stretch as high as the utmost heavens, and search into and contemplate the lowest<sup>125</sup> considerations of<sup>126</sup> the darkest abyss, and expand upon the broad considerations of eternity's expanse<sup>127</sup>; he<sup>128</sup> must commune with God. How much more dignified, and noble, are the thoughts of God, than the vain imaginations of the human heart! None but fools will trifle with the souls of men.

How vain and trifling have been our spirits, our conferences, our councils, our <sup>129</sup>meetings, our private as well as public conversations; too low; too mean; too vulgar; too condescending, for the dignified characters, of the called and chosen of God, according to the purposes of His <sup>130</sup>will, from before the foundation of the world, <sup>131</sup>to hold the keys of the mysteries of those things that have been kept hid from the foundation <sup>132</sup>until now, of which<sup>133</sup> some have tasted a little<sup>134</sup>, and on which<sup>135</sup> many of them<sup>136</sup> are to be poured down from heaven upon the heads of babes; yea, <sup>137</sup>the weak, obscure, and despicable<sup>138</sup> ones of the earth.

Therefore we beseech of you brethren, that you bear<sup>139</sup> with those who do not feel

---

115. DHC 3:295: replaces “for us” with “by which”

116. MS Letter, 11: “~~by~~ <and>”

117. DHC 3:295: replaces “scanned” with “judged”

118. MS Letter, 11: “<a frank and>”

119. DHC 3:295: omits “an”

120. MS Letter, 11, Book C-1, 904b: “corruption”

121. DHC 3:295: “of corrupt hearts”

122. Book C-2, 56: “<shall>”; DHC 3:295: replaces “shall be” with “is”

123. DHC 3:295: “beware”

124. Book C-1, 904b, Book C-2, 56: “into”

125. MS Letter, 12: “loest <lowest>” (JS)

126. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “~~the lowest considerations of~~”; omitted in Book C-2, 56, and DHC 3:295.

127. MS Letter, 12: “Eternal Expanse”; Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “~~expand upon the broad~~ <expanse> ~~considerations of~~ <of> Eternity's Expanse <eternity>” (US); DHC 3:295: replaces “and expand ... expanse” with “and the broad expanse of eternity”

128. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “~~he~~ <Thou>” (US); DHC 3:295: replaces “he” with “thou”

129. MS Letter, 12: adds “~~private~~”

130. MS Letter, 13: adds “~~word~~”

131. DHC 3:296: adds “We are called”

132. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “<of the world>” (US); DHC 3:296: adds “of the world”

133. MS Letter, 13: “~~for~~ <of> which”; Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “~~of which~~”; DHC 3:296: omits “of which” and begins new sentence

134. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “<of these things>” (US); DHC 3:296: adds “of these things”

135. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “~~and on which~~”; DHC 3:296: omits “and on which”

136. Book C-1, 904b (pencil): “many <of> ~~of them~~ <which>” (US); DHC 3:296: replaces “them” with “which”

137. DHC 3:296: adds “upon”

138. DHC 3:296: “despised”

139. MS Letter, 13: “~~bare~~ <you bear>” (JS)



themselves more worthy than yourselves,—while we exhort one another to a reformation with one and all, both old and young, teachers and taught, both high and low, rich and poor, bond and free; male and female; let honesty, and sobriety, and candor, and solemnity, and virtue, and pureness, and meekness, and simplicity, crown our heads in every place; and in fine, become as little children, without malice, guile or hypocrisy.

And now brethren, after your tribulations, if you do these things, and exercise fervent prayer and faith in the sight of God always, <sup>140</sup>he shall give unto you knowledge /<sup>141</sup>by His Holy Spirit, yea by the unspeakable gift of the Holy Ghost, that has not been revealed since the world was until now;—which our forefathers have waited with anxious expectation to be revealed in the last times, which their minds were pointed to, by the angels as held in reserve for the fullness of their glory, a time to come in the which nothing shall be withheld, whether there be one God or many Gods, they shall be manifest; all thrones, and dominions, principalities and powers, shall be revealed and set forth upon all who have endured valiantly for the gospel of Jesus Christ; and also if there be bounds set to the heavens, or to the seas; or to the dry land, or to the sun, moon or stars; all the times of their revolutions; all the appointed days, months, and years, and all the days of their days, months and years, and all their glories, laws, and set times, shall be revealed, in the days of the dispensation of the fullness of times, according to that which was ordained in the midst of the council of the Eternal God, of all other Gods, before this world was, that should be reserved unto the finishing and the end thereof, when every man shall enter into his eternal presence, and into his immortal rest.

But, I beg leave to say unto you brethren, that ignorance, superstition and bigotry, placing itself where it ought not, is oftentimes in the way of the prosperity of this church; like the torrent of rain from the mountains, that floods the most pure and crystal stream with mire, and dirt, and filthiness, and obscures everything that was clear before, and all hurls<sup>142</sup> along in one general deluge; but time weathers<sup>143</sup> tide; and notwithstanding we are rolled in for the time being by the mire of the flood<sup>144</sup>, the next surge peradventure, as time rolls on, may bring us to<sup>145</sup> the fountain as clear as crystal, and as pure as snow; while <sup>146</sup>the filthiness, flood-wood, and rubbish is left and purged out by the way.

<sup>147</sup>How long can rolling waters<sup>148</sup> remain impure? What power shall stay the heavens? As well might man stretch forth his puny arm to stop the Missouri river in its decreed course, or to turn it up stream, as to hinder the Almighty from pouring down knowledge from heaven<sup>149</sup>, upon the heads of the Latter Day Saints.

What is Boggs or his murderous party, but wimbling willows upon the shore to catch the flood-wood? As well might we argue that water is not water, because the mountain torrents send down mire and roils<sup>150</sup> the crystal stream, although afterwards renders<sup>151</sup> it more pure than before; or that fire is not fire, because it is of a quenchable nature, by pouring on the flood, as

---

140. Remainder of paragraph canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 121:26–32).

141. At this point in MS Letter, 13–14, handwriting changes from Caleb Baldwin to Alexander McRae.

142. DHC 3:297: replaces “hurls” with “rushes”

143. MS Letter, 15: “tethers <wethers>” (JS); Book C-1, 905 (lighter ink): “weather\’s/”. This correction made by reviewers in Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

144. DHC 3:297: omits “by” and moves “the mire of the flood” to follow “rolled in”

145. DHC 3:297: omits “to”

146. Book C-1, 905, Book C-2, 57: add “all”

147. This paragraph canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 121:33).

148. DHC 3:297: “water”

149. MS Letter, 15: “<heaven>”

150. MS Letter, 15, Book C-1, 905, Book C-2, 57: “riles”; DHC 3:297: “roil”

151. DHC 3:297: “render”

to say that our cause is down because renegados, liars, priests, thieves, and murderers, who are all alike tenacious of their crafts and creeds, have poured down, from their spiritual wickedness in high places, and from their strongholds of the devil, a flood of dirt and mire, and filthiness, and vomit, upon our heads.

No! God forbid. Hell may pour forth its rage like the burning lava of mount Vesuvius or of Etna, or of the most terrible of the burning mountains; and yet shall Mormonism stand. Water, Fire, Truth, and God, are all the same<sup>152</sup>. Truth is Mormonism.—God is the author of it. He is our Shield. It is by Him we received our birth. It was by His voice that we were called to a dispensation of His gospel in the beginning of the fullness of times. It was by Him we received the Book of Mormon; and it was<sup>153</sup> by him that we remain unto this day; and by him we shall remain, if it shall be for our glory; and in His Almighty name we are determined to endure tribulations<sup>154</sup> as good soldiers unto the end.

But brethren, we shall continue to offer further reflections in our next Epistle. You will learn by the time you have read this,—and if you do not learn it, you may learn it,—that walls and irons, doors and creaking hinges<sup>155</sup>, and half-scared-to-death guards and jailers, grinning like some damned spirits, lest an innocent man should make his escape to bring to light the damnable deeds of a murderous mob,—is<sup>156</sup> calculated in its<sup>157</sup> very nature, to make the soul of an honest man feel stronger than the powers of hell.

But we must bring our Epistle to a close. We send our respects to fathers, mothers, wives and children, brothers and sisters; we hold them in the most sacred remembrance. [...] <sup>158</sup>

We feel to inquire after Elder Rigdon, if he has not forgotten us; it has not been signified to us by his <sup>159</sup>scrawl<sup>160</sup>. Brother George W. Robinson also, and Elder Cahoon, we remember him, but would like to jog his memory a little on the fable of the bear<sup>161</sup> and the two friends who mutually agreed to stand by each other. And perhaps it would not be amiss to mention uncle John [Smith], and various others. A word of consolation, and a blessing would not come amiss from anybody, while we are being so closely whispered by the bear. But we feel to excuse everybody and everything, yea the more readily, when we contemplate that we are in the hands of <sup>162</sup>worse than a bear, for the bear would not prey upon a dead carcass.

Our respects, and love, and fellowship to all the virtuous Saints. We are your brethren, and fellow-sufferers, and prisoners of Jesus Christ for the gospel's sake, and for the hope of glory which is in us: Amen.

**JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
HYRUM SMITH,  
LYMAN WIGHT,  
CALEB BALDWIN,  
ALEXANDER McRAE.** <sup>163</sup>

---

152. DHC 3:297: replaces “the same” with “realities”

153. DHC 3:297: replaces “was” with “is”

154. Book C-1, 905, Book C-2, 58, DHC 3:297: “tribulation”

155. MS Letter, 16: “<iron> doors <and screaming hinges> ~~is only calcu~~”

156. DHC 3:297: “are”

157. DHC 3:297: replaces “its” with “their”

158. MS Letter, 17: adds “~~I send this epistle to Emma that she may have the first perusal of it~~”

159. MS Letter, 17: adds “~~pen~~”

160. DHC 3:298: replaces “scrawl” with “writing”

161. MS Letter, 17: omits “bear”

162. DHC 3:298: adds “persons”

163. DHC 3:298 omits signatures when it joins the first part of the letter with the second part, which appears at the end of this chapter.

## [DN 4 (2 February 1854): 1]

While I was in jail, the following statements were made by the witnesses, and sent to Colonel Price, namely:

<sup>164</sup>William E. McLellin is guilty of entering the house of Joseph Smith, jr., in the city of Far West, and plundering it of the following articles, viz: one roll of linen cloth, a quantity of valuable buttons, one piece of cashmere, a quantity<sup>165</sup> of very valuable books of great variety, a number of vestings with various other articles of value.

Said McLellin was aided and assisted in the above transactions by Harvey Green, Burr Riggs, and Harlow Redfield.

The above mentioned William E. McLellin also came to, and took away from the stable of the said above mentioned Joseph Smith jr., one gig and harness, with some other articles which cannot now be called to mind, aided and assisted by Burr Riggs,—which can be proven by the following witnesses:

Caroline Clark,  
James Mulholland,  
Mrs. [Sally] Hinkle,  
Joanna Carter.

<sup>166</sup>J. <sup>167</sup>Stollins is guilty of entering the house of Joseph Smith, Jr., in the city of Far West, in company with Sarshiel<sup>168</sup> Woods, and another man not known, and taking from a trunk the property of James Mulholland, an inmate of said house, one gold ring, which they carried away; also of breaking open a sealed letter, which was in said trunk, inside a pocket book, in which also<sup>169</sup> was the ring above mentioned, besides tossing and abusing the rest of the contents of said trunk;—which can be proven by the following persons:

Mrs. Emma Smith,  
Mrs. Sally Hinkle,  
Caroline Clark,  
James Mulholland.

<sup>170</sup>Monday, [March] 25th. About this time, Elders Kimball and Turley started on their mission to see the Governor. They called on the Sheriff of Ray county and <sup>171</sup>jailer for a copy of the mittimus, by which the prisoners were held in custody, but he<sup>172</sup> confessed he had none. They went to Judge King, and he made out a kind of mittimus. At this time we had been in prison several months without even a mittimus; and that too for crimes said to have been committed in another county.

<sup>173</sup>Kimball and Turley took all the papers by which we were held, or which were then made out for them, with our petitions<sup>174</sup> to the Supreme Judges, and went to Jefferson City.

164. Source: "Copy of Statements Concerning Wm E. McLellin & others 1839" (MS 28232).

165. DHC 3:287: replaces "quantity" with "number"

166. Source: Not located. RDft 1:48 directs scribe to "see complaint", suggesting the use of a MS copy.

167. Book C-2, 58, leaves blank space for first name. Should be Jacob Stollins (cf. DHC 3:378; chap. 25).

168. DHC 3:288: "Sashiel"

169. DHC 3:288: omits "also"

170. Source: This day's entry, except for the interlinear insertion in Book C-1, based on TT [1845], 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

171. DHC 3:288: adds "the"

172. DHC 3:288: replaces "he" with "they"

173. DHC 3:288: adds "Elders"

174. DHC 3:288: "petition"

The Governor was absent. The Secretary of State treated them very kindly; and when he saw the papers, could hardly believe those were all the documents by which the prisoners were held in custody, for they were illegal.

Lawyer Doniphan had also deceived them in his papers, and sent them off with such documents, that a change of venue could not be effected in time. The Secretary was astonished at Judge King<sup>175</sup> acting as he did but said he could do nothing in the premises, and if the Governor were present, he could do nothing. But the Secretary wrote a letter to Judge King.

The brethren then started to find the Supreme Judges, and get writs of habeas corpus; and after riding hundreds of miles to effect this object, returned to Liberty on<sup>176</sup> the 30th of March<sup>177</sup>,<sup>178</sup> having seen Matthias McGirk, George Thompkins, and John C. Edwards, the Supreme Judges, but did not obtain the writ of habeas corpus in consequence of a lack of<sup>179</sup> the order of commitment, although the Judges seemed to be friendly.

We were informed that Judge King said, that there was nothing against my<sup>180</sup> brother Hyrum<sup>181</sup>, only that he<sup>182</sup> was a friend to the Prophet. He also said there was nothing against Caleb Baldwin, and [Alexander] McRae.

Brother Horace Cowan was put into Liberty jail today for debt, in consequence of<sup>183</sup> persecution of<sup>184</sup> the mob.

<sup>185</sup>**During their absence, I continued my Epistle to the Church of Latter Day Saints as follows:**

[...]<sup>186</sup>

<sup>187</sup>We continue to offer further reflections to Bishop Partridge, and to the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, whom we love with a fervent love, and do always bear them in mind in all our prayers to the throne of God.

It still seems to bear heavily on our minds that the church would do well to secure to themselves the contract of the land which is proposed to them by Mr. Isaac Galland, and to<sup>188</sup> cultivate the friendly feelings of that gentleman, inasmuch as he shall prove himself to be a man

175. Book C-1, 907, Book C-2, 59: "Kings"

176. Book C-1, 907 (lighter ink), Book C-2, 59: "{\on/}" (prob. TB/prob. FDR)

177. Book C-1, 907 (lighter ink): "{\30/}th. of {\March/}" (TB)

178. Remainder of this and next two paragraphs written between lines in Book C-1, 907, by TB, and incorporated in Book C-2, 59, by FDR about 4-20 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Evidently added by apostolic revisers on 19 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6). *Source*: Perhaps added from further discussions with Theodore Turley, which were taking place about this time (e.g., FDRj 4:34; CHOj 6:11, 28 Aug. 1845), or with HCK (cf. HCKj [1882], 69-70).

179. DHC 3:289: replaces "of" with "in"

180. Book C-1, 907: "m\y/"; "y" *w.o.* "e"

181. Book C-1, 907: "<Brother Hyrum>" (TB)

182. Book C-1, 907: "\h/e"; "h" *w.o.* "I"

183. DHC 3:289: adds "the"

184. Book C-2, 59 (darker ink): "{\of/}" (pos. TB)

185. DHC 3:298 deletes this introduction when it joins the first part of the letter (above) to the second part at this location.

186. DHC moves first part of the following epistle (located above under 20 Mar. 1839) to this location (from p. 286 to pp. 289-98).

187. *Source*: RC, Bx 1, fd 71, 30-41 (handwriting of Alexander McRae, with some corrections by JS) (*PWJS*, 439-46). Bottom of p. 11 missing. Fd 71 also contains a second copy in the hand of Alexander McRae and signed by JS and the others (19-28). Cf. heavily edited version in *T&S* 1 (July 1840): 131-34.

188. MS Letter, 1: "<to>"

of honor and a friend to humanity.<sup>189</sup> We really think that his<sup>190</sup> letter breathes that kind of a spirit, if we can<sup>191</sup> judge correctly. And<sup>192</sup> Isaac Van Allen, Esq., the Attorney General of Iowa Territory,—<sup>193</sup>that peradventure such men may be wrought upon, by the providence of God, to do good unto his people. Governor [Robert]<sup>194</sup> Lucas also.<sup>195</sup>—We suggest the idea of praying fervently for all men who manifest any degree of sympathy for the suffering children of God.

We think that peradventure<sup>196</sup> the United States Surveyor of the Iowa Territory<sup>197</sup> may be of great benefit to the church if it be the will of God, to this end<sup>198</sup>, if<sup>199</sup> righteousness should be manifested as the girdle of our loins.

It seems to be deeply impressed upon our minds, that the Saints ought to lay hold of every door that shall seem to be opened unto them<sup>200</sup>, to obtain foothold on the earth, and be making all the preparation<sup>201</sup> that is within the<sup>202</sup> power of possibles<sup>203</sup> for the terrible storms that are now gathering in the heavens, [“]<sup>204</sup>with darkness and gloominess, and <sup>205</sup>thick darkness, [”] as spoken of<sup>206</sup> by the Prophets, which cannot be now of a long time lingering, for there seems to be a whispering that the angels of heaven<sup>207</sup> who have been entrusted with the counsel of these matters for the last days, have taken counsel together: and among the rest of the general affairs that have to be transacted in their honorable council, they<sup>208</sup> have taken cognizance of the testimony of those who were murdered at Haun's mills, and also those who were martyred with D[avid]. W. Patten, and elsewhere, and<sup>209</sup> have passed some decisions peradventure in favor of the Saints, and<sup>210</sup> those who were called to suffer without cause.

These decisions will be made known in their time; and they<sup>211</sup> will<sup>212</sup> take into consideration all those things that offend.

We have a fervent desire that in your general conferences, everything should be discussed with a great deal of care and propriety lest you grieve the Holy Spirit, which shall be poured out at all times upon your heads when you are exercised <sup>213</sup>with those principles of righteousness that are agreeable to the mind of God, and are properly affected one toward another, and

---

189. DHC 3:298: moves next sentence to follow the sentence below ending with “unto his people”

190. DHC 3:298: replaces “his” with “Mr. Galland's”

191. DHC 3:298: replaces “can” with “may”

192. DHC 3:298: replaces “And” with “also”

193. DHC 3:298: replaces dash with “and Governor Lucas”

194. Brackets this editor's.

195. DHC 3:298: omits “Governor Lucas also.”

196. DHC 3:298: omits “peradventure”

197. MS Letter, 1: “<of the Iowa Territory>”

198. MS Letter, 1: “<to this end>” (JS)

199. DHC 3:298: replaces “if” with “and”

200. MS Letter, 1: “for ~~the saints~~ <unto them>” (JS)

201. MS Letter, 1, Book C-1, 907, Book C-2, 59: “preparations”

202. DHC 3:298: replaces “the” with “their”

203. DHC 3:298: omits “of possibles”

204. DHC 3:298: adds “a day of clouds”

205. DHC 3:298: adds “of”

206. Book C-2, 59: “<of>” (prob. FDR)

207. MS Letter, 2: “<of he<a>ven>” (JS)

208. MS Letter, 2: “<they>” (JS)

209. MS Letter, 2: “<else where and>” (JS)

210. MS Letter, 2: “<the saints and>” (JS)

211. DHC 3:299: replaces “they” with “the council”

212. MS Letter, 2: “<they will> ~~shall~~” (JS)

213. Book C-2, 60: adds erasure

are careful by all means to remember those who are in bondage, and in heaviness, and in deep affliction for your sakes. And if there are any among you who aspire after their own aggrandizement, and seek their own opulence, while their brethren are groaning in poverty, and are under sore trials, and temptations, they cannot be benefited by the intercession of the Holy Spirit, which maketh intercession for us day and night with <sup>214</sup>groanings<sup>215</sup> that cannot be uttered<sup>216</sup>.

We ought at all times to be very careful, that such high-mindedness <sup>217</sup>never have place in our hearts; but condescend to men of low estate, and with all long-suffering bear the infirmities of the weak.

<sup>218</sup>Behold[,] there are many called, but few are chosen. And why are they not chosen? Because their hearts are set so much upon the things of this world, and aspire to the honors of men, that they do not learn this one lesson—that the rights of the <sup>219</sup>Priesthood are inseparably connected with the powers of heaven, and that the powers of heaven cannot be controlled, nor handled only upon the principles of righteousness. That they may be conferred upon us, it is true; but when we undertake to cover our sins, or to gratify our pride, our vain ambition, or to exercise control, or dominion, or compulsion, upon the souls of the children of men, in any degree of unrighteousness, behold, the heavens withdraw themselves; the Spirit of the Lord is grieved; and when it is withdrawn, *amen to the Priesthood*, or the authority of that man. Behold! ere he is aware, he is left unto himself, to kick against the pricks; to persecute the Saints, and to fight against God.

We have learned by sad experience, that it is the nature and disposition of almost all men, as soon as they get a little authority, as they suppose, they will immediately begin to exercise unrighteous dominion. Hence many are called, but few are chosen.

No power or influence can or ought to be maintained by virtue of the Priesthood, only by persuasion, by long-suffering, by gentleness, and meekness, and by love unfeigned; by kindness, and pure knowledge, which shall greatly enlarge the soul without hypocrisy, and without guile, reproving betimes with sharpness when moved upon by the Holy Ghost[,] and then showing forth afterwards an increase of love toward him whom thou hast reprov'd, lest he esteem thee to be his enemy; that he may know that thy faithfulness is stronger than the cords of death; <sup>220</sup>thy <sup>221</sup>bowels also being<sup>222</sup> full of charity towards all men, and to the household of faith, and virtue garnish thy thoughts unceasingly, then shall thy confidence wax strong in the presence of God[,] and the doctrine<sup>223</sup> of the Priesthood shall distill upon thy soul as the dews from heaven. The Holy Ghost shall be thy constant<sup>224</sup> companion, and thy sceptre an unchanging sceptre of <sup>225</sup>righteousness and truth, and thy dominion shall be an everlasting dominion<sup>226</sup>, and without compulsory means it shall flow unto thee forever and ever.

<sup>227</sup>The ends of the earth shall inquire after thy name, and fools shall have thee in deri-

---

214. Book C-2, 60: adds long dash over erasure

215. Book C-1, 908, Book C-2, 60: "groaning"

216. MS Letter, 2: "<with gronings that cannot be uttered>"

217. DHC 3:299: adds "shall"

218. Following three paragraphs canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 121:34-46).

219. Book C-1, 908, Book C-2, 60: omit "the"

220. DHC 3:300: adds "let"

221. Book C-2, 60: adds ellipses over erasure

222. DHC 3:300: "be"

223. MS Letter, 4, Book C-1, 908, Book C-2, 60: "doctrines"

224. Book C-1, 908: "<constant>" (TB)

225. Book C-2, 60: adds ellipses over erasure

226. MS Letter, 4: "<dominion>"

227. Following three paragraphs canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 122:1-9).



sion, and hell shall rage against thee,—while the pure in heart, and the wise and the noble, and the virtuous, shall seek counsel, and authority and blessings constantly from under thy hand, and thy people shall never be turned against thee<sup>228</sup> by the testimony of traitors; and although their influence shall cast thee into trouble, and into bars and walls, thou shalt be had in honor, and but for a small moment and thy voice shall be more terrible in the midst of thine enemies, than the fierce lion, because of thy righteousness; and thy God shall stand by thee forever and ever.

If thou art called to pass through tribulation<sup>229</sup>; if thou art in perils among false brethren: if thou art in perils among<sup>230</sup> robbers; if thou art in perils by land or by sea; if thou art accused with all manner of false accusations; if thine enemies fall upon thee; if they tear thee from the society of thy father and mother and brethren and sisters;—and if with a drawn sword thine enemies tear thee from the bosom of thy wife, and of thine offspring, and thine Elder Son, although<sup>231</sup> but six years of age, shall cling to thy garments, and shall say, My father, my father, why can't you stay with us? O[,] my father! what are the men going to do with you?—and if then he shall be thrust from thee by the sword, and thou be dragged to prison, and thine enemies prowl around thee like wolves for<sup>232</sup> blood of the lamb; and if thou shouldst be cast into the pit, or into the hands of murderers, and the sentence of death passed upon thee<sup>233</sup>; if thou be cast into the deep; if the billowing surge conspire against thee; if fierce winds<sup>234</sup> become thine enemy; if the heavens gather blackness, and all the elements combine to hedge up the<sup>235</sup> way; and above all, if the very jaws of hell shall gape open her<sup>236</sup> mouth wide after thee, know thou, my son, that all these things shall give thee experience, and shall be for thy good<sup>237</sup>. The Son of Man hath descended below them all;—art thou greater than he?

Therefore<sup>238</sup> hold on thy way, and the Priesthood shall remain with thee, for<sup>239</sup> their bounds are set, they cannot pass. Thy days are known, and thy years shall not be numbered less, therefore fear not what man can do; for God shall be with you forever and ever.

Now, brethren<sup>240</sup>, I would suggest for the consideration of the Conference, of<sup>241</sup> its being carefully and wisely<sup>242</sup> understood, by the council or conferences, that our brethren scattered abroad, who<sup>243</sup> understand the spirit of the gathering, that they fall into the places and refuge of safety<sup>244</sup> that God shall open unto them, between Kirtland and Far West. Those from the east and from the west, and from far countries, let them fall in somewhere between those two<sup>245</sup> boundaries, in the most safe and quiet places they can find; and let this be the present understanding, until God shall open a more effectual door for us for further considerations.

---

228. MS Letter, 4: "<thee>"

229. DHC 3:300: "tribulations"

230. MS Letter, 5, Book C-1, 909, Book C-2, 61: "amongst"

231. MS Letter, 5: "~~one~~ <son> altho<ugh>" (JS)

232. DHC 3:301: adds "the"

233. MS Letter, 5: "<thee>"

234. Book C-1, 909 (lighter ink): "<winds>" (FDR)

235. MS Letter, 5: replaces "the" with "thy"

236. DHC 3:301: replaces "her" with "the"

237. MS Letter, 5: "<and shall be for thy good>" (JS)

238. MS Letter, 5: "<therefore>" (JS)

239. MS Letter, 5: "<for>" (JS)

240. MS Letter, 6: "<now Brotheren>" (JS)

241. DHC 3:301: omits "of"

242. Book C-2, 61: "<and wisely>" (FDR)

243. MS Letter, 6: "~~that~~ <who>"

244. Book C-1, 909, Book C-2, 61: "places of refuge and safety"

245. MS Letter, 6: "<two>"



And again, we further<sup>246</sup> suggest for the consideration<sup>247</sup> of the council, that there be no organization of large bodies upon common stock principles, in property<sup>248</sup>, or of large companies of firms until the Lord shall signify it in a proper manner, as it opens such a dreadful field for the avaricious, and the indolent and corrupt hearted to prey upon the innocent, and virtuous, and honest<sup>249</sup>.

We have reason to believe that many things were introduced among the Saints, before God had signified the times; and notwithstanding the principles and plans, may have been good,<sup>250</sup> yet aspiring men, or in other words, men who had not the substance of godliness about them,—perhaps undertook to handle edge<sup>251</sup> tools. Children you know, are fond of tools, while they are not yet able to use them.

Time and experience, however, is<sup>252</sup> the only safe remedy<sup>253</sup> against such evils. There are many teachers, but perhaps not many fathers. There are times coming when God will signify many things which are expedient for the well-being of the Saints; but the times have not yet come, but will come, as fast as there can be found place, and receptions for them.

<sup>254</sup>And again[,] we would suggest<sup>255</sup> for your consideration the propriety of all the Saints gathering up a knowledge of all the facts, and sufferings and abuses put upon them by the people of this State; and also of all the property, and amount of damages which they have sustained, both of character and personal injuries, as well as real property; and also the names of all persons that have had a hand in their oppressions, as far as they can get hold of them and find them out; and perhaps a committee can be appointed to find out these things, and to take statements, and affidavits, and also to gather up the libelous publications that are afloat, and all that are in the magazines, and in the encyclopedias, and all the libelous histories that are published, and are writing, and by whom, and present the whole concatenation of diabolical rascality, and nefarious, and murderous impositions that have been practiced upon this people, that we may not only publish to all the world, but present them to the heads of government in all their dark and hellish<sup>256</sup> hue, as the last effort which is enjoined on us by our Heavenly Father, before we can fully and completely claim that promise which shall call him forth from his hiding place, and also <sup>257</sup>the whole nation may be left without excuse before he can <sup>258</sup>send forth the power of His mighty arm.

It is an imperious<sup>259</sup> duty that we owe to God, to angels, with whom we shall be brought to stand, and also to ourselves, to our wives and children, who have been made to bow down with grief, sorrow, and care, under the most damning hand of murder, tyranny, and oppression, supported and urged on, and upheld by the influence of that spirit which hath so strongly riveted the creeds of the fathers, who have inherited lies upon the hearts of the<sup>260</sup> children, and

---

246. MS Letter, 6: “<further>”

247. DHC 3:301: “considerations”

248. MS Letter, 6: “<in property>” (JS)

249. MS Letter, 6: “<and virtuous and honest>” (JS)

250. MS Letter, 6: “<innocent and virtuous>”

251. DHC 3:301: “edged”

252. DHC 3:301: “are”

253. Book C-1, 910: “remedys”; DHC 3:301: “remedies”

254. Following seven paragraphs canonized in D&C [1876] (cf. D&C 123:1–17).

255. MS Letter, 7: “~~sejest~~ <sugiest>” (JS)

256. MS Letter, 7: “<and hellish>” (JS)

257. MS Letter, 7, DHC 3:302: add “that”

258. MS Letter, 7: adds “~~let fall that which the~~”

259. DHC 3:302: replaces “imperious” with “imperative”

260. MS Letter, 8: “~~their~~ <the harts of the>”

filled the world with confusion, and has been growing stronger and stronger, and is now the very main-spring of all corruption<sup>261</sup>, and the whole earth groans under the weight of its iniquity.

It is an iron yoke, it is a strong band; they are the very hand-cuffs, and chains, and shackles, and fetters<sup>262</sup> of hell.

Therefore it is an imperative duty that we owe not only to our own wives and children, but to the widows and fatherless, whose husbands and fathers have been murdered under its iron hand;—which dark and blackening deeds are enough to make hell itself shudder, and to stand aghast, and pale, and the hands of the very devil to tremble<sup>263</sup> and palsy. And also it is an imperious<sup>264</sup> duty that we owe to all the rising generation, and to all the pure in heart, which<sup>265</sup> there are many yet on the earth among all sects, parties and denominations, who are blinded by the subtle craftiness of men[,] whereby they lie in wait to deceive, and <sup>266</sup>only kept from the truth because they know not where to find it; therefore that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they are truly manifest from heaven.

These should then be attended to with great earnestness. Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the Saints, which depends upon these things. You know brethren, that a very large ship is benefited very much by a very small helm in the time of a storm, by being kept workways with the wind and the waves.

Therefore dearly beloved brethren, let us cheerfully do all things<sup>267</sup> that lieth<sup>268</sup> in our power, and then may we stand still with the utmost assurance, to see the salvation of God, and for his arm to be revealed.

And again, I would further suggest the impropriety of the organization of bands or companies, by covenant or oaths, by penalties or secrecies; but let the time past of our experience and sufferings by the wickedness of Doctor Avard suffice, and let our covenant be that of the Everlasting Covenant, as is contained in the holy writ, and the things that God hath revealed unto us. Pure<sup>269</sup> friendship always becomes weakened, the very moment you undertake to make it stronger by penal oaths and secrecy.

Your humble servant or servants, intend from henceforth to disapprove everything that is not in accordance with the fullness of the gospel of Jesus Christ, and is not of a bold, and frank, and <sup>270</sup>upright nature.—They will not hold their peace as in times past when they see iniquity beginning to rear its head, for fear of traitors, or the consequences that shall follow by reproving those who creep in unawares, that they may get something <sup>271</sup>to destroy the flock. We believe that the experience of the Saints in times past has been sufficient that they will from henceforth be always ready to obey the truth without having men's persons in admiration because of advantage. It is expedient that we should be aware of such things; and we ought always to be aware of those prejudices which sometimes so strangely present themselves, and are so congenial to human nature, against our friends, neighbors and brethren of the world, who choose to

---

261. MS Letter, 8: adds "<the corruption in <the> world.>"

262. MS Letter, 8: "<fetters>"

263. MS Letter, 8: "<tremble>"

264. DHC 3:303: replaces "imperious" with "imperative"

265. DHC 3:303: replaces "which" with "for"

266. DHC 3:303: adds "who are"

267. Book C-2, 62 (darker ink): "<things>" (TB)

268. DHC 3:303: "lie"

269. Book C-2, 62 (darker ink): "{Pure/}" (TB)

270. MS Letter, 9, Book C-1, 911, Book C-2, 63: add "an"

271. Book C-1, 911 (pencil): "<with which>" (US); DHC 3:303: adds "with which"

differ with<sup>272</sup> us in opinion and in matters of faith. Our religion is between us and our God. Their religion is between them and their God.

There is a tie<sup>273</sup> <sup>274</sup>from God that should be exercised towards<sup>275</sup> those of our faith,—who walk uprightly, which is peculiar to itself—but it is without prejudice, but<sup>276</sup> gives scope to the mind[,] which enables us to conduct ourselves with greater liberality towards all<sup>277</sup> others<sup>278</sup> that are not of our faith<sup>279</sup>[,] than what they exercise towards one another.—These principles approximate nearer to the mind of God, because it is like God, or godlike.

Here<sup>280</sup> is a principle also which we are bound to be exercised with, that is in common with all men, such as governments, and laws, and regulations<sup>281</sup> in the civil concerns of life. This principle guarantees to all parties, sects and denominations, and classes of religion, equal, <sup>282</sup>coherent, and indefeasible<sup>283</sup> rights; they are things that pertain to this life; therefore all are alike interested; they make our responsibilities <sup>284</sup>one towards another in matters of corruptible things<sup>285</sup>, while the former principles do not destroy the latter, but bind us stronger and make our responsibilities not only one to another, but unto God also. Hence we say, that the Constitution of the United States is a glorious standard; it is founded in the wisdom of God. It is a heavenly banner;—it is to all those who are privileged with the sweets of its liberty, like the cooling shades and refreshing waters of a great rock in a thirsty and a weary land. It is like a great tree under whose branches men from every clime can be shielded from the burning rays of an inclement<sup>286</sup> sun.

We, brethren, are deprived of the protection of this<sup>287</sup> glorious principle, by the cruelty of the cruel, by those who only look for the time being, for pasturage like the beasts of the field, only to fill themselves<sup>288</sup>; and forget that the Mormons as well as the Presbyterians; and those of every other class and description, have equal rights to partake of<sup>289</sup> the fruits of the great tree of our National Liberty. But notwithstanding we see what we see, and we feel what we feel, and know what we know, yet that fruit is no less precious and delicious to our taste; we cannot be weaned from the milk, neither can we be driven from the breast; neither will we deny our religion because of the hand of oppression; but we will hold on until death.

We say that God is true; that the Constitution of the United States is true; that the Bible is true; that the Book of Mormon is true; that the Book of <sup>290</sup>Covenants are<sup>291</sup> true; that Christ

---

272. DHC 3:304: replaces “with” with “from”

273. DHC 3:304: replaces “tie” with “love”

274. MS Letter, 10: adds “~~which belongs~~”

275. DHC 3:304: “toward”

276. Book C-1, 911 (pencil): “~~but~~ <It>” (US); DHC 3:304: replaces “but” with “it also”

277. Book C-1, 911 (pencil): “all”

278. DHC 3:304: omits “others”

279. MS Letter, 10: “<that are not of our faith>” (JS)

280. MS Letter, 10: replaces “Here” with “There”

281. Book C-2, 63: “regulation\s/”

282. MS Letter, 10: adds “~~and indef~~”

283. Book C-1, 912 (pencil): “~~indefeasible~~”, with “?” above it.

284. MS Letter, 10: “<things>”

285. MS Letter, 10: “<things>”

286. Book C-1, 912 (pencil): “~~an~~ <a> inclement” (US); DHC 3:304: replaces “an inclement” with “the”

287. DHC 3:304: replaces “this” with “its”

288. MS Letter, 11: “<of the field> <only to fill them<selves>>”; first insertion by JS.

289. MS Letter, 11: “~~pluck~~ <partake of>”

290. Book C-2, 63: adds ellipses over erasure of probably “Doctrine and”

291. DHC 3:304: “is”

is true; that the ministering <sup>292</sup>angels sent forth from God are true, and that we know that we have an house not made with hands eternal in the heavens, whose builder and maker is God:—a consolation which our oppressors cannot feel, when fortune, or fate, shall lay its iron hand on them as it has on us. Now we ask, What is man? Remember brethren, that time and chance happeneth<sup>293</sup> to all men.

We shall continue our reflections in our next.

We subscribe ourselves, your sincere friends and brethren in the bonds of the everlasting gospel, prisoners of Jesus Christ for the sake of the gospel and the saints.

We pronounce the blessing<sup>294</sup> of heaven upon the heads of the saints who seek to serve God with undivided hearts, in the name of Jesus Christ<sup>295</sup>: Amen.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
HYRUM SMITH,  
LYMAN WIGHT,  
CALEB BALDWIN,  
ALEXANDER McRAE.

**Mrs Emma Smith**  
**Quincy III**<sup>296</sup>

---

292. Book C-2, 63: adds “{of}”

293. DHC 3:305: “happen”

294. DHC 3:305: “blessings”

295. MS Letter, 12: “<in the name of Jesus Christ>”

296. Bolded text appears only in MS Letter, 12.



## 21.

# JOSEPH SMITH ESCAPES

April 1839

[DN 4 (9 February 1854): 1-2]

<sup>1</sup>[Thursday, April 4.] Brothers Kimball and Turley called on Judge King, who was mad<sup>2</sup> at their having reported the case to the Governor; and said he, “I could have done all the business for you properly, if you had come to me; and I would have signed the petition for all except Joe, and he is not fit to live.” I bid brothers Kimball and Turley to be of good cheer, <sup>3</sup>[“]for we shall be delivered; but no arm but God<sup>4</sup> can deliver us now. Tell the brethren to be of good cheer, and get the Saints<sup>5</sup> away as fast as possible.[”]

<sup>6</sup>Brothers Kimball and Turley were not permitted to enter the prison, and all the communication we had with them was through the grate of the dungeon. The brethren<sup>7</sup> left Liberty on their return to Far West.

Friday, [April] 5th. Brothers Kimball and Turley arrived at Far West.

<sup>8</sup>This day, a company of about fifty men in Daviess county, swore that they would never eat or drink, until they had murdered [“]Jo Smith.[”] Their Captain, William Bowman, swore, in the presence of Theodore Turley, that he would “never eat or drink, after he had seen Jo Smith, until he had murdered him.[”]

Also 8 men, Capt[ain]. Bogart, who was the County Judge, Dr. Laffity, John Whitmer, and five others, came into the committee room <sup>9</sup>and presented to Theodore Turley the paper containing <sup>10</sup>the

---

1. *Source*: Based on TT [1845], 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

2. DHC 3:306: replaces “mad” with “angry”

3. Quotation marks added in DHC 3:306.

4. DHC 3:306: “God’s”

5. Book C-1, 912 (different ink): “<Saints>” (TB)

6. Next sentence added interlinearly in different ink in Book C-1, 912, by TB, and incorporated in Book C-2, 64, by FDR about 21–25 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). *Source*: This information supplied by HCK (cf. HCKa [ca. 1856], 65, which gives the date 30 Mar. 1839, rather than 3 Apr. as printed in HCKj [1882], 70). HCK was present on 19 Aug. 1845 when this note was inserted (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1).

7. Book C-2, 64: “<brethren>” (TB)

8. *Source*: Following five paragraphs from TT [1845], 1–3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

9. DHC 3:306: adds “[i.e. the room or office of the committee on removal]”

10. Book C-1, 913 (lighter ink), Book C-2, 64: “{paper containing/} [eoe of about five words]” (TB/FDR)

Revelation of July 8, 1838, to Joseph Smith, that<sup>11</sup> the Twelve were<sup>12</sup> to take their leave<sup>13</sup> at the building<sup>14</sup> in Far West, on the twenty sixth of April, to go to the Isles of the sea, and then asked him to read it.—Turley said, “Gentlemen, I am well acquainted with it.” They said, “then you as a rational man, will give up Joseph Smith being a prophet and an inspired man; now<sup>15</sup> he and the Twelve are scattered all over<sup>16</sup> creation; let them come here if they dare; if they do, they will be murdered. As that Revelation cannot be fulfilled, you will now give up your faith.”

Turley jumped up and said, “in the name of God, that Revelation will be fulfilled.”—They laughed him to scorn. John Whitmer hung down his head. They said, “if they (the Twelve) come, they will get murdered; they dare not come to take their leave here; that is like all the rest of Jo Smith’s damned prophecies.” They commenced on Turley and said, “[h]e had better do as John Corrill had done; he is going to publish a book called ‘Mormonism fairly delineated’; he is a sensible man, and you had better assist him.”

Turley said, “Gentlemen, I presume there are men here who have heard Corrill say, that Mormonism was true,<sup>17</sup> Joseph Smith was a Prophet, and inspired of God, &c.<sup>18</sup> I now call upon you, John Whitmer: you say Corrill is a moral and good man; do you believe him, when he says the Book of Mormon is true, or when<sup>19</sup> it is not true? There are many things published that they say is<sup>20</sup> true, and again turn round<sup>21</sup> and say it is<sup>22</sup> false.” Whitmer asked, “do you hint at me?” Turley replied, “If the cap fits you, wear it; all I know,<sup>23</sup> you have published to the world that an Angel did present those plates to Joseph Smith.” Whitmer replied, “I now say, I handled those plates; there was fine engravings on both sides. I handled them”; and he described how they were hung, and “they were shown to me by a supernatural power”; he acknowledged all.

Turley asked him, “why the translation is not<sup>24</sup> now true.” He said, “I cannot<sup>25</sup> read it,<sup>26</sup> and I do not know whether it<sup>27</sup> is true or not.” Whitmer testified all this in the presence of eight men.

<sup>28</sup>The committee<sup>29</sup> met and brother W[illiam]. Huntington made report of his journey to Liberty on business of<sup>30</sup> committee.

The subject of providing some clothing for the prisoners at Richmond was discussed and the

---

11. DHC 3:306: replaces “that” with “directing”

12. DHC 3:306: omits “were”

13. DHC 3:306: adds “of the Saints”

14. DHC 3:306–7: changes “at the building” to “on the building site of the Lord’s House” and moves it to follow “Far West”

15. DHC 3:307: moves “now” to follow “Twelve are”

16. Book C-1, 913, Book C-2, 64: add “the”

17. DHC 3:307: adds “that”

18. DHC 3:307: omits “&c.”

19. DHC 3:307: adds “he says”

20. DHC 3:307: “are”

21. DHC 3:307: “around”

22. DHC 3:307: replaces “it is” with “they are”

23. DHC 3:307: adds “is that”

24. DHC 3:307: moves “is not” to precede “the translation”

25. DHC 3:308: “could not”

26. DHC 3:308: adds “[in the original]”

27. DHC 3:308: adds “[i.e., the translation]”

28. *Source*: Following three paragraphs from MCR, F 6, 5 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

29. DHC 3:308: adds “[on removal of the Saints from Missouri]”

30. DHC 3:308: adds “the”



propriety of sending two brethren to Liberty, to make sales of some lands, was taken up, and Elders H. G. Sherwood and T[hodore]. Turley were appointed.

A bill of clothing for the Richmond prisoners having been made up, was presented and given to those appointed to go to Liberty, that they might procure the goods on the sales of land.

<sup>31</sup>Saturday, April 6th. Judge King, evidently fearing a change of venue, or some movement on our part to escape his unhallowed persecution: (and most probably expecting that we would be murdered on the way) hurried myself and fellow prisoners off to Daviess county, under a guard of about ten men, commanded by Samuel Tillery, Deputy Jailer of Clay county. We were promised that we should go through Far West, which was directly on our route, which our friends at that place knew, and expected<sup>32</sup> us; but instead of fulfilling their promise, they took us round<sup>33</sup> the city, and out of the direct course <sup>34</sup>eighteen miles; far from habitations, where every opportunity presented, for a general massacre.

<sup>35</sup>This evening the committee <sup>36</sup>met in council. Prayer by Elder Kimball. The business of the council, being<sup>37</sup> the order of the leaders of the Daviess mob, delivered this day to the Saints in this County, to leave before Friday next:

Resolved, To hire all the teams that can be hired, to move the families of the saints out of the county, to Tenny's Grove.

Resolved, To send H[enry]. G. Sherwood immediately to Illinois for assistance from the saints there, in teams<sup>38</sup>, &c.<sup>39</sup>

The mission of Elders Sherwood and Turley to Liberty was deferred for the present.

<sup>40</sup>Sunday, April 7th. The committee met in council at brother Turley's. Brother Erastus Snow made a report of his visit to the Judges at Jefferson. A letter from the prisoners at Liberty was read, and Daniel Shearer and H[eber]. C. Kimball were appointed to see Mr. Hughes and get him to go to Daviess<sup>41</sup>, and tend the sitting of the Court there.

<sup>42</sup>We continued our travels across the prairie, while the brethren at Far West, anxious for our welfare, gave a man thirty dollars to convey a letter to us at Daviess county, and return an answer.

<sup>43</sup>Monday, [April] 8th. After a tedious journey, for our long confinement had enfeebled our bodily powers, we arrived in Daviess county<sup>44</sup>, about a mile from Gallatin<sup>45</sup>, where we were delivered into the hands of William Morgan, Sheriff of Daviess county, with his guard, William Bowman, John Brassfield, and John Pogue<sup>46</sup>. The Liberty guard returned immediately, but became divided, or got lost

31. *Source*: Apparently based on TT [1845], 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

32. Book C-1, 914: "and were expecting"; Book C-2, 65: "and ~~were~~ expected"

33. DHC 3:308: "around"

34. DHC 3:308: adds "some"

35. *Source*: Remainder of this day's entry from MCR, F. 6, 1, 6 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

36. DHC 3:308: adds "(i.e. on removal)"

37. DHC 3:308: replaces "being" with "was the consideration of"

38. DHC 3:309: moves "in teams" to follow "assistance"

39. DHC 3:309: omits "&c."

40. *Source*: Based on MCR, F. 6, 2, 7 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

41. DHC 3:309: adds "county"

42. *Source*: Based on TT [1845], 1 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

43. *Source*: Part about Markham possibly from SM [1845].

44. Book C-2, 65 (darker ink): "<county>" (TB)

45. Book C-1, 914: "[*oe*] Gallatin [*oe of about six words*]"; Book C-2, 65 (darker ink): "<Gallatin>" (TB)

46. Book C-1, 914 (pencil): "Pogue" overwrites "Page"

on their way; and<sup>47</sup> a part of them arrived in Far West after dark, and got caught in the fence; and calling for help, Elder Markham went to their assistance and took them to the tavern. From them he got a letter I had written to<sup>48</sup> the committee, informing them of our arrival in Daviess<sup>49</sup>.

<sup>50</sup>Tuesday, [April] 9th. Our trial commenced before a drunken grand jury. Austin A. King, presiding Judge, as drunk as the jury; for they were all drunk together. Elder Stephen Markham had been dispatched by the committee to visit us, and bring a hundred dollars that was sent by Elder Kimball, as we were destitute of means at that time<sup>51</sup>,—and leaving<sup>52</sup> Far West this morning, and swimming several streams<sup>53</sup>, he arrived among us in the afternoon, and spent the evening in our company. Brother Markham brought us<sup>54</sup> a written copy of a statute which had passed the Legislature, giving us the privilege of a change of venue on our own<sup>55</sup> affidavit.

Judge Morin arrived from Mill Port, and was favorable to our escape from the persecution we were enduring, and spent the evening with us in prison, and we had as pleasant a time as such circumstances would permit, for we were as happy as the happiest;—the Spirit buoyed us above our trials, and we rejoiced in each other's society.

<sup>56</sup>Wednesday, [April] 10th, was spent in the examination of witnesses before the grand jury. Dr. Sampson Avarad was one of the witnesses. Brother Markham was not permitted to give his testimony.

Our guard went home, and Colonel W[illia]m. P. Peniston, Blakely<sup>57</sup>, and others, took their place.

<sup>58</sup>Quincy, Illinois, April 10th, 1839.

To the Saints in prison, GREETING:

In the midst of a crowd of business, I haste to send a few lines by the hand of br[other]. Mace, our Messenger. We wish you to know that our friendship is unabating, and our exertions for your delivery, and that of the church, unceasing. For this purpose we have labored to secure the friendship of the Governor of this State, with all the principal men in this place. In this we have succeeded beyond our highest anticipations. Governor Carlin assured us last evening, that he would lay our case before the Legislature of this State, and have the action of that body upon it; and he would use all his influence to have an action which should be favorable to our people. He is also getting papers prepared, signed by all the noted men in this part of the country, to give us a favorable reception at Washington, whither we shall repair forthwith, after having visited the Governor of Iowa, of whose friendship we have the strongest testimonies. We leave Quincy this day to visit him. Our plan of operation is to impeach the State of Missouri on an item of the Constitution of the United States. That the General Government shall give

47. DHC 3:309: omits "and"

48. Book C-1, 914, Book C-2, 65: omit "to"

49. DHC 3:309: adds "county"

50. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on TT [1845], 1-2 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13), and possibly SM [1845] (cf. SM Notes for RDft MS #1 in vol. 7, II.1). Cf. JS's Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839 (DHC 3:372; chap. 24).

51. Book C-1, 914 (different ink): "<and bring ... that time>" (TB). These words inserted under the direction of GAS and HCK on 19 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1).

52. DHC 3:309: replaces "and leaving" with "He left"

53. Book C-1, 914 (different ink): "{\streams/}" (TB). Text emended under the direction of GAS and HCK on 19 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1).

54. Book C-1, 914: omits "us"; Book C-2, 65: "<us>"

55. Book C-2, 65: "<own>"

56. *Source*: This and next paragraph possibly based on SM [1845] (cf. SM Notes for RDft MS #1 in vol. 7, II.1).

57. Book C-1, 915, Book C-2, 65: "Blakesly"

58. *Source*: JSLB 2:4-5 (JM).

to each State a Republican form of government. Such a form of government does not exist in Missouri,—and we can prove it.

Governor Carlin and his lady, enter with all the enthusiasm of their natures into this work, having no doubt that<sup>59</sup> we can accomplish this object.

Our plan of operation in this work is, to get all the Governors in their next messages to have the subject brought before the Legislatures, and we will have a man at the Capital of each State to furnish them with the testimony on the subject; and we design to be at Washington to wait upon Congress and have the action of that body on it also. All this going on at the same time, and have the action of the whole during one session.

Brother G[eorge]. W. Robinson will be engaged all the time, between this and the next sitting of the Legislatures, in taking affidavits, and preparing for the tug of war; while we will be going from State to State, visiting the respective Governors, to get the case mentioned in their <sup>60</sup>messages to Legislatures, so as to have the whole going on at once. You will see by this that our time is engrossed to overflowing.

The Bishops of the church are required to ride and visit all scattered abroad, and <sup>61</sup>collect money to carry on this great work.

Be assured, brethren, that operations of an all-important character are under motion—and will come to an issue as soon as possible. Be assured that our friendship is unabated for you, and our desires for your deliverance, intense. May God hasten it speedily, is our prayer day and night.

Yours in the bonds of affliction:

SIDNEY RIGDON.

To J[oseph]. Smith, jr., H[yrum]. Smith, C[aleb]. Baldwin, L[yman]. Wight, A[lexander]. McRae.

<sup>62</sup>Quincy, Ill[inois]., April 10th, 1839.

Dear Brethren in Christ Jesus:

It is with feelings of<sup>63</sup> no small moment that I take <sup>64</sup>pen in hand to address you, the prisoners of Jesus Christ and in the same faith of the gospel with myself—who are holden by the cords of malice and of hellish plottings against the just, and of<sup>65</sup> the lifting up the heel against the Lord's Anointed; but they shall soon fall and not rise again, for their destruction is sure; for<sup>66</sup> no power beneath the heavens can save them.

President Rigdon is wielding a mighty shaft against the whole Kidney<sup>67</sup> of foul calumniators and mobocrats of Missouri.—Yesterday he spent a part of the day with Governor Carlin of this State. The President<sup>68</sup> told him that he was informed that Governor Boggs was calculating to take out a bench warrant for himself and others, and then make a demand of His Excellency for them to be given up, to be taken back to Missouri for trial; and he was assured by that noble-minded hero, that if Mr. Boggs undertook that<sup>69</sup> thing, he would get himself insulted. He also

---

59. JSLB 2:5, Book C-1, 915, Book C-2, 66: replace “that” with “but”; DHC 3:311: “but that”

60. DHC 3:311: adds “respective”

61. DHC 3:311: adds “to”

62. *Source*: JSLB 2:16-17 (JM).

63. JSLB 2:16: replaces “of” with “in”; Book C-1, 915: “of” overwrites “in”

64. JSLB 2:16: adds “~~up~~”

65. DHC 3:312: replaces “of” with “through”

66. DHC 3:312: replaces “for” with “and”

67. DHC 3:312: replaces “kidney” with “host”

68. DHC 3:312: “President Rigdon”

69. DHC 3:312: replaces “that” with “the”

assured him that the people called Mormons should find a permanent protection in this State. He also solicited our people, one and all, to settle in this State, and if there could be a tract of country that would suit our convenience, he would use his influence for Congress to make a grant of it to us; to redress our wrongs, and make up our losses.

We met last night in council of the whole, and passed some resolutions with respect to sending to the city of Washington. We are making every exertion possible that lays<sup>70</sup> in our power, to accomplish that grand object upon which hangs our temporal salvation; and interwoven with this, our eternal salvation; and so closely allied to each other are they, that I want to see the Head connected with the Body again; and while we are enjoying one, let us be ripening for the other. But my heart says, Where is he whose lips used to whisper the words of life to us?—Alas! he is in the hands of Zion's enemies! O Lord! crieth my heart, will not Heaven hear our prayers, and witness our tears!—Yes, saith the Spirit, thy tears are all bottled up<sup>71</sup>, and shall speedily be rewarded with the deliverance of thy dearly beloved brethren.

But when I see the fearful apprehensions of some of our brethren, it causes me to mourn. One instance of which I will mention. When I arrived at Far West, I made my mind known to some of the community, and I<sup>72</sup> told them that I wanted that<sup>73</sup> they should send a messenger to the jail to communicate with you; but I<sup>74</sup> was denied the privilege<sup>75</sup>. They said that the Presidency was so anxious to be free once more, that they would not consider the danger the Church was in.

They met in council and passed resolutions that myself, Amasa<sup>76</sup> Lyman, and<sup>77</sup> Watson<sup>78</sup> Barlow, should leave Far West for Quincy forthwith. But<sup>79</sup> my spirits have<sup>80</sup> been grieved ever since, so that I can hardly hold my peace; but<sup>81</sup> there is a God in Israel that can blast the hellish desires, and infernal<sup>82</sup> designs of that infernal banditti, whose hands have been imbrued in the blood of the martyrs and saints; who<sup>83</sup> wish to destroy the Church of God. But<sup>84</sup> their chain is short; there is but<sup>85</sup> just enough left to bind their own<sup>86</sup> hands with.

Dear brethren, I am at your service, and I wait<sup>87</sup> your counsel at Quincy, and shall be happy to grant you the desire of your hearts. I am ready to act. Please to give me all the intelligence that is in your power. If you take a change of venue, please to<sup>88</sup> let me know what county you will come to, and when, as near as possible, and what road you will come; for I shall be an adder in the path.

---

70. DHC 3:312: "lies"

71. DHC 3:312: replaces "bottled up" with "remembered"

72. DHC 3:312: omits "I"

73. DHC 3:312: omits "that"

74. DHC 3:312: replaces "I" with "my request"

75. DHC 3:312: omits "the privilege"

76. Book C-1, 916 (different ink): "{\Amasa/}" (TB)

77. Book C-1, 916 (different ink): "<&>" (TB)

78. Book C-1, 916: "W."

79. DHC 3:312: omits "But"

80. DHC 3:312: "spirit has"

81. JSLB 2:16-17: adds "They are so afraid of bears, that they hardly remember that"; Book C-1, 916 (different ink): "[*eof of about ten words*] {\but/}" (TB)

82. JSLB 2:17: replaces "infernal" with "base"; DHC 3:312: omits "infernal"

83. DHC 3:312: replaces "who" with "They"

84. Book C-2, 67 (darker ink): "\but/" (pos. TB)

85. DHC 3:313: omits "but"

86. Book C-2, 67: "<own>" (pos. FDR)

87. DHC 3:313: "await"

88. DHC 3:313: omits "please to"

Yes, my dear brethren, God Almighty will deliver you. Fear not, for your redemption draweth near; the day of your deliverance is at hand.

Dear brethren, I have it in my heart to lay my body in the sand, or deliver you from your bonds; and my mind is intensely fixed on the latter.

Dear brethren, you will be able to judge of the spirit that actuates my breast;—for when I realize your sufferings, my heart is like wax before the fire; but when I reflect upon the cause of your afflictions, it is like fire in my bones, and burns against your enemies to the bare hilt<sup>89</sup>; and I never can be satisfied, while there is one of them to piss<sup>90</sup> against a<sup>91</sup> wall, or draw a sword, or spring<sup>92</sup> a trigger. For<sup>93</sup> my sword has never<sup>94</sup> been sheathed in peace; for the blood of D[avid]. W. Patten, and those who were butchered at Haun's mills<sup>95</sup>, crieth for vengeance from the ground.

Therefore, hear <sup>96</sup>O ye heavens! and record<sup>97</sup> it, O ye recording angels! bear the tidings ye flaming seraphs!—that I from this day, declare myself the avenger of the blood of those innocent men; and of the innocent cause of Zion; and of her prisoners; and I will not rest, until they are as free, who are in prison, as I am.

Your families are all well and in good spirits. May the Lord bless you all: Amen.

Br[other]s. Amasa<sup>98</sup> Lyman and Watson<sup>99</sup> Barlow, join in saying, our hearts are as thy heart.—Br[other]. Joseph, if my spirit is wrong, for God's sake correct it. Brethren, be of good cheer, for we are determined, as God liveth, to rescue you from that hellish crowd, or die in the<sup>100</sup> furrow. We shall come face foremost.

A[LANSON]. RIPLEY.

N.B. S. B. Crockett, <sup>101</sup>(I have<sup>102</sup> been once driven, but not whipped) brother Brigham<sup>103</sup> Young sends his best respects<sup>104</sup> to you all.

A. R.

Thursday, [April] 11th.

<sup>105</sup>Quincy, April 11th 1839<sup>106</sup>

Brother Hyrum:

After reading a line from you to <sup>107</sup>myself, and one to father, which awakens all the feel-

---

89. DHC 3:313: omits "to the bare hilt"

90. DHC 3:313: replaces "piss" with "stand"

91. Book C-2, 67 (darker ink): "{\a/}" (pos. TB)

92. DHC 3:313: replaces "spring" with "pull"

93. DHC 3:313: omits "For"

94. JSLB 2:17, Book C-1, 917, Book C-2, 67: "never has"

95. DHC 3:313: "Mill"

96. JSLB 2:17: adds "it"

97. DHC 3:313: replaces "record" with "write"

98. Book C-1, 917: "A."

99. Book C-1, 917: "W."

100. JSLB 2:17: adds "~~attempt~~"

101. DHC 3:313: adds "says"

102. DHC 3:313: replaces "I have" with "he has"

103. JSLB 2:17, Book C-1, 917: "B."

104. JSLB 2:17: "~~compliments~~ respects"

105. *Source*: JSLB 2:39 (JM). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

106. Book C-1, 917: adds "Quincy", but not date.

107. Book C-1, 917: adds "~~me~~"

ings of tenderness and brotherly affection that one heart is capable of containing, I sit down in haste to answer it. My health and that of my family is **tolerable** good; mother and Lucy have been very sick, but are getting better. Your families are in better health now than at any other period since your confinement.

**Mary [Fielding Smith] is getting tolerable good health; she is doing the best she can for the good and enjoyment of the children; the family are all together and seem to be contented. Lovina is a good girl and has quite a *motherly care* for the children, and takes considerable interest in the welfare of her mother. As respects your fears concerning Mary, you may put them to rest: I believe that she is your friend, and desires to promote your happiness; I have no fault to find with Mary, for she has had a long fit of sickness, and where there has been a lack of wisdom, had she been well and had her own way, there would in all probability been no call for the observations that I made in my letter to you. I think it will be wisdom for Sister Thompson to remain where she is at present. The course that we have pursued I think has proved advantageous to her.**

Brother Hyrum, I am in hopes that my letter did not increase your trouble, for I know that your affliction is too great for human nature to bear; and if I did not know that there was a God in heaven, and that his promises are sure and faithful, and that he is your friend in the midst of all your trouble, I would fly to your relief, and either be with you in prison, or see you breathe free air—air too that had not been inhaled and corrupted by a pack of ruffians, who trample upon virtue and innocence with impunity; and are not even satisfied with the property and blood of the saints, but must exult over the dead. You both have my prayers, my influence, and warmest feelings, with a *fixed determination*, if it should so be, that you should be destroyed, to *avenge* your blood four fold.

Joseph must excuse me for not writing to him at this time. Give my love to all the prisoners. Write to me as often as you can, and do not be worried about your families. Yours in affliction as well as in peace.

DON C. SMITH.

<sup>108</sup>Beloved Brethren<sup>109</sup>, Hyrum and Joseph:—

By the permit of my companion, I write a line to show that I have not forgotten you; neither do I forget you; for my prayer is to my Heavenly Father for your deliverance.—It seems as though the Lord was<sup>110</sup> slow to hear the prayers of the saints. But the Lord's ways are not like<sup>111</sup> our ways; therefore he can do better than <sup>112</sup>ourselves. You must be comforted, br[oth-ers]. H[yrum]. and J[oseph]., and look forward for better days. Your little ones are as playful as little lambs; be comforted concerning them, for they are not cast down and sorrowful as we are; their sorrows are but momentary, and<sup>113</sup> ours continual.

May the Lord bless, protect, and deliver you from all your enemies, and restore you to the bosom of your families, is the prayer of

AGNES<sup>114</sup> M. SMITH.

To<sup>115</sup> Hyrum <sup>116</sup>Smith, Liberty, Mo.

---

108. Source: JSLB 2:40 (JM).

109. DHC 3:314: "Brothers"

110. DHC 3:314: "is"

111. Book C-2, 68 (darker ink): "{\like/}" (prob. TB)

112. DHC 3:314: adds "we"

113. DHC 3:314: replaces "and" with "but"

114. JSLB 2:40: "A."; Book C-1, 918: "A<gnes>" (prob. FDR)

115. JSLB 2:40, Book C-1, 918: omit "To"

116. DHC 3:314: adds "and Joseph"

<sup>117</sup>The examination of witnesses was continued, and Elder Markham was permitted to give his testimony. After he had closed, Blakely<sup>118</sup>, one of the guard, came in and said to Markham, that he wanted to speak to him. Brother Markham walked out with him, and round<sup>119</sup> the end of the house, when Blakely<sup>120</sup> cried<sup>121</sup> out, “God damn<sup>122</sup> you<sup>123</sup>, you damned<sup>124</sup> old Mormon: I’ll kill you”; and struck at Markham with his fist, and then with a club. Markham took the club <sup>125</sup>and threw it over the fence.

There were ten of the mob, who immediately rushed upon Markham to kill him. Col[onel]. William P. Peniston, captain of the guard, being one of the number. But Markham told them he could kill the whole of them at one blow apiece, and drove them <sup>126</sup>off. The court and grand jury stood and saw the affray, and heard the mob threaten Markham’s life, by all the oaths they could invent, but they took no cognizance of it.

The ten mobbers went home after their guns to shoot Markham, and the grand jury brought in a bill for “Murder, Treason, Burglary, Arson, Larceny, Theft, and Stealing,” against Lyman Wight, Alexander McRae, Caleb Baldwin, Hyrum Smith, and myself.

<sup>127</sup>This evening the committee <sup>128</sup>assembled at Daniel Shearer’s. After prayer by br[other]. Ja[me]s. Newberry, he was ordained an Elder on the recommendation of Elder [Heber C.] Kimball, under the hands of Elder Kimball<sup>129</sup>, H[iram]. Clark, and W[illiam]. Huntington.

Elder Kimball reported that Jesse P. Maupin, the Thirty Dollar Messenger they sent to us, had returned; that the prisoners were well and in good spirits.

Brother Rogers, who had returned from Jackson county, reported that he had sold all the lands in Jackson. Elder Kimball was requested to attend a meeting of the county<sup>130</sup> tomorrow, and as an individual, mention the case of the committee <sup>131</sup>and <sup>132</sup>brethren generally, and learn their feelings, whether they would protect the brethren from the abuse of the mob, in case they came immediately to drive them out, as they had recently threatened.

<sup>133</sup>During this night, the visions <sup>134</sup>of the future were opened to my understanding;—when I saw the ways and means and near approach of my escape from imprisonment, and the danger that my beloved brother Markham was in. I awoke brother Markham, and told him if he would rise very early

---

117. *Source*: Next three paragraphs possibly from SM [1845] (cf. SM Notes for RDft MS #1 in vol. 7, II.1).

118. Book C-1, 918, Book C-2, 68: “Blakesly”

119. DHC 3:315: “around”

120. Book C-1, 918, Book C-2, 68: “Blakesly”

121. DHC 3:315: replaces “cried” with “called”

122. DHC 3:315: replaces “God damn” with a long dash.

123. DHC 3:315: omits “you”

124. DHC 3:315: replaces “damn” with a long dash

125. DHC 3:315: adds “from him”

126. Book C-1, 918: adds “all”

127. *Source*: Following three paragraphs based on MCR, 11 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15), and possibly supplemented by HCK.

128. DHC 3:315: adds “[on removal]”

129. DHC 3:315: omits “Elder Kimball”

130. DHC 3:315: “of the Daviess county officials”

131. DHC 3:315: adds “[on removal]”

132. DHC 3:315: adds “the”

133. *Source*: This paragraph possibly from SM [1845] (cf. SM Notes for RDft MS #1 in vol. 7, II.1).

134. Book C-1, 918: adds ellipses over erasure of about two words



and not wait for the Judge and Lawyers, as he had contemplated<sup>135</sup>, but rise<sup>136</sup> briskly, he would get safe home, almost before he was aware of it; and if he did not, the mob would shoot him on the way. And<sup>137</sup> tell the brethren to be of good cheer, but lose no time in removing from the country.

<sup>138</sup>Friday, [April] 12th. This morning, br[other]. Markham arose at dawn of day, and rode rapidly towards Far West, where he arrived before 9 a.m. The mobbers pursued to shoot him, but did not overtake him.

This day I received the following communication<sup>139</sup>:

<sup>140</sup>Dear Sir: Enclosed I send you the receipt which I promised; and if you will pay the necessary attention to it, <sup>141</sup>it will be a benefit to the church and to me; and I think with a little attention on your part, they can be produced, and any person who will deliver them at any point in the State, so I can get them, I will compensate them well, as I know you feel deeply interested in the welfare of the church; and when you consider it will add to their character, and look upon it in a proper light, you will spare no pains in assisting me in the recovery of those books.

Yours, &c., in haste,

JACOB STOLLINGS.

To<sup>142</sup> Joseph Smith, jr., Diahman.

Gallatin, Daviess county, Mo.,

April 12th, 1839.

Know all men by these presents:—That I, Jacob Stollings, have this day agreed with Joseph Smith, jr., to release all members of the Mormon church, from any and all debts due to me from them for goods sold to them by me at Gallatin during the year 1838, on the following condition, viz: That said Joseph Smith, jr., return or cause to be<sup>143</sup> returned to me the following books: One ledger, three day books, and one day book of groceries, which was taken from my store in Gallatin when said store was burned. And if said books are returned to me within four months, this shall be a receipt in full to all intents and purposes, against any debt or debts due from said Mormons to me on said books; but if not returned, this is to be null and void.

Given under my hand this day and date before written.

JACOB STOLLINGS.

Attest, J. Lynch.

<sup>144</sup>A curious idea, that I who had been a prisoner <sup>145</sup>many months, should be called upon to hunt up lost property, or property most likely destroyed by the mob; but it is no more curious than a thousand other things that have happened; and I feel to do all I can to oblige any of my fellow creatures.

---

135. DHC 3:316: adds “doing”

136. Book C-1, 919, Book C-2, 69: replace “rise” with “ride”

137. DHC 3:316: adds “I told him to”

138. *Source*: Possibly SM [1845] (cf. SM Notes for RDft MS #1 in vol. 7, II.1).

139. DHC 3:316: replaces “communication” with “letter”

140. *Source*: JSLB 2:50 (JM).

141. Book C-1, 919: adds “and”; Book C-2, 69: “~~and~~”

142. JSLB 2:50: omits “To”

143. Book C-2, 69: “<be>” (prob. FDR)

144. *Source*: Probably commentary composed by WR, who wrote RDft 1:51 between 28 Feb.–8 Mar. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

145. Book C-1, 919: adds “a”

<sup>146</sup>Commerce, Ill[nois]. April 12th, 1839.

Messrs. Editors: Enclosed I send you a communication from Governor Lucas of Iowa territory. If you think the publication thereof will in any way promote the cause of justice, by vindicating the slandered reputation of the people called "Mormons" from the ridiculous falsehoods which the malice, cupidity, and envy of their murderers in Missouri, have endeavored to heap upon them, you are respectfully solicited to publish it in the "Argus." The testimony of Governor Lucas as to the good moral character of these people, I think will have its deserved influence upon the people of Illinois, in encouraging our citizens in their humane and benevolent exertions to relieve this distressed people, who are now wandering in our neighborhoods without comfortable food, raiment, or a shelter from the pelting storm.

I am, gentlemen, very respectfully,

Your ob[edien]t. serv[an]t.,

ISAAC<sup>147</sup> GALLAND.

<sup>148</sup>Executive Office, Iowa, Burlington,  
March, 1839.

Dear Sir: On my return to this city, after a few weeks' absence in the interior of the Territory, I received your letter of the 25th ult[imo]., in which you give a short account of the sufferings of the *people called Mormons* and ask "whether they could be permitted to purchase lands and settle upon them, in the Territory of Iowa, and there worship Almighty God according to the dictates of their own consciences, secure from oppression," &c.

In answer to your inquiry, I would say that I know of no authority that can constitutionally deprive them of this right. They are citizens of the United States, and are entitled to all the rights and privileges of other citizens. The 2d Section of the 4th Article of the Constitution of the United States (which all are solemnly bound to support) declares that "the citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens of<sup>149</sup> the several States." This privilege extends in full force to the Territories of the United States. The first amendment to the Constitution of the U[nited]. S[tates]., declares that "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof."

The ordinance of Congress of the 13th July, 1787, for the government<sup>150</sup> of the Territory northwest of the river Ohio, secures to the citizens of said Territory, and the citizens of the States thereafter to be formed therein, certain privileges which were by the late Act of Congress organizing the Territory of Iowa, extended to the citizens of this Territory.

The first fundamental Article in that Ordinance, which is declared to be forever unalterable, except by common consent, reads as follows, to wit: "No person demeaning himself in a peaceable and orderly manner, shall ever be molested on account of his mode of worship or<sup>151</sup> religious sentiments<sup>152</sup> in said Territory."

These principles I trust will ever be adhered to in the Territory of Iowa. They make no distinction between religious sects. They extend equal privileges and protection to all; each must rest upon its own merits, and will prosper in proportion to the purity of its principles, and the fruit of holiness and piety produced thereby.

With regard to the peculiar people mentioned in your letter, I know but little.—They

146. Source: *FREM*, 40.

147. *FREM*, 40, Book C-1, 920: "I"

148. Source: *FREM*, 41.

149. *FREM*, 41, Book C-1, 920, Book C-2, 70: replace "of" with "in"

150. Book C-2, 70 (darker ink): "{\government/}" (TB)

151. Book C-1, 920: "o\r/"; "r" w.o. "f"

152. DHC 3:318: "sentiment"

had a community in the northern part of Ohio for several years; and I have no recollection of ever having heard in that State of any complaints<sup>153</sup> against them for violating the laws of the country. Their religious opinions I consider has<sup>154</sup> nothing to do with our political transactions. They are citizens of the United States, and are entitled to the same political rights, and legal protection that other citizens are entitled to.

The foregoing are briefly my views on the subject of your inquiries.

With sincere respect,

I am your obedient servant:

ROBERT LUCAS.

To<sup>155</sup> Isaac Galland, Esq., Commerce, Illinois.

<sup>156</sup>Saturday, [April] 13th. Elder Markham went to Independence to close the business of the church in that region.

<sup>157</sup>Sunday, [April] 14th. The committee<sup>158</sup> in council resolved to send Sisters Fosdick and Meeks, and brother William Monjar and another family, with brothers Jones', Burton's,<sup>159</sup> and Barlow's teams, which had recently arrived from<sup>160</sup> Quincy.

<sup>161</sup>The committee moved thirty-six families into Tenney's Grove, about twenty-five miles from Far West; and a few men were appointed to chop wood for them, while brother<sup>162</sup> Turley was to furnish them with meal and meat, until they could be removed to Quincy. The corn was ground at the committee's horse mill in Far West. Elder Kimball was obliged to secrete himself in the cornfields, &c.<sup>163</sup> during the day, and was in at night counseling the committee and brethren.

<sup>164</sup>Monday, [April] 15th. Having procured a change of venue, we started for Boone county, and were conducted<sup>165</sup> to that place by a strong guard.

<sup>166</sup>This evening the committee<sup>167</sup> met to make arrangements concerning teams and the moving of the few families who yet remained at Far West.

Tuesday,

<sup>168</sup>Quincy<sup>169</sup>, April 16th, 1839.

To Joseph Smith, jr., and others, Prisoners in Liberty or elsewhere, GREETING:—

---

153. Book C-1, 920, Book C-2, 70: "complaint"

154. DHC 3:318: "have"

155. *FREM*, 41: omits "To"; Book C-1, 920, Book C-2, 70: "(To)"

156. *Source*: Possibly SM [1845].

157. *Source*: Based on MCR, G, 14 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

158. DHC 3:319: adds "[on removal]"

159. DHC 3:319: "Jones, Burton"

160. DHC 3:319: replaces "from" with "at"

161. *Source*: TT [1845], 2 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13), and possibly HCK (HCKa [ca. 1856], 68; *HCKj* [1882], 72).

162. Book C-1, 921 (different ink): "{\brother/}" (prob. TB)

163. DHC 3:319: omits "&c."

164. *Source*: "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 7. Cf. JS's Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839 (DHC 3:372; chap. 24).

165. Book C-1, 921, Book C-2, 71: add "on our way"

166. *Source*: Based on MCR, G, 15 Apr. 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.15).

167. DHC 3:319: adds "[on removal]"

168. *Source*: JSLB 2:6 (JM).

169. Book C-2, 71: "<Quincy>" (FDR)

Dear Brethren in affliction: Through the mercy and providence of God, I am here alive, and in tolerable health, as also are all of your families, as far as I know, having heard from them lately, and having seen sister Emma yesterday.

Brethren, I have sorrow of heart when I think of your great sufferings by that ungodly mob which has spread such desolation and caused such<sup>170</sup> suffering among us. I often reflect on the scenes which we passed through together; the course we pursued; the counselings we had; the results which followed, when harassed, pressed on every side, insulted and abused by that lawless banditti; and <sup>171</sup>am decidedly of opinion that the hand of the Great God hath controlled the whole business for purposes of his own, which will eventually work out good for the Saints: (I mean those who are worthy of that<sup>172</sup> name) knowing<sup>173</sup> that your intentions, and the intentions of all the worthy Saints have been pure, and tending to do good to all men, and to injure no man in person or property except we were forced to it in defense of our lives.

Brethren, I am aware that I cannot wholly realize your sufferings; neither can any other person who has not experienced the like afflictions; but I doubt not for a moment;—neither have I ever doubted for a moment, but<sup>174</sup> that the same God which delivered me from their ungodly<sup>175</sup> grasp (though narrowly) will deliver you. I staid near Far West for about three weeks, being hunted by them almost every day; and as I learned, they did not intend to give me the chance of a trial, but put an end to me forthwith; I went<sup>176</sup> for my horse and left the wicked clan and came off. Francis [Higbee]<sup>177</sup> is with his uncle in Ohio. I received a letter lately from him; he is strong in the faith. I now live in the Big-Neck-Prairie, on the same farm with President Rigdon, who is here with me and waiting for me with his riding dress on, to go home. So I must necessarily close, praying God to speedily deliver you, and bless you.

From yours in the bonds of the Everlasting Love:

ELIAS HIGBEE.

<sup>178</sup>This evening, our guard got intoxicated. We thought it a favorable opportunity to make our escape; knowing that the only object of our enemies was our destruction; and likewise knowing that a number of our brethren had been massacred by them on Shoal creek, amongst whom were two children; and that they sought every opportunity to abuse others who were left in that State; and that they were never brought to an account for their barbarous proceedings, but were winked at, and encouraged by those in authority. We thought that it was necessary for us, inasmuch as we loved our lives, and did not wish to die by the hand of murderers and assassins: and inasmuch as we loved our families and friends, to deliver ourselves from our enemies, and from that land of tyranny, and oppression, and again take our stand among a people in whose bosoms dwell those feelings of republicanism and liberty which gave rise to our Nation:—feelings which the inhabitants of the State of Missouri were strangers to.—Accordingly, we took the<sup>179</sup> advantage of the situation of our guard and took our departure<sup>180</sup>; and that night we traveled a considerable distance.

---

170. Book C-1, 921, Book C-2, 71, DHC 3:319: replace “such” with “so much”

171. DHC 3:320: adds “I”

172. DHC 3:320: replaces “that” with “the”

173. DHC 3:320: “I know”

174. DHC 3:320: omits “but”

175. JSLB 2:6, Book C-1, 921, Book C-2, 71, DHC 3:320: omit “ungodly”

176. JSLB 2:6: replaces “went” with “sent”

177. Brackets this editor’s.

178. *Source*: “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 7.

179. DHC 3:321: omits “the”

180. DHC 3:321: replaces “took our departure” with “departed”

<sup>181</sup>Wednesday, [April] 17th. We prosecuted our journey towards Illinois, keeping off from the main road as much as possible, which impeded our progress.

<sup>182</sup>Thursday, [April] 18th. This morning, Elder Kimball went into the committee room and told the committee <sup>183</sup>to wind up their affairs and be off, as <sup>184</sup>their lives would be taken.—Stephen Markham<sup>185</sup> had gone over the Missouri<sup>186</sup> river on business. Eld[er]s. Turley and Shearer were at Far West.

Twelve men went to Elder Turley's with loaded rifles to shoot him. They broke seventeen clocks into match wood. They broke tables, smashed in the<sup>187</sup> windows; while Bogart (the county Judge) looked on and laughed. One Whitaker threw iron pots at Turley, one of which hit him on the shoulder, at which Whitaker jumped and laughed like a madman. The mob shot down cows while the girls were milking them. The mob threatened to send the committee "to hell jumping," and "put daylight through them."

<sup>188</sup>The same day, previous to the breaking of the clocks, some of the same company met Elder Kimball on the public square in Far West, and asked him if he was a ["damned"<sup>189</sup> Mormon[""]; who replied, ["I am a Mormon." "Well, God damn"<sup>190</sup> you, we'll blow your brains out, you God damned"<sup>191</sup> Mormon," and tried to ride over him with their horses. This was in the presence of Elias Smith<sup>192</sup>, Theodore Turley, and others of the committee.

<sup>193</sup>The brethren gathered up what they could and left Far West in one hour; and the mob staid until they left, then plundered thousands of dollars' worth of property which had been left by the <sup>194</sup>brothers<sup>195</sup> and sisters to help the poor to remove.

<sup>196</sup>One mobber rode up, and finding no convenient place to fasten his horse, shot a cow that was standing near, and while the poor animal was yet struggling in death, he cut a strip of her hide from her nose to the tip of the<sup>197</sup> tail, which<sup>198</sup> he tied round a stump, to which he fastened his halter.

During the commotion this day, a great portion of the records of the committee, accounts,

---

181. *Source*: Probably composed by WR based on a guess.

182. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on TT [1845], 2-3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13), and possibly HCK (HCKa [ca. 1856], 68; HCKj [1882], 72-73).

183. DHC 3:322: adds "[on removal]"

184. Book C-1, 922, DHC 3:322: replace "as" with "or"

185. RDft 1:52: replaces "Stephen Markham" with "Elias Smith"; Book C-1, 922 (pencil): "Elias Smith <S. Markham>" (US); Book C-2, 72 (pencil): "~~Elias Smith~~ <Stephen Markham>" (TB). Cf. comment on "Elias Smith" two paragraphs below.

186. Book C-1, 922 (pencil): "<Missouri>" (US)

187. Book C-2, 72: "<the>" (FDR)

188. This paragraph added interlinearly in different ink in Book C-1, 922, by TB, and incorporated in Book C-2, 72, by FDR about 21-25 Aug. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). *Source*: Apparently supplied by HCK (cf. HCKa [ca. 1856], 68; HCKj [1882], 72), who was present on 19 Aug. 1845 when inserted (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1).

189. DHC 3:322: replaces "damned" with a long dash

190. DHC 3:322: replaces "God damn" with two long dashes

191. DHC 3:322: replaces "God damned" with two long dashes

192. Book C-1, 922: underlines "Elias Smith" in pencil and the following penciled note in margin: "was Elias Smith over the river" (US). This question evidently triggered the emendation two paragraphs above, where "<S[tephen]. Markham>" replaces "Elias Smith"

193. *Source*: This paragraph based on TT [1845], 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

194. DHC 3:322: adds "exiled"

195. DHC 3:322: "brethren"

196. *Source*: This and next paragraph added possibly under the direction of HCK (cf. HCKa [ca. 1856], 69; HCKj [1882], 73).

197. DHC 3:323: replaces "the" with "her"

198. DHC 3:323: replaces "which" with "this"

history &c., were destroyed or lost, so that but few definite items can be registered in their place.

<sup>199</sup>When the Saints commenced removing from Far West, they shipped as many families and goods as possible at Richmond to go down the Missouri river, &c.<sup>200</sup>, to Quincy, Illinois. This mission was in charge of Elders<sup>201</sup> Levi Richards and Reuben Hedlock, who were appointed by the committee.

<sup>202</sup>I continued on my journey with my brethren towards Quincy.

<sup>203</sup>Elder D[avid]. W. Rogers appropriated his<sup>204</sup> money to remove the poor from Missouri.

[DN 4 (16 February 1854): 1]

The brethren and sisters who had arrived in Illinois were beginning to pen<sup>205</sup> their sufferings and losses in Missouri. The statement of sister [Amanda] Smith, written by her own hand, I will here<sup>206</sup> insert:—

<sup>207</sup>To whom this may come:

I do hereby certify, that my husband, Warren Smith, in company with several other families, were<sup>208</sup> moving<sup>209</sup> from Ohio to Missouri<sup>210</sup>. We came to Caldwell county. Whilst we were traveling, minding our own business, we were stopped by a mob; they told us that if we went another step, they would kill us all.—They took our guns from us; (as we were going<sup>211</sup> into a new country, we took guns along with us) they took us back five miles, placed a guard around<sup>212</sup> us; there kept us three days, and let us go.

I thought<sup>213</sup>, is this our boasted land of liberty?—for some said we must deny our faith, or they would kill us; others said, we should die at any rate.

The names of this mob, or the heads,<sup>214</sup> were Thomas O'Brien, County Clerk; Jefferson Brion<sup>215</sup>, William Ewell<sup>216</sup>, Esq., and James Austin, all of Livingston county. After they let us go, we traveled ten miles, <sup>217</sup>came to a small town composed of one grist mill, one saw mill, and eight or ten houses belonging to our brethren; there<sup>218</sup> we stopped for the night.

199. *Source*: This paragraph based on TT [1845], 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

200. DHC 3:323: omits "&c."

201. DHC 3:323: "Elder"

202. *Source*: Probably composed by WR based on an assumption.

203. *Source*: Undetermined.

204. DHC 3:323: replaces "appropriated his" with "made a donation of"

205. DHC 3:323: replaces "pen" with "write of"

206. Book C-2, 72 (darker ink): "<here>" (TB)

207. *Source*: ASB. Following notations selectively compare three MS sources against MSHiJS: (1) copy sent with others to Congress in Dec. 1839, now located in the Mormon Collection in the Library of Congress (*MRP*, 538-39); (2) Amanda Smith Barnes Statement, 18 Apr. 1839 (MS 5367), 3pp. (ASB); and (3) an edited version prepared by RBT before his death in Aug. 1841 located in JSHD (RBT copy). The last item is probably the source for MSHiJS, which evidently received further editing possibly by TB before he copied it into Book C-1, 922-24, in Mar. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology).

208. *MRP*, 538, Book C-1, 922, Book C-2, 72: "was"

209. DHC 3:323: adds "[in 1838]"

210. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "late last fall"

211. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: replace "going" with "traveling"

212. ASB, 1: "~~over~~ <around>"

213. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "to myself"

214. *MRP*, 538: "The names of the Heads of this mob"; RBT copy, 1: "The names of the heads of this mob"; ASB, 1: "<the names of> Some of the leading men of this mob"

215. DHC 3:324: "Brien"

216. RBT copy, 1 (lighter ink): "\Ewell/"

217. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "when we"

218. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: replace "there" with "Here"



<sup>219</sup>A little before sunset, a mob of three hundred <sup>220</sup>came upon us. The men <sup>221</sup>hallooed for the women and children to run for the woods; and they ran into an old blacksmith's shop, for they feared if we all ran together, they would rush upon us and kill the women and children. The mob fired <sup>222</sup>before we had time to start<sup>223</sup> from our camp. Our men took off their hats and swung them<sup>224</sup>, and cried "quarters"<sup>225</sup> until they were shot<sup>226</sup>. The mob paid no attention to their cries nor entreaties, but fired alternately.

I took my little girls, my boy<sup>227</sup> I could not find, and started<sup>228</sup> for the woods. The mob encircled us on all sides, but<sup>229</sup> the brook<sup>230</sup>. <sup>231</sup>I ran down the bank, across the mill-pond on a plank, up the hill <sup>232</sup>into the bushes.—The bullets whistled <sup>233</sup>all the way like hail<sup>234</sup>, and cut down the bushes on all sides of us<sup>235</sup>. One girl was wounded by my side, and fell over a log, and her clothes hung across the log; and they<sup>236</sup> shot at them, expecting they were hitting her; and our people afterwards cut out of that log twenty bullets.

I sat down to witness the dreadful<sup>237</sup> scene. When they had done firing, they began to howl; and one would have thought that all the infernals had come from the lower regions. They plundered the principal part of our goods; took our horses and wagons, and ran off howling like demons.

I came down<sup>238</sup> to witness the awful scene<sup>239</sup>. Oh horrible! what a sight!<sup>240</sup> My husband, <sup>241</sup>and one son <sup>242</sup>ten years old, <sup>243</sup>lifeless upon the ground, and one son seven<sup>244</sup> years old<sup>245</sup>,

---

219. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "When"

220. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "persons"; ASB, 1: "<armed men>"

221. ASB, 1: adds "~~came~~"

222. ASB, 1: adds "upon us"

223. *MRP*, 538: replaces "start" with "run"

224. *MRP*, 538: adds "round"

225. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: "quarter, quarter".

226. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1, ASB, 1: add "down"

227. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1, ASB, 1: "boys"

228. ASB, 1: replaces "started" with "ran"

229. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: replace "but" with "except towards"; ASB, 1: replaces "but" with "excepting"

230. ASB, 1: replaces "but the brook" with "excepting the bank of the creek"; *MRP*, 538: "except towards the brook"

231. ASB, 1: adds "so"

232. ASB, 2: adds "on the other side"

233. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 1: add "around us"; ASB, 2: adds "by me"

234. ASB, 2: adds "stones"

235. ASB, 2: replaces "us" with "me"

236. Book C-1, 923: "<they>" (TB)

237. Book C-2, 73: "<dreadful>" (FDR)

238. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 2: replace "down" with "back"

239. DHC 3:324: replaces "scene" with "sight"

240. DHC 3:324: omits "what a sight!"

241. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 2: add "murdered and stript ~~naked~~ before life had entirely gone out of him"; RBT copy omits "~~naked~~". ASB, 3, adds the following as an addendum: "I would further state that my husband was stript of his cloths before he was dead he had a new p[ai]r of calf skin bo<o>ts taken of[f] his <feet> the man made his braggs afterwards that he pul[l]ed a dam[n]ed mormons boots of[f] from his feet before he was done kicking."

242. *MRP*, 538: adds "~~fourteen~~"

243. *MRP*, 538, RBT copy, 2: add "lying"; ASB, 2, DHC 3:324: add "lay"

244. ASB, 2: "six"

245. Book C-1, 923, Book C-2, 73: move "seven years old" to follow "bad"



wounded very bad<sup>246</sup>; <sup>247</sup>the ground covered with the dead<sup>248</sup>. These <sup>249</sup>little<sup>250</sup> boys crept under the bellows in the shop<sup>251</sup>; one little<sup>252</sup> boy of ten years old<sup>253</sup> had three wounds in him; he lived five weeks and died, he was not mine<sup>254</sup>.

Realize for a moment the scene. It was sunset: nothing but horror and distress; the dogs filled with rage, howling over their dead masters; the cattle caught the scent of <sup>255</sup>innocent blood<sup>256</sup>, <sup>257</sup>bellowed<sup>258</sup>; a dozen helpless widows—thirty or forty<sup>259</sup> fatherless children, screaming and groaning<sup>260</sup> for the loss of their fathers and husbands; the groans of the wounded and dying,—were<sup>261</sup> enough to have melted the heart of anything but a Missouri mob.

There were<sup>262</sup> fifteen dead, and ten wounded<sup>263</sup>; two died the next day. There were<sup>264</sup> no men, or not enough to bury the dead<sup>265</sup>; so they were thrown into a dry well and covered with <sup>266</sup>dirt. The next day the mob came back.—They told us we must leave the State forthwith or be killed. It was cold weather, and they had our teams and clothes, our men<sup>267</sup> all<sup>268</sup> dead or wounded. I told them they might kill me and my children and welcome. They sent to us from time to time, if we did not leave the State, they would come and kill us<sup>269</sup>. We had little prayer meetings. They said if we did not stop them, they would kill every man, woman and child. We had spelling schools for our little children;—they said if we did not stop them, they would kill every <sup>270</sup>man, woman and child<sup>271</sup>. We did our own milking, got our own wood; no man to help us.

I started the first of February for Illinois, without money, (mob all the way) drove my own team, slept out of doors. I had four<sup>272</sup> small children; we suffered hunger, fatigue, and cold;—for what? For our religion;—where, in a boasted land of liberty, [“]deny your faith or die,[”] was the cry.

---

246. DHC 3:324: “badly”

247. ASB, 2: adds “his hip all shot to pieces”

248. ASB, 2: adds “and dying”

249. ASB, 2: adds “were three”

250. RBT copy, 2: omits “little”

251. ASB, 2: omits “in the shop” and reads “blacksmith bellows”

252. RBT copy, 2: replaces “one little” with “another”

253. ASB, 2: omits “of ten years old”; DHC 3:324: omits “old”

254. *MRP*, 539, RBT copy, 2: omit “he was not mine”; ASB, 2: adds “the other two were and one of them had his brains all shot out and the other his hip shot to pieces”

255. DHC 3:324: adds “the”

256. Book C-2, 73: “<blood>” (FDR)

257. DHC 3:324: adds “and”

258. *MRP*, 539, RBT copy, 2: add “most awfully”; ASB, 2: adds “like mad men”

259. ASB, 2: omits “or forty”

260. ASB, 2: replaces “groaning” with “grieveing”; DHC 3:324: “crying and moaning”

261. *MRP*, 539, Book C-1, 923: “was”; Book C-2, 73: “were” overwrites “was”

262. Book C-1, 923, Book C-2, 73: “was”

263. *MRP*, 539: “ten wounded, or more”; RBT copy, 2: “ten or more wounded”

264. Book C-1, 923 (different ink): “{ \were/ }” (TB)

265. *MRP*, 539, RBT copy, 2: replace preceding sentence with “The women were not able to bury the dead.”

266. ASB, 2: adds “straw and”

267. DHC 3:324: replaces “men” with “husbands”

268. DHC 3:325: replaces “all” with “were”

269. ASB, 2: replaces “kill us” with “make a breakfast of us”

270. *MRP*, 539, RBT copy, 2: add “one of us”

271. *MRP*, 539: omits “they would ... child”

272. DHC 3:325: replaces “four” with “five”

I will mention some of the names of the heads of the mob:—two brothers by the name of Comstock, William Man[n]<sup>273</sup>, Benjamin Ashley<sup>274</sup>, Robert White, one by the name of Rogers, who took an old scythe and cut an old white-headed man<sup>275</sup> all to pieces.<sup>276</sup>

<sup>277</sup>I wish further also to state, that when the mob came there<sup>278</sup>, (as I was told by one of them afterwards) their intention was to kill everything belonging to us that had life; and that after our men were shot down by them, they went around and shot all the dead men over again, to make sure of their lives<sup>279</sup>.

I now leave it with this Honorable Government <sup>280</sup>to say what my damages may be, or what they would be willing to see their wives and children slaughtered for, as I have seen my Husband, Son, and others.

I lost in property by the mob:—To goods stolen, fifty dollars; one pocketbook, and fifty dollars cash notes: damage of horses and time, one hundred dollars; one gun, ten dollars; in short, my all. Whole damages are more than the State of Missouri is worth.

Written by my own hand, <sup>281</sup>this 18th day of April, 1839.

AMANDA SMITH.

Quincy, Adams county, Illinois.<sup>282</sup>

<sup>283</sup>Thus are the cries of the widows<sup>284</sup> and the fatherless ascending to heaven. How long, O Lord, wilt thou not avenge the blood of the Saints?

<sup>285</sup>Friday, [April] 19th.—Elders Turley and Clark had traveled but a few miles <sup>286</sup>when an axle-tree broke, and br[other]. Clark had to go to Richmond after some boxes, which hindered them some days.

<sup>287</sup>Saturday, [April] 20th.—The last of the Saints left Far West.

<sup>288</sup>Sunday, [April] 21st.—I had still continued my journey.

---

273. *MRP*, 539: replaces “Man[n]” with “and”

274. *MRP*, 539, *ASB*, 3: “Ashby”

275. *ASB*, 3: replaces “man” with “revelutioneer”

276. *DHC* 3:325: adds “[Thomas McBride].”

277. In *ASB*, 3, the contents of this and next paragraph appear as an addendum, the first part of which reads: “the mob went and shot the men over for fear they were not dead[.] I saw one of the mob afterwards and asked him what they intended when they came there[.] he said they intended to kill every thing that breathed.”

278. *DHC* 3:325: replaces “there” with “upon us”

279. *DHC* 3:325: replaces “lives” with “death”

280. *DHC* 3:325: adds “[the United States]”

281. *MRP*, 539, *RBT* copy, 3, *ASB*, 3: add “in truth and soberness”

282. *MRP*, 539: omits this line

283. *Source*: Probably composed by WR (*RDft* 1:53).

284. Book C-1, 924: “widow”

285. *Source*: TT [1845], 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

286. *DHC* 3:325: adds “from Far West”

287. *Source*: *LP*, 114 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

288. *Source*: Probably composed by WR based on an assumption (*RDft* 1:53).

## 22.

# EXODUS FROM MISSOURI

April 1839

[DN 4 (16 February 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Monday, [April] 22d.—We continued on our journey, both by night and by day; and after suffering much fatigue, and hunger, I arrived in Quincy, Illinois, amidst the congratulations of my friends, and the embraces of my family, whom I found as well as could be expected, considering what they had been called to endure.

<sup>2</sup>Before leaving Missouri, I had paid the lawyers at Richmond thirty-four thousand dollars in cash, lands, &c.; one lot which I let them have, in Jackson county, for seven thousand dollars; they were soon offered 10,000 dollars for it, but would not accept it. For other vexatious suits which I had to contend against, the few months I was in this State, I paid lawyers' fees to the amount of about sixteen thousand dollars, making in all about fifty thousand dollars, for which I received very little in return; for sometimes they were afraid to act on account of the mob, and sometimes they were so drunk as to incapacitate them for business. But there were a few honorable exceptions.

<sup>3</sup>Among those who have been the chief instruments and leading characters in the unparalleled<sup>4</sup> persecutions against the Church of Latter Day Saints, the following stand conspicuous, viz:—Generals Clark, Wilson, and Lucas, Colonel Price, and Cornelius Gillium<sup>5</sup>: Captain Bogart also, whose zeal in the cause of oppression, and injustice, was unequalled, and whose delight has been to rob, murder, and spread devastation among the Saints. He stole a valuable horse, saddle, and bridle from me, which cost two hundred dollars, and then sold the same to General Wilson. On understanding this, I applied to General Wilson for the horse,—who assured me, upon the honor of a gentleman, and an officer, that I should have the horse returned to me; but this promise has not been fulfilled.

All the threats, murders, and robberies, which these officers have been guilty of, are entirely

---

1. *Source*: “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 7. Cf. JS, Bill of Damages, 4 June 1839; DHC 3:372–73 (chap. 24). See also JSj [1839], 1; *PJS* 2:318; *JSP* 1:336; *APR*, 234.

2. *Source*: Based partly on TT [1845], 1 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.13).

3. *Source*: Following thirteen paragraphs, to JS's signature, from “Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith Jr.,” *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 7–9.

4. DHC 3:327: replaces “unparalleled” with “cruel”

5. *T&S* 1:7, Book C-1, 925, Book C-2, 74: “Gilliam”

looked over by the Executive of the State; who, to hide his own iniquity, must of course shield and protect those whom he employed to carry into effect his murderous purposes.

I was in their hands as a prisoner, about six months; but notwithstanding their determination to destroy me, with the rest of my brethren who were with me; and although at three different times (as I was informed) we were sentenced to be shot, without the least shadow of law, (as we were not military men) and had the time and place appointed for that purpose, yet through the mercy of God, in answer to the prayers of the Saints, I have been preserved and delivered out of their hands; and can<sup>6</sup> again enjoy the society of my friends and brethren, whom I love; and to whom I feel united in bonds that are stronger than death; and in a State, where I believe the laws are respected, and whose citizens are humane and charitable.

During the time I was in the hands of my enemies, I must say, that although I felt great anxiety respecting my family and friends, who were so inhumanly treated and abused; and who had to mourn the loss of their husbands and children, who had been slain: and after having been robbed of nearly all that they possessed, be<sup>7</sup> driven from their homes, and forced to wander as strangers in a strange country, in order that they might save themselves and their little ones from the destruction they were threatened with in Missouri:—yet as far as I was concerned, I felt perfectly calm, and resigned to the will of my Heavenly Father. I knew my innocency<sup>8</sup>, as well as that of the Saints; and that we had done nothing to deserve such treatment from the hands of our oppressors. Consequently, I could look to that God, who has the hearts<sup>9</sup> of all men in his hands and who had saved me frequently from the gates of death, for deliverance; and notwithstanding that every avenue of escape seemed to be entirely closed, and death stared me in the face; and that my destruction was determined upon as far as man was concerned: yet, from my first entrance into the camp, I felt an assurance, that I with my brethren and our families should be delivered. Yes! that still small voice, which has so often whispered consolation to my soul, in the depth of sorrow and distress, bade me be of good cheer, and promised deliverance, which gave me great comfort. And although the heathen raged, and the people imagined vain things, yet the Lord of Hosts, the God of Jacob was my refuge; and when I cried unto him in the day of trouble, he delivered me; for which I call upon my soul and all that is within me, to bless and praise his holy name. For although I was “troubled on every side, yet not distressed; perplexed, but not in despair; persecuted, but not forsaken; cast down, but not destroyed.”

The conduct of the Saints, under their accumulated wrongs and sufferings, has been praiseworthy; their courage in defending their brethren from the ravages of the mobs; their attachment to the cause of truth, under circumstances the most trying and distressing which humanity can possibly endure; their love to each other; their readiness to afford assistance to me, and my brethren who were confined in a dungeon; their sacrifices in leaving Missouri, and assisting the poor widows and orphans, and securing them houses in a more hospitable land;—all conspire to raise them in the estimation of all good and virtuous men; and has secured them the favor and approbation of Jehovah; and a name as imperishable as eternity.—And their virtuous deeds and heroic actions, while in defense of truth, and their brethren, will be fresh and blooming, when the names of their oppressors shall be either entirely forgotten, or only remembered for their barbarity and cruelty.

---

6. Book C-2, 74 (darker ink): adds “can” at *coln* (prob. TB)

7. DHC 3:328: replaces “be” with “were”

8. DHC 3:329: “innocence”

9. DHC 3:329: replaces “hearts” with “lives”

Their attention and affection to me, while in prison, will ever be remembered by me; and when I have seen them thrust away and abused by the jailer and guard, when they came to do any kind offices, and to cheer our minds while we were in the gloomy prison-house, gave me feelings which I cannot describe; while those who wished to insult and abuse us, by their threats and blasphemous language, were applauded, and had every encouragement given them.

However, thank God, we have been delivered. And although some of our beloved brethren, have had to seal their testimony with their blood; and have died martyrs to the cause of truth; yet<sup>10</sup>,

Short though bitter was their pain,  
Everlasting is their joy.

Let us not sorrow as “those without hope”; the time is fast approaching when we shall see them again and rejoice together, without being afraid of wicked men. Yes, those who have slept in Christ, shall he bring with him, when he shall come to be glorified in his Saints, and admired by all those who believe: but to take vengeance upon his enemies, and all those who obey not the gospel.

At that time, the hearts of the widows and fatherless shall be comforted, and every tear shall be wiped from off<sup>11</sup> their faces.—The trials they have had to pass through, shall work together for their good, and prepare them for the society of those who have come up out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

Marvel not then, if you are persecuted,—but remember the words of the Savior: “The servant is not above his Lord; if they have persecuted me, they will persecute you also”; and that all the afflictions through which the Saints have to pass, are in fulfillment of the words of the prophets which have spoken since the world began.

We shall therefore do well to discern the signs of the times as we pass along, that the day of the Lord may not “overtake us as a thief in the night.” Afflictions, persecutions, imprisonments, and deaths, we must expect, according to the scriptures, which tell us, that the blood of those whose souls were under the altar, could not be avenged on them that dwell on the earth, until their brethren should be slain as they were.

If these transactions had taken place among barbarians, under the authority of a despot, or in a nation where a certain religion is established according to law, and all others proscribed, then there might have been some shadow of defense offered. But can we realize that in a land which is the cradle of liberty, and equal rights, and where the voice of the conquerors, who had vanquished our foes had scarcely died away upon our ears, where we frequently mingled with those who had stood amidst “the battle and the breeze,” and whose arms have been nerved in the defense of their country and liberty; whose institutions are the theme of philosophers and poets, and held up to the admiration of the whole civilized world. In the midst of all these scenes, with which we were surrounded, a persecution the most unwarrantable was commenced; and a tragedy the most dreadful was enacted, by a large portion of the inhabitants of one of those free and independent<sup>12</sup> States, which comprise this vast Republic; and a deadly blow was struck at the institutions for which our fathers had fought many a hard battle, and for which many a patriot had shed his blood; and<sup>13</sup> suddenly was heard amidst the voice of joy and gratitude for our national liberty, the voice of mourning, lamentation and woe. Yes! in this land,

---

10. DHC 3:330: omits “yet”

11. DHC 3:330: omits “off”

12. DHC 3:331: replaces “independent” with “sovereign”

13. DHC 3:332: omits “and”

a mob, regardless of those laws for which so much blood had been spilled,—dead to every feeling of virtue and patriotism, which animated the bosom of freemen, fell upon a people whose religious faith was different from their own, and not only destroyed their homes; drove them away, and carried off their property; but murdered many a free-born son of America:—a tragedy which has no parallel in modern, and hardly in ancient times; even the face of the Red Man would be ready to turn pale at the recital of it. It would have been some consolation, if the authorities of the State had been innocent in this affair; but they are involved in the guilt thereof;—and the blood of innocence, even of children, cry for vengeance upon them.

I ask the citizens of this Republic, whether such a state of things is to be suffered to pass unnoticed, and the hearts of widows, orphans, and patriots to be broken, and their wrongs left without redress? No! I invoke the genius of our Constitution.—I appeal to the patriotism of Americans,—to stop this unlawful and unholy procedure; and pray that God may defend this nation from the dreadful effects of such outrages.

Is there not virtue in the body politic?—Will not the people rise up in their majesty, and with that promptitude and zeal which is<sup>14</sup> so characteristic of them, discountenance such proceedings, by bringing the offenders to that punishment which they so richly deserve: and save the Nation from that disgrace and ultimate ruin, which otherwise must inevitably fall upon it.

**JOSEPH SMITH, jr.**<sup>15</sup>

<sup>16</sup>Elder Markham had closed his business in Jackson <sup>17</sup>and returned to Far West;—having been chased by the mob on horses at full speed, as far as the river<sup>18</sup>, for the purpose of shooting him. Brother Markham tarried in and near Far West until the 24th.

<sup>19</sup>On my arrival at Quincy, I found the brethren had been diligent in preparing for an investigation of their wrongs in Missouri, as the following letters will show.

<sup>20</sup>Burlington, Iowa Territory,  
April 22d, 1839.

Dear Sir: I herewith enclose two letters, one addressed to the President of the United States, and one to <sup>21</sup>Governor Shannon, of Ohio. As the object sought by you is an investigation into the facts connected with your misfortunes, I have thought it the most prudent course to refrain from an expression of an individual opinion in the matter, relative to the merits or demerits of the controversy. I sincerely hope that you may succeed in obtaining a general investigation into the cause and extent of your sufferings, and that you may obtain from the Government that attention which is your due as citizens of the United States.

Very respectfully your ob[edien]t. ser[van]t.:

ROBERT LUCAS.

Doct[or]. Sidney Rigdon.

---

14. DHC 3:332: replaces “is” with “are”

15. DHC 3:332: omits name.

16. *Source*: Possibly SM [1845].

17. DHC 3:332: adds “county”

18. DHC 3:332: moves “as far as the river” to follow “chased”

19. *Source*: Probably composed by WR (RDft 1:54).

20. *Source*: JSLB 2:42 (JM).

21. JSLB 2:42: “<one> to ~~the~~”

<sup>22</sup>Burlington, Iowa Territory,  
April 22d, 1839.

To His Excellency Martin Van Buren, President of the United States,—

Sir:—I have the honor to introduce to your acquaintance, the bearer, Doct[or]. Sidney Rigdon, who was for many years a citizen of the State of Ohio, and a firm supporter of the administration of the General Government.

Doctor Rigdon visits Washington (as I am informed) as the representative of a community of people called Mormons, to solicit from the Government of the United States, an investigation into the causes<sup>23</sup> that led to their expulsion from the State of Missouri; together with the various circumstances connected with that extraordinary affair.

I think it due to that people to state, that they had for a number of years a community established in Ohio, and that while in that State they were (as far as I ever heard) believed to be an industrious, inoffensive people; and I have no recollection of having ever heard of any of them being charged in that State as violators of the laws.

With sincere respect, I am your ob[edien]t. serv[an]t.,

ROBERT LUCAS.

**His Excellency, Martin Van Buren**  
**President U.S.**  
**Washington City, D.C.**  
**Per Dr. S. Rigdon**

<sup>24</sup>Burlington, Iowa Territory,  
April 22, 1839.

To His Excellency Wilson Shannon, Governor of the State of Ohio,—

Sir:—I have the honor to introduce to your acquaintance, Doctor Sidney Rigdon, who was for many years a citizen of Ohio. Doctor Rigdon wishes to obtain from the General Government of the United States, an investigation into the causes that led to the expulsion of the people called Mormons from the State of Missouri; together with all the facts connected with that <sup>25</sup>extraordinary affair. This investigation it appears to me, is due them as citizens of the United States, as well as to the Nation at large.

Any assistance that you can render the Doctor, towards accomplishing that desirable object, will be gratefully received and duly appreciated by your sincere friend and humble servant:

ROBERT LUCAS.

**His Excellency Wilson Shannon**  
**Governor of Ohio**  
**Columbus, O[hio].**  
**Per Doct S. Rigdon**

<sup>26</sup>Far West, Mo., April 23d, 1839.

Sir:—The summit end of Mr. Benson's mill-dam was carried away by the late freshet, and unless repaired, it will all go the next.

The committee have gone, and if father Smith would send me a power of attorney, in connection with Mr. Benson's and Corril's, I have a chance to sell it before it is all lost. Maybe

22. Source: JSLB 2:42-43 (JM). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

23. DHC 3:333: "cause"

24. Source: JSLB 2:43 (JM). Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

25. Book C-2, 77: adds ellipses over erasure of about two words

26. Source: JSLB 2:7 (JM).



I might save the old gentleman something, which I promised Hyrum I would do if possible, because they have now need. Will you have them do so?

W. W. PHELPS.

To<sup>27</sup> John P. Green[e], Quincy, Illinois.

<sup>28</sup>All this day I spent in greeting and receiving visits from my brethren and friends; and truly it was a joyful time.

<sup>29</sup>Wednesday, [April] 24th.—Elder Parley P. Pratt and his fellow prisoners were brought before the Grand Jury of Ray county at Richmond, and Darwin Chase and Norman Shearer, were dismissed after being imprisoned about six months. Mrs. [Morris] Phelps, who had been with her husband in prison some days, hoping he would be released, now parted with<sup>30</sup> him, and with her little infant, started for Illinois. The number of prisoners at Richmond was<sup>31</sup> now reduced to four. King Follett having been added about the middle of April; he was dragged from his distressed family, just as they were leaving the State. Thus of all the prisoners, which were taken at an expense of two hundred thousand dollars, only two of the original ones, who belonged to the church, now remained; (Mr.<sup>32</sup> [Luman] Gibbs having denied the faith to try to save his life) these were Morris Phelps and Parley P. Pratt. All who were let to bail, were banished from the State, together with those who bailed them.

Thus none are like to have a trial by law but <sup>33</sup>Pratt and Phelps; and they are without friends or witnesses in the State.

<sup>34</sup>Elders Clark and Turley met Alpheus Cutler, Brigham Young, Orson Pratt, George A. Smith, John Taylor, Wilford Woodruff, John E. Page, Daniel Shearer, and others, going up from Quincy to Far West, to fulfill the revelation on the 26th [of April]<sup>35</sup>, and Clark and Turley turned and went back with them.

<sup>36</sup>Elder Markham visited at Tenney's Grove.

<sup>37</sup>This evening I met the church in council.

<sup>38</sup>Minutes of a council held in Quincy, on the 24th day of April A.D. 1839, when President Joseph Smith, jr., was called to the chair, and br[other]. A[lanson]. Ripley chosen clerk.

After prayer by the chairman, Elder John P. Greene arose and explained the object of the meeting. A document intended for publication was handed in, touching certain things relative to disorderly persons, who have or may represent themselves as belonging to our church; which document was approved by the council. After which it was

---

27. JSLB 2:7: omits "To"

28. Source: First sentence from JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:318; *JSP* 1:336; *APR*, 234).

29. Source: Following two paragraphs based on *LP*, 114-16 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

30. DHC 3:335: replaces "with" with "from"

31. Book C-1, 929: "were"; Book C-2, 77: "was" overwrites "were"

32. DHC 3:335: omits "Mr."

33. DHC 3:335: adds "Brothers"

34. Source: Based in part on TT [1845], 3 (transcription in vol. 8, III.13).

35. DHC 3:335: adds "of April"

36. Source: Possibly SM [1845].

37. Source: JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:318; *JSP* 1:336; *APR*, 234-35).

38. Source: RDft 1:54 instructs scribe to copy from JSLB 2:139-40 (HC). Cf. GCM, Bx 1, fd 1, 1-3.

Resolved firstly<sup>39</sup>, That President Joseph<sup>40</sup> Smith, jr. Bishop Knights<sup>41</sup>, and brother<sup>42</sup> A[lanson]. Ripley, visit Iowa Territory immediately, for the purpose of making a location for the church.

Resolved second, That the advice of the Conference, to the brethren in general is, that as many of them as are able, move north to Commerce, as soon as they possibly can.

Resolved third, That all the prisoners be received into fellowship.

Resolved fourth, That brother Mulholland be appointed Clerk pro tem.

Resolved fifth, That father Smith's case relative to his circumstances, be referred to the Bishops.

Resolved sixth, That br[other]. Rogers receive some money to remunerate him for his services in transacting business for the church in Missouri.

A[LANSON]. RIPLEY, Clerk.

<sup>43</sup>Thursday, [April] 25th.—I accompanied the committee to Iowa to select a location for the Saints.

<sup>44</sup>Elder Markham returned from Tenney's Grove to Far West, waiting the arrival of the brethren from Quincy.

[DN 4 (2 March 1854): 1]

<sup>45</sup>Friday, [April] 26th.—Early this morning, soon after midnight, the brethren arrived at Far West, and proceeded to transact the business of their mission according to the following minutes:

<sup>46</sup>At a Conference<sup>47</sup> held at Far West, by the Twelve, High Priests, Elders, and Priests, on the twenty sixth <sup>48</sup>of April, 1839, the following resolution was adopted:

<sup>49</sup>Resolved, That the following persons be no more fellowshipped in the Church of Jesus Christ<sup>50</sup> of Latter Day Saints, but excommunicated from the same, <sup>51</sup>viz:—Isaac Russell, Mary Russell, John Goodson and wife<sup>52</sup>; Jacob Scott, sen., and wife; Isaac Scott, Jacob Scott, jr., Ann Scott, sister Walton, Robert Walton, sister Cavanaugh, Ann Wanlass, W[illia]m. Dawson, jr., and wife, W[illia]m. Dawson, <sup>53</sup>sen., and wife, George Nelson, Joseph Nelson and wife, and

39. DHC 3:336: "first"

40. Book C-1, 929 (lighter ink): "<Joseph>" (FDR)

41. DHC 3:336: "Knight"

42. Book C-1, 929 (different ink): "{\brother/}" (TB)

43. Source: JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:318; *JSP* 1:336; *APR*, 235).

44. Source: Possibly SM [1845].

45. Source: Undetermined.

46. Source: RDft 1:55 instructs scribe to copy minutes from JSLB 2:138-39 (HC), which is an incomplete and inaccurate copy, and the MS original in GCM, Bx 1, fd 2, 1-2 (pos. JT), which TB apparently preferred for his transcription in Book C-1, 930-31. Cf. two other copies in GCM, Bx 1, fd 3, 1-3 (JM); and WWj, vol. 1b, 26 Apr. 1839 (*WWj* 1:326-27).

47. MS original: "~~council~~ <confirence>"

48. DHC 3:336: adds "day"

49. MS original: adds "~~It was~~"

50. MS original: "<Christ>" (JM)

51. Following names in different order in JSLB 2:138.

52. MS original: "Goodson's wife"; Book C-1, 930 (lighter ink): "Goodson{ } <and>" (TB)

53. Book C-1, 930: adds ellipses over erasure

mother<sup>54</sup>, William Warnock and wife, Jonathan<sup>55</sup> Maynard, Nelson Maynard, George Miller, John<sup>56</sup> Grigg and wife, <sup>57</sup>Luman Gibbs, Simeon Gardner, and Freeborn Gardner.

The council then proceeded to the building spot of the Lord's House; when the following business was transacted:—Part of a hymn was sung, on the mission of the Twelve.

Elder [Alpheus] Cutler, the master workman of the House, then recommenced<sup>58</sup> laying the foundation of the Lord's House, agreeably to Revelation, by rolling up a large stone near the southeast corner.

The following of the Twelve were present:—Brigham Young, Heber C. Kimball, Orson Pratt, John E. Page, and John Taylor, who proceeded to ordain Wilford Woodruff<sup>59</sup>, and George A.<sup>60</sup> Smith, (who had been previously nominated by the First Presidency, accepted by the Twelve, and acknowledged by the Church) to the office <sup>61</sup>of the Twelve, to fill the places of those who are fallen. Darwin Chase and Norman Shearer (who had just been liberated from Richmond prison, where they had been confined for the cause of Jesus Christ) were then ordained to the office of the Seventies.

The Twelve then offered up vocal prayer in the following order:—Brigham Young, Heber C. Kimball, Orson Pratt, John E. Page, John Taylor, Wilford Woodruff,<sup>62</sup> and<sup>63</sup> George A.<sup>64</sup> Smith<sup>65</sup>. After which we sung Adam-ondi-Ahman, and then the Twelve took their leave of the following saints<sup>66</sup>, agreeably<sup>67</sup> to the Revelation, viz: Alpheus Cutler, Elias Smith, Norman Shearer, William Burton, Stephen Markham, Shadrach Roundy, William O.<sup>68</sup> Clark, John W. Clark, Hezekiah Peck, Darwin Chase, Richard Howard, Mary Ann Peck, Artimesia<sup>69</sup> Grainger, Martha Peck, Sarah Grainger<sup>70</sup>, Theodore Turley, Hiram<sup>71</sup> Clark, and Daniel Shearer.

Elder Alpheus Cutler then placed the stone before alluded to in its regular position, after which in consequence of the peculiar situation of the Saints, he thought it wisdom to adjourn until some future time, when the Lord shall open the way; expressing his determination then to proceed with the building; <sup>72</sup>whereupon the Conference adjourned.

BRIGHAM YOUNG, President.

JOHN TAYLOR, Clerk.

54. JSLB 2:138: omits "and mother"

55. MS original: "Jotham"; Book C-1, 930 (lighter ink): "{Jothan/}" (TB)

56. MS original (pencil): "Br. <John>"; JSLB 2:138: replaces "John" with "B."

57. MS original, JSLB 2:138: add "George Walters"

58. Book C-2, 78: "recommen<c>ed"

59. DHC 3:337-38n includes a brief biography of WW written by FDR, Church Historian (1889-99).

60. MS original (pencil): "<A.>"; JSLB 2:138: omits "A."

61. DHC 3:338: adds "of Apostles and members of the quorum"

62. JSLB 2:138: reverses order of JT and WW

63. Book C-2, 79: "<and>" (prob. FDR)

64. MS original (pencil): "A."; JSLB 2:138: omits "A."

65. At this point, DHC 3:338-39n includes a biographical sketch of GAS taken from Book C-1, Addenda, 7, which BHR moved from the beginning of the next chapter (p. 341) and placed it in a footnote here.

66. MS original: "persons saints"; JSLB 2:139: omits "of the following saints"

67. DHC 3:339: "agreeable"

68. MS original, JSLB 2:139: "C."

69. Book C-1, 930, Book C-2, 79, DN, DHC 3:339: "Artimesia". On 26 Aug. 1845, the apostolic revisers wrote that it should be "Artimesia" (see vol. 7, IV.6).

70. Book C-1, 930: "Granger"

71. DHC 3:339: "Hyrum"

72. Remainder of paragraph and names of president and clerk added in pencil in MS original, and omitted in JSLB 2:139.

<sup>73</sup>Thus was fulfilled a Revelation of July 8th, 1838, which our enemies had said could not be fulfilled, as no Mormon was<sup>74</sup> permitted to be in the State.

[...]<sup>75</sup>

The brethren immediately returned to Quincy, taking with them the families from Tenney's Grove, &c.<sup>76</sup>

---

73. *Source*: Probably composed by WR (RDft 1:54), possibly based on following entry in WWj: "The events of this day are worthy of record for a Revelation of God & commandment is this day fulfilled & that to under Circumstances which to all human appearance could not have been done. The Lord had given a Commandment to the Twelve to assemble upon the building spot of the house of the Lord in far west Caldwell Co Mo on the 26th day of April & there take the parting hand with the Saints to go to the nations of the earth. (See Aug 10th 1838.) But persecution had arisen ... And not ownly so but the Missourians had sworn that the revelation above alluded to should not be fulfilled. It was in the midst of these imbaressments that we mooved forward to the building spot of the house of the Lord in the City of far west & held a Council & fulfilled the revelation & Commandment ..." (WWj, vol. 1b, 26 Apr. 1839; *WWj* 1:325-26).

74. DHC 3:339: replaces "was" with "would be"

75. DHC moves a paragraph dealing with the fulfillment of prophecy, which appears near the beginning of next chapter in *DN*, to this location (from p. 341 to pp. 339-40).

76. DHC 3:340: omits "&c."



23.

SAINTS SETTLE AT  
COMMERCE, ILLINOIS  
May 1839

[DN 4 (2 March 1854): 1 (cont.)]

[...]<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup>The committee continued to look at the different locations which were presented in Lee county, Iowa, and about Commerce, in Hancock county, Illinois.

<sup>3</sup>**George A. Smith, son of John and Clarissa Smith, was born June 26th, 1817, in Potsdam, St. Lawrence county, New York. When nine years old, he received a blow on the head which deprived him of his senses about three weeks. Five noted physicians decided that he must be trepanned or he would not recover. His father dismissed them on this decision, believing that God would heal his son; and he firmly believes that He did heal him in answer to the prayer of faith. He was early trained by his parents who were Presbyterians, to religious habits, and to a regular attendance in the Sabbath School. Hence he had early and anxious desires to know the way of life; but was not satisfied with the sects around<sup>4</sup>.**

**In the summer of 1830, when my father and my brother Don Carlos visited our<sup>5</sup> relatives in St. Lawrence county, George [A.] became convinced of the truth of the Book of Mormon, and from that time, defended the cause against those who opposed it.**

---

1. Book C-1, 931 (different ink): adds “\Addenda page 7/. [space] {\addenda page 14/}” (first insertion TB/second FDR). The first addendum is a biographical sketch of GAS, which begins with the next paragraph; the second addendum, which immediately follows the biography, pertains to the fulfillment of prophecy. Although the insertion point is located here, DN located them below.

2. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:318; *JSP* 1:336; *APR*, 235), which states that the committee did not return until 3 May.

3. Following five paragraphs giving a biographical sketch of GAS appear in Book C-1, Addenda, 7. The insertion point for this addendum appears at the beginning of the above paragraph, but DN inserted it here. It was incorporated when copied into Book C-2, 79, by FDR between 26 Aug.–1 Sept. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). DHC moves this material to a footnote at the end of the previous chapter (from p. 341 to pp. 338–39n). *Source*: “Geo. A Smith’s Life up to the date of his ordination into the Quorum of the Twelve” (JSHP, Bx 2), which has a note at top of p. 1: “This document to be placed come in after G A Smith ordination to the apostleship April 26th 1839 in Book C vol 3.” Inserted under GAS’s direction on 19 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1).

4. DHC 3:338: omits “around”

5. DHC 3:338: omits “our”

His mother was baptized in August 1831. His father was baptized on the ninth of January 1832, and ordained an Elder, having<sup>6</sup> been given up by the doctors to die of consumption. The weather was extremely cold, and the ice had to be cut.—From that time he gained health and strength.—George [A.] was baptized on the tenth of September 1832, and on the first of May 1838<sup>7</sup>, his father and family took leave of their old home and moved<sup>8</sup> to Kirtland, Ohio. George [A.] spent the season in laboring on the Temple, although much afflicted with inflammation in<sup>9</sup> the eyes.

On the fifth of May, 1834, he started for Zion in the camp, and acted his part well as my armor bearer, although still much afflicted with sore eyes. On the twenty eighth he was attacked by the cholera, but was delivered by faith. He was ordained into the first Seventy under my hands on the first of March 1835<sup>10</sup>, being 17 years old. He left on the fifth of June in company with Lyman Smith for the State of New York, to preach the gospel without purse or scrip. Traveled two thousand miles; baptized eight; held eighty meetings and returned on the 2d of November. Spent the winter in school much afflicted with the<sup>11</sup> rheumatism. In the spring, summer and fall of 1836, <sup>12</sup>preached in different parts of Ohio with good success. Returned and went to school in the winter. On the sixth of June, 1837, he took leave of me and started with my blessing for the south. After a successful mission of ten<sup>13</sup> months, mostly in Virginia, <sup>14</sup>returned and assisted his father in moving to Far West, Missouri. He<sup>15</sup> was ordained a High Counselor at Adam-ondi-Ahman and sent on a mission to the south<sup>16</sup>; returned about the 25th of December.

He visited me while I was<sup>17</sup> in Liberty Jail, when I made known to him that he was appointed to fill the place of Thomas B. Marsh in the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. He assisted in moving the Saints out of Far West, and returned with the Twelve to fulfil the Revelation concerning the foundation stone of the Temple at Far West<sup>18</sup>.

<sup>19</sup>As the Saints were passing away from the meeting, brother Turley said to Page and Woodruff, “stop a bit, while I bid Isaac<sup>20</sup> Russell good bye,” and knocking at his<sup>21</sup> door, called, Brother Russell! His wife answered, “Come in, it is brother Turley.” Russell replied, “it is not; he left here two weeks

---

6. DHC 3:338: replaces “having” with “He had” and starts new sentence

7. Book C-1, Addenda, 7, Book C-2, 79, DHC 3:338: “1833”

8. Book C-1, Addenda, 7, Book C-2, 79, DHC 3:338: “removed”

9. DHC 3:338: replaces “in” with “of”

10. MS draft: “<1835>”

11. Book C-1, Addenda, 7: omits “the”

12. DHC 3:339: adds “he”

13. Book C-2, 80: “{ \of ten/ }” (FDR)

14. DHC 3:339: adds “he”

15. MS draft: “~~On the 26th of June 1838~~ <He>”

16. DHC 3:339: adds “in company with Don Carlos Smith”

17. DHC 3:339: omits “I was”

18. DHC 3:339: “concerning the Twelve taking their leave of the Saints on the building site of the Temple at Far West”

19. This paragraph is from Book C-1, Addenda, 14. The insertion point for this addendum appears at the beginning of the first paragraph in this chapter, but *DN* inserted it here. Book C-2, 80, compresses seven lines of this text into four lined spaces (FDR). DHC moves this paragraph to end of previous chapter (from p. 341 to pp. 339-40). *Source*: Added 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6, Apostolic Review of Book C-1), possibly under HCK’s direction, who was present (CHOj 3:24; 6:10) and may have heard the story from Turley during his own investigation of Russell, which resulted in a letter he sent to church leaders in England informing them of Russell’s apostasy (cf. DHC 3:342; below in this chap.).

20. Book C-2, 80: “<Isaac>” (FDR)

21. DHC 3:339: replaces “his” with “the”



ago”; and appeared quite alarmed; but on finding it was <sup>22</sup>Turley, asked him to sit down; but he<sup>23</sup> replied, “I cannot, I shall lose my company.” “Who is your company?” inquired Russell<sup>24</sup>. “The Twelve.” “*The Twelve!*” “Yes, don’t you know that this is the twenty sixth, and the day the Twelve were to take leave of their friends on the foundation of the Lord’s House, to go to the Islands of the Sea? The Revelation is how fulfilled, and I am going with them.[”] Russell<sup>25</sup> was speechless; and Turley bid him farewell.

Wednesday, May 1st, 1839.—The following letter was communicated to the *Quincy Argus*, a weekly newspaper published at Quincy:—

<sup>26</sup>To the editor of the *Argus*—

Sir: In consequence of so great an influx of strangers, arriving in this place<sup>27</sup> daily, owing to their late expulsion from the State of Missouri, there must of necessity be; and we wish to state to the citizens of Quincy, and the vicinity, through the medium of your columns, that there are many individuals amongst the numbers<sup>28</sup> who have already arrived, as well as among those who are now on their way here, who never did belong to our church, and others who once did, but who for various reasons, have been expelled from our fellowship. Amongst <sup>29</sup>these there are some who have contracted habits which are at variance with the principles of moral<sup>30</sup> rectitude, (such as swearing, dram-drinking, &c.) which immoralities the church of Latter Day Saints is liable to be charged with, owing to our amalgamation <sup>31</sup>under our late existing circumstances. And as we as a people do not wish to lay<sup>32</sup> under any such imputation, we would also state, that such individuals do not hold a name nor a place amongst us; that we altogether discountenance everything of the kind; that every person once<sup>33</sup> belonging to our community, contracting or<sup>34</sup> persisting in such immoral<sup>35</sup> habits, have<sup>36</sup> hitherto been expelled from our society; and that all such as we may hereafter be informed of, we will hold no communion with<sup>37</sup>, but will withdraw our fellowship from them.

We wish further to state, that we feel ourselves laid under peculiar obligations to the citizens of <sup>38</sup>this place, for the patriotic feeling which has been manifested, and for the hand of liberality and friendship which has been extended to us in our late difficulties; and should feel sorry to see that philanthropy and benevolence abused by wicked and designing people, who under pretense of poverty and distress, should<sup>39</sup> try to work upon the feelings of the charitable

---

22. DHC 3:339: adds “Brother”

23. DHC 3:339: replaces “he” with “the latter”

24. Book C-1, Addenda, 14: “Russel”

25. Book C-1, Addenda, 14, Book C-2, 80: “Russel”

26. *Source*: MS copy of J. Taylor to Editor of *Quincy Argus*, 1 May 1839, CHL (MS 2562).

27. Book C-2, 80: “{ \place/ }” (FDR)

28. DHC 3:341: “number”

29. MS copy, 1: adds “~~both~~”

30. MS copy, 1: “<moral>”

31. DHC 3:341: adds “[with them]”

32. DHC 3:341: replaces “lay” with “lie”

33. DHC 3:341: omits “once”

34. Book C-1, 931, Book C-2, 80: replace “or” with “and”

35. MS copy, 2: “<immoral>”

36. DHC 3:341: “has”

37. DHC 3:341: moves “we will hold no communion with” to follow “and that”

38. MS copy, 2: adds “Quincy”

39. DHC 3:342: “would”

and humane, get into their debt without any prospect or intention of paying, and finally perhaps, we as a people be charged with dishonesty.

We say that we altogether disapprove of such practices, and we warn the citizens of Quincy against such <sup>40</sup>individuals, who may pretend to belong to our community.

By inserting this in your columns, you, sir, will confer upon us a very peculiar favor.

Written and signed<sup>41</sup> in behalf of the Church of Latter Day Saints, by your very humble servant,

JOHN TAYLOR.

<sup>42</sup>I this day purchased, in connection with others of the committee, a farm of Hugh White, consisting of one hundred and thirty-five acres, for the sum of five thousand dollars;<sup>43</sup> also a farm of Dr. Isaac Galland, lying west of the White purchase, for the sum of nine thousand dollars;<sup>44</sup> both of which were to be deeded to Alanson Ripley, according to the counsel of the committee; but Sidney Rigdon declared that “no committee should control any property which he had anything to do with”; consequently the Galland purchase was deeded to George W. Robinson, Rigdon’s son-in-law, with the express understanding, that he should deed it to the church, when the church had paid for it according to their obligation in the contract.

<sup>45</sup>A letter was received by the Presidency of the church in England, then at Preston, from President Heber<sup>46</sup> C. Kimball, stating that Isaac Russell<sup>47</sup> had apostatized, and styled himself the Prophet, and<sup>48</sup> Joseph had fallen. Elder Kimball said, the Spirit signified to him that Russell<sup>49</sup> was secretly trying to lead away the church at Alston, England, and wished the elders to see to it. The Spirit had manifested the same thing to Elder Richards, and he was deputed by a council of the Presidency to visit the Alston Branch.

<sup>50</sup>Friday, 3d.—I returned to Quincy.

<sup>51</sup>Elder Richards left Preston for Alston.

40. MS copy, 2: adds “characters”

41. MS copy, 2: “<and signed>”

42. Source: AR, 4.

43. The White purchase was made 30 Apr. 1839, and a down payment of \$1,500 was made by Alanson Ripley on 29 Oct. 1839 (see T. E. White and D. Hibard for H. White, Receipt to A. Ripley, 29 Oct. 1839, JScSup, fd 13, 45). On 23 Mar. 1840, Ripley deeded the White land to JS, and on 5 Oct. 1841 the property was deeded to JS as trustee-in-trust for the church (Hancock County, IL, Mortgage Book I, 95).

44. Galland sold the church three parcels of land, totaling 47.17 acres, on 30 Apr. 1839 for \$18,000 (Hancock County, IL, Deed Book G, 247). GWR deeded the Galland land to JS as trustee-in-trust for the church on 5 Oct. 1841 (Hancock County, IL, Mortgage Book I, 95).

45. Source: Based on JFj [1838–40], 55–59, under 9 June 1839 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.19). For the text of HCK’s 12 Mar. 1839 letter to Joseph Fielding, which was in private hands as of 1981, see vol. 8, III.16.

46. Book C-1, 932: “H.”

47. Book C-1, 932: “Russel”

48. Book C-1, 932: “a{\n/}\d/”; “n” probably *u.o.* “{s}”

49. Book C-1, 932: “Russel”

50. Source: JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (PJS 2:318; JSP 1:336; APR, 235).

51. Source: WRj mentions the reception of HCK’s letter on 12 Apr. 1839, the discussion of its contents on 28 Apr. and 1 May, and the mailing of a return letter to HCK on 2 May (WRj 1:94–95). Following the 1 May discussion of HCK’s letter, WR recorded: “Expected to start for Manchester Friday [3 May],” which he did at 11 a.m. (WRj 1:95). WR remained in the north preaching in various towns, including Alston, until 27 May, when he returned to Preston (WRj 1:95–97). See transcription in vol. 8, III.3.

<sup>52</sup>Saturday, 4th.—Elder Richards arrived at Alston, and discovered by stratagem that a letter had been received from Isaac Russell<sup>53</sup>, as follows:—

<sup>54</sup>Far West, January 30, 1839.

To the faithful: Brethren and sisters of the Church of Latter Day Saints in Alston:—

Dear Brethren:—Inasmuch as wisdom is only to be spoken amongst those who are wise: I charge you to read this letter to none but those who enter into a covenant with you to keep those things that are revealed in this letter from all the world, and from all the churches, except the churches to whom I myself have ministered, viz:—the church in Alston and the branches round about, to whom I ministered, and to none else; and to none but the faithful amongst you; and wo be to the man or woman that *breaketh* this covenant.

Now the Indians, who are the children of the Nephites and the Lamanites who are spoken of in the Book of Mormon, have all been driven to the western boundaries of the States of America, by the Gentiles, as I told you; they have now to be visited by<sup>55</sup> the gospel, for the day of their redemption is come, and the Gentiles have now well nigh filled up the measure of their wickedness, and will soon be cut off, for they have slain many of the people of the Lord, and scattered the rest; and for the sins of God's people, the Gentiles will now be suffered to scourge them from city to city, and from place to place, and few of all the thousands of the Church<sup>56</sup> of Latter Day Saints will stand to receive an inheritance in the land of promise, which is now in the hands of our enemies. But a few will remain and be purified as gold seven times refined; and they will return to Zion with songs of everlasting joy, to build up the old waste places, that are now left desolate.

Now the thing that I have to reveal to you is sacred, and must be kept with care; for I am not suffered to reveal it at all to the churches in this land, because of their wickedness and unbelief—for they have almost cast me out from amongst them, because I have testified of their sins to them, and warned them of the judgments that have yet to come upon them; and this thing that I now tell you, will not come to the knowledge of the churches until they are purified.

Now the thing is as follows:—The Lord has directed me, with a few others, whose hearts the Lord has touched, to go into the wilderness, where we shall be fed, and directed by the hand of the Lord until we are purified and prepared to minister to the Lamanites, and with us the Lord will send those three who are spoken of in the Book of Mormon, who were with Jesus after his resurrection, and have tarried on the earth to minister to their brethren in the last days.

Thus God is sending us before to prepare a place for you and for the remnant who will survive the judgments which are now coming on the Church of Latter Day Saints, to purify them, for we are sent to prepare a Zion, (as Joseph was before sent into Egypt) a city of Peace, a place of Refuge, that you may hide yourselves with us and all the saints in the due time of the Lord, before his indignation shall sweep away the nations.

These things are marvelous in our eyes, for great is the work of the Lord that he is going

---

52. Source: WRj 1:95 records his arrival at the Alston home of grocer John Sanders at 10:45 a.m. on 4 May 1839 (transcription in vol. 8, III.3).

53. Book C-1, 932: "Russel"

54. Source: Isaac Russell's letter is quoted in W. Richards, Alston, Eng., to J. Fielding and W. Clayton, Manchester, Eng., 7 May 1839, CHL (MS 5946). RDft 1:56 directs scribe to copy "(B Letter. to Fildi[n]g & Clayton)" (WR); WR's letter has a "B" on the cover.

55. Book C-1, 932: replaces "by" with "with"

56. MS Letter, 2: "<the Church>"

to accomplish. All this land will be redeemed by the hands of the Lamanites, and room made for you, when you hear again from me<sup>57</sup>. Abide where you are, and be subject to the powers that be amongst you in the church. Keep diligently the things I taught you, and when you read this, be comforted concerning me, for though you may not see me for some few years, yet as many of you as<sup>58</sup> continue faithful, will see me again, and it will be in the day of your deliverance. Pray for me always, and be assured that I will not forget you. To the grace of God I commend you in Christ. Amen.

ISAAC RUSSELL.

P.S.—We have not yet gone in the wilderness, but we shall go when the Lord appoints the time. If you should hear that I am<sup>59</sup> apostatized, believe it not, for I am doing the <sup>60</sup>work of the Lord.

I. R.

<sup>61</sup>Elder Richards being led by the Spirit of God, soon unfolded the sophistry and falsehood of this letter to the convincing of the Saints at Alston and Brampton, so as to entirely destroy their confidence in the apostate Russell<sup>62</sup>, although they had loved him as a father.

<sup>63</sup>Minutes of a General Conference held by the Church of Latter Day Saints at the Presbyterian camp ground, near Quincy, Adams county, Illinois, on Saturday, the 4th of May, 1839.

At a quarter past eleven o'clock, meeting was called to order, and Pres[iden]t. Joseph Smith, jr., appointed chairman.

A hymn was then sung, when Pres[iden]t. Smith made a few observations on the state of his peculiar feelings, after having been separated from the brethren so long, &c., &c.<sup>64</sup>, and then proceeded<sup>65</sup> to open the meeting by prayer.

After some preliminary observations by Elder J. P. Greene and Pres[iden]t. Rigdon, concerning a certain purchase of land in the Iowa Territory, made for the church by the Presidency, when<sup>66</sup> the following resolutions were unanimously adopted:

Resolved, 1st, That Almon W.<sup>67</sup> Babbitt<sup>68</sup>, Erastus Snow, and Robert B. Thompson, be appointed a traveling committee to gather up and obtain all the libelous reports and publications, which have been circulated against our church, as well as other historical matter connected with said church, that they possibly can<sup>69</sup> obtain.

57. MS Letter, 2: "<again> from me ~~again~~"

58. Book C-1, 933: "<as>" (TB)

59. DHC 3:344: replaces "am" with "have"

60. MS Letter, 2: adds "~~Lord's~~"

61. *Source*: WR's expansion of WRj 1:94-95, which records his preaching in Alston and Brampton, among other places, and JFj [1838-40], 55-59, under 9 June 1839 (transcribed in vol. 8, III.19).

62. Book C-1, 933: "Russel"

63. *Source*: RDft 1:56 instructs scribe to copy from JSLB 2:140-42 (HC), but parts also from MS Minutes in GCM, Bx 1, fd 4, 3-7 (JM). Meetings for 4-6 May 1839 mentioned in JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:319; *JSP* 1:338; *APR*, 235).

64. DHC 3:345: omits second "&c."

65. Book C-2, 82: "proceed<ed>" (FDR)

66. DHC 3:345: omits "when"

67. JSLB 2:140, Book C-1, 933: omit "W."; Book C-2, 82 (pencil): "<W>" (pos. WB)

68. Book C-2, 82: "Babbit"

69. JSLB 2:140, Book C-1, 933, Book C-2, 82: "can possibly"

Resolved, 2d, That Bishop [Vinson] Knights<sup>70</sup> be appointed, or received into the church in full bishopric.

Resolved, 3d, That this Conference do entirely sanction the purchase lately made for the Church in the Iowa Territory, and also the Agency thereof.

Resolved, 4th, That Elder Grainger be appointed to go to Kirtland and take the charge and oversight of the <sup>71</sup>House of the Lord, and preside over the general affairs of the church in that place.

Resolved, 5th, That the advice of this Conference to the brethren living in the Eastern States, is, for them to move to Kirtland, and the vicinity thereof, and again settle that place as a stake of Zion; provided they feel so inclined, in preference to their moving farther west.

Resolved, 6th, That George A. Smith be acknowledged<sup>72</sup> one of the Twelve Apostles<sup>73</sup>.

Resolved, 7th, That this Conference are entirely satisfied with, and give their sanction to the proceedings of the Conference of the Twelve and their friends, held on the Temple spot<sup>74</sup> at Far West, Missouri, on Friday, the 26th of April last.

Resolved, 8th, That they also sanction the act of the council held the same date and same place, in cutting off from the communion of said church, certain persons mentioned in the minutes thereof.

Resolved, 9th, That Elders Orson Hyde and William Smith be allowed the privilege of appearing personally before the next General Conference of the church, to give an account of their conduct; and that in the meantime they be both suspended from exercising the functions of their office.

Resolved, 10th, That the Conference do sanction the mission intended for the Twelve to Europe, and that they will do all in their power to enable them to go.

Resolved, 11th, That the subject of Elder Rigdon's going to Washington, be adjourned until tomorrow.

Resolved, 12th, That the next General Conference be held on the first Saturday in October next, at Commerce, at the house of Elder Rigdon.

Resolved, 13th, That we now adjourn until tomorrow at 10 o'clock, a.m.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr., President.

J. MULHOLLAND, Clerk.<sup>75</sup>

<sup>76</sup>This is to certify that at a General Conference held at Quincy, Adams county, Illinois, by the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, on Saturday the 4th day<sup>77</sup> of May, 1839,—President Joseph Smith, jr., presiding,—it was resolved,—That Almon W.<sup>78</sup> Babbitt<sup>79</sup>, Erastus Snow, and Robert B. Thompson be appointed a traveling committee to gather up and obtain all the libelous reports and publications which have been circulated against the Church of Jesus

---

70. DHC 3:345: "Knight"

71. JSLB 2:141: adds "~~Church~~"

72. JSLB 2:141, MS Minutes: replace "acknowledged" with "ordained to take the place of Thomas B. Marsh, as"; Book C-1, 934 (lighter ink): "{\be acknowledged/}" [*coe of about eight words*] (TB). This emendation is the work of the apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

73. JSLB 2:141, MS Minutes: omit "Apostles"; Book C-1, 934 (lighter ink): "\apostles/" (TB)

74. DHC 3:345: replaces "spot" with "site"

75. JSLB 2:142: omits names of president and clerk

76. Source: JSLB 2:47 (JM).

77. JSLB 2:47: omits "day"

78. JSLB 2:47: omits "W."; Book C-1, 934: "{\W.}"; Book C-2, 83: "{\W./}" (US)

79. Book C-1, 934, Book C-2, 83: "Babbit"

Christ of Latter Day Saints<sup>80</sup> as well as other historical matter connected with said church, which they can possibly obtain.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr., Chairman<sup>81</sup>.  
JAMES MULHOLLAND, Clerk.

<sup>82</sup>Sunday, 5th, 10 a.m. <sup>83</sup> Conference opened pursuant to adjournment as usual, by prayer and singing; when it was unanimously resolved, That this Conference send a delegate to the City of Washington, to lay our case before the General Government; and that President Rigdon be the delegate<sup>84</sup>.

Resolved, 2d, That Almon W.<sup>85</sup> Babbitt<sup>86</sup> be sent to Springfield, Illinois, clothed with authority, and required to set <sup>87</sup>to rights the church in that place in every way which may become necessary according to the order of the Church of Jesus Christ.

Resolved, 3d, That Colonel Lyman Wight be appointed to receive the affidavits which are to be sent to the City of Washington; after which the afternoon was spent in receiving<sup>88</sup> instruction<sup>89</sup> from the Presidency, and those of the Twelve who were present.

At 5 o'clock p.m., Conference adjourned, <sup>90</sup>according to the resolution of Saturday; namely, until the first Saturday in October next, at Commerce, Illinois.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr., Chairman<sup>91</sup>.  
JA[ME]S. MULHOLLAND, Clerk.

<sup>92</sup>Monday, 6th.—At a Conference held at Quincy, Illinois, on the 6th of May 1839,—President Joseph Smith, jr., presiding,—the following resolutions were unanimously agreed to:

Resolved, 1st, That the families of Elder Marks, Elder Grainger, and Bishop N. K. Whitney, be kept here amongst us for the time being.

Resolved, 2d, That Elder Marks be hereby appointed to preside over the church at Commerce, Illinois.

Resolved, 3d, That Bishop Whitney also go to Commerce, and there act in unison with the other bishops of the church.

Resolved, 4th, That brother Turley's gunsmith tools shall remain for the general use of the church until his return from Europe.

Resolved, 5th, That the following of the Seventies have the sanction of this council that they accompany the Twelve to Europe, namely: Theodore Turley, George Pitkin, Joseph

80. JSLB 2:47 (pencil): "~~the~~ <the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter D[a]y Saints> Church"

81. DHC 3:346: "President"

82. Source: RDft 1:56 instructs scribe to copy from JSLB 2:142 (HC). Cf. GCM, Bx 1, fd 4, 7-8 (JM).

83. JSLB 2:142: omits time, which comes from the MS Minutes.

84. JSLB 2:142, MS Minutes: replace "the delegate" with "appointed to that office"; Book C-1, 934 (lighter ink): "{\the delegate/}" (TB)

85. JSLB 2:142, MS Minutes: omit "W."; Book C-1, 934: "{W}"; Book C-2, 83 (pencil): "<W.>" (US)

86. Book C-1, 934, Book C-2, 83: "Babbit"

87. JSLB 2:142: adds "the church"

88. JSLB 2:142, MS Minutes: replace "receiving" with "hearing"

89. DHC 3:346: "instructions"

90. DHC 3:346: deletes remainder of paragraph

91. DHC 3:346: "President"

92. Source: RDft 1:56 instructs scribe to copy from JSLB 2:143-44 (HC). Cf. GCM, Bx 1, fd 4, 1-2, 5-6 (JM), which includes a finished copy and an emended draft.

Bates<sup>93</sup> Nobles<sup>94</sup>, Charles Hubbard, John Scott, Lorenzo D.<sup>95</sup> Young, Samuel Mulliner, Willard Snow, John Snider, William Burton, Lorenzo D.<sup>96</sup> Barnes, Milton Holmes, Abram O. Smoot, Elias Smith<sup>97</sup>; also the following High Priests, namely<sup>98</sup>:—Henry G. Sherwood, John Murdock, Winslow Farr, William Snow, Hiram<sup>99</sup> Clark.

Resolved, 6th, That it be observed as a general rule, that those of the Seventies who have not yet preached, shall not<sup>100</sup> for the future, be sent on foreign missions.

Resolved, 7th, That Elder J[ohn]. P. Greene be appointed to go to the City of New York and preside over the churches there, and in the regions round about.

I also gave the following letter to John P. Greene:—

<sup>101</sup>At a Conference meeting held by the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, in the town of Quincy, Adams county, Illinois, on Monday the 6th day of May 1839, Joseph Smith, jr., presiding, it was unanimously resolved, That Elder John P. Greene be appointed to go to the city of New York, and preside over<sup>102</sup> the Saints in that place and in the regions round about, and regulate the affairs of the church according to the laws and doctrines of said church; and he is fully authorized to receive donation monies<sup>103</sup> by the liberality of the saints for the assistance of the poor among us, who have been persecuted and driven from their homes in the State of Missouri; and from our long acquaintance with Elder Greene, and with his experience and knowledge of the laws of the Kingdom of God, we do not hesitate to recommend him to the Saints as one in whom they may place the fullest confidence, both as to their spiritual welfare, as well as to the strictest integrity in all temporal concerns with which he may be entrusted.

And we beseech the brethren, in the name of the Lord Jesus, to receive this brother in behalf of the poor with readiness and to abound unto him in a liberal manner; for “inasmuch as ye have done it unto the least of these, ye have done it unto me.”

Yours in the bonds of the everlasting gospel, though no longer a prisoner in the hands of the Missourians, and still faithful with the saints.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr., Chairman.

[DN 4 (16 March 1854): 1]

<sup>104</sup>Tuesday, 7th.—I was in council with the Twelve, and others at Quincy.

<sup>105</sup>Wednesday, 8th.—I was preparing to remove to Commerce, <sup>106</sup>counseling the brethren, &c.

93. Book C-1, 935: “{\Joseph Bates/}” (TB); Book C-2, 84 (darker ink): “\Joseph/ Bates” (TB)

94. DHC 3:347: “Noble”

95. JSLB 2:143, Book C-1, 935: omit “D.”; Book C-2, 84 (darker ink): “<D>” (TB)

96. JSLB 2:143: omits “D.”; Book C-1, 935, Book C-2, 84: “<D.>” (TB)

97. JSLB 2:143, Book C-1, 935: omit “Elias Smith”; Book C-2, 84 (darker ink): “<Elias Smith;>” (TB)

98. DHC 3:347: omits “namely”

99. Book C-1, 935: “Hirum”

100. JSLB 2:143, Book C-1, 935, Book C-2, 84: move “not” to follow “future”

101. Source: JSLB 2:45 (JM).

102. JSLB 2:45, Book C-1, 935, Book C-2, 84: replace “over” with “among”

103. DHC 3:347: replaces “donation monies” with “donations”

104. Source: JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:319; *JSP* 1:338; *APR*, 235).

105. Source: Probably a surmise based on JS’s 10 May 1839 removal to Commerce (cf. JSj [1839], 1; *PJS* 2:319; *JSP* 1:338; *APR*, 235).

106. DHC 3:348: adds “and engaged in”



<sup>107</sup>Quincy, Illinois, May 8th, 1839.

To all whom it may concern:

The undersigned citizens of Quincy, Illinois, take great pleasure in recommending to the favorable notice of the public, the bearer of this, John P. Greene. Mr. Greene is connected with the church of “Mormons” or “Latter Day Saints,” and makes a tour to the east for the purpose of raising means to relieve the sufferings of this unfortunate people, stripped as they have been of their all, and now scattered throughout this part of the State.

We say to the charitable and benevolent, you need have no fear but your contributions in aid of humanity will be properly applied if entrusted to the hands of Mr. Greene. He is authorized by his church to act in the premises; and we most cordially bear testimony to his piety and worth as a citizen.

Very respectfully yours:

SAMUEL HOLMES, Merchant.  
I. N. MORRIS, Attorney at Law, and Editor of *Argus*.  
THO[MA]S. CARLIN, Governor State of Illinois.  
RICHARD M. YOUNG, U.S. Senator.  
L. V. RALSTON, M.D.  
SAMUEL LEACH, Receiver of<sup>108</sup> Public Moneys.  
HIRAM RODGERS, M.D.  
J. T. HOLMES, Merchant.  
NICHOLAS WREN, Co[unty]. Clerk.  
C. M. WOODS, Clerk of Circuit Court, Adams Co., Illinois.

<sup>109</sup>Quincy, Illinois, May 8th, 1839.

To His Excellency the President of the United States,—the heads of Departments, and all to whom this may be shown:—

The undersigned citizens of Quincy, Illinois, beg leave to introduce to you the bearer, Rev. Sidney <sup>110</sup>Rigdon. Mr. Rigdon is a Divine, connected with the church of “Latter Day Saints,” and having enjoyed his acquaintance for some time past, we take great pleasure in recommending him to your favorable notice as a man of piety and a valuable citizen.

Any representation he may make, touching the object of his mission to your city, may be implicitly relied on.

Very respectfully yours:

SAMUEL HOLMES,  
THOMAS CARLIN,  
RICHARD M. YOUNG,  
I. <sup>111</sup>N. MORRIS,  
HIRAM ROGERS,  
J. T. HOLMES,  
NICHOLAS WREN,  
C. M. WOODS.

107. *Source*: JSLB 2:41–42 (JM). Cf. *FREM*, iv.

108. JSLB 2:42, Book C-1, 936: omit “of”; Book C-2, 84: “{of}”

109. *Source*: JSLB 2:44 (JM).

110. JSLB 2:44, Book C-1, 936: add “A.”

111. Book C-1, 936, Book C-2, 85: replace “I.” with “J.”

<sup>112</sup>Thursday, 9th.—I started with my family for Commerce, Hancock Co[unty]., and stayed this night at uncle John Smith's<sup>113</sup>, at Green Plains, where we were most cordially received.

<sup>114</sup>Friday, 10th.—I arrived with my family at the White Purchase, and took up my residence in a small log house on the bank of the river, about one mile south of Commerce City, hoping that I and my friends may here find a resting place for a little season at least.

<sup>115</sup>Quincy, Ill[inois]., 10th May, 1839.

The bearer the<sup>116</sup> Rev. Sidney <sup>117</sup>Rigdon, is a member of a society of people called "Mormons" or "Latter Day Saints," who have been driven from the State of Missouri, by order of the Executive of that State, and who have taken up their residence in and about this place in large numbers. I have no hesitation in saying that this people have been most shamefully persecuted, and cruelly treated by the people of Missouri.

Mr. Rigdon has resided in and near this place for three or four months, during which time his conduct has been that of a gentleman, and a moral and <sup>118</sup>worthy citizen.

SAM[UE]L. LEECH.

<sup>119</sup>Monday, May 13th.—I was engaged in general business at home, and in transacting a variety of business with brother Oliver Granger, and gave him the following letter:—

<sup>120</sup>Commerce, Illinois, 13th May, 1839.

Joseph Smith, jr., Sidney Rigdon, and Hyrum Smith, Presiding Elders of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, do hereby certify and solemnly declare unto all the saints scattered abroad, and send unto them greeting: That we have always found President Oliver Granger to be a man of the most strict integrity and moral virtue; and in fine to be a man of God.

We have had long experience and acquaintance with br[other]. Granger. We have entrusted vast business concerns to him, which have been managed skillfully to the support of our characters and interest as well as that of the church; and he is now authorized by a General Conference to go forth and engage in vast <sup>121</sup>and important concerns as an Agent for the church, that he may fill a station of usefulness in obedience to the commandment of God, which was given unto him July 8th, 1838, which says: "Let him (meaning br[other]. Granger) contend earnestly for the redemption of the First Presidency of my church, saith the Lord."

We earnestly solicit the saints scattered abroad to strengthen his hands with all their might, and to put such means into his hands, as shall enable him to accomplish his lawful designs and purposes, according to the commandments and according to the instructions which he shall

112. Source: Except for part about staying with John Smith, this entry from JSj [1838–39], 7 (JM) (PJS 2:309; APR, 230). Entry pertains to movements of JM, rather than JS, who remained in Commerce (see WWj, vol. 1b, 18 May 1839; WWj 1:332; PJS 2:309n2).

113. Book C-1, 936 (lighter ink): "{\at uncle John Smith's/} [eoe]" (TB); RDft 1:56: replaces "at Uncle John Smith's" with "with Stephen Markham"

114. Source: An elaboration based on JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (PJS 2:319; JSP 1:338; APR, 235).

115. Source: JSLB 2:44 (JM).

116. DHC 3:349: omits "the"

117. JSLB 2:44: adds "<A.>"

118. Book C-2, 85: adds ellipses over erasure

119. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (PJS 2:319; JSP 1:339; APR, 235).

120. Source: JSLB 2:45–46 (JM).

121. JSLB 2:46: adds "business"

give unto them. And that they entrust him with moneys, lands, chattels, and goods, to assist him in this <sup>122</sup>work; and it shall redound greatly to the interest and welfare, peace and satisfaction of my saints, saith the Lord God, for this is an honorable Agency which I have appointed unto him, saith the Lord. And again verily thus saith the Lord, I will lift up my servant Oliver, and beget for him a great name on the earth, and among my people, because of the integrity of his soul: therefore, let all my saints abound unto him, with all liberality and long suffering, and it shall be a blessing on their heads.

We would say unto the Saints abroad, let our hearts abound with grateful acknowledgments unto God our Heavenly Father, who hath called us unto his holy calling by the revelation of Jesus Christ, in these last days, and has so mercifully stood by us, and delivered us out of the seventh trouble, which happened unto us in the State of Missouri. May God reward our enemies according to their works. We request the prayers of all the saints, subscribing ourselves their humble brethren in tribulations in the bonds of the everlasting gospel.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
SIDNEY RIGDON,  
HYRUM SMITH.

<sup>123</sup>To the Presidency of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, Greeting:

I beg leave to call your attention to a subject of considerable importance to our church, and which if not attended to is calculated (in my humble opinion) to raise a prejudice in <sup>124</sup>a considerable portion of the community and destroy those benevolent and philanthropic feelings which have been manifested towards us as a people by a large portion of this community: I have reference to the letters of br[other]. Lyman Wight, which have been inserted in the Quincy Whig. I am aware that upon a cursory view of these, nothing very objectionable may appear; yet if they are attentively considered, there will be found very great objections to them indeed; for instance, in condemning the Democracy of Missouri, why condemn that of the whole Union?—and why use such epithets as “Demagogue” to T[homas]. H. Benton for not answering his letter when it is very probable that he had not received it?

Yesterday I was waited on by Mr. Morris, who asked me what was intended by such publications, and why we should come out against the Democracy of the Nation, when they were doing all in their power to assist us; it was something which he could not understand, and wished to know if we as a people countenanced such proceedings.—I told him for my part, I was sorry that his <sup>125</sup>letters had ever made their appearance, and believed that such a course was at variance with the sentiments of the greater part of our people.

Yesterday I brought the subject before the authorities of the church who are here, where it was manifest that his conduct was not fellowshiped, and the brethren wished to disavow all connection with such proceedings, and appointed a committee to wait on brother Wight, to beg of him not to persist in the course, which, if not nipped <sup>126</sup>in the bud, will probably bring persecution with all its horrors upon an innocent people, by the folly and imprudence of one individual.

From information I understand that the feelings of the Governor are very much hurt by the course which is pursued. I think we ought to correct the public mind on this subject,

---

122. Book C-2, 85: adds ellipses over erasure

123. *Source*: JSLB 2:7-11 (JM).

124. JSLB 2:7: adds “the minds of”

125. DHC 3:351: replaces “his” with “these”

126. Book C-1, 938, Book C-2, 86: “nipt”

and as a church, disavow all connections with politics.—By such a measure<sup>127</sup> we may in some measure<sup>128</sup> counteract the baneful influence which his letters have occasioned. But if such a course which he (br[other]. Wight) has adopted, be continued, (as I understand that he intends to do) it will block up our way, and we can have no reasonable prospect of obtaining justice from the authorities of the Union, whom we wantonly condemn before we have made application. The same feelings are beginning to be manifested in Springfield by those who have been our friends there.

The Whigs are glad of such weapons, and make the most of them. You will probably think I am a little too officious, but I feel impressed with the subject; I feel for my brethren. The tears of widows, the cries of orphans, and the moans of the distressed, are continually present in my mind; and I want to adopt and continue a course which shall be beneficial to us; but if through the imprudence and conduct of isolated individuals, three, four, or five years hence, our altars should be thrown down, our houses<sup>129</sup> destroyed, our brethren slain, our wives widows<sup>130</sup>, and our children<sup>131</sup> orphans, your<sup>132</sup> unworthy brother wishes to lift up his hands before God, and appeal to Him and say, Thou who knowest all things, knowest that I am innocent in this matter.

I am with great respect, gentlemen,

Yours in the bonds of Christ,

R. B. THOMPSON.

P.S. If you do not intend to be in Quincy this week, would you favor us with your opinion on the subject?

R. B. THOMPSON<sup>133</sup>

Quincy, Monday morning, 13th May, 1839.

<sup>134</sup>State of Missouri, Richmond,  
Ray county, May 13th, 1839.

To the Honorable Austin A. King, Judge of the Court of this and the adjoining counties:—

Honorable Sir:—Having been confined in prison near seven months, and the time having now arrived when a change of venue can be taken in order for the further prosecution of our trials; and the time having come, when I can speak my mind freely, without endangering the lives<sup>135</sup> of any but myself, I now take the liberty of seriously objecting to a trial anywhere within the bounds of the State, and of earnestly praying to your Honor and to all the authorities, civil and military, that my ease may come within the law of banishment, which has been so rigorously enforced upon near ten thousand of our society, including my wife, and little ones,<sup>136</sup> with all my witnesses and friends.

My reasons are obvious, and founded upon notorious facts, which are known to you, sir, and to the people in general of this Republic, and therefore need no proof. They are as fol-

127. JSLB 2:10: replaces “measure” with “course”

128. DHC 3:352: omits “we may in some measure”

129. JSLB 2:10, Book C-1, 938: “Homes”

130. DHC 3:352: “widowed”

131. DHC 3:352: adds “made”

132. Book C-1, 938: adds ellipses over erasure

133. JSLB 2:11, Book C-1, 939, Book C-2, 87: “R.B.T.”

134. *Source*: LP, 171–77 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

135. LP, 172: adds “or liberties”

136. LP, 172: adds “together”

lows:—First, I have never received any protection by law, either of my person, property or family, while residing in this State, to which I first emigrated in 1831. Secondly, I was driven by force of arms from Jackson county, wounded and bleeding, in 1833; while my house was burned, my crops and provisions<sup>137</sup> robbed from me or destroyed; and my land kept from me until now, while my family was driven out without shelter, at the approach of winter. Thirdly, these crimes still go unpunished, notwithstanding I made oath before the Honorable Judge Riland<sup>138</sup>, then Circuit Judge of that District, to the foregoing outrages; and I also applied in person to His Excellency Daniel Dunklin, then Governor of the State, for redress and protection, and a restoration of myself and about 1,200 of my fellow-sufferers, to our rights—but all in vain.

Fourthly, my wife and children have now been driven from our house<sup>139</sup> and improvements in Caldwell county, and banished from the State on pain of death, together with about ten thousand of our society, including all my friends and witnesses; and this by the express orders of His Excellency, Lilburn W. Boggs, Governor of the State of Missouri, and by the vigorous execution of his<sup>140</sup> order, by Generals Lucas and Clark, and followed up by murders, rapes, plunderings, thefts and robberies of the most inhuman character by a lawless mob, who have from time to time for more than five years past, trampled upon all law and authority, and upon all the rights of man.

Fifthly, all these inhuman outrages, and crimes go unpunished, and are unnoticed by you, sir, and by all the authorities of the State.

Sixthly, the legislature of the State has approved of and sanctioned this act of banishment, with all the crimes connected with it, by voting some two hundred thousand dollars, for the payment of troops engaged in this unlawful, unconstitutional, and treasonable enterprise. In Monarchical Governments, the banishment of criminals, after their trial and legal condemnation has been frequently resorted to—but the banishment of innocent women and children from house and home, and country, to wander in a land of strangers, unprotected and unprovided for, while their husbands and fathers are retained in dungeons to be tried by some other law, is an act unknown in the annals of history, except in this single instance in the nineteenth century, when it has actually transpired in a republican State, where the Constitution guarantees to every man the protection of life and property, and the rights<sup>141</sup> of trial by jury. These are outrages which would put monarchy to the blush, and from which the most despotic tyrants of the dark ages would turn away with shame and disgust. In these proceedings, Missouri has enrolled her name on the list of immortal fame—her transactions will be handed down the stream of time to the latest posterity, who will read with wonder and astonishment the history of proceedings which are without a parallel in the annals of time. Why should the authorities of the State strain at a gnat and swallow a camel? Why be so strictly legal as to compel me<sup>142</sup> through all the forms of a slow and legal prosecution previous to my enlargement<sup>143</sup>, out of a pretense of respect to the<sup>144</sup> laws of the statute<sup>145</sup>, which have been openly trampled upon and disregarded towards us from the first to the last? Why not include me in the general wholesale banishment of our society, that I may support my family which are now reduced to beggary, in a land of strangers? But when the authorities

---

137. DHC 3:353: “provision”

138. DHC 3:353: “Ryland”

139. DHC 3:353: replaces “house” with “home”

140. *LP*, 174, Book C-1, 939: replace “his” with “this”

141. *LP*, 175, Book C-1, 940, Book C-2, 88: “right”

142. DHC 3:354: adds “to go”

143. DHC 3:354: adds “[being set free]”

144. DHC 3:354: omits “the”

145. DHC 3:354: replaces “statute” with “state”

of the State shall redress all these wrongs; shall punish the guilty according to law; and shall restore my family and friends to all the rights of which we have been unlawfully deprived, both in Jackson and all other counties; and shall pay all the damages which we as a people have sustained; then I shall believe them sincere in their professed zeal for law and justice; then shall I be convinced that I can have a fair trial in the State. But until then, I hereby solemnly protest against being tried in this State, with the full and conscientious conviction, that I have no just grounds to expect a fair and impartial trial.

I therefore most sincerely pray your Honor, and all the authorities of the State, to either banish me without further prosecution; or I freely consent to a trial before a Judiciary of the United States.

With sentiments of high consideration and due respect, I have the honor to subscribe myself your honor's most humble and obedient; &c.:

P[ARLEY]. P. PRATT.

To<sup>146</sup> Austin A. King.

<sup>147</sup>Tuesday, [May] 14th.—I returned to Quincy.

<sup>148</sup>Wednesday and Thursday, 15th and 16th.—Was engaged in a variety of business relating to the general welfare of the church.

<sup>149</sup>Commerce, May 17th, 1839.

To the editors of the *Quincy Whig*:

Gentlemen:—Some letters in your paper have appeared over the signature of Lyman Wight in relation to our affairs with Missouri. We consider it is Mr. Wight's privilege to express his opinion in relation to political or religious matters, and we profess no authority in the case whatever; but we have thought, and do still think, that it is not doing our cause justice to make a political question of it in any manner whatever.

We have not at any time thought there was any political party, as such, chargeable with the Missouri barbarities, neither any religious society, as such. They were committed by a mob composed of all parties, regardless of all difference<sup>150</sup> of opinion either political or religious.

The determined stand in this State, and by the people of Quincy in particular, made against the lawless outrages of the Missouri mobbers by all parties in politics and religion have entitled them equally to our thanks and our profoundest regards<sup>151</sup>, and such, gentlemen, we hope they will always receive from us. Favors of this kind ought to be engraven on the rock, to last forever.

We wish to say to the public, through your paper, that we disclaim any intention of making a political question of our difficulties with Missouri, believing that we are not justified in so doing.

We ask the aid of all parties, both in politics and religion, to have justice done us and obtain redress. We think, gentlemen, in so saying, we have the feelings of<sup>152</sup> our people generally, however, individuals may differ; and we wish you to consider the letters of Lyman Wight, as

146. *LP*, 177: omits "To"

147. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:339; *APR*, 235); however, it was JM who returned to Quincy, not JS (cf. *PJS* 2:309n2, 320n1).

148. *Source*: Probably WR's surmise (RDft 1:57).

149. *Source*: JSLB 2:14–15 (JM). Cf. *FREM*, v.

150. DHC 3:355: "differences"

151. JSLB 2:15, Book C-1, 941, Book C-2, 89: "regard"

152. DHC 3:355: adds "[i.e. represent]"

the feelings and views of an individual, but not of the society as such. We are satisfied that our people as a body, disclaim all such sentiments and feel themselves equally bound to both parties in this State, as far as kindness is concerned, and good will; and also believe that all political parties in Missouri are equally guilty.

Should this note meet the public eye through the medium of your paper, it will much oblige your humble servants:

SIDNEY RIGDON,<sup>153</sup>  
JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
HYRUM SMITH.

---

153. DHC 3:355: reverses the order of JS's and SR's names



24.

JOSEPH SMITH RECOUNTS  
MISSOURI PERSECUTIONS

May-June 1839

[DN 4 (16 March 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Saturday, [May] 18th.—Finished my business at Quincy for the present.

Sunday, 19th.—I arrived at home <sup>2</sup>this evening.

<sup>3</sup>Monday 20th.—At home, attending to a variety of business.

Tuesday, 21st.—To show the feelings of that long scattered branch of the house of Israel, the Jews, I here quote a letter written by one of their number, on hearing that his son had embraced Christianity:—

<sup>4</sup>Breslau, May 21st, 1839.

My Dear Son:—I received the letter of the Berlin Rabbi, and when I read it, there ran tears out of my eyes in torrents; my inward parts shook, my heart became as a stone! How!<sup>5</sup> do you not know that the Lord sent me already many hard tribulations?<sup>2</sup>—That many sorrows do vex me? But this new harm which you are about to inflict, makes me forget all the former, does horribly surpass them; as well respecting its sharpness, as its stings! I write you this laying<sup>6</sup> on my bed, because my body is afflicted not less than my soul, at the report that you was<sup>7</sup> about to do something which I had not expected from you. I fainted; my nerves and feelings sunk<sup>8</sup>, and only by the help of a physician for whom I sent immediately, I am able to write these lines to you with a trembling hand.

Alas! you my son, whom I have bred, nourished and fostered; whom I have strength-

---

1. *Source*: This and next paragraph based on JSj [1839], 1 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:339; *APR*, 235); however, it was JM who went to Quincy on 14 May and returned to Commerce (Nauvoo) on 19 May, not JS (cf. *PJS* 2:309n2, 320n1).

2. DHC 3:356: adds “[Commerce]”

3. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:339; *APR*, 235); however, passage probably pertains to JM.

4. *Source*: *T&S* 3 (15 Apr. 1842): 754–55. Reprinted from the *Jewish Intelligencer*.

5. DHC 3:356: “Now”

6. DHC 3:356: “lying”

7. DHC 3:356: “were”

8. DHC 3:356: “sank”

ened spiritually as well as bodily, you will commit a crime on me! Do not shed the innocent blood of your parents, for no harm have we inflicted upon you; we are not conscious of any guilt against you; but at all times we thought it our duty to show to you, our first born, all love and goodness. I thought I should have some cheering account of you, but, alas! how terribly have I been disappointed!

But to be short; your outward circumstances are such that you may finish your study or <sup>9</sup>pain. Do you think that the Christians to whom you will go over by changing your religion, will support you and fill up the place of our fellow believers? Do not imagine that your outward reasons, therefore, if you have any, are nothing. But out of true persuasion, you will as I think, not change our true and holy doctrine, for that deceitful, untrue and perverse doctrine of Christianity.

What! will you give up a pearl, for that<sup>10</sup> which is nothing, which is of no value in itself? But you are light-minded; think of the last judgment; of that day when the books will be opened and hidden things will be made manifest; of that day when death will approach you in a narrow pass; when you cannot go out of the way! Think of your death bed, from which you will not rise any more,<sup>11</sup> but from which you will be called before the judgment seat of the Lord!

Do you not know, have you not heard, that there is over you an all-hearing ear, and an all-seeing eye? That all your deeds will be written in a book and judged hereafter? Who shall then assist you when the Lord will ask you with a thundering voice, Why hast thou forsaken that holy law which shall have an eternal value; which was given by my servant Moses, and no man shall change it? Why hast thou forsaken that law, and accepted instead of it lying and vanity?

Come therefore, again to yourself, my son! remove your bad and wicked counselors: follow my advice, and the Lord will be with you! Your tender father must conclude because of weeping.

A. L. LANDAU, Rabbi.

[DN 4 (30 March 1854): 1]

<sup>12</sup>Commerce, Illinois, May 22d, 1839.

Sir:—In answer to yours of the 23d April to John P. Greene, we have to say that we shall feel obliged by your not making yourself officious concerning any part of our business in future. We shall be glad if you can make off<sup>13</sup> a living by minding your own affairs; and we desire (so far as you are concerned) to be left to manage ours as well as we<sup>14</sup> can. We would much rather lose our properties than <sup>15</sup>be molested by such interference; and as we consider that we have already experienced much over officiousness at your hand<sup>16</sup>, concerning men and things pertaining to our concerns, we now request once for all, that you will avoid all interference, in our business or affairs, from this time henceforth and forever: *Amen*.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.

To W. W. Phelps.<sup>17</sup>

9. DHC 3:357: adds “[suffer]”

10. Book C-2, 90: “<that>” (FDR)

11. Book C-1, 942: adds ellipses over erasure of about six words

12. *Source*: JSLB 2:7 (JM).

13. Book C-1, 942: “\off/” (TB), which is consistent with JSLB 2:7; DHC 3:358: omits “off”

14. JSLB 2:7, Book C-1, 942: “{y}ours ... {\we/}”; “we” *u.o.* “{you}”. The change in both documents apparently done by the apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

15. DHC 3:358: adds “to”

16. DHC 3:359: “hands”

17. JSLB 2:7: omits “To”; DHC 3:359: omits this line

<sup>18</sup>A bill of indictment having been found by a Grand Jury of the mob in Ray county, against Parley P. Pratt, Morris Phelps, and Luman Gibbs, for murder, and <sup>19</sup>King Follet for robbery, and having obtained a change of venue to Boone county, they were handcuffed together two by two on the morning of the twenty-second [of May]<sup>20</sup>, with irons round the wrist of each, and in this fix<sup>21</sup> they were taken from prison and placed in a carriage. The people of Richmond gathered round<sup>22</sup> them to see them depart, but none seemed to feel for them except two persons. One of these (General Parks' lady) bowed to them through the window, and looked as if touched with pity. The other was a Mr. Hugins, merchant of Richmond, who bowed with some feeling as they passed.

They then took leave of Richmond, accompanied by Sheriff Brown and four guards with drawn pistols, and moved on<sup>23</sup> towards Columbia. It had been thundering and raining for some days, and the thunder storm lasted with but short cessations from the time they started till they arrived at the place of destination, which was<sup>24</sup> five days. The small streams were swollen so as to be<sup>25</sup> very difficult in crossing<sup>26</sup> them.

<sup>27</sup>Thursday, [May] 23d.—The prisoners came to a creek which was several rods over<sup>28</sup> with a strong current and very deep. It was towards evening, and far from any house, and they had received no refreshment<sup>29</sup> through the day. Here they<sup>30</sup> halted and knew not what to do; they waited awhile for the water to fall, but it fell slowly. All hands were hungry and impatient, and a lowery night seemed to threaten that the creek would rise before morning by the falling of additional rains.

In this dilemma, some counseled one thing, and some another. At last Mr. Pratt proposed to the sheriff, that if he would take off his irons, he would go into the water to bathe; and by that means ascertain the depth<sup>31</sup> and bottom; this he<sup>32</sup> consented to do<sup>33</sup> after some hesitation; he<sup>34</sup> then plunged into the stream, and swam across, and attempted to wade back; he found it to be a hard bottom, and the water about up to his chin, but a very stiff current.

After this Mr. Brown the Sheriff, undertook to cross on his horse, but was thrown off and buried in the stream. This accident decided the fate of the day. Being now completely wet, he<sup>35</sup> resolved to effect the crossing of the whole company, bag and baggage. Accordingly several stripped off their clothes and mounted on the bare backs of the horses; and taking their clothing, saddles, and arms, together with one trunk, and bedding, upon their shoulders, they bore them across in safety without

---

18. Source: First part of this paragraph based on *AAP*, 50; second part and next paragraph from *LP*, 116–18 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

19. DHC 3:360: adds “against”

20. DHC 3:360: adds “[of May]”

21. DHC 3:360: replaces “fix” with “condition”

22. DHC 3:360: “around”

23. DHC 3:360: omits “on”

24. DHC 3:360: replaces “was” with “took”

25. DHC 3:360: replaces “so as to be” with “making it”

26. DHC 3:360: replaces “in crossing” with “to cross”

27. Source: Following three paragraphs from *LP*, 118–20 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

28. DHC 3:360: replaces “over” with “across”

29. DHC 3:360: “refreshments”

30. DHC 3:360: replaces “they” with “the company”

31. DHC 3:361: “depths”

32. DHC 3:361: replaces “he” with “the sheriff”

33. DHC 3:361: omits “do”

34. DHC 3:361: replaces “he” with “Brother Pratt”

35. DHC 3:361: replaces “he” with “the sheriff”

wetting. This was done by riding backwards and forwards, across the stream several times. In this sport and labor, prisoners, guards, and all, mingled in mutual exertion. All was now safe but the carriage. Mr. Phelps then proposed to swim that across, by hitching two horses before it; and he mounted on one of their backs, while Pratt and one of the guards swam by the side of the carriage to keep it from upsetting by the force of the current; and thus Paul like<sup>36</sup>, they all got safe to land. Everything was soon replaced; and<sup>37</sup> prisoners in the carriage, and the suite on horseback, moving swiftly on, and at dark arrived at a house of entertainment, amid a terrible thunder storm.

<sup>38</sup>I was busy in counseling, writing letters, and attending to general business of the Church, this week.

Friday, 24th.—<sup>39</sup>

<sup>40</sup>Commerce, Illinois, May 24th, 1839.

Dear Sir:—I write you to say that I have selected a town lot for you just across the street from my own: and immediately beside yours, one for Mr. Cleveland. As to getting the temporary house erected which you desired, I have not been able to find any person willing to<sup>41</sup> take hold of the job, and have thought that perhaps you may meet with some person at Quincy who could take it in hand.

Business goes on with us in quite a lively manner, and we hope soon to have <sup>42</sup>brother Harris and family, with other friends, to assist us in our arduous but glorious undertaking.

Our families are all well, and as far as we have knowledge, all things are going on quietly and smoothly.

Yours, &c.,

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.

**To Mr. G. W. Harris.**<sup>43</sup>

**Quincy, Ill.**<sup>44</sup>

<sup>45</sup>Commerce, Illinois, May 24th, 1839.

Dear Mr. and Mrs. Cleveland:—We write you in order to redeem our pledge, which we would have done before now, but that we have been in the midst of the bustle of business of various kinds ever since our arrival here. We however beg to assure you and your family that we have not forgotten you, but remember you all, as well as the great kindness and friendship which we have experienced at your hands.

We have selected a lot for you, just across the street from our own, beside Mr. Harris; and in the orchard according to the desire of sister Cleveland, and also on the river, adapted to Mr. Cleveland's trade.

36. DHC 3:361: omits "Paul like"

37. DHC 3:361: omits "and"

38. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (PJS 2:320; JSP 1:339; APR, 235), which (on Monday, 20 May) describes the activities of "this week" using similar wording.

39. DHC 3:362: omits date

40. *Source*: JSLB 2:11-12 (JM).

41. Book C-1, 944 (lighter ink): adds at *eoln* "\to/" (FDR)

42. JSLB 2:12: adds "the acquisition of"

43. JSLB 2:12: omits "To"; DHC 3:362: omits this line

44. This line appears only in JSLB 2:12.

45. *Source*: JSLB 2:12 (JM).

The various <sup>46</sup>business attendant on settling a new place, goes<sup>47</sup> on here at present briskly; while all around and concerning us, goes on quietly and smoothly as far as we have knowledge. It would give us great pleasure to have you all here along with us, which<sup>48</sup> we hope to enjoy in a short time. I have also remembered Rufus Cleveland to the Surveyor, and am happy to be able to say that the land in Iowa far exceeds my expectations, both as to richness of soil, and beauty of locations, more so than any part of Missouri which I have seen.

We desire to have Mr. Cleveland and his brother come up here as soon as convenient, and see our situation, when they can judge for themselves, and we shall be happy to see them, and give them all information in our power. Father Smith and family arrived here yesterday; his health rather improves. We all join in wishing<sup>49</sup> our sincere respects to each and every one<sup>50</sup> of you, and remain your very sincere friends:

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
EMMA SMITH.

Addressed to<sup>51</sup> Judge Cleveland and Lady, Quincy, Illinois.

<sup>52</sup>Commerce, Illinois, 24th May, 1839.

Dear Sir:—This is to inform you that Elder Granger has succeeded in obtaining the house which he had in contemplation when he left here; and as we feel very anxious to have the society of Bishop Whitney and his family here, we hope that he will use<sup>53</sup> every exertion consistent with his own business and convenience, to come up to us here at Commerce as soon as possibly<sup>54</sup> in his power.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.

Bishop N. K. Whitney.

<sup>55</sup>[Friday, May 24.] The Twelve made a report of the proceedings of the Seventies, which I sanctioned. I also approve<sup>56</sup> of the Twelve going to England.

<sup>57</sup>This day the <sup>58</sup>prisoners crossed the Missouri river at “Arrow Rock,” so called from the Lamanites coming from all quarters to get a hard rock from the bluff <sup>59</sup>to make arrow points. During this journey they<sup>60</sup> had slept each night on their backs on the floor; being all four of them ironed together with hand and ankle irons made for the purpose. This being done, the windows and doors were all fastened, and then five guards with their loaded pistols staid in the room and one at a time sat up and watched during the night. This cruelty was inflicted on them more to gratify a wicked dispo-

---

46. DHC 3:362: adds “[lines of]”

47. DHC 3:362: “go”

48. DHC 3:362: replaces “which” with “and this”

49. DHC 3:362: replaces “wishing” with “sending”

50. JSLB 2:12: omits “one”; Book C-1, 944: “<one>” (prob. TB)

51. JSLB 2:12: omits “Addressed to”

52. *Source*: JSLB 2:13 (JM). Cf. JSLB, Bx 2, fd 3, 64–65.

53. JSLB 2:13: omits “use”

54. DHC 3:363: replaces “possibly” with “it is”

55. *Source*: Based on JSLB 2:47 (JM).

56. DHC 3:363: “approved”

57. *Source*: This paragraph based on *LP*, 120–21 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

58. DHC 3:363: adds “Missouri”

59. DHC 3:363: adds “out of which”

60. Book C-1, 945: “{\they/}” (TB); DHC 3:363: replaces “they” with “the prisoners”

sition than anything else; for it was in vain for them to have tried to escape, without any irons being put on them; and had they wished to escape, they had a tolerable<sup>61</sup> good opportunity at the creek.

**Saturday**—<sup>62</sup>

<sup>63</sup>Commerce, Hancock Co., Ill[inois]., 25th May, 1839.

Dear Sir:—In answer to yours of the 13th inst[ant]. to us concerning the writings of Col[onel]. Lyman Wight on the subject of our late sufferings in the State of Missouri; we wish to say, that as to a statement of our persecutions being brought before the world as a political question, we entirely disapprove of it. Having, however, great confidence in Col[onel]. Wight's good intentions, and considering it to be the indefeasible right of every free man to hold his own opinion in politics as well as <sup>64</sup>religion, we will only say that we consider it to be unwise, as it is unfair, to charge any one party in politics, or any one sect of religionists, with having been our oppressors, since we so well know<sup>65</sup> that our persecutors in the State of Missouri were of every sect, and of all parties, both religious and political; and as brother Wight disclaims having spoken evil of any administration, save that of Missouri, we presume that it need not be feared that men of sense will now suppose him wishful to implicate any other.

We consider that in making these remarks, we express the sentiments of the church in general as well as our<sup>66</sup> own individually, and also when we say in conclusion, that we feel the fullest confidence, that when the subject of our wrongs has been fully investigated by the authorities of the United States, we shall receive the most perfect justice at their hands; whilst our unfeeling oppressors shall be brought to condign punishment, with the approbation of a free and enlightened people, without respect to sect or party.

We desire that you may make whatever use you may think proper of this letter, and remain your sincere friends and brethren:

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
HYRUM SMITH,  
SYDNEY RIGDON.

Elder R[obert]. B. Thompson.

<sup>67</sup>[Saturday, May 25.] This day I met the Twelve in council. The case of brother William Smith came up for investigation and was disposed of.

<sup>68</sup>Sunday, 26th.—I spent <sup>69</sup>at home. Elders Orson Pratt and John Taylor preached.

As the prisoners in Missouri arrived at their new house in Boone county, I will give a sketch <sup>70</sup>from Mr. <sup>71</sup>Pratt's testimony:

<sup>72</sup>When we arrived within four miles of Columbia, the bridge had been destroyed from

---

61. DHC 3:363: "tolerably"

62. DHC 3:363: omits "Saturday"

63. *Source*: JSLB 2:11 (JM).

64. Book C-1, 945: adds "to"; Book C-2, 92: "{to}"

65. Book C-1, 945: "<know>" (TB)

66. Book C-1, 945: "<our>" (TB)

67. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:339; *APR*, 235).

68. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

69. DHC 3:364: adds "the day"

70. DHC 3:364: adds "of their experience"

71. DHC 3:364: replaces "Mr." with "Elder"

72. *Source*: *LP*, 121-25. Deleted material supplied here in bold type.

over a large and rapid river; and here we were some hours in crossing over in a tottish canoe, having to leave our carriage, together with our bedding, clothing, our trunk of clothing, books, papers, &c.; but all came to us in safety after two days. After we had crossed the river, our guards having swam their horses, mounted them, and we proceeded towards Columbia, the prisoners walking on foot, being fastened together two by two by the wrists. After walking two or three miles, Mr. Brown hired a carriage, and we rode into Columbia. It was about sunset on Sunday evening, and as the carriage and our armed attendants drove through the streets, we were gazed upon with astonishment by hundreds of spectators, who thronged the streets, and looked out at the windows, doors, &c., anxious to get a glimpse of the strange beings called Mormons.

On our arrival we were immediately hurried to the prison, without going to a tavern for refreshment, although we had traveled a long summer day without anything to eat. When unloosed from our fetters, we were ushered immediately from the carriage<sup>73</sup> into the jail, and the<sup>74</sup> next moment a huge trap door was opened, and down we went into a most dismal dungeon, which was full of cobwebs and filth above, below, and all around the walls, having stood empty for near<sup>75</sup> two years. Here was neither beds, nor chairs, nor water, nor food, nor friends, nor any one on whom we might call, even for a drink of cold water; for Brown and all others had withdrawn to go where they could refresh themselves. When thrust into this dungeon, we were nearly ready to faint with hunger, and thirst, and weariness.

We walked the room for a few moments, and then sank down upon the floor in despondency, and wished to die; for like Elijah of old, if the Lord had enquired "What dost thou here?" we could have replied, "Lord, they have killed the<sup>76</sup> prophets, and thrown down thine altars, and have driven out all thy saints from the land, and we only are left to tell<sup>77</sup> thee; and they seek our lives, to take them away; and now therefore, let us die."

**Our feelings were the more melancholy, because here we had hoped to see our families from Illinois, or some kind friend from thence, as we had not heard from them for some time, and were now within one hundred miles of them; but we neither saw nor heard of any one who knew us, or cared for us. We now sent to the post-office, but got no letters. Our families and friends, it seemed, had even neglected to write to us—this seemed the more unaccountable, as they had long expected us at Columbia.**

When we had been in the dungeon some time, our new jailer handed down some provisions, but by this time, I was too faint to eat; I tasted a few mouthfuls, and then suddenly the trap door opened, and some chairs were handed to us, and the new sheriff Mr. Martin, and his deputy Mr. Hamilton, entered our dungeon and talked so kindly to us, that our spirits again revived in some measure. This night we slept cold and uncomfortable; having but little bedding. Next morning we were suffered to come out of the dungeon, and the liberty of the upper room was given us through the day ever afterwards.

We now began to receive kind treatment from our jailer, and from our new sheriff; for it was Mr. Brown that had caused all our neglect and sufferings the previous evening. **It was his business to have taken us from the carriage to a hotel, and refreshed us, previous to our being committed to jail, after causing us to travel all day without eating, or refreshment of any kind.** Our jail in Columbia was a large wooden block building with two apartments; one was occupied by the jailer and his family and the other by the prisoners. **Our dungeon I have already described as disagreeable and gloomy; its walls consist of three tiers of hewn**

---

73. DHC 3:365: omits "from the carriage"

74. DHC 3:365: omits "the"

75. DHC 3:365: "nearly"

76. *LP*, 123, DHC 3:365: replace "the" with "thy"

77. Book C-1, 946: "\tell/" (TB)



**timber, which are in all about a yard thick; it is lighted by two small windows, about sixteen inches square each, and fortified with three rows of large iron grates.**

<sup>78</sup>Monday, 27th.—I was at home.

<sup>79</sup>Commerce, Hancock Co[unty]., Ill[inois]., 27th May, 1839.

Father Bigler<sup>80</sup>.—

Dear Sir:—We have thought well to write you by brother Markham on the subject of our purchase of lands here, in order to stir up your pure mind to a remembrance of the situation in which we have been placed by the act of the councils of the church having appointed us a committee to transact business here<sup>81</sup> for the church. We have, as is known to the church in general, made purchases and entered into contracts and promised payments of moneys, for all of which we now stand responsible.

Now as money seems to come in too slowly, in order that we may be able to meet our engagements, we have determined to call upon the liberality of Father Bigler<sup>82</sup>, through the agency of brother Markham, and request that he will place in his hands for us, the sum of five or six hundred dollars, for which he shall have the security of <sup>83</sup>said committee, also through the agency of br[other]. Markham, and the thanks of the church besides.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.,  
V[INSON]. KNIGHT.

To<sup>84</sup> Mr. Mark<sup>85</sup> Bigler<sup>86</sup>, Quincy, Ill[inois].

<sup>87</sup>Commerce, Ill[inois]., 27th May, 1839.

Dear Sir: Having last week received a letter from br[other]. R[obert]. B. Thompson, concerning your late writings in the Quincy Whig, and understanding thereby that the church in general at<sup>88</sup> Quincy were rather uneasy concerning these matters, we have thought best to consider the matter of course, and accordingly being in council on Saturday last, the subject was introduced, and discussed at some length, when an answer to br[other]. Thompson's letter was agreed to and sanctioned by the council, which answer I expect will be published, and of course you will have an opportunity to see it.

It will be seen by that letter, that we do not at all approve of the course which you have thought proper to take, in making the subject of our sufferings a political question. At the same time, you will perceive that we there express what we really feel: that is, a confidence in your good intentions in so doing<sup>89</sup>. And (as I took occasion to state to the council) knowing your integrity of principle, and steadfastness in the cause of Christ, I feel not to exercise even the privilege of counsel on the subject, save only to request, that you will endeavor to bear in mind

78. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

79. Source: JSLB 2:13 (JM).

80. JSLB 2:13, Book C-1, 946: "Bigler"

81. JSLB 2:13: "<here>"

82. JSLB 2:13, Book C-1, 947, Book C-2, 94: "Bigler"

83. JSLB 2:13, Book C-1, 947, Book C-2, 94: add "the"

84. JSLB 2:13: omits "To"

85. JSLB 2:13: replaces "Mark" with "John"; Book C-1, 947: "{\Mark/}" (TB)

86. JSLB 2:13, Book C-1, 947, Book C-2, 94: "Bigler"

87. Source: JSLB 2:13-14 (JM).

88. DHC 3:366: replaces "at" with "in"

89. DHC 3:367: omits "in so doing"

the importance of the subject, and how easy it might be to get into <sup>90</sup>a misunderstanding with the brethren concerning it; and though last, not least, that whilst you continue to go upon your own credit, you will also steer clear of making the church appear as either supporting or opposing you in your politics, lest such a course may have a tendency to bring about persecution on the church, where a little wisdom and caution may avoid it.

I do not know that there is any occasion for my thus cautioning you in this thing, but having done so, I hope it will be well taken, and that all things shall eventually be found to work together for the good of the Saints.

I should be happy to have you here to dwell amongst us, and am in hopes soon to have that pleasure. I was happy to receive your favor of the 20th inst[ant]., and to observe the contents; and beg to say in reply, that I shall attend to what you therein suggest, and shall feel pleasure at all times to answer any requests of yours, and attend to them also in the best manner possible.

With every possible feeling of love and friendship for an old fellow prisoner, and brother in the Lord, I remain sir, your sincere friend:

JOSEPH SMITH, jr.

To<sup>91</sup> Col[onel].<sup>92</sup> Lyman Wight, Quincy, Ill[inois].

<sup>93</sup>**Commerce, Hancock Co., Ill., 27th May 1839.**<sup>94</sup>

To the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, Greeting:—

From our knowledge of the great<sup>95</sup> sacrifices made by the bearer, br[other]. Stephen Markham, in behalf of the welfare of us, and the church generally, and from the great trust which we have oftentimes reposed in him, and as often found him trustworthy, not seeking his own aggrandizement, but rather that of the community. We feel warranted in commissioning him to go forth amongst<sup>96</sup> the faithful, as our agent, to gather up and receive such moneys<sup>97</sup>, in money or otherwise as shall enable<sup>98</sup> us to meet our engagements which are now about to devolve upon us, in consequence of our purchases here for the church; and we humbly trust that our brethren generally will enable him to come to our assistance before our credit shall suffer on this account.

JOSEPH SMITH, jr., P[residing]. E[lder].

<sup>99</sup>Thursday [Tuesday]<sup>100</sup>, [May] 28th.—I was at home.

<sup>101</sup>When the <sup>102</sup>prisoners arrived at Columbia, they applied to Judge Reynolds for a special term of court to be holden for their trials. The petition was granted, and July first was appointed for the sitting of the court.

90. JSLB 2:14: adds “difficulty”

91. JSLB 2:14: omits “To”

92. DHC 3:367: omits “Col[onel]”

93. *Source*: JSLB 2:46–47 (JM).

94. DHC 3:367: omits this line

95. DHC 3:367: replaces “great” with “good”

96. DHC 3:367: “among”

97. DHC 3:367: replaces “moneys” with “means”

98. JSLB 2:47: adds “him”

99. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

100. Day of week for 28 and 29 May incorrect in all sources.

101. *Source*: *LP*, 126 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

102. DHC 3:368: adds “Missouri”

<sup>103</sup>Monday [Wednesday] [May] 29th.—I was about home until the latter part of the week, when I went to Quincy in company with my council<sup>104</sup>.

<sup>105</sup>I continued to assist in making preparations to lay our grievances before the General Government, and many of the brethren were making their reports of damages sustained in Missouri. I wrote as follows:

<sup>106</sup>Quincy<sup>107</sup>, June 4th, 1839.

Bill of damages against the State of Missouri on account of the sufferings<sup>108</sup> and losses sustained therein.

March 12th, 1838. I<sup>109</sup> with my family arrived in<sup>110</sup> Far West, Caldwell county, after a journey of one thousand miles being eight weeks on my journey, enduring great affliction in consequence of prosecution, &c.<sup>111</sup>, and expending two or three hundred dollars<sup>112</sup>.

Soon after my arrival at that place, I was informed that a number of men living in Daviess county (on the Grindstone<sup>113</sup> Forks) had offered the sum of one thousand dollars for my scalp;—persons to whom I was an entire stranger, and of whom I had no knowledge<sup>114</sup>. In order to attain their end, the roads were frequently waylaid for me<sup>115</sup>, &c.<sup>116</sup> At one time in particular, when watering my horse on Shoal creek, I distinctly heard three or four guns snapped at me. I was credibly informed also, that Judge King, of the Fifth Judicial Circuit, gave encouragement to individuals to carry into effect their diabolical designs, and has frequently stated that I ought to be beheaded on account of my religion.

In consequence of such expressions from Judge King and others in authority, my enemies endeavored to take every<sup>117</sup> advantage of me, and heaping abuse, getting up vexatious lawsuits, and stirring up the minds of the people against me and the people with whom I was connected, although we had done nothing<sup>118</sup> to deserve such treatment, but were busily engaged in our several advocations<sup>119</sup>, and desirous to live on peaceable and friendly terms with all men. In consequence of such threats and abuse which I was<sup>120</sup> continually subject to, my family were kept in continual state of alarm, not knowing any morning what would befall me from day to day, particularly when I went from home.

103. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

104. DHC 3:368: "Counselors"

105. Source: Probably surmised by WR (RDft 1:58).

106. Source: JSLP, Bx 4, fd 8, 3-10 (RBT) (*MRP*, 346-50). This MS original is paginated (1-8) and bears a file notation in the left margin of p. 1: "Joseph's Bill of Damages vs Missouri-June 4 1839." Apparently, this document became the basis for "Extract, from the Private Journal of Joseph Smith, Jr.," *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 2-9.

107. DHC 3:368: omits "Quincy"

108. DHC 3:368: "suffering"

109. DHC 3:368: moves "I" to follow "family"

110. DHC 3:368: replaces "in" with "at"

111. DHC 3:368: omits "&c."

112. MS Original, 1: "about two hundred dollars"

113. DHC 3:368: "Grinstone"

114. MS Original, 1: adds "of"

115. MS Original, 1: omits "me"; Book C-1, 948: "<me>" (US)

116. DHC 3:368: omits "&c."

117. Book C-2, 95: "<every>" (FDR)

118. DHC 3:368: adds "[on our part]"

119. DHC 3:368: "vocations"

120. MS Original, 1: "I was" overwrites "we were"

On<sup>121</sup> the latter part of Sept[ember]. 1838, I went to the lower part of the county of Caldwell for the purpose of selecting a location for a town. When on my journey, I was met by one of our friends with a message from De Witt in Carrol county stating that our brethren who had settled in that place, were, and had for some time been surrounded by a mob, who had threatened their lives, and had shot several times at them. Immediately on hearing this strange intelligence, I made preparations to start, in order if possible to allay the feeling<sup>122</sup> of opposition, if not to make arrangements with those individuals of whom we had made purchases, and to whom I was responsible and holden for part of the purchase money.

I arrived there on the [blank space]<sup>123</sup> day of September, and found the account which I heard was correct. Our people were surrounded by a mob, <sup>124</sup>their provisions nearly exhausted. Messengers were immediately sent to the Governor, requesting protection; but instead of lending any assistance to the oppressed, he stated that the quarrel was between the Mormons and the mob, and <sup>125</sup>they must fight it out.

#### [DN 4 (13 April 1854): 1]

Being now almost destitute of provisions, and having suffered great distress, and some of the brethren having died in consequence of their privations and sufferings, and<sup>126</sup> I had then the pain of beholding some of my fellow-creatures perish in a strange land, from the cruelty of a mob. Seeing no prospect of relief, the brethren agreed to leave that place and seek a shelter elsewhere,—after having their houses burnt down, their cattle driven away, and much of their property destroyed.

Judge King was also petitioned to afford us some assistance. He sent a company of about one hundred men; but instead of affording us any relief, we were told by General Parks <sup>127</sup>that he could afford none, in consequence of the greater part of his company, under their officer, Capt[ain]. Samuel Bogart, having mutinied. About seventy wagons left De Witt for Caldwell, and during their journey were continually insulted by the mob, who threatened to destroy us, and shot at us<sup>128</sup>. In our journey several of our friends died and had to be interred without a coffin, and under such circumstances, <sup>129</sup>was<sup>130</sup> extremely distressing. Immediately on my arrival at Caldwell, I was informed by General Doniphan from Clay county, that a company of about eight hundred were marching towards a settlement of our brethren in Daviess county, and he advised one of the officers<sup>131</sup> that we<sup>132</sup> should immediately go to protect our brethren in Daviess county, (in what he called White's<sup>133</sup> Town) until he should get the militia to put them

---

121. DHC 3:369: replaces “On” with “In”

122. MS Original, 2, Book C-1, 949: “feelings”

123. There is also a space in Book C-1, 949. The space was noted by the apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (cf. vol. 7, IV.6), and again by TB on 2 Dec. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.7), but never filled. MS Original, 2 (pencil): “on the [space] day <September>”; T&S 1:3: “about the first of October”

124. DHC 3:369: adds “and”

125. Book C-1, 949: adds “that”

126. DHC 3:369: omits “and”

127. DHC 3:369: adds “[who commanded them]”

128. MS Original, 3: “<and shot at us>”

129. DHC 3:369: adds “this”

130. MS Original, 3, Book C-1, 949: “which were”; Book C-2, 96 (darker ink): “w{\as/} [eoe]”

131. MS Original, 3: “<one of the officer[s] to call>”

132. MS Original, 3: “we” overwrites “he”

133. DHC 3:369: “Whit’s”

down.<sup>134</sup> A company of militia to the number of sixty<sup>135</sup> who were<sup>136</sup> on their route to that place, he ordered back, believing as he said<sup>137</sup>, that they were not to be depended upon; and to use his own language, were “damned rotten hearted.”

Lieut.-Col[onel]. Hinkle<sup>138</sup>, agreeable<sup>139</sup> to the advice of General Doniphan and a number of our brethren, volunteered to go to Daviess<sup>140</sup> to render what assistance they could. My labors having been principally expended in Daviess county, where I intended to take up my residence; and having a house in building, and having other property there, I hastened up to that place; and<sup>141</sup> while I was there, a number of the brethren’s houses<sup>142</sup> were burnt, and depredations were continually committed,—such as driving off horses, cattle, sheep, &c., &c.

Being deprived of shelter, and others<sup>143</sup> having no safety in their houses, which were<sup>144</sup> scattered; and being alarmed<sup>145</sup> at the approach of the mob, they had to flock together; their sufferings were very great in consequence of their defenseless situation—being exposed to the weather, which was extremely cold, a large snow storm having just fallen.

In this state of affairs, General Parks arrived at<sup>146</sup> Daviess<sup>147</sup>, and was at the house of Colonel Wight when the intelligence was brought that the mob were burning houses, &c.; and also that men, women, and children were flocking into the village for safety. Colonel Wight, who held a commission in the fifty-ninth regiment under his<sup>148</sup> command<sup>149</sup>, asked him what steps should be taken. He<sup>150</sup> told him that he must immediately call out his men, and go and put them down.

Immediately<sup>151</sup> preparations were made<sup>152</sup> to raise a force to quell the mob, who<sup>153</sup> on ascertaining that<sup>154</sup> we were determined to bear such treatment no longer, but to make a vigorous effort to subdue them; and likewise being informed of the orders of General Parks, broke up their encampment and fled.

Some of the inhabitants in the immediate neighborhood, who seeing no prospects of driving us by force, resorted to stratagem, and actually set fire to their own houses, (miserable log houses<sup>155</sup> after having removed their property and effects) and then sent information to the

---

134. MS Original, 3: adds “~~immediately a company~~”

135. MS Original, 3: “<to the number of sixty>”

136. MS Original, 3: adds “~~going~~”

137. MS Original, 3: “<as he said>”

138. MS Original, 3: “<Lieut> Colenel ~~Hinkle~~ <[Hanks?]>”

139. DHC 3:370: “agreeably”

140. DHC 3:370: adds “county”

141. MS Original, 3: “<My labors ... and>”

142. DHC 3:370: “houses belonging to the brethren”

143. MS Original, 3: “<others>”

144. DHC 3:370: replaces “which were” with “because of their being”

145. MS Original, 3: “continually <being alarmed>”

146. DHC 3:370: replaces “at” with “in”

147. DHC 3:370: adds “county”

148. DHC 3:370: adds “[Parks]”

149. MS Original, 4: “<who held ... command>”

150. DHC 3:370: replaces “he” with “General Parks”

151. DHC 3:370: omits “Immediately”

152. DHC 3:370: adds “at once”

153. Book C-1, 950: omits “who”

154. Book C-1, 950: replaces “that” with “which”; Book C-2, 97 (darker ink): “{\who on ascertaining that/}” (FDR)

155. MS Original, 4: omits “miserable log houses”; Book C-1, 950: “<[miserable log Houses]>” (TB). Added by apostolic reviewers on 29 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

Governor, stating that our brethren were committing depredations and destroying their property, burning houses, &c.

On the retreat of the mob from Daviess county[,] I returned home to Caldwell. On my arrival there, I understood that a mob had commenced hostilities in the borders of Caldwell; had taken some of our people prisoners; burnt some houses, and had done <sup>156</sup>considerable damage. Immediately Capt[ain]. Patten was ordered out by Lieut.-Col. <sup>157</sup>Hinkle to go against them, and about daylight next morning came up with them. Upon the approach of our people they <sup>158</sup>fired upon them; and after discharging their pieces, fled with great precipitation.

In this affray, Capt[ain]. Patten fell a victim to that spirit of mobocracy which has prevailed to such an extent; along with two others<sup>159</sup>; others were severely wounded. On the day after this affray, Captain Patten sent for me to pray for him, which request I complied with, and then returned to my home.

There continued to be great commotion in the county, caused by the conduct of the mob, who were continually burning houses, driving off horses, cattle, &c., and taking prisoners, and threatening death to all the Mormons. Amongst the cattle driven off, were two cows of mine.

On the 28th of October, a large company of armed soldiers<sup>160</sup> were seen approaching Far West, and encamped about one mile from the town.—The next day I was waited upon by Lieut[enant].-Colonel<sup>161</sup> Hinkle, who stated that the officers of the militia requested an interview with us in order to come to some amicable settlement of the difficulties which then existed<sup>162</sup>; they, the officers, not wishing, under the present circumstances to carry into effect the exterminating orders they had received. I immediately complied with the request, and in company with Messieurs Rigdon, Robinson, Wight, and Pratt, <sup>163</sup>proceeded to meet the officers of the militia, but instead of treating us with respect, and as persons desirous to accommodate matters<sup>164</sup>, <sup>165</sup>to our astonishment we were delivered up as prisoners of war, and taken into their camp as such. It would be in vain for me to give any idea of the scene which now presented itself in the camp. The hideous yells of more than a thousand infuriated beings, whose desire was to wreak their vengeance upon me, and the rest of my friends, was truly awful, and enough to appall the stoutest heart.

In the evening we had to lie down on the cold ground, surrounded by a strong guard. We petitioned the officers to know why we were thus treated; but they utterly refused to hold any conversation with us. The next day they held a court martial upon us and sentenced me with the rest of the prisoners to be shot; which sentence was to be carried into effect on Friday morning in the public square, as they say<sup>166</sup>, <sup>167</sup>an ensample to the rest of the members; but through the kind providence of God, their murderous sentence was not carried into execution.<sup>168</sup> The

156. Book C-1, 950: adds "some"; Book C-2, 97: "<some>" (FDR)

157. MS Original, 4: "<lieutenant> Colonel"

158. DHC 3:370: replaces "they" with "the mob"

159. DHC 3:370: moves "along with two others" above to follow "Capt[ain]. Patten"

160. MS Original, 5: "~~militia~~ <armed sold[ier]s>". This insertion is followed on next line with another incomplete insertion: "<There were three rode up>"

161. MS Original, 5: omits "Lieut."

162. MS Original, 5: "subsisted"; Book C-1, 950: "{\ex/}isted". This emendation was done by the apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

163. MS Original, 5: "& Amasa Lyman & Hiram Smith my Brother"

164. MS Original, 5: replaces "our astonishment" with "~~treat for peace~~ <accomodate matters>"

165. MS Original, 5: adds "we were"; Book C-2, 97: adds erasure

166. DHC 3:371: "said"

167. DHC 3:371: adds "as"

168. MS Original, 6: reads at *coln*: "\but through/ <the kind ... executed>"

militia then went <sup>169</sup>to my house and drove my family out of doors under sanction of General Lucas<sup>170</sup>, and carried away all my property.

Having<sup>171</sup> an<sup>172</sup> opportunity of speaking to General Wilson, and on asking him the cause of such strange<sup>173</sup> proceedings, I told him that I was a democrat, and had always been a supporter of the Constitution. He answered, "I know that, and that is the reason why I want to kill you, or have you killed."

We were led into the public square, and after considerable entreaty, we were permitted to see our families, being attended with<sup>174</sup> a strong guard. I found my family in tears, expecting that they<sup>175</sup> had carried into effect their sentence; they clung to my garments with weeping. I<sup>176</sup> requested to have a private<sup>177</sup> interview with my wife in an adjoining room, but was refused; when taking my departure from my family, it was almost too painful for me. My children<sup>178</sup> clung to me, and were thrust away at the point of the swords of the soldiery. We were then removed to Jackson county under the care of General Wilson; and during our stay <sup>179</sup>there, we had to sleep on the floor with nothing but a mantle for our covering, and a stick of wood for our pillow, and had to pay for our own board.

While we were in Jackson county<sup>180</sup>, General Clark with his troops arrived in Caldwell, and sent an order for our return, holding out the inducement that we were to be reinstated to our former privileges; but instead of being taken to Caldwell<sup>181</sup>, we were taken to Richmond, <sup>182</sup>where we were immured in prison and bound in chains. After we were thus situated, we were under the charge of Colonel Price of Chariton county, who suffered us to be abused in every manner which the people thought proper.

Our situation at this time was truly painful.—We were taken before the<sup>183</sup> court of inquiry; but in consequence of the proceedings<sup>184</sup> of the mob, and their threats, we were not able to get such witnesses as would have been serviceable; even those we had were abused by the State's Attorney, and the court, and were not permitted to be examined by the court as the law directs. We were committed to Liberty jail, and petitioned Judge Turnham for a writ of habeas corpus; but <sup>185</sup>owing to the prejudice of the jailer, all communication was entirely cut off. However, at length we succeeded in getting a petition conveyed to the judge, but he neglected to pay<sup>186</sup> any attention to it for fourteen days, and kept us in suspense. He then ordered us to appear before him; but he utterly refused to hear any of our witnesses, which

---

169. MS Original, 6: adds "~~and saluted~~"

170. MS Original, 6: replaces "Lucas" with "Clark"

171. DHC 3:371: replaces "Having" with "I had"

172. MS Original, 6, Book C-1, 951: omit "an"; Book C-2, 98: "<an>" (FDR)

173. Book C-2, 98: "<strange>" (FDR)

174. DHC 3:371: replaces "with" with "by"

175. DHC 3:371: replaces "expecting that they" with "they having believed that the mob"

176. MS Original, 6: omits "I"; Book C-1, 951: "\/" at *bold* partly in margin (TB)

177. MS Original, 6: "<private>"

178. MS Original, 6: "child"; Book C-1, 951: "child\ren/" (US)

179. MS Original, 6: adds "in"

180. MS Original, 6, Book C-1, 951: omit "county"

181. DHC 3:372: adds "county"

182. DHC 3:372: adds "Ray county"

183. DHC 3:372: "a"

184. MS Original, 7, Book C-1, 951, Book C-2, 98: "proceeding"

185. MS Original, 7: adds "~~on account~~"

186. MS Original, 7: "<to> paying"



we had been at a great trouble in providing. Our lawyer also<sup>187</sup> refused to act, being afraid of the people.

We likewise petitioned to<sup>188</sup> Judge King and the judges of the Supreme Court, but they utterly refused.<sup>189</sup> Our victuals were of the coarsest kind and served up in a manner which was disgusting.—After bearing up under repeated injuries, we were moved to Daviess county under a strong guard.—We were then arraigned before the Grand Jury, who were mostly intoxicated, who indicted me and <sup>190</sup>the rest of my companions for Treason. We then got a change of venue to Boon[e] county, and were<sup>191</sup> on our way to that place. On the second evening after our departure, our guards getting intoxicated, I thought it a favorable time to effect our escape from <sup>192</sup>such men, whose aim was only to destroy our life and to abuse us in every manner that wicked men could invent. Accordingly we took advantage of their situation, and made our escape; and after enduring considerable fatigue, and suffering hunger and weariness, expecting that our enemies would be in pursuit, we arrived in the town of Quincy, Illinois, amidst the congratulations of our friends, and the joy of our families. I have been here for several weeks, as it is known to the people of the State of Missouri; but they knowing they had no justice in their crusade against me, have not to my knowledge taken the first step to have me arrested.

The loss of property which I have sustained is as follows:—Losses sustained in Jackson county, Daviess county, Caldwell county, including lands, houses<sup>193</sup>, harness, hogs, cattle, &c.; books and store goods, expenses while in bonds, of moneys paid out, expenses of moving out of the State, and damages sustained by false imprisonments<sup>194</sup>, threatenings, intimidations<sup>195</sup>, exposure, &c., &c., one hundred thousand dollars.

My brother Hyrum Smith wrote the following:

<sup>196</sup>Sufferings and damages sustained in Missouri, and <sup>197</sup>being driven therefrom:—

I left Kirtland, Ohio, in the spring of 1838, having the charge of a family of ten individuals; the weather being very unfavorable, and the roads worse than I had ever seen, which materially increased my expenses, on account of such long delays upon the road. However, after suffering many privations, I reached my destination in safety, and intended to make my permanent residence in the State of Missouri. I sent on by water all my household furniture and a number of farming implements<sup>198</sup>, amounting to several hundred dollars,—having made purchases of lands of several hundreds of acres, upon which I intended to settle.

In the meantime, I took a house in Far West, until I could make further arrangements. I had not been there but a few weeks, before the report of mobs, whose intention was to drive us from our homes, was heard from every quarter. I thought that the reports were false, inasmuch

---

187. MS Original, 7: replaces “also” with “likewise”

188. DHC 3:372: omits “to”

189. MS Original, 7: reads at *coln*: “\we likewise/ <petitioned ... refused>”

190. Book C-2, 99: adds erasure

191. DHC 3:372: replaces “were” with “when”

192. MS Original, 8: adds “~~a state~~”

193. MS Original, 8: “<houses>”

194. MS Original, 8: “<false imprisonments>”; Book C-1, 952, Book C-2, 99: “imprisonment”

195. Book C-1, 952, Book C-2, 99: “intimidation”

196. *Source*: Hyrum Smith, Bill of Damages, undated, CHL (UC).

197. DHC 3:373: adds “of”

198. Book C-1, 952: replaces “implements” with “instruments”

as I know that we<sup>199</sup> as a people had done nothing to merit any such treatment as was threatened.—However at length, from false and wicked reports, circulated for the worst of purposes, the inhabitants of the upper counties of Missouri commenced hostilities, threatened to burn our dwellings, and even <sup>200</sup>the lives <sup>201</sup>of our people, if we did not move away; and afterwards, horrid to relate, they put their threats into execution.

Our people endeavored to calm the fury of our enemies, but in vain; for they carried on their depredations to a greater extent than ever, until most of our people who lived in places at a distance from the towns, had collected together, so that they might be the better able to escape from the fury of our enemies and be in better condition<sup>202</sup> to defend their lives and the little property they had been able to save. It is probable that our persecutors might have been deterred from their purposes, had not wicked and shameful reports been sent to the Governor of the State, who ordered out a very large force to exterminate us. When they arrived at Far West, we were told what were their orders. However, they did not fall upon us, but took several of my friends and made them prisoners; and the day after, a company of the militia came to my house and ordered me to go with them into the camp. My family at that time particularly needed my assistance, being <sup>203</sup>much afflicted. I told them my situation, but remonstrance was in vain, and I was hurried into the camp, and was subject to the most cruel treatment.

I<sup>204</sup> along with the rest <sup>205</sup>of the prisoners, was ordered<sup>206</sup> to be shot; but it was providentially overruled. We were then ordered to Jackson county, where our bitterest persecutors resided. Before we started, after much entreaty, I was privileged to visit my family, accompanied with a strong guard. I had only time to get a change of linen, &c., and was hurried to where the<sup>207</sup> teams were waiting to convey us to the city of Independence, in Jackson county. While there I was subjected<sup>208</sup> to continued<sup>209</sup> insult from the people who visited us. I had likewise to lie on the floor, and had to cover myself with my mantle; after remaining there for<sup>210</sup> some time we were ordered to Richmond in Ray county, where our enemies expected to shoot us; but finding no law to support them in carrying into effect so strange an act, we were delivered up to the civil law. As soon as we were so, we were thrust into a dungeon, and our legs were chained together. In this situation we remained until called before the court, who ordered us to be sent to <sup>211</sup>Liberty in Clay county, where I was confined for more than four months, and endured almost everything but death, from the nauseous cell, and the wretched food we were obliged to eat.

In the meantime, my family were suffering every privation. Our enemies carried off nearly everything of value, until my family were left almost destitute. My wife had been but recently confined and had to suffer more than tongue can describe; and then in common with

---

199. MS Original, 1, DHC 3:373: move “we” to follow “people”

200. MS Original, 1: adds “menaced”

201. MS Original, 1: adds “if we did move away from our places of abode. The first outrages they committed—~~was burning houses and driving off cattle and afterward threatened~~ <theated> the lives of”

202. MS Original, 2: “able <condition>”

203. Book C-2, 100: adds erasure

204. DHC 3:374: moves “I” to follow “prisoners”

205. Book C-2, 100: adds ellipses over erasure of about two words

206. MS Original, 2: “[~~illegible~~] <ordered>”

207. Book C-1, 953: “~~the~~”

208. MS Original, 3, Book C-1, 953, Book C-2, 100: “subject”

209. MS Original, 3: “continual”

210. Book C-2, 100: “<for>” (prob. FDR)

211. MS Original, 3: adds “Richmond”

the rest of the people, had to move in the month of February, a distance of two hundred<sup>212</sup> miles in order to escape further persecutions and injury.

Since I have obtained my liberty, I feel my body broke down and my health very much impaired, from the fatigue and afflictions which I have undergone, so that I have not been able to perform any labor since I have escaped from my oppressors. The loss of property which I sustained in the State of Missouri would amount to several thousand dollars; and one hundred thousand dollars would be no consideration for what I have suffered from privations!—from my life being continually sought!!—and all the accumulated sufferings I have been subject<sup>213</sup> to.

HYRUM SMITH.

---

212. Book C-2, 100 (darker ink): “{\hundred/}” (pos. TB)

213. DHC 3:374: “subjected”



25.

## DOCTRINAL DEVELOPMENT

June 1839

[DN 4 (13 April 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Wednesday, [June] 5th.—I returned to Commerce and spent the remainder of the week at home.

<sup>2</sup>Sunday, 9th.—I attended meeting with my wife and family at brother [Squire]<sup>3</sup> Bosiers. Elder [John E.] Page preached.

<sup>4</sup>Monday, 10th.—Elder Page baptized one woman. I was engaged in study and<sup>5</sup> preparatory to writing my History.

<sup>6</sup>Tuesday, 11th.—I commenced dictating my History for my clerk, James Mulholland, to write.

<sup>7</sup>About this time Elder Theodore Turley raised the first house built by the Saints in this place<sup>8</sup>; it was built of logs about twenty-five or thirty rods north north-east<sup>9</sup> of my dwelling, on the northeast<sup>10</sup> corner of lot 4[,] block 147, of the White purchase.—

When I made the purchase of White and Galland, there were<sup>11</sup> one stone house, three frame houses, and two block houses, which constituted the whole city of Commerce. Between Commerce and Mr. Davidson Hibbard's, there was one stone and three log houses, including the one that<sup>12</sup> I live in, and these were all the houses in this vicinity, and the place was literally a wilderness. The land was mostly covered with trees and bushes, and much of it so wet that it was with the utmost difficulty a footman could get through, and totally impossible for teams. Commerce was so unhealthy<sup>13</sup> very few could live there; but

---

1. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:320; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

2. *Source*: JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:321; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

3. Brackets this editor's.

4. *Source*: JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:321; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

5. DHC 3:375: omits "and"

6. *Source*: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:321; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

7. *Source*: Undetermined for this and next paragraph. Composed by WR in RDft 1:59 between 8–15 Mar. 1845 (see RDft Chronology).

8. DHC 3:375: adds "[Commerce]"

9. Book C-1, 954: "N.N.E."; Book C-2, 100 (darker ink): "{\twenty five ... North North east/}" (pos. WB)

10. Book C-1, 954: "N.E."; Book C-2, 100 (darker ink): "{\north east/}" (pos. WB)

11. Book C-2, 100 (darker ink): "{\were/}" (pos. WB)

12. Book C-1, 954: omits "that"

13. DHC 3:375: "unhealthful"

believing that it might become a healthy<sup>14</sup> place by the blessing of Heaven to the Saints; and no more eligible place presenting itself, I considered it wisdom to make an attempt to build up a city.

<sup>15</sup>Wednesday and Thursday, 12th and 13th<sup>16</sup>.—I continued to dictate my History.

<sup>17</sup>Quincy, June 13th, 1839.

Pres[ident]. Smith:—

Sir:—Your letter in answer to my note to Bishop Knight, I received by the hand of br[other]. Harris. Respecting the cattle, I had promised three or four yoke to Father Myers. I did expect br[other]. Shearer<sup>18</sup> would have sent the cattle down immediately, or I should not have been quite so willing to have accommodated him with some to have moved<sup>19</sup> with.

Some of our poor brethren wished me to furnish them teams to move up to town<sup>20</sup> with, and I promised them that when the teams returned, I should<sup>21</sup>. They were very anxious to get up in time to get in a little garden; and were not my plans frustrated, I could have accommodated them greatly to their satisfaction.

The brethren that I allude to are the blind brethren, who say that they had as soon<sup>22</sup> live in tents there as here. It is now too late to think of making gardens, and what is best for them to do, I know not. I had promised some money as soon as I could sell a yoke of cattle. I know of nothing else I have that I can raise money with at this time; and they are getting to be dull sale to what they were.

Sister Meeks has been quite sick, but she is getting better. She has nothing to eat only what she is helped to. A number of other poor here, I think, need assistance. Widow Sherman for one; but if you think that all the means should be kept up there<sup>23</sup>, I have nothing to say, only that I do not believe it to be my duty to stay here living on expense, where I can earn nothing for myself, nor do anything to benefit others.

As I before stated, I have promised some money as soon as I can raise it. I have not at this time two dollars in the world. One dollar and forty cents<sup>24</sup> is all I owe for my rent, and for making clothes for some of the poor<sup>25</sup>, and some other things. I am going into the room br[other]. Harris leaves, to save rent. What is best for me to do<sup>26</sup>, I hardly know. Hard labor I cannot perform; light labor I can; but I know of no chance to earn anything, at anything that I can stand <sup>27</sup>to do. It is quite sickly here. Five were buried in four days. Brother Moses'<sup>28</sup> child, sister Louisa P. and brother Pettigrew's son Hiram, eighteen or nineteen years of age; the other two were children of the world.

I spoke to br[other]. Isaac Higbee about his Seine; he said that he would speak to his

14. DHC 3:375: "healthful"

15. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (*PJS* 2:321; *JSP* 1:340; *APR*, 235).

16. Book C-1, 954: omits "12th and 13th"

17. Source: JSLB 2:68-69 (JM). Deleted material supplied in bold type.

18. Book C-2, 101 (darker ink): "{\Shearer/}" (prob. FDR)

19. DHC 3:376: "to move"

20. JSLB 2:68, Book C-1, 954, Book C-2, 101: "Iowa"

21. DHC 3:376: "would"

22. JSLB 2:68: replaces "soon" with "lieve"; DHC 3:376: replaces "soon" with "lief"

23. DHC 3:376: adds "[at Commerce]"

24. JSLB 2:68, Book C-1, 955: "\$1.44"; Book C-2, 101: "one Dollar and forty-four cents"; DHC 3:376: "one dollar and forty-four cents"

25. JSLB 2:68: "twelve"; Book C-1, 955: "{\poor/}" (TB). Emendation made by apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

26. JSLB 2:68: "<to do>"

27. JSLB 2:68, Book C-1, 955, Book C-2, 101: add "it"

28. Book C-1, 955, Book C-2, 101: "More's"

brother about it.—He said he thought they would sell it, or they would come up in the fall and fish a while, but to lend it, he thought it would not be best, as those unaccustomed to fish in the rivers would be apt to tear it to pieces. You perceive that I have not means to get you twine at present; therefore I presume that you will not blame me for not doing it.

15th.<sup>29</sup>—Were I well, I would <sup>30</sup>go up to Commerce with br[other]. Whitney and settle with the committee and br[other]. Rogers, and see what is best to do, probably may come next week. If br[other]. Markham could sell one yoke of cattle and let me have the avails of them, I should be glad; and I think it best to let two yoke, that are up there, go to Father Myers. As to teams to move up some of the poor, do as you think best.

**I remain yours,**

E[DWARD]. PARTRIDGE.

Pres[iden]t. Joseph Smith, jr., Commerce.

<sup>31</sup>Friday, 14th.—Continued writing History.—

<sup>32</sup>This evening there was a great excitement about the jail at Columbia, Mo. Several individuals went and called for the jailer, but he was absent. They next called for the jailer's wife, and offered her money to let the prisoners go; which she declined; and becoming alarmed, raised a cry which brought the whole village together, armed with Bowie knives, guns, pistols, &c.; but finding no one there, they soon returned home, except a few to guard the prison. This now brought different individuals to see the prisoners, and by acquaintance those feelings were softened towards the Saints.

<sup>33</sup>Saturday, 15th.—I started with my family, to visit br[other]. Don Carlos Smith. We met brother William on the prairie, about four miles west of Carthage; found him in good spirits, and went with him to his house in Plymouth; found his family well. Staid over night, and had a very satisfactory visit.

<sup>34</sup>Sunday, 16th.—We went to Brother Don Carlos Smith's, in McDonough county, near the village of Macombe, where we spent the remainder of the day.

<sup>35</sup>Monday, 17th.—Bishops Whitney and Knight<sup>36</sup> arrived at Commerce. <sup>37</sup>I staid at br[other]. Don Carlos' this day, and my brother Samuel H. Smith came in; I had not seen him before, since my deliverance from prison. Bishop [Vinson]<sup>38</sup> Knight returned to Quincy.<sup>39</sup>

#### [DN 4 (27 April 1854): 1]

<sup>40</sup>Tuesday, 18th.—I went to the house of a man by the name of Matthews. During the evening, the neighbors came in, and I gave them a short discourse.

<sup>41</sup>Thursday, 20th.—Visited at Elder Zebedee Coltrin's. From thence we were invited to visit at

---

29. DHC 3:377: omits date

30. Book C-1, 955: adds ellipses over erasure

31. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 2 (JM) (PJS 2:321; JSP 1:340; APR, 235).

32. Source: Undetermined.

33. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 2, 3 (JM) (PJS 2:321, 322; JSP 1:340, 341-42; APR, 235, 236).

34. Source: JSj [1839], 3 (JM) (PJS 2:322; JSP 1:341; APR, 236).

35. Source: JSj [1839], 3 (JM) (PJS 2:322; JSP 1:341; APR, 236).

36. Book C-1, 956: "<and Knight>" (TB). Emendation made by apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

37. Book C-1, 956: adds erasure of about seven words

38. Brackets this editor's.

39. JSj [1839], 3: "returned to Quincy on [blank]"

40. Source: JSj [1839], 3-4 (JM) (PJS 2:322; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).

41. Source: JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).



brother Vance's, which we did; and there gave to the brethren and friends of the neighborhood, a brief history of the coming forth of the Book of Mormon.

<sup>42</sup>Saturday, 22d.—We returned to brother Don Carlos' place.

<sup>43</sup>Sunday, 23d.—Went to brother Wilcox's and preached to a very crowded congregation; and so eager were they to hear, that a part of them stood out in the rain during the sermon. In general they expressed good satisfaction as to what they had heard.

<sup>44</sup>Monday, 24th.—We started for home, and went to brother [Ute]<sup>45</sup> Perkins, near Fountain Green, in Hancock county, where they insisted we should tarry, and we complied.

<sup>46</sup>This day the Church purchased the town of Nashville, in Lee county, Iowa Territory, together with twenty thousand acres of land adjoining it.

<sup>47</sup>Tuesday, 25th.—We held a meeting, at which I spoke with considerable liberty, to a large congregation.

<sup>48</sup>Wednesday, 26th.—I with my family returned to our house<sup>49</sup> at Commerce.

Thursday, 27th.—

<sup>50</sup>Commerce, Illinois, June 27th, 1839.

Sir: In answer to yours concerning those books, I have to say that I have made inquiry concerning them, as far as I consider there is any prospect of obtaining them for you; and not having been able to trace them in the least degree, I have determined to give up the pursuit. I would recommend you to inquire after them of Dr. Avard, as the only chance I know of at present.

Yours, &c.,<sup>51</sup>

J[OSEPH]. SMITH, jr.

P.S.—Since writing the above, I have ascertained of one man (who told me) that he saw Dr. Avard have the books; but what he did with them, he knows not.

J.S.

To Mr. Jacob Stollings.

<sup>52</sup>I attended a Conference of the Twelve, at which time brother Orson Hyde made his confession, and was restored to the Priesthood again.

<sup>53</sup>At this time I taught the brethren at considerable length on the following subjects:

42. Source: JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).

43. Source: JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).

44. Source: JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).

45. Brackets this editor's.

46. Source: AR, 2 (transcription in vol. 8, III.14).

47. Source: JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:342; APR, 236).

48. Source: Based on JSj [1839], 4 (JM) (PJS 2:323; JSP 1:343; APR, 236).

49. DHC 3:378: "home"

50. Source: JSLB 2:50 (JM).

51. Book C-1, 956, Book C-2, 102: "&c &c."

52. Source: JSj [1839], 4-5 (JM) (PJS 2:323-24; JSP 1:343; APR, 236-37). Cf. WWj, vol. 1b, 27 June 1839 (WWj 1:341).

53. Book C-1, 956: adds "<(addenda page 8)>" (TB). Remainder of chapter added in Book C-1, Addenda, 8-9, by TB on 2 Sept. 1845, and incorporated in Book C-2, 103-4, by FDR between 2 Sept.-13 Oct. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Added under direction of the apostolic reviewers meeting on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

<sup>54</sup>FAITH comes by hearing the word of God through the testimony of the servants of God; that testimony is always attended by the Spirit of Prophecy and Revelation.

REPENTANCE is a thing that cannot be trifled with every day. Daily transgression and daily repentance is not that which is pleasing in the sight of God.

BAPTISM is a holy ordinance preparatory to the reception of the Holy Ghost; it is the channel and key by which the Holy Ghost will be administered.

THE GIFT OF THE HOLY GHOST by the laying on of hands, cannot be received through the medium of any other principle than the *principle of righteousness*, for if the proposals are not complied with, it is of no use, but withdraws.

TONGUES were given for the purpose of preaching among those whose language is not understood; as on the day of Pentecost, etc.; and it is not<sup>55</sup> necessary for tongues to be taught to the church particularly, for any man that has the Holy Ghost, can speak of the things of God in his own tongue as well as to speak in another; for Faith comes not by signs, but by hearing the word of God.

The doctrine of the *resurrection of the dead* and <sup>56</sup>*eternal judgment* are necessary to preach among the first principles of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

The *doctrine of election*.—St. Paul exhorts us to make our calling and election sure. This is the sealing power spoken of by Paul in other places, (see<sup>57</sup> Ephesians<sup>58</sup>, 1st chapter, 13-14 verses<sup>59</sup>)<sup>60</sup>

“[13.] In whom ye also trusted that after ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise, [14.] which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory, that we may be sealed up unto the day of redemption.[”]

This principle ought (in its proper place) to be taught, for God hath not revealed anything to Joseph, but what he will make known unto the Twelve, and even the least Saint, may know all things as fast as he is able to bear them, for the day must come when no man need say to his neighbor, know ye the Lord, for all shall know him (*who remain*) from the least to the greatest. How is this to be done? It is to be done by this sealing power, and the other Comforter spoken of, which will be manifest by revelation.

There are two Comforters spoken of. One is, the Holy Ghost, the same as given on the day of Pentecost, and that all saints receive after faith, repentance, and baptism. This first Comforter or Holy Ghost has no other effect than pure intelligence. It is more powerful in expanding the mind, enlightening the understanding, and storing the intellect with present knowledge, of a man who is of the literal seed of Abraham, than one that is a Gentile, though it may not have half as much visible effect upon the body; for as the Holy Ghost falls upon one of the literal seed of Abraham, it is calm and serene; and his whole soul and body are only exercised by the pure spirit of intelligence; while the effect of the Holy Ghost<sup>61</sup> upon a Gentile, is to purge out the old blood, and make him actually of the seed of Abraham. That man that has none of the blood of Abraham (naturally) must have a new creation by the Holy Ghost.—In such a case, there may be more of a powerful effect upon the body and visible to the eye, than upon an Israelite, while the Israelite at first might be far before the Gentile in pure intelligence.

*The other Comforter* spoken of is a subject of great interest, and perhaps understood by few

---

54. Source: WRPC, 15-22 (WJS, 3-6), which was probably copied from lost notes taken by JT (cf. WJS, 17n1). Entered under the heading: “Other important items of doctrines from Joseph given in Commerce Ill.”

55. Book C-2, 103 (darker ink): inserts at *coln* “{and it is not/}” (pos. FDR)

56. DHC 3:379: adds “the”

57. Book C-1, Addenda, 8: omits “see”

58. Book C-2, 103 (darker ink): “{see Ephesians/}” (pos. FDR)

59. Book C-1, Addenda, 8: omits “verses”

60. DHC 3:379-40: moves reference to end of next paragraph

61. WRPC, 19: “<of the Holy Ghost>”

of this generation. After a person has<sup>62</sup> faith in Christ, repents of his sins, and is baptized for the remission of his sins and receives the Holy Ghost, (by the laying on of hands) which is the first Comforter, then let him continue to humble himself before God, hungering and thirsting after righteousness, and living by every word of God, and the Lord will soon say unto him, Son, thou shalt be exalted, etc.<sup>63</sup> When the Lord has thoroughly proved him, and finds that the man is determined to serve him at all hazards, then the man will find his calling and election made sure; then it will be his privilege to receive the *other Comforter*, which the Lord hath promised the Saints, as is recorded in the testimony of St. John in the XIV chapter, from the 12th to the 27th verses.

Note the 16, 17, 18, 21, 23 verses:—

“[16.]<sup>64</sup> And I will pray the Father and he shall give you another Comforter that he may abide with you forever, (17) even the Spirit of Truth, whom the world cannot receive because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him; but ye know him, for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you; (18) I will not leave you comfortless, I will come to you. [...] <sup>65</sup> (21) He that hath my commandments and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me; and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. [...] <sup>66</sup> (23) If a man love me he will keep my words, and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him and make our abode with him.”

Now what is this *other Comforter*? It is no more or<sup>67</sup> less that the LORD JESUS CHRIST himself; and this is the sum and substance of the whole matter: that when any man obtains this last Comforter, he will have the personage of Jesus Christ to attend him, or appear unto him<sup>68</sup> from time to time, and even he will manifest the Father unto him, and they will take up their abode with him, and the visions of the Heavens will be opened unto him, and the Lord will teach him face to face, and he may have a perfect knowledge of the mysteries of the Kingdom of God; and this is the state and place <sup>69</sup>the ancient saints arrived at when they had such glorious visions—Isaiah, Ezekiel, John upon the Isle of Patmos, St. Paul in the three heavens, and all the Saints who held communion with the general assembly and *Church of the First Born*, &c.<sup>70</sup>

The *Spirit of Revelation* is in connection with these blessings. A person may profit by noticing the first intimations<sup>71</sup> of the Spirit of Revelation; for instance, when you feel pure intelligence flowing unto you, it may give you sudden strokes of ideas,<sup>72</sup> that by noticing it, you may find it fulfilled the same day, or soon; (i.e.) those things that were presented unto your minds by the Spirit of God, will come to pass; and thus by learning the Spirit of God and understanding it, you may grow into the principle of Revelation, until you become perfect<sup>73</sup> in Christ Jesus.

An *Evangelist* is a Patriarch, even the oldest man of the blood of Joseph or of the seed of Abraham. Wherever the Church of Christ is established in the earth, there should be a Patriarch for the benefit of the posterity of the Saints, as it was with Jacob in giving his patriarchal blessing unto his sons, &c.

62. WRPC, 19, Book C-1, Addenda, 8, Book C-2, 104: “hath”

63. DHC 3:380: omits “etc.”

64. WRPC, 20: adds “(16. vs)”; Book C-2, 104: adds “(16 verse)”

65. DHC 3:381: adds ellipses

66. Brackets and ellipses this editor’s.

67. DHC 3:381: “nor”

68. Book C-2, 104 (darker ink): “<or appear unto him>” (US)

69. Book C-2, 104: “{of}”

70. DHC 3:381: omits “&c.”

71. DHC 3:381: “intimation”

72. DHC 3:381: adds “so”

73. Book C-1, Addenda, 9: “<perfect>” (TB)

26.

JOSEPH SMITH'S  
ADDRESS TO THE TWELVE  
July 1839

[DN 4 (27 April 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Friday, 28th.—I was transacting business of various kinds; counseling, consulting the brethren, &c., &c.

<sup>2</sup>Saturday, 29th.—I was mostly at<sup>3</sup> home.

<sup>4</sup>Sunday, 30th.—I attended meeting at brother [Squire]<sup>5</sup> Bosier's. There was a crowded audience, and I bore<sup>6</sup> testimony concerning the truth of the work, and also of the truth of the Book of Mormon, &c.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>8</sup>This day sister Morris Phelps, who had traveled one hundred and fifty miles in company with her brother John W. Clark, to see her husband, arrived at Columbia jail.

<sup>9</sup>Monday, July 1st, 1839.—I spent principally in counseling the brethren.

<sup>10</sup>This day also the court was called for the trial of Parley P. Pratt, and the<sup>11</sup> brethren in prison in Boone county; but as they were not ready for trial, (all their witnesses had been banished the State) the Court was adjourned to the twenty-third of September.

<sup>12</sup>Tuesday, 2d.—Spent the forenoon of this day on the Iowa side of the river. Went in company with Elders [Sidney] Rigdon, H[yrum]. Smith, and Bishops [Newel K.]<sup>13</sup> Whitney and [Vinson] Knight

---

1. Source: JSj [1839], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:324; *JSP* 1:343; *APR*, 237).

2. Source: JSj [1839], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:324; *JSP* 1:343; *APR*, 237).

3. Book C-1, 956: "<at>" (TB)

4. Source: JSj [1839], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:324; *JSP* 1:343; *APR*, 237).

5. Brackets this editor's.

6. Book C-1, 956: "{\bore/}" (TB)

7. DHC 3:382: omits "&c."

8. Source: The visit of Mrs. Phelps and her brother is mentioned in *LP*, 164 (transcription in vol. 8, III.9).

9. Source: JSj [1839], 5 (JM) (*PJS* 2:324; *JSP* 1:343; *APR*, 237).

10. Source: Apparently based on *LP*, 164.

11. DHC 3:382: omits "the"

12. Source: Following five paragraphs from JSj [1839], 5-6b (JM) (*PJS* 2:324-25; *JSP* 1:344-45; *APR*, 237).

13. This and next brackets this editor's.

and others to visit a purchase, lately made by Bishop Knight as a location for a town, and advised that a town be built there,<sup>14</sup> and<sup>15</sup> be called Zarahemla.

<sup>16</sup>Afternoon<sup>17</sup>, went<sup>18</sup> with the Twelve and some of the Seventies who are about to proceed on their mission to Europe, and the Nations of the Earth, and Islands of the Sea.

The meeting was opened by singing and prayer, after which the Presidency proceeded to bless two of the Twelve who had lately been ordained into that Quorum; namely<sup>19</sup>, Wilford Woodruff and George A. Smith, and one of the Seventies, namely Theodore Turley; after which blessings were also pronounced by them<sup>20</sup> on the heads of the wives of some of<sup>21</sup> those about to go abroad.

The meeting was then addressed by President Hyrum Smith, by way of advice to the Twelve, &c.<sup>22</sup>, chiefly concerning the nature of their mission; their practicing prudence and<sup>23</sup> humility in their plans or subjects<sup>24</sup> for preaching; the necessity of their not trifling with their office, and of holding on strictly to the importance of their mission, and the authority of the Priesthood.

I then addressed them and gave much instruction calculated to guard them against self-sufficiency, self-righteousness, and self-importance; touching upon many subjects of importance and value to all who wish to walk humbly before the Lord, but<sup>25</sup> especially teaching them to observe charity, wisdom and fellow-feeling, with love one towards another in all things, and under all circumstances,<sup>26</sup> in substance as follows:—

<sup>27</sup>Ever keep in exercise the principle of mercy, and be ready to forgive our brother on the first intimations of repentance, and asking forgiveness; and should we even forgive our brother, or even our enemy, before they repent or ask forgiveness, our Heavenly Father would be equally as<sup>28</sup> merciful unto us.

Again:—Let the Twelve and all Saints be willing to confess all their sins, and not keep back a part; and let the Twelve be humble and not be exalted, and beware of pride, and not seek to excel one above another, but act for each other's good, and pray for one and<sup>29</sup> another, and honor our brother or make honorable mention of his name,<sup>30</sup> and not backbite and devour our brother. Why will not man learn wisdom by precept<sup>31</sup> at this late age of the world, when

---

14. JSj [1839], 5, deletes remainder of paragraph.

15. Book C-1, 957: adds "to"; Book C-2, 105: "tø"

16. DHC 3:382: adds "In the"

17. Book C-1, 957: "P.M."; Book C-2, 105 (darker ink): "{\Afternoon/}" (US)

18. DHC 3:382: replaces "went" with "met"

19. Book C-1, 957: "viz."; Book C-2, 105 (darker ink): "{\namely/}" (US)

20. DHC 3:383: adds "[the Presidency]"

21. JSj [1839], 6a: "<some of>"

22. DHC 3:383: omits "&c."

23. JSj [1839], 6a: adds "~~charity towards~~"

24. JSj [1839], 6a: "<or subjects>"

25. DHC 3:383: replaces "but" with "and"

26. Book C-1, 957, adds at *coln*: "\addenda page 9/" (FDR). Remainder of chapter added in Book C-1, Addenda, 9-14, by FDR about 2-3 Sept. 1845, and incorporated in Book C-2, 105-9, by FDR between 2 Sept.-13 Oct. 1845 (see MSHi Chronology). Added under direction of the apostolic reviewers, who met on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

27. *Source*: Following version of JS's address to the Twelve taken from WWj, vol. 1b, 2 July 1839 (WWj 1:342-44; WJS, 6-8), and, for last paragraph, WRPC, 10-15 (WJS, 413). Some light and heavy editing. Cf. JSAd, Bx 4, fd 4, 15-17.

28. Book C-1, Addenda, 9 (darker ink), Book C-2, 105: "<as>" (pos. FDR/FDR)

29. DHC 3:384: omits "and"

30. WWj: adds "in our prayers before the Lord & before our fellow men"

31. WWj: adds "& example"

we have such a cloud of witnesses and examples before us,<sup>32</sup> and not be obliged to learn by sad experience everything we know? Must the new ones that are chosen to fill the places of those that are fallen, of the Quorum of the Twelve, begin to exalt themselves, until they exalt themselves so high that they will soon tumble over and have a great fall, and go wallowing through the mud and mire and darkness, Judas like, to the buffetings of Satan, as several of the Quorum have done, or will they learn wisdom and be wise? (O God! give them wisdom, and keep them humble, I pray.)

When the Twelve or any other witnesses stand before the congregations of the Earth, and they preach in the power and demonstration of the Spirit of God, and the people are astonished and confounded at the doctrine and say, [“]that man has preached a powerful discourse, a great sermon,[”] then let that man or those men, take care that they do not ascribe the glory unto themselves, but be careful that they are humble, and ascribe the praise and glory to God and the Lamb; for it is by the power of the Holy Priesthood and the Holy Ghost they have power thus to speak. What art thou, O man, but dust?—And from whom dost thou receive<sup>33</sup> thy power and blessings, but from God?

Then O ye Twelve! notice this *Key*, and be wise for Christ's sake, and your own souls' sake. Ye are not sent out to be taught, but to teach. Let every word be seasoned with grace. Be vigilant; be sober. It is a day of warning, and not of many words. Act honest before God and man. Beware of *Gentile sophistry*; such as bowing and scraping unto men in whom you have no confidence. Be honest, open, and frank in all your intercourse with mankind.

O ye Twelve! and all Saints! profit by this important *KEY*—that in all your trials, troubles, temptations, afflictions, bonds, imprisonments and death, see to it, that you do not betray Heaven; that you do not betray *Jesus Christ*; that you do not betray your<sup>34</sup> *Brethren*; that you do not betray the *Revelations* of God, whether in the Bible, Book of Mormon, or Doctrine and Covenants<sup>35</sup>, or any other that ever was or ever will be given and revealed unto man in this world or that which is to come. Yea, in all your kicking, and floundering, see to it that you do not this thing, lest innocent blood be found upon your skirts, and you go down to hell. <sup>36</sup>All other sins are not to be compared to sinning against the Holy Ghost, and proving a traitor to thy<sup>37</sup> brethren.

<sup>38</sup>I will give you one of the *Keys* of the mysteries of the Kingdom. It is an eternal principle, that has existed with God from all eternity:—That<sup>39</sup> man who rises up to condemn others, finding fault with the Church, saying that they are out of the way, while he himself is righteous, then know assuredly, that that man is in the high road to apostasy; and if he does not repent, will apostatize, as God lives. The principle is as correct as the one that Jesus put forth in saying, that he who seeketh a sign is an adulterous person; and that principle is eternal, undeviating, and firm as the pillars of Heaven; for whenever you see a man seeking after a sign, you may set it down that he is an adulterous man.

---

32. WWj: omits “when we have ... us”

33. DHC 3:384: “from whom receivest thou”

34. DHC 3:385: replaces “your” with “the”

35. Book C-1, Addenda, 10, Book C-2, 106: “Doctrines and Covenant”

36. Next sentence apparently based on following passage in WWj: “But whatever you do do not betray your Friend.”

37. DHC 3:385: replaces “thy” with “the”

38. This paragraph from WRPC, 10-15 (*WJS*, 413), which expands the following from WWj: “We may ever know by this sign that there is danger of our being led to a fall & apostacy, when we give way to the devil so as to neglect the first known duty.”

39. Book C-1, Addenda, 10: “that that”; Book C-2, 106: “~~that~~, That”



About this time, in reply to many inquiries, I <sup>40</sup>gave an explanation of the Priesthood, and many principles connected therewith, of which the following is a brief synopsis:—

<sup>41</sup>The Priesthood was first given to Adam; he obtained the first Presidency, and held the keys of it from generation to generation. He obtained it in the Creation, before the world was formed, as in Gen. I, 26, 28.<sup>42</sup> He had dominion given him over every living creature. He is Michael the Archangel, spoken of in the<sup>43</sup> scriptures. Then to Noah, who is Gabriel; he stands next in authority to Adam in the Priesthood; he was called of God to this office, and was the Father of all living in his day, and to him was given the dominion. These men held keys first on Earth, and then in Heaven.

The Priesthood is an everlasting principle, and existed with God from eternity, and will to eternity, without beginning of days or end of years.—The Keys have to be brought from Heaven whenever the gospel is sent. When <sup>44</sup>they are revealed from heaven, it is by Adam's authority.

Daniel VII<sup>45</sup>, speaks of the Ancient of Days; he means the oldest man, our Father Adam, Michael; he will call his children together and hold a council with them to prepare them for the coming of the Son of Man. He (Adam) is the Father of the human family, and presides over the spirits of all men, and all that have had the Keys, must stand before him in this grand council. This may take place before some of us leave this stage of action. The Son of Man stands before him, and there is given him glory and dominion. Adam delivers up his stewardship to Christ; that which was delivered to him as holding the Keys of the Universe, but retains his standing as head of the human family.

The spirit of man is not a created being; it existed from eternity, and will exist to eternity.—Anything created cannot be eternal; and earth, water, &c., <sup>46</sup>had their existence in an elementary state, from eternity. Our Savior speaks of children and says, their angels always stand before my Father. The Father called all spirits before him at the creation of man, and organized them. He (Adam) is the head, and was told to multiply.—The Keys were first<sup>47</sup> given to him, and by him to others<sup>48</sup>. He will have to give an account of his stewardship, and they to him.

The Priesthood is everlasting. The Savior, Moses, and Elias, gave the Keys to Peter, James and John, on the mount when they were transfigured before him. The Priesthood is everlasting—without beginning of days or end of years; without father, mother, &c. If there is no change of ordinances, there is no change of Priesthood.—Wherever the ordinances of the gospel are administered, there is the Priesthood.

How have we come at the Priesthood in the last days? It<sup>49</sup> came down, down<sup>50</sup>, in regular succession. Peter, James and John had it given to them, and they gave it to others<sup>51</sup>. Christ is the great High Priest; Adam next. Paul speaks of the Church coming to an innumerable com-

---

40. DHC 3:385: adds “also”

41. *Source*: Following address on priesthood taken from WRPC, 63-73 (*WJS*, 8-12), which was evidently copied from JT's notes (no longer extant) made sometime before his and WW's departure for England on 8 Aug. 1839 (*WJS*, 22n1). Cf. JSAd, Bx 4, fd 4, 40-41, 38.

42. DHC 3:386: “Gen. i:26, 27, 28”

43. Book C-1, Addenda, 11, Book C-2, 106: “<the>” (FDR/FDR)

44. Book C-2, 107: adds erasure

45. DHC 3:386: replaces “VII” with “in his seventh chapter”

46. Book C-1, Addenda, 11: adds “all these”

47. WRPC, 65: “<first>”

48. WRPC, 65: “<& by him to others>”

49. WRPC, 65: “~~They~~ <It>”

50. Book C-1, Addenda, 11: “<down>” (FDR)

51. WRPC, 65: replaces “to others” with “up”



pany of angels—to God the Judge of all—the spirits of <sup>52</sup>just men made perfect; to Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant, &c.<sup>53</sup>; Heb. XII, 23.

I saw Adam in the valley of Adam-ondi-Ahman. He called together his children and blessed them with a patriarchal blessing. The Lord appeared in their midst, and he (Adam) blessed them all, and foretold what should befall them to the latest generation. See D.C., sec. III, 28, 29, par[agraph]s. [D&C 107:53-57]

This is why Abraham blessed his posterity: he wanted to bring them into the presence of God.—They looked for a city, &c. <sup>54</sup>Moses sought to bring the children of Israel into the presence of God, through the power of the Priesthood, but he could not. In the first ages of the world they tried to establish the same thing; and there were Eliases raised up who tried to restore these very glories, but did not obtain them; <sup>55</sup>but they prophesied of a day when this glory would<sup>56</sup> be revealed. Paul spoke of the dispensation of the fullness of times, when God would gather together all things in one, &c.; and those men to whom these Keys have been given, will have to be there; <sup>57</sup>and they without us cannot<sup>58</sup> be made perfect.

These men are in Heaven, but their children are on earth. Their bowels yearn over us. God sends down men for this reason. Matt. 13—41:<sup>59</sup> [“]And the Son of Man shall send forth his angels,[”] &c.<sup>60</sup> All these authoritative characters will come down and join hand in hand in bringing about this work.

The Kingdom of Heaven is like a grain of mustard seed. <sup>61</sup>The mustard seed is small, but brings forth a large tree, and the fowls lodge in the branches<sup>62</sup>. The fowls are the angels<sup>63</sup>. Thus angels come down, combine together, to gather their children and gather them. We cannot be made perfect without them, nor they without us; when these things<sup>64</sup> are done, the Son of Man will descend; the Ancient of Days sit; we may come to an innumerable company of angels, have communion with and receive instruction from them<sup>65</sup>. Paul told about Moses' proceedings; spoke of the children of Israel being baptized, &c.<sup>66</sup> [1 Cor. 10:1-4]<sup>67</sup> He knew this, and that all the ordinances and blessings were in the church. Paul had these things, and we may have the fowls of heaven lodge in the branches, &c.

The Horn made war with the Saints and overcame them, &c.<sup>68</sup>, until the Ancient of Days came; judgment was given to the Saints of the Most High from the Ancient of Days; the

---

52. Book C-2, 107: adds erasure

53. DHC 3:388: omits “&c.”

54. DHC 3:388: adds “[‘whose builder and maker is God.’—Heb. xi:10]”

55. WRPC, 66: adds:“(Enoch did for himself & those that were with him, but not for the world.J.T.)”. A guideline was added to indicate that John Taylor's note should be skipped.

56. Book C-2, 107 (darker ink):“{ \would/ }” (US)

57. WRPC, 66: adds “(I.E. when Adam shall again assemble his children of the Priesthood, & Christ be in their midst) the Ancient of Days come &c &c J.T.)”. A guideline was added to indicate that John Taylor's note should be skipped.

58. WRPC, 66: “~~could~~ <cannot>”

59. DHC 3:389: moves reference to end of quote

60. DHC 3:389: omits “&c.” and adds “and they shall gather out of His kingdom all things that give offense and them that do iniquity”

61. Book C-2, 108: adds ellipses over erasure

62. WRPC, 67: “<and the fowls lodge in the branches>”

63. WRPC, 67: adds “the Book of Mormon perhaps”

64. WRPC, 67: “<things>”

65. WRPC, 67: “<them>”

66. DHC 3:389: omits “&c.”

67. DHC 3:389: adds reference

68. DHC 3:389: omits “&c.”

time came that the Saints possessed the Kingdom. This not only makes us ministers here, but in eternity.

Salvation cannot come without revelation; it is in vain for anyone to minister without it. No man is a minister of Jesus Christ without being a prophet. No man can be a minister of Jesus Christ except he has the testimony of Jesus; and this is the spirit of prophecy. Whenever salvation has been administered, it has been by testimony. Men of the present time testify of heaven and of<sup>69</sup> hell, and have never seen either; and I will say that no man knows these things without this.

Men profess to prophesy. I will prophesy that the signs of the coming of the Son of Man are already commenced. One pestilence will desolate after another. We shall soon have war and bloodshed. The moon will be turned into<sup>70</sup> blood. I testify of these things, and that the coming of the Son of Man is nigh, even at your doors. If our souls and our bodies are not looking forth for the coming of the Son of Man; and after we are dead, if we are not looking forth, &c.<sup>71</sup>, we shall be among those who are calling for the rocks to fall upon us<sup>72</sup>, &c.<sup>73</sup>

The hearts of the children of men will have to be turned to the fathers, and the fathers to the children, living or dead, to prepare them for the coming of the Son of Man. If Elijah did not come, the whole earth would be smitten.

There will be here and there a stake<sup>74</sup> for the gathering of the Saints<sup>75</sup>. Some may have cried peace, but the Saints and the world will have little peace from henceforth. Let this not hinder us from going to the stakes; for God has told us to flee, not dallying, or we shall be scattered, one here, and another there. There your children shall be blessed, and you in the midst of friends where you may be blessed. The gospel net gathers of every kind.

I prophesy, that that man who tarries after he has an opportunity of going, will be afflicted by the devil. Wars are at hand; we must not delay; but are not required to sacrifice. We ought to have the building up of Zion as our greatest object. When wars come, we shall have to flee to Zion. The cry is to make haste. The last Revelation says,<sup>76</sup> “Ye shall not have time to have gone over the earth, until these things come. [Matt. 10:23?] It will come as did the cholera, war, fires, and<sup>77</sup> earthquakes; one pestilence after another, &c.<sup>78</sup>, until the Ancient of Days come<sup>79</sup>, then judgment will be given to the Saints.[”]

Whatever you may hear about me or Kirtland, take no notice of it; for<sup>80</sup> if it be a place of refuge, the devil will use his greatest efforts to trap the Saints. You must make yourselves acquainted with those men who like Daniel pray three times a day to<sup>81</sup> the House of the Lord. Look to the Presidency and receive instruction<sup>82</sup>. Every man who is afraid, covetous, etc., will be taken in a snare. The time is soon coming, when no man will have any peace but in Zion and her stakes.

---

69. Book C-2, 108, DHC 3:390: omit “of”

70. Book C-1, Addenda, 12: “{in}to”; Book C-2, 108: “to”

71. DHC 3:390: omits “&c.”

72. DHC 3:390: replaces “us” with “them”

73. DHC 3:390: omits “&c.”

74. DHC 3:390: adds “[of Zion]”

75. WRPC, 69: “<for the gathering of the saints>”

76. DHC 3:390-91: omits quotation marks

77. WRPC, 70, Book C-1, Addenda, 13: “and fires burning”; Book C-2, 108 (darker ink): “war, [eoe] Fires {\\and/} [eoe]” (US)

78. DHC 3:391: omits “&c.”

79. DHC 3:391: “comes”

80. Book C-1, Addenda, 13 (darker ink): “<for>” (FDR)

81. DHC 3:391: replaces “to” with “toward”

82. WRPC, 70: “&c. <& receive instruction>”

I saw men hunting the lives of their own sons, and brother murdering brother, women killing their own daughters, and daughters seeking the lives of their mothers. I saw armies arrayed against armies. I saw blood, desolation, fires, &c.<sup>83</sup> The Son of Man has said that the mother shall be against the daughter, and the daughter against the mother, etc.<sup>84</sup> These things are at our doors. They will follow the Saints of God from city to city. Satan will rage, and the spirit of the devil is now enraged. I know not how soon these things will<sup>85</sup> take place; and<sup>86</sup> with a view of them, shall I cry peace? No! I will lift up my voice and testify of them. How long you will have good crops, and the famine be kept off<sup>87</sup>, I do not know; when the fig tree leaves, know then that the summer is nigh at hand.

We may look for angels and receive their ministration<sup>88</sup>, but we are to try the spirits and prove them, for<sup>89</sup> it is often the case that men make a mistake in regard to these things. God has so ordained that when he has communicated, <sup>90</sup>no vision is to be taken but what you see by the seeing of the eye, or what you hear by the hearing of the ear. When you see a vision, pray for the interpretation; if you get not this, shut it up; there must be certainty in this matter<sup>91</sup>. An open vision will manifest that which is more important. Lying spirits are going forth in the earth. There will be great manifestations of spirit<sup>92</sup>, both false and true.

Being born again, comes by the Spirit of God through ordinances. An angel of God never has wings. Some will say that they have seen a spirit; that he offered them his hand, but they did not touch it. This is a lie. First, it is contrary to the plan of God; a spirit cannot come but in glory; an angel has flesh and bones; we see not their glory. The devil may appear as an angel of light. Ask God to reveal it; if it be of the devil, he will flee from you; if of God, he will manifest himself, or make it manifest. We may come to Jesus and ask him<sup>93</sup>; he will know all about it; if he comes to a little child, he will adapt himself to the language and<sup>94</sup> capacity of a little child.<sup>95</sup>

Every spirit, or vision, or singing, is not of God. The devil is an orator; he is powerful; he took our Savior on to a pinnacle of the Temple, and kept him in the wilderness for forty days. The gift of discerning spirits will be given to the Presiding Elder. Pray for him that he may have this gift<sup>96</sup>. Speak not in the gift of tongues without understanding it, or without interpretation. The devil can speak in tongues; the adversary will come with his work; he can tempt all classes; can speak in English or Dutch. Let no one speak in tongues unless he interpret, except by the consent of the one who is placed to preside; then he may discern or interpret, or another may. Let us seek for the glory of Abraham, Noah, Adam, the Apostles, who<sup>97</sup> have communion with<sup>98</sup> these things, and then we shall be among that number when Christ comes.

---

83. DHC 3:391: omits "&c."

84. DHC 3:391: omits "etc."

85. Book C-2, 109: "<will>" (FDR)

86. DHC 3:391: replaces "and" with "but"

87. WRPC, 71: "<off>"

88. WRPC, 71: "<& receive their ministry>"; DHC 3:391: "ministrations"

89. WRPC, 71: "<for>"

90. WRPC, 71: "<by vision>"

91. WRPC, 72: "<in this matter>"

92. DHC 3:392: "spirits"

93. WRPC, 72: "<& ask him>"

94. WRPC, 73: "<Language &>"

95. WRPC, 73: adds "There is no gold nor silver &c; it is false, all is plain in heaven". A guideline was added to indicate these words should be skipped.

96. WRPC, 73: "<that he may have this gift>"

97. WRPC, 73: omits "who"; Book C-2, 109: "<who>" (US)

98. DHC 3:392: adds "[knowledge of]"



27.

## EPISTLE OF THE TWELVE

July 1839

[DN 4 (11 May 1854): 1]

<sup>1</sup>Wednesday, [July] 3d [1839].—I baptized Dr. Isaac Galland and confirmed him at the water's edge; and about two hours after<sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>ordained him to the office of an Elder.

Afternoon<sup>4</sup>.—I was engaged in dictating my history.

About this time the Twelve wrote the following Epistle:—

<sup>5</sup>To the Elders of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, to the churches scattered abroad, and to all the Saints:

We the undersigned, feeling deeply interested in the welfare of Zion, the upbuilding of the Church of Christ, and the welfare of the Saints in general, send unto you GREETING:— And pray that “grace, mercy and peace may rest upon you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.” But brethren, the situation of things as they have of late existed, have<sup>6</sup> been to us of a peculiarly<sup>7</sup> trying nature.

Many of you have been driven from your homes, robbed of your possessions, and deprived of the liberty of conscience. You have been stripped of your clothing, plundered of your furniture, robbed of your horses, your cattle, your sheep, your hogs, and refused the protection of law; you have been subject to insult, and abuse, from a set of lawless miscreants; you have had to endure cold, nakedness, peril and sword; your wives and your children have been deprived of the comforts of life; you have been subject to bonds, to imprisonment, to banishment, and many to death, “for the testimony of Jesus, and for the word of God.” Many of your brethren, with those whose souls are now beneath the altar, are crying for the vengeance of Heaven to rest upon the heads of their devoted murderers, and saying, “how long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?” But it

---

1. *Source*: This and next paragraph from JSj [1839], 6b (JM) (*PJS* 2:325–26; *JSP* 1:345; *APR*, 238).

2. DHC 3:393: “afterwards”

3. DHC 3:393: adds “I”

4. Book C-1, 957: replaces “Afternoon” with “P.M.”; Book C-2, 109 (darker ink): “{\Afternoon/}” (US)

5. *Source*: *T&S* 1 (Nov. 1839): 12–15.

6. DHC 3:393: “has”

7. *T&S* 1:12, Book C-1, 957: “peculiar”; Book C-2, 109 (pencil): “peculiar<ly>”

was said to them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellow servants also, and their brethren that should be killed as *they were*, should be fulfilled.

Dear brethren, we should remind you of this thing; and although you have had indignities, insults, and injuries heaped upon you, till further suffering would seem to be no longer a virtue; we would say, be patient, dear brethren, for as saith the Apostle, “ye have need of patience, that after being tried you may inherit the promise.” [“]You have been tried in the furnace of affliction; the time to exercise patience is now come; and we shall reap brethren, in *due time* if we faint not.” Do not breathe vengeance upon your oppressors, but leave the case in the hands of God; “for vengeance is mine, saith the Lord, and<sup>8</sup> I will repay.”

We would say to the widow and the orphan, to the destitute, and to the diseased, who have been made so through persecution, *be patient*; you are not forgotten; the God of Jacob has his eye upon you; the heavens have been witness to your sufferings, and they<sup>9</sup> are registered on high; angels have gazed upon the scene, and your tears, your groans, your sorrows, and anguish of heart, are had in remembrance before God; they have entered into the sympathies of that bosom, who is “touched with the feelings of our infirmities,”<sup>10</sup> who was “tempted in all points like unto you”; they have entered into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth; *be patient* then, until the words of God be fulfilled, and his designs accomplished; and then shall he pour out his vengeance upon the devoted heads of your murderers; and then shall they know that he is God, and that you are his people.

And we would say to all the Saints who have made a covenant with the Lord by sacrifice, that, inasmuch as you are faithful, you shall not lose your reward, although not numbered among those who were in the late difficulties in the West.

We wish to stimulate all the brethren to faithfulness; you have been tried, you are now being tried; and those trials, if you are not watchful, will corrode upon<sup>11</sup> the mind, and produce unpleasant feelings; but recollect that now is the time of trial; soon the victory will be ours; now may be a day of lamentation—then will be a day of rejoicing; now may be a day of sorrow—but by and by we shall see the<sup>12</sup> Lord; our sorrow will be turned into joy, and our joy no man taketh from us. Be honest; be men of truth and integrity; let your word be your bond; be diligent, be prayerful; pray for, and with your families; train up your children in the fear of the Lord; cultivate a meek, a quiet spirit; clothe the naked, feed the hungry, help the destitute, be merciful to the widow and orphan, be merciful to your brethren, and to all men; bear with one another’s infirmities, considering your own weakness; bring no railing accusation against your brethren, especially take care that you do not against the Authorities, or Elders of the Church, for the<sup>13</sup> principle is of the devil; he is called the accuser of the brethren; and Michael the archangel dared not bring a railing accusation against the devil, but said, “The Lord rebuke thee, Satan”; and any man who pursues this course of accusation and murmuring, will fall into the snare of the devil, and apostatize, except he repent.

Jude, in the eighth verse, says, “likewise<sup>14</sup> these filthy dreamers<sup>15</sup> despise dominion, and speak evil of dignities”; and says he, “behold the Lord cometh with ten thousand<sup>16</sup> of his saints,

---

8. Book C-2, 110: “<and>” (FDR)

9. DHC 3:394: replaces “they” with “these”

10. DHC 3:394: adds “and”

11. DHC 3:394: omits “upon”

12. T&S 1:13: replaces “the” with “our”

13. DHC 3:394: replaces “the” with “that”

14. DHC 3:395: omits “likewise”

15. DHC 3:395: adds “defile the flesh”

16. DHC 3:395: “thousands”

to execute judgment upon the ungodly<sup>17</sup>, and to convince all that are ungodly among them, of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard *speeches* which ungodly sinners have spoken against them<sup>18</sup>.”

Peter <sup>19</sup>speaking on the same principle, says,—“the Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished: but chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous *are they*, self-willed; they are not afraid to *speak evil of dignities*. Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.”

If a man sin, let him be dealt with according to the law of God in the Bible, the Book of Mormon, and Doctrine and Covenants; and then leave him in the hands of God to rebuke, as Michael left the devil. Gird yourselves with righteousness, and let Truth, eternal truth, be written indelibly on your hearts. Pray for the prosperity of Zion, for the Prophet and his counselors, for the Twelve, the High Council, the High Priests, the Seventies, the Elders, the Bishops, and all <sup>20</sup>Saints—that God may bless them, and preserve his people in righteousness, and grant unto them wisdom, and intelligence; that his Kingdom may roll forth.

We would say to the Elders, that God has called you to an important office; he has laid upon you an onerous duty; he has called you to an holy calling, even to be the Priests of the Most High God, messengers to the nations of the Earth; and upon your diligence, your perseverance and faithfulness, the soundness of the Doctrines that<sup>21</sup> you preach, the moral precepts that you advance and practice, and upon the sound principles that you inculcate, hang the destinies of the human family,<sup>22</sup> while you hold that Priesthood. You are the men that God has called to spread forth his Kingdom; he has committed the care of souls to your charge, and when you received this Priesthood, you became the legate<sup>23</sup> of Heaven; and the Great God demands it of you, that you should be faithful; and inasmuch as you are not, you will not be chosen; but it will be said unto you, [“]Stand by, and let a more honorable man than thou art take thy place, and receive thy crown.[”]

Be careful that you teach not for the word of God, the commandments of men, nor the doctrines of men, nor the ordinances of men, inasmuch as you are God’s messengers. Study the word of God, and preach it, and not your opinions, for no man’s opinion is worth a straw. Advance no principle but what you can prove, for one scriptural proof is worth ten thousand opinions. We would moreover say, abide by that Revelation which says, “preach nothing but repentance to this generation,” and leave the further mysteries of the Kingdom till God shall tell you to preach them,—which is not now.

The horns of the beast, the toes of the image, the frogs, and the beast mentioned by John, are not going to save this generation; for if a man does not become acquainted with the first principles of the gospel, how shall he understand those greater mysteries, which the most wise cannot understand without revelation? These things therefore, have nothing to do with your mission.

We have heard of some foolish vagaries, and wild speculations, originating only in a disordered imagination, which are set forth by some, telling what occupation they had before they came into this world, and what they would be employed with, after they leave this state of

---

17. DHC 3:395: replaces “the ungodly” with “all”

18. T&S 1:13: replaces “them” with “him”; Book C-2, 111: “them” overwrites “him”; DHC 3:395: “him”

19. T&S 1:13, Book C-1, 959: add “in”; Book C-2, 111: “{in}”

20. Book C-1, 959: adds “the”

21. DHC 3:395: replaces “that” with “which”

22. DHC 3:395: moves “hang ... family” to end of sentence.

23. DHC 3:395: “legates”



existence; those and other vain imaginations we would warn the Elders against, because if they listen to such things, they will fall into the snare of the devil; and when the trying time comes, they will be overthrown.

We would also warn the Elders, according to previous counsel, not to go on to another's ground without invitation; to interfere with another's privilege, for your mission is to the world, and not to the churches.

We would also remark, that no man has a right to usurp authority or power over any church, nor has any man power to preside over any church, unless he is solicited and received by the voice of that church to preside.

Preach the first principles of the doctrine of Christ—faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, repentance towards God, baptism in the name of Jesus for the remission of sins, laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost, the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment.

When you go forth to preach, and the Spirit of God rests upon you, giving you wisdom, and utterance, and enlightening your understanding, be careful that you ascribe the glory to God, and not to yourselves. Boast not of intelligence, of wisdom, or of power; for it is only that which God has imparted unto you; but be humble, be meek, be patient, and give glory to God.

We would counsel all who have not received a recommend since the difficulties in Missouri, to obtain one from<sup>24</sup> the authorities of the Church if they wish to be accounted as wise stewards.

We are glad, dear brethren, to see that spirit of enterprise and perseverance which is manifested by you in regard to preaching the gospel; and rejoice to know that neither bonds nor imprisonment, banishment nor exile, poverty or contempt, nor all the combined powers of earth and hell, hinder you from delivering your testimony to the world, and publishing those glad tidings which have<sup>25</sup> been revealed from heaven by the ministering of angels, by the gift of the Holy Ghost, and by the power of God, for the salvation of the world in these last days. And we would say to you that the hearts of the Twelve are with you, and they with you are determined to fulfill their mission, to clear their garments of the blood of this generation, to introduce the gospel to foreign nations, and to make known to the world these great things which God has developed. They are now on the eve of their departure for England, and will start in a few days. They feel to pray for you, and to solicit an interest in your prayers, and in the prayers of the church, that God may sustain them in their arduous undertaking; grant them success in their mission, deliver them from the powers of darkness, and stratagem<sup>26</sup> of wicked men, and all the combined powers of earth and hell. And if you unitedly seek after unity of purpose and design; if you are men of humility, and of faithfulness, of integrity and perseverance; if you submit yourselves to the teachings of heaven, and are guided by the Spirit of God; if you at all times seek the glory of God, and the salvation of men, and lay your honor prostrate in the dust, if need be, and are willing to fulfill the purposes of God in all things; the power of the Priesthood will rest upon you, and you will become mighty in testimony; the widow and the orphan will be made glad, and the poor among men rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

Princes will listen to the things that you proclaim, and the nobles of the earth will attend with deference to your words; queens will rejoice in the glad tidings of salvation, and kings bow to the scepter of Immanuel; light will burst forth as the morning, and intelligence spread itself as the rays of the sun; the cringing sycophant will be ashamed, and the traitor flee from your presence; superstition will hide its hoary head, and infidelity be ashamed. And amid the clamor of men, the din of war, the rage of pestilence, the commotion of nations, the overthrow of king-

24. T&S 1:14, Book C-1, 960: replace "from" with "of"; Book C-2, 112 (pencil): "œ <from>" (US)

25. Book C-1, 960: "ha{\ve/}". Emended by apostolic reviewers on 26 Aug. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

26. T&S 1:14, Book C-1, 961, Book C-2, 112: "stratagems"

doms, and the dissolution of empires, Truth shall walk<sup>27</sup> forth with mighty power<sup>28</sup>, guided by the arm of Omnipotence<sup>29</sup>, and lay hold of the honest in heart among all nations; Zion shall blossom as a rose, and the nations flock to her standard, and the kingdoms of this world shall soon become the kingdoms of our God and of his Christ, and he shall reign for ever and ever: Amen.

BRIGHAM YOUNG,  
 HEBER C. KIMBALL,  
 JOHN E. PAGE,  
 WILFORD WOODRUFF,  
 JOHN TAYLOR,  
 GEO. A. SMITH.

N.B.—We have heard that a man by the name of George<sup>30</sup> M. Hinkle is preaching in the Iowa Territory. We would remark to the public, that we have withdrawn our fellowship from him, and will not stand accountable for any doctrines held forth by him; nor will we be amenable for his conduct. The minutes of a Conference will be published, mentioning the names of others, whom we have withdrawn our fellowship from<sup>31</sup>.

---

27. *T&S* 1:15: replaces “shall walk” with “will stalk”; Book C-1, 961: “{\shall w/}alk” (TB). This emendation (and probably also the next two) done by apostolic reviewers, who met on 2 Sept. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

28. *T&S* 1:15: replaces “mighty power” with “gigantic strides”; Book C-1, 961: “{\mighty power/}” (TB)

29. *T&S* 1:15: omits “guided by ... omnipotence”; Book C-1, 961: “<guided by ... omnipotence>” (TB)

30. DHC 3:398: incorrectly reads “John”

31. DHC 3:398: moves “from” to precede “whom”



28.

PARLEY P. PRATT

ESCAPES FROM MISSOURI

July 1839

[DN 4 (11 May 1854): 1 (cont.)]

<sup>1</sup>Thursday, [July] 4th [1839]—**Assisted by Brother Newel Knight**, I dictated history.

To show the situation of the prisoners at Columbia<sup>2</sup>, I quote from Elder Pratt's "Persecution of the Saints":—

<sup>3</sup>Sister<sup>4</sup> Phelps, Orson Pratt, and sister<sup>5</sup> Phelps' brother came from Illinois on horseback and visited with us for several days.<sup>6</sup> On the Fourth of July we felt desirous as usual to celebrate the anniversary of American Liberty; we accordingly manufactured a white flag, consisting of the half of a shirt on which was inscribed the word "Liberty," in large letters, and also a large American eagle was put on in red; we then obtained a pole from our jailer, and on the morning of the Fourth, this flag was suspended from the front window of our prison, overhanging the public square, and floating triumphantly in the air to the full view of the citizens who assembled by hundreds to celebrate the National Jubilee.

With this the citizens seemed highly pleased, and sent a portion of the public dinner to us and our friends, who partook with us in<sup>7</sup> prison with merry hearts, as we intended to gain our liberties or be in paradise before the close of that eventful day.

While we were thus employed in prison, the town was alive with troops parading, guns firing, music sounding, and shouts of joy resounding on every side. In the meantime we wrote the following toast, which was read at their public dinner, with many and long cheers:—

---

1. *Source*: JSj [1839], 6b (JM) (*PJS* 2:326; *JSP* 1:345; *APR*, 238), which for 4–5 July adds "(assisted by Br Newel Knight)".

2. DHC 3:399: adds "Missouri"

3. *Source*: *LP*, 164–69. Deleted material added in bold type.

4. Book C-1, 961 (lighter ink): "{\Sister/}" (TB); *LP*, 164: "Mrs."

5. Book C-1, 961 (lighter ink): "{\Sister/}" (TB); *LP*, 164: "Mrs."

6. In *LP*, 164, preceding sentence reads: "In the mean time, we were visited by Mrs. Phelps, the wife of one of the prisoners, and also by my brother, Orson Pratt, and Mrs. Phelps' brother, these all came from Illinois or Iowa, on horseback, and visited with us for several days."

7. Book C-2, 113 (darker ink): "{\in/}" (US)

“The patriotic and hospitable citizens of Boone county: opposed to tyranny and oppression, and firm to the original principles of republican liberty; may they in common with every part of our wide spreading country, long enjoy the blessings which flow from the fountain of American Independence.”<sup>8</sup>

Our dinner being ended, our two brethren took leave of us and started for Illinois; (leaving Mrs. Phelps to still visit with her husband) they had proceeded a mile or two on the road and then took into the woods, and finally placed their three horses in a thicket within one-third of a mile of the prison, and there they waited in anxious suspense until<sup>9</sup> sundown. In the meantime we put on our coats and hats and waited for the setting sun.

With prayer, and supplication for deliverance from this long and tedious bondage, and for a restoration to the society of our friends and families; we then sung the following lines—

Lord cause their foolish plans to fail,  
And let them faint or die;  
Our souls would quit this loathsome jail,  
And fly to Illinois.

To join with the embodied Saints,  
Who are with freedom blessed—  
That only bliss for which we pant—  
With them awhile to rest.

Give joy for grief—give ease for pain;  
Take all our foes away;  
But let us find our friends again,  
In this eventful day.

Thus ended the celebration of our National Liberty; but the gaining of our own was the grand achievement now before us. In the meantime, the sun was setting; the moment arrived—the footsteps of the jailer were heard on the stairs; every man flew to his feet, and stood near the door. The great door was opened, and our supper handed in through a small hole in the inner door, which still remained locked; but at length the key was turned in order to hand in the pot of coffee. No sooner was the key turned than the door was jerked open, and in a moment all three of us were out—and rushing down the stairs, **the foremost, Mr. [Morris] Phelps, was clinched by the jailor, both tumbled down the stairs**, through the entry, and <sup>10</sup>out into the door yard, when Phelps cleared himself without injuring the jailor, and all of us leaped several fences, ran through the fields towards the thicket, where we expected to find our friends and horses.

In the meantime the town was alarmed; and many were seen rushing after us, some on horseback, and some on foot, prepared with dogs, guns, and whatever came to hand. But the flag of Liberty with its eagle, still floated on high in the distance; and under its<sup>11</sup> banner, our nerves seemed to strengthen at every step.

We gained the horses, mounted, and dashed into the wilderness, each his own way. After

---

8. *LP*, 166, includes the following footnote: “The inhabitants of Boon county being mostly Whigs, were opposed to the proceedings of the State against our people.”

9. *LP*, 166, Book C-1, 962: “till”

10. Book C-2, 114: adds ellipses over erasure

11. DHC 3:401: replaces “its” with “that”

a few jumps of my horse, I was hailed by an armed man at pistol shot distance, crying, “damn<sup>12</sup> you, stop, or I’ll shoot you!” I rushed onward deeper in<sup>13</sup> the forest, while the cry was repeated in close pursuit, crying<sup>14</sup>, “damn<sup>15</sup> you, stop, or I’ll shoot you,” at every step, till at length it died away in the distance. I plunged a mile into the forest—came to a halt—tied my horse in a thicket—went a distance, and climbed a tree, to await the approaching darkness.

Being so little used to exercise, I fainted through over-exertion, and remained so faint for near<sup>16</sup> an hour that I could not get down from the tree; but calling on the Lord, he strengthened me, and I came down from the tree.<sup>17</sup> But my horse had got loose and gone. I then made my way on foot for several days and nights, principally without food, and scarcely suffering myself to be seen.

After five days of dreadful suffering, with fatigue, and hunger, I crossed the Mississippi, and found myself once more<sup>18</sup> in a land of freedom. **Hundreds of my friends crowded around me, and many of the citizens of Illinois, although strangers to me, received and welcomed me as one who had escaped from a persecution almost unparalleled in modern history.**

<sup>19</sup>Mr. Phelps made his escape also; but King Follet was retaken and carried back. Luman Gibbs continued in the prison; he had apostatized and turned traitor to the others.

---

12. *LP*, 168: “d—n”; *DHC* 3:401: “d—”

13. *DHC* 3:401: “into”

14. *DHC* 3:401: deletes “crying”

15. *LP*, 168: “d—n”; *DHC* 3:401: “d—”

16. *DHC* 3:401: “nearly”

17. Book C-1, 963: “<But calling ... Tree>” (TB). Emendation consistent with *LP*, 169. Probably omitted through haplography. Corrected by apostolic reviewers on 2 Sept. 1845 (see vol. 7, IV.6).

18. Book C-2, 114 (darker ink): “<once more>” (prob. TB)

19. At this point, Book C-1, 963, has three blank lines with diagonal line through it. *Source*: Remainder of paragraph not from *LP*, but is an editorial comment (cf. *AAP*, 50).





## Important Affidavits

*In an "Appendix to Volume III," B. H. Roberts published the affidavits of Hyrum Smith, Parley P. Pratt, George W. Pitkin, Brigham Young, Lyman Wight, given before the Municipal Court of Nauvoo on 1 July 1843, pertaining to persecutions in Missouri, which had originally appeared in Joseph Smith's History under the date the statements were taken. These statements were given in an effort to block an attempt by Missouri marshals to return Joseph Smith to their state to face the charge of treason. In Roberts's estimation: "It cannot be said that anything new is added to the Missouri period of the Church history by these affidavits, but they are statements made officially before a court of inquiry and therefore have a value of their own on that account, and as this is a documentary history of the Church, these volumes would be incomplete without them" (DHC 3:404). Under 1 July 1843, Roberts added a footnote informing readers of his editorial decision: "The affidavits here alluded to, since they refer to events that happened in Missouri from 1831 to 1839, were transferred to the Missouri period of the history and will be found in the Appendix of Vol. III, pp. 403 to 466" (DHC 5:473). In this work, these affidavits have been returned to their former location in chapter 24 of volume 5.*









